

STATE LIBRARY OF PENNSYLVANIA



3 0144 00379623 2

S-R
CLASS 930 BOOK R65513

VOLUME 4



PENNSYLVANIA
STATE LIBRARY



THE
ANCIENT HISTORY

OF THE

EGYPTIANS,
CARTHAGINIANS,
ASSYRIANS,
BABYLONIANS,

MEDES & PERSIANS,
MACEDONIANS,
AND
GRECIANS.

BY

M^R ROLLIN,

LATE PRINCIPAL OF THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS, PROFESSOR OF ELO-
QUENCE IN THE ROYAL COLLEGE, AND MEMBER OF THE ROYAL
ACADEMY OF INSCRIPTIONS AND BELLES LETTRES.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH.

IN SIX VOLUMES.

VOL. IV.

A NEW EDITION.

ILLUSTRATED WITH MAPS OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY, NEAT ENGRAVINGS,
&c. ADAPTED TO THE WORK.

EDINBURGH:

PRINTED BY JOHN PILLANS, JAMES'S COURT,
FOR THOMAS NELSON.

1820.

BOOK THIRTEENTH.

THE HISTORY OF THE PERSIANS AND GRECians.

	Pag.
Sect. I. Ochus ascends the throne of Persia. His Cruelties. Revolt of several nations,	1
Sect. II. War of the Allies against the Athenians,	3
Sect. III. Demosthenes excites the Athenians for War. Death of Mausolus. Grief of Artemisa his Wife,	9
Sect. IV. Expedition of Ochus against Phœnicia, Cyprus, and Egypt,	16
Sect. V. Death of Ochus. Arses succeeds him,	23
Sect. VI. Abridgement of the Life of Demosthenes,	25
Sect. VII. Digression on the manner of fitting out Fleets by the Athenians,	31

BOOK FOURTEENTH.

THE HISTORY OF PHILIP.

Sect. I. The Birth and Infancy of Philip. His first Conquests. The Birth of Alexander,	39
Sect. II. The Sacred War. Sequel of the History of Philip,	56
Sect. III. Demosthenes harangues the Athenians against Philip. That Prince takes Olynthus,	61
Sect. IV. Philip declares for Thebes against the Phœceans. He seizes on Thermopylæ,	69
Sect. V. Philip extends his Conquests into Illyria and Thrace. Character of Phocion. His success against Philip,	77
Sect. VI. Philip appointed Generalissimo of the Greeks. Athenians and Thebans unite against him. He gains a Battle at Cheronea,	93
Sect. VII. Philip declared Generalissimo of the Greeks against the Persians. His Death,	108
Sect. VIII. Memorable Actions and Sayings of Philip. Good and bad Qualities of that Prince,	112

BOOK FIFTEENTH.

THE HISTORY OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT.

	Pag.
Sect. I. Alexander's Birth. Aristotle appointed his Preceptor. He breaks Bucephalus,	122
Sect. II. Alexander ascends the Throne. Declared Generalissimo of the Greeks against the Persians,	130
Sect. III. Alexander sets out against the Persians. Obtains a famous Victory at the River Granicus,	139
Sect. IV. Alexander conquers the greatest part of Asia Minor. Description of Darius' March,	147
Sect. V. Alexander gains a famous Victory over Darius at Issus. Consequences of that Victory,	161
Sect. VI. Alexander marches victorious into Syria. Lays siege to Tyre, which he takes by Storm,	174
Sect. VII. Alexander's Journey to Jerusalem. He subdues Egypt. Is declared Son of Jupiter,	198
Sect. VIII. Alexander resolves to go in pursuit of Darius. The famous Battle of Arbela,	216
Sect. IX. Alexander takes Arbela, Babylon, Susa, Persepolis; and finds immense Riches in those Cities,	229
Sect. X. Darius leaves Ecbatana. His Death. Alexander sends his Corpse to Sysigambis,	243
Sect. XI. Vices which first caused the Declension, and at last the Ruin of the Persian Empire,	247
Sect. XII. Lacedæmonia revolts from the Macedonians. Antipater defeats Agis. Alexander marches against Bessus,	251
Sect. XIII. Alexander builds a City near the Iaxarthes. Defeats the Scythians. Takes the City of Petra,	269
Sect. XIV. Death of Clitus. Expeditions of Alexander. He commands Worship to be paid to himself,	281
Sect. XV. Alexander sets out for India. Besieges and takes several Cities. Defeats Porus, whom he restores to his Throne,	292
Sect. XVI. Alexander advances into India. He is exposed to great Danger at the Siege of Oxydracæ,	310
Sect. XVII. Alexander is grievously distressed by Famine. He marries Statira the Daughter of Darius,	326
Sect. XVIII. Alexander enters Babylon. His Death. His Corpse conveyed to the Temple of Jupiter-Ammon,	341
Sect. XIX. The Judgement we are to form of Alexander,	353

	Pag.
Sect. XX. Reflections on the Persians, Greeks, and Macedonians, by M. Bossuet, Bishop of Meaux,	371

BOOK SIXTEENTH.

THE HISTORY OF ALEXANDER'S SUCCESSORS.

Sect. I. Troubles which followed the Death of Alexander. Partition of the Provinces. Aridæus is declared King. Perdiccas appointed his Guardian,	377
Sect. II. Revolt of the Greeks in Upper Asia. Antipater goes into Greece. Flight and Death of Demosthenes,	383
Sect. III. Procession of Alexander's Funeral. Ptolemy, Craterus, Antipater, and Antigonus, confederate against each other,	398
Sect. IV. Regency transferred to Antipater. Polysperchon succeeds him. The latter recalls Olympias,	407
Sect. V. Phocion's Death. Olympias causes Aridæus to be slain. She is murdered. Eumenes put to Death,	415
Sect. VI. The Death of young Alexander, Roxana, Hercules, Barsina, and Cleopatra,	445
Sect. VII. Demetrius, the Son of Antigonus, besieges and takes Athens. The consequences which follow,	460
Sect. VIII. Demetrius besieges Rhodes. Protogenes spared during the Siege,	473
Sect. IX. Expedition of Seleucus. Cassander compelled to raise the Siege of Athens. Antigonus slain,	490

BOOK THIRTEENTH.

THE
HISTORY
OF THE
PERSIANS AND GRECIANS.

SECTION I.

OCHUS ASCENDS THE THRONE OF PERSIA. HIS CRUELTIES.
REVOLT OF SEVERAL NATIONS.

THE more the memory of Artaxerxes Mnemon was honoured and revered throughout the whole empire, the more Ochus believed he had reason to fear for himself; convinced, that in succeeding to him, he should not find the same favourable dispositions in the people and nobility, of whom he had made himself the horror, by the murder of his two brothers. ⁱ To prevent that aversion from occasioning his exclusion, he prevailed upon the eunuchs, and others about the king's person, to conceal his death from the public. He began by taking upon himself the administration of affairs, giving orders, and sealing decrees in the name of Artaxerxes, as if he had been still alive; and by one of those decrees, he caused himself to be proclaimed king throughout the whole empire, always by the order of Artaxerxes. After having governed in this manner almost ten months, believing himself sufficiently established, he at length declared the death of his father, and ascended the throne ^k, taking upon himself the name of Artaxerxes. Authors, however, most frequently give him that of Ochus; by which name I shall generally call him in the sequel of this history.

ⁱ Polyæn. Stratag. vii.

^k A. M. 3644. Ant. J. C. 360.

Ochus was the most cruel and wicked of all the princes of his race, as his actions soon explained. In a very short time the palace and the whole empire were filled with his murders. To ^l remove from the revolted provinces all means of setting some other of the royal family upon the throne, and to rid himself at once of all trouble that the princes and princesses of the blood might occasion him, he put them all to death, without regard to sex, age, or proximity of blood. He caused his own sister Ocha, whose daughter he had married, to be buried alive ^m; and having shut up one of his uncles, with an hundred of his sons and grandsons, in a court of the palace, he ordered them all to be shot to death with arrows, only because those princes were much esteemed by the Persians for their probity and valour. That uncle is apparently the father of Sysigambis, the mother of Darius Codomanus: for Quintus Curtius ⁿ tells us, that Ochus had caused fourscore of her brothers, with her father, to be massacred in one day. He treated with the same barbarity, throughout the whole empire, all those who gave him any umbrage, sparing none of the nobility whom he suspected of the least discontent whatsoever.

The cruelties exercised by Ochus, did not deliver him from inquietude. Artabasus, governor of one of the Asiatic provinces, engaged Chares the Athenian, who commanded a fleet and a body of troops in those parts, to assist him, and with his aid defeated an army of seventy thousand men sent by the king to reduce him. Artabasus, in reward of so great a service, made Chares a present of money to defray the whole expences of his armament. The king of Persia resented exceedingly this conduct of the Athenians in regard to him. They were at that time employed in the war of the allies. The king's menace to join their enemies with a numerous army, obliged them to recall Chares.

Artabasus, being abandoned by them, had recourse to the Thebans, of whom he obtained five thousand men, whom he took into his pay, with Pamenes to command them. This reinforcement put him into a condition to acquire two other victories over the king's troops. Those two actions did the Theban troops, and their commander, great honour. Thebes must have been extremely incensed against the king of Persia, to send so powerful a succour to his enemies, at a time when

^l Justin. l. x. c. 3. ^m Val. Max. l. ix. c. 2. ⁿ Quint. Curt. l. x. c. 5.
^o A. M. 3643. Ant. J. C. 356. Diod. l. xvi. p. 433, 434. ^p A. M. 3651.
 Ant. J. C. 353.

that republic was engaged in a war with the Phocians. It was perhaps an effect of their policy, to render themselves more formidable, and to enhance the price of their alliance. ^q It is certain, that soon after, they made their peace with the king, who paid them three hundred talents, that is to say, three hundred thousand crowns. Artabasus, destitute of all support, was overcome at last, and obliged to take refuge with Philip in Macedon.

Ochus being delivered at length from so dangerous an enemy, turned all his thoughts on the side of Egypt, which had revolted long before. About the same time, several considerable events happened in Greece, which have little or no relation with the affairs of Persia. I shall insert them here; after which I shall turn to the reign of Ochus, not to interrupt the series of his history.

SECTION II.

WAR OF THE ALLIES AGAINST THE ATHENIANS.

SOME few years after the revolt of Asia Minor ^r, of which I have been speaking, in the third year of the 150th Olympiad, Chio, Cos, Rhodes, and Byzantium, took up arms against Athens, upon which till then they had depended. To reduce them, they employed both great forces and great captains, Chabrias, Iphicrates, and Timotheus. * They were the last of the Athenian generals, who did honour to their country; no one after them being distinguished by merit or reputation.

^s CHABRIAS had already acquired a great name, when, having been sent against the Spartans to the aid of the Thebans, and seeing himself abandoned in the battle by the allies, who had taken flight, he sustained alone the charge of the enemy; his soldiers, by his order, having closed their files with one knee upon the ground covered with their bucklers, and presented their pikes in front, in such a manner that they could not be broken, and Agesilaus, though victorious, was obliged to retire. The Athenians erected a statue to Chabrias in the attitude he had fought.

^q Diod. I. xvi. p. 438.

^r A. M. 3646. Ant. J. C. 358.

^s Cor. Nep. in Chab. c. i.

* Hæc extrema fuit ætas imperatorum Atheniensium, Iphicratæ, Chabriæ, Timothei; neque post illorum obitum quisquam dux in illa urbe fuit dignus memoria.—Cor. Nep. in Timoth. c. 4.

IPHICRATES was of very mean extraction, his father having been a shoemaker. But in a free city like Athens, merit was the sole nobility. This person may be truly said to be the son of his actions. Having signalized himself in a naval combat, wherein he was only a private soldier, he was soon after employed with distinction, and honoured with a command. In a prosecution carried on against him before the judges, his accuser, who was one of the descendants of Harnmodius, and made very great use of his ancestor's name, having reproached him with the baseness of his birth; "Yes," replied he, "the nobility of my family begins in me; that of 'yours ends in you.'" He married the daughter of Cotys, king of Thrace.

^t He is * ranked with the greatest men of Greece, especially in what regards the knowledge of war and military discipline. He made several useful alterations in the soldiers' armour. Before him, the bucklers were very long and heavy, and, for that reason, were too great a burden, and extremely troublesome: he had made them shorter and lighter, so that, without exposing the body, they added to its force and agility. On the contrary, he lengthened the pikes and swords, to make them capable of reaching the enemy at a great distance. He also changed the cuirasses; and instead of iron and brass, of which they were made before, he caused them to be made of flax. It is not easy to conceive how such armour could defend the soldiers, or be any security against wounds. But that flax being soaked in vinegar, mingled with salt, was prepared in such a manner, that it grew hard, and became impenetrable either to sword or fire. The use of it was common amongst several nations.

No troops were ever better exercised or disciplined than those of Iphicrates. He kept them always in action; and in times of peace and tranquillity, made them perform all the necessary evolutions, either in attacking the enemy, or defending themselves; in laying ambuscades, or avoiding them; in keeping their ranks even in the pursuit of the enemy, without abandoning themselves to an ardour which often becomes pernicious; or to rally with success, after having begun to break and give way; so that when the battle was to be given, all

^t Diod. l. xv. p. 360. Cor. Nep. in Iphic. c. i.

* Iphicrates Atheniensis, non tam magnitudine rerum gestarum, quam disciplina militari, nobilitatus est. Fuit enim talis dux, ut non solum aetatis sua cum primis compararetur, sed ne de majoribus natu quidem quisquam anteponeretur.--- Cor. Nep.

was in motion with admirable promptitude and order. The officers and soldiers drew themselves up without any trouble, and even in the heat of action performed their parts, as the most able general would have directed them:—A merit very rare, as I have been informed, but very estimable; as it contributes more than can be imagined to the gaining of a battle, and implies a very uncommon superiority of genius in the general.

Timotheus was the son of Conon, so much celebrated for his great actions, and the important services he had rendered his country. * He did not degenerate from his father's reputation, either for his merit in the field, or his ability in the government of the state; but he added to those excellencies, the glory which results from the talents of the mind, having distinguished himself particularly by the gift of eloquence, and a taste for the sciences.

^u No captain at first ever experienced less than himself the inconstancy of the fortune of war. He had only to undertake an enterprise, to accomplish it. Success perpetually attended his views and desires. Such uncommon prosperity did not fail to excite jealousy. Those who envied him, as I have already observed, caused him to be painted asleep, with Fortune by him, taking cities for him in nets. Timotheus retorted coldly, “ If I take places in my sleep, what shall I do when “ I am awake?” He took the thing afterwards more seriously, and, angry with those who pretended to lessen the glory of his actions, declared in public, that he did not owe his success to fortune, but to himself. That goddess, says Plutarch, offended at his pride and arrogance, abandoned him entirely, and he was never successful afterwards. Such were the chiefs employed in the war of the allies.

^x The war and the campaign opened with the siege of Chio. Chares commanded the land, and Chabrias the sea forces. All the allies exerted themselves in sending aid to that island. Chabrias, having forced the passage, entered the port, notwithstanding all the endeavours of the enemy. The other galleys were afraid to follow, and abandoned him. He was immediately surrounded on all sides, and his vessel exceeding-

^u Plut. in Sylla, p. 454. ^x Diod. l. xvi. p. 412. Cor. Nep. in Chab. c. iv.

* Hic a' patre acceptam gloriam multis auxit virtutibus. Fuit enim disertus, impiger, laboriosus, rei militari peritus, neque minus civitatis regendæ.—Cor. Nep. c. i.

Timotheus Cononis filius, cum belli laude non inferior fuisse quam pater, ad eam laudem doctrinæ et ingenti gloriam adjecit.—Cic. l. i. de Offic. n. 110.

ly damaged by the assaults of the enemy. He might have saved himself by swimming to the Athenian fleet, as his soldiers did; but from a mistaken principle of glory, he thought it inconsistent with the duty of a general to abandon his vessel in such a manner, and preferred a death, glorious in his sense, to a shameful flight.

This first attempt having miscarried, both sides applied themselves vigorously to make new preparations. The Athenians fitted out a fleet of sixty galleys, and appointed Chares to command it, and armed sixty more under Iphicrates and Timotheus. The fleet of the allies consisted of an hundred sail. After having ravaged several islands belonging to the Athenians, where they made a great booty, they sat down before Samos. The Athenians on their side, having united all their forces, besieged Byzantium. The allies made all possible haste to its relief. The two fleets, being in view of each other, prepared to fight, when suddenly a violent storm arose, notwithstanding which, Chares resolved to advance against the enemy. The two other captains, who had more prudence and experience than him, thought it improper to hazard a battle in such a conjuncture. Chares, enraged at their not following his advice, called the soldiers to witness, that it was not his fault they did not fight the enemy. He was naturally vain, ostentatious, and full of himself; one who exaggerated his own services, depreciated those of others, and arrogated to himself the whole glory of successes. He wrote to Athens against his two colleagues, and accused them of cowardice and treason. Upon his complaint, the people, * capricious, warm, suspicious, and naturally jealous of such as were distinguished by their extraordinary merit or authority, recalled those two generals, and brought them to a trial.

The faction of Chares, which was very powerful at Athens, having declared against Timotheus, he was sentenced to pay a fine of an hundred talents †; a worthy reward for the noble disinterestedness he had shewn upon another occasion, in bringing home to his country twelve hundred talents ‡ of booty taken from the enemy, without the least deduction for himself. He could bear no longer the sight of an ungrateful city; and being too poor to pay so great a fine, retired to

* *Populus acer, suspicax, mobilis, adversarius, invidus etiam potentiae, demun: revocat.*—Cor. Nep.

† An hundred thousand crowns.

‡ Twelve hundred thousand crowns.

Chalcis. After his death, the people, touched with repentance, mitigated the fine to ten talents, which they made his son Conon pay, to rebuild a certain part of the walls. Thus, by an event sufficiently odd, those very walls which his grandfather had rebuilt with the spoils of the enemy, the grandson, to the shame of Athens, repaired in part at his own expence.

^y Iphicrates was also obliged to answer for himself before the judges. It was upon this occasion that Aristophon, another Athenian captain, accused him of having betrayed and sold the fleet under his command. Iphicrates, with the confidence an established reputation inspires, asked him, “Would you have committed a treason of this nature?” “No,” replied Aristophon, “I am a man of too much honour for such an action!” “How!” replied Iphicrates, “could Iphicrates do what Aristophon would not do?”

^z He did not only employ the force of arguments in his defence, he called in also the assistance of arms. Instructed by his colleague’s ill success, he saw plainly that it was more necessary to intimidate than convince his judges. He posted round the place where they assembled, a number of young persons, armed with poinards, which they took care to shew from time to time. They could not resist so forcible and triumphant a kind of eloquence, and dismissed him acquitted of the charge. When he was afterwards reproached with so violent a proceeding; “I had been a fool indeed,” said he, “if, ‘having made war successfully for the Athenians, I had neglected doing so for myself.’”

Chares, by the recall of his two colleagues, was left sole general of the whole army, and was in a condition to have advanced the Athenian affairs very much in the Hellespont, if he had known how to resist the magnificent offers of Artabasus. That viceroy, who had revolted in Asia Minor against the king of Persia his master, besieged by an army of seventy thousand men, and just upon the point of being ruined from the inequality of his forces, corrupted Chares. That general, who had no thoughts but of enriching himself, marched directly to the assistance of Artabasus, effectually relieved him, and received a reward suitable to the service. This action of Chares was treated as a capital crime. He had not only abandoned the service of the republic for a foreign war, but offended the king of Persia, who threatened by his ambas-

sadors to equip three hundred sail of ships in favour of the islanders allied against Athens. The credit of Chares saved him again upon this, as it had done several times before on like occasions. The Athenians, intimidated by the king's menaces, applied themselves seriously to prevent their effects by a general peace.

Prior to these menaces, Isocrates had earnestly recommended this treaty to them in a fine discourse ^a, which is still extant, wherein he gives them excellent advice. He reproaches them with great liberty, as does Demosthenes in almost all his orations, of abandoning themselves blindly to the insinuations of orators who flatter their passions, whilst they treat those with contempt who gave them the most salutary counsels. He applied himself particularly to correct in them their violent passion for the augmentation of their power and dominion over the people of Greece, which had been the source of all their misfortunes. He recalls to their remembrance those happy days, so glorious for Athens, in which their ancestors, out of a noble and generous disinterestedness, sacrificed every thing for the support of the common liberty, and the preservation of Greece; and compares them with the present sad times, wherein the ambition of Sparta, and afterwards that of Athens, had successively plunged both states into the greatest misfortunes. He represents to them, that the real and lasting greatness of a state does not consist in augmenting its dominions, or extending its conquests to the utmost, which cannot be effected without violence and injustice; but in the wise government of the people, in rendering them happy, in protecting their allies, in being beloved and esteemed by their neighbours, and feared by their enemies. "A state," says he, "cannot fail of becoming the arbiter of all its neighbours, when it knows how to unite in all its measures the two great qualities, justice and power, which mutually support each other, and ought to be inseparable. For as power, not regulated by the motives of reason and justice, has recourse to the most violent methods to crush and subvert whatever opposes it; so justice, when unarmed and without power, is exposed to injury, and neither in a condition to defend itself nor protect others." The conclusion drawn by Isocrates from this reasoning, is, that Athens, if it would be happy, and in tranquillity, ought not to affect the empire of the sea for the sake of lording it over

^a *De pace, seu, socialis.*

all other states ; but should conclude a peace, whereby every city and people should be left to the full enjoyment of their liberty ; and declare themselves irreconcileable enemies of those who should presume to disturb that peace, or contravene such measures.

^a The peace was concluded accordingly under such conditions ; and it was stipulated, that Rhodes, Byzantium, Chio, and Cos, should enjoy entire liberty. The war of the allies ended in this manner, after having continued three years.

SECTION III.

DEMOSTHENES EXCITES THE ATHENIANS FOR WAR. DEATH OF MAUSOLUS. GRIEF OF ARTEMISA HIS WIFE.

THIS peace did not entirely remove the apprehension of the Athenians with regard to the king of Persia ^b. The great preparations he was making gave them umbrage ; and they were afraid so formidable an armament was intended against Greece, and that Egypt was only a plausible pretext with which the king covered his real design.

Athens took the alarm upon this rumour. The orators increased the fears of the people by their discourses, and exhorted them to have an immediate recourse to their arms, to prevent the king of Persia by a previous declaration of war, and to make a league with all the people of Greece against the common enemy. Demosthenes made his first appearance in public at this time, and mounted the tribunal for harangues to give his opinion. He was twenty-eight years of age. I shall speak more extensively of him by and bye. Upon the present occasion, more wise than those precipitate orators, and having undoubtedly in view the importance to the republic of the aid of the Persians against Philip, he dared not indeed oppose in a direct manner their advice, lest he should render himself suspected ; but admitting as a principle from the first, that it was necessary to consider the king of Persia as the eternal enemy of Greece, he represented that it was not consistent with prudence, in an affair of such great consequence, to precipitate any thing ; that it was very improper, by a resolution taken upon light and uncertain reports, and by a too early declaration of war, to furnish so powerful a prince with

^a A. M. 3648. Ant. J. C. 356.

^b A. M. 3649. Ant. J. C. 355.

a just reason to turn his arms against Greece ; that all which was necessary at present, was to fit out a fleet of three hundred sail, (in what manner, he proposed a scheme *), and to hold the troops in a readiness and condition to make an effectual and vigorous defence in case of being attacked ; that by so doing, all the people of Greece, without further invitation, would be sufficiently apprised of the common danger to join them ; and that the report alone of such an armament would be enough to induce the king of Persia to change his measures, admitting he should have formed any designs against Greece.

For the rest, he was not of opinion, that it was necessary to levy an immediate tax upon the estates of private persons for the expence of this war, which would not amount to a great sum, nor suffice for the occasion. "It is better," said he, "to rely upon the zeal and generosity of the citizens. "Our city may be said to be almost as rich as all the other "cities of Greece together." (He had before observed, that the estimate of the lands of Attica amounted to six thousand talents, about eight hundred and fifty thousand pounds Sterling), "When we shall see the reality and approach of the "danger, every body will be ready to contribute to the expences "of the war ; as nobody can be so void of reason, as to prefer "the hazard of losing their whole estate with their liberty, to "sacrificing a small part of it to their own and their country's "preservation.

"And we ought not to fear, as some people would insinuate, that the great riches of the king of Persia enable him "to raise a great body of auxiliaries, and render his army "formidable against us. Our Greeks, when they are to "march against Egypt, or Orontes and the other Barbarians, "serve willingly under the Persians ; but not one of them, "I dare be assured, not a single man of them, will ever resolve to bear arms against Greece."

This discourse had all its effect. The refined and delicate address of the orator in advising the imposition of a tax to be deferred, and artfully explaining, at the same time, that it would fall only upon the rich, was highly proper to render abortive an affair, which had no other foundation than in the over-heated imagination of some orators, who were perhaps interested in the war they advised.

* I reserve this scheme for the seventh section, being curious, and very proper to explain in what manner the Athenians fitted out and subsisted their poets.

^f Two years after, an enterprise of the Lacedæmonians against Megalopolis, a city of Arcadia, gave Demosthenes another opportunity to signalize his zeal, and display his eloquence. That city, which had been lately established by the Arcadians, who had settled a numerous colony there from different cities, and which might serve as a fortress and bulwark against Sparta, gave the Lacedæmonians great uneasiness, and alarmed them extremely. They resolved therefore to attack and make themselves masters of it. The Megalopolitans, who without doubt had renounced their alliance with Thebes, had recourse to Athens, and implored its protection: the other people concerned sent also their deputies thither; and the affair was debated before the people.

^g Demosthenes founded his discourse from the beginning of it upon this principle, that it was of the last importance to prevent either Sparta or Thebes from growing too powerful, and from being in a condition to give law to the rest of Greece. Now, it is evident, that if we abandon Megalopolis to the Lacedæmonians, they will soon make themselves masters of Messene also, two strong neighbouring cities, which are a check upon Sparta, and keep it within due bounds. The alliance we shall make with the Arcadians, in declaring for Megalopolis, is therefore the certain means to preserve so necessary a balance between Sparta and Thebes; because, whatever happens, neither the one nor the other will be able to hurt us, whilst the Arcadians are our allies, whose forces, in conjunction with ours, will always be superior to those of either of them.

A weighty objection to this advice of Demosthenes, was the alliance actually subsisting between Athens and Sparta. For, in fine, said the orators who opposed Demosthenes, what idea will the world have of Athens, if we change in such a manner with the times? or is it consistent with justice to pay no regard to the faith of treaties? "We ought," replied Demosthenes, whose very words I shall repeat in this place, "we * ought indeed always to have justice in view, and to make it the rule of our conduct; but, at the same time, our conformity to it should consist with the public good, and the interest of the state. It has been a perpetual maxim with us to assist the oppressed." He cites the Lacedæmo-

^f A. M. 3461. ~ Ant. J. C. 353. ~ Diod. l. xv. p. 401.

^g Demost. Orat. pro Megalop.

* Δεῖ οὐκοπέν μὲν ἀτί καὶ πεπεπτεῖ τὰ δίκαια συμποιεῖται, δὲ, ὑπας ἀτι καὶ συμφέροντα ἔσαι τάντα.

nians themselves, the Thebans and Eubœans, as examples. “ We have never varied from this principle. The reproach “ of changing, therefore, ought not to fall upon us, but upon “ those whose injustice and usurpation oblige us to declare “ against them.”

I admire the language of politicians. To hear them talk, it is always reason and the strictest justice that determine them; but to see them act, makes it evident that interest and ambition are the sole rule and guide of their conduct. Their discourse is an effect of that regard for justice which nature has implanted in the mind of man, and which they cannot entirely shake off. There are few who venture to declare against that internal principle in their expressions, or to contradict it openly. But there are also few, who observe it with fidelity and constancy in their actions. Greece never was known to have more treaties of alliances than at the time we are now speaking of, nor were they ever less regarded. This contempt of the religion of oaths in states, is a proof of their decline, and often denotes and occasions their approaching ruin.

^h The Athenians, moved by the eloquent discourse of Demosthenes, sent three thousand foot, and three hundred horse, to the aid of the Megalopolitans, under the command of Pammenes *. Megalopolis was re-instated in its former condition, and its inhabitants, who had retired into their own countries, were obliged to return.

The peace, which had put an end to the war of the allies, did not procure for all of them the tranquillity they had reason to expect from it. The people of Rhodes and Cos, who had been declared free by that treaty, only changed their master. Mausolus, king of Caria, who assisted them in throwing off the Athenian yoke, imposed his own upon them. Having publicly declared himself for the rich and powerful, he enslaved the people, and made them suffer exceedingly. He died the second year after the treaty of peace, having reigned twenty-four years. ⁱ Artemisa his wife succeeded him; and as she was supported with all the influence of the king of Persia, she retained her power in the isles lately subjected.

In speaking here of Artemisa, it is proper to observe, that

^h Diod. l. xv. p. 402.

ⁱ A. M. 3650. Ant. J. C. 354. Diod. l. xvi. p. 435.

* This is not the Pammenes of Thebes, of whom mention has been made before.

she must not be confounded with another Artemisa, who lived above an hundred years before, in the time of Xerxes, and who distinguished her resolution and prudence so much in the naval battle of Salamin. Several celebrated writers have fallen into this error through inadvertency.

^k This princess immortalized herself by the honours she rendered to the memory of Mausolus her husband. She caused a magnificent monument to be erected for him in Halicarnassus, which was called the Mausolæum, and for its beauty was esteemed one of the wonders of the world, and gave the name of Mausolæum to all future great and magnificent structures of the same kind.

^l She endeavoured also to eternize the name of Mausolus by other monuments, which she believed more durable than those of brass or marble, but are often no better proof against the injuries of time: I mean works of wit. She caused excellent panegyrics to be made in honour of her husband, and proposed a prize of great value for the person whose performance should be the best. Amongst many others, the celebrated Isocrates, and Theopompus his disciple, were competitors for it.

Theopompus carried it from them all, and had the weakness and vanity to boast in public of having gained the prize against his master; preferring, as is too common, the fame of fine parts to the glory of a good heart. He had represented Mausolus in his history as a prince most sordidly avaricious, to whom all means of amassing treasure were good and eligible. He painted him, without doubt, in very different colours in his panegyric, or else he would never have pleased the princess.

^m That illustrious widow prepared a different tomb for Mausolus, than what I have been speaking of. Having gathered his ashes, and had the bones beaten in a mortar, she mingled some of the powder every day in her drink, till she had drank it all off: desiring by that means to make her own body the sepulchre of her husband. She survived him only two years; and her grief did not end but with her life.

Instead of tears, in which most writers plunge Artemisa, during her widowhood, there are some who say she made very considerable conquests. ⁿ It appears by one of Demos-

^k Plin. l. xxxvi. c. 5.

^l Aul. Gel. l. x. c. 18. Plut. in Isocrat. p. 838.

^m Cic. Tusc. Quest. l. iii. n. 75, Val. Max. l. iv. c. 6.

ⁿ Demost. de Libertat. Rhod. p. 145.

thenes' orations, that she was not considered at Athens as a forlorn relict, who neglected the affairs of her kingdom. But we have something more decisive upon this head. ^o Vitruvius tells us, that after the death of Mausolus, the Rhodians, offended that a woman should reign in Caria, undertook to dethrone her. They left Rhodes for that purpose with their fleet, and entered the great port of Halicarnassus. The queen, being informed of their design, had given the inhabitants orders to keep within the walls, and when the enemy should arrive, to express by shouts and clapping of hands a readiness to surrender the city to them. The Rhodians quitted their ships, and went in all haste to the public place, leaving their fleet without any to guard it. In the mean time, Artemisa came out with her galleys from the little port, through a small canal, which she had caused to be cut on purpose, entered the great port, seized the enemy's fleet without resistance, and having put her soldiers and mariners on board of it, she set sail. The Rhodians, having no means of escaping, were all put to the sword. The queen all the while advanced towards Rhodes. When the inhabitants saw their vessels approach, adorned with wreaths of laurel, they raised great shouts, and received their victorious and triumphant fleet with extraordinary marks of joy. It was so in effect, but in another sense than they imagined. Artemisa, having met with no resistance, took possession of the city, and put the principal inhabitants to death. She caused a trophy of her victory to be erected in it, and set up two statues of brass; one of which represented the city of Rhodes, and the other Artemisa, branding it with a hot iron. Vitruvius adds, that the Rhodians dared never demolish that trophy, their religion forbidding it; but they surrounded it with a building which prevented it entirely from being seen.

All this, as Monsieur Bayle observes in his Dictionary, does not express a forlorn and inconsolable widow, that passed her whole time in grief and lamentation; which makes it reasonable to suspect, that whatever is reported of excessive in the mourning of Artemisa, has no other foundation, but its being advanced at a venture by some writer, and afterwards copied by all the rest.

I should be better pleased, for the honour of Artemisa, if it had been said, as there is nothing incredible in it, that by a fortitude and greatness of mind, of which her sex has many

^o Vitruv. de Architect. l. ii. c. 8.

examples, she had known how to unite the severe affliction of the widow with the active courage of the queen, and made the affairs of her government serve her instead of consolation: “ p Negotia pro solatiis accipiens.”

q The Rhodians being treated by Artemisa in the manner we have related, and unable to support any longer so severe and shameful a servitude, they had recourse to the Athenians, and implored their protection. Though they had rendered themselves entirely unworthy of it by their revolt, Demosthenes took upon him to speak to the people in their behalf. He began with setting forth their crime in its full light; he enlarged upon their injustice and perfidy; he seemed to enter into the people's just sentiments of resentment and indignation, and it might have been thought, was going to declare himself in the strongest terms against the Rhodians: but all this was only the art of the orator, to insinuate himself into his auditors' opinion, and to excite in them quite contrary sentiments of goodness and compassion for a people, who acknowledged their fault, who confessed their unworthiness, and who nevertheless were come to implore the republic's protection. He sets before them the great maxims, which in all ages had constituted the glory of Athens; the forgiving of injuries, the pardoning of rebels, and the taking upon them the defence of the unfortunate. To the motives of glory, he annexes those of interest; in shewing the importance of declaring for a city, that favoured the democratic form of government; and of not abandoning an island so powerful as that of Rhodes: which is the substance of Demosthenes' discourse, entitled, *For the liberty of the Rhodians*.

r The death of Artemisa, which happened the same year, it is very likely, re-established the Rhodians in their liberty. She was succeeded by her brother Idriæus, who espoused his own sister Ada, as Mausolus had done Artemisa. It was the custom in Caria for the kings to marry their sisters in this manner, and for the widows to succeed their husbands in the throne, in preference to the brothers and even the children of the defunct.

p Tacit. q A. M. 3653. Ant. J. C. 351. Demost. de Libert. Rhed.

r Strab. l. xiv. p. 656.

SECTION IV.

EXPEDITION OF OCHUS AGAINST PHœNICKIA, CYPRUS,
AND EGYPT.

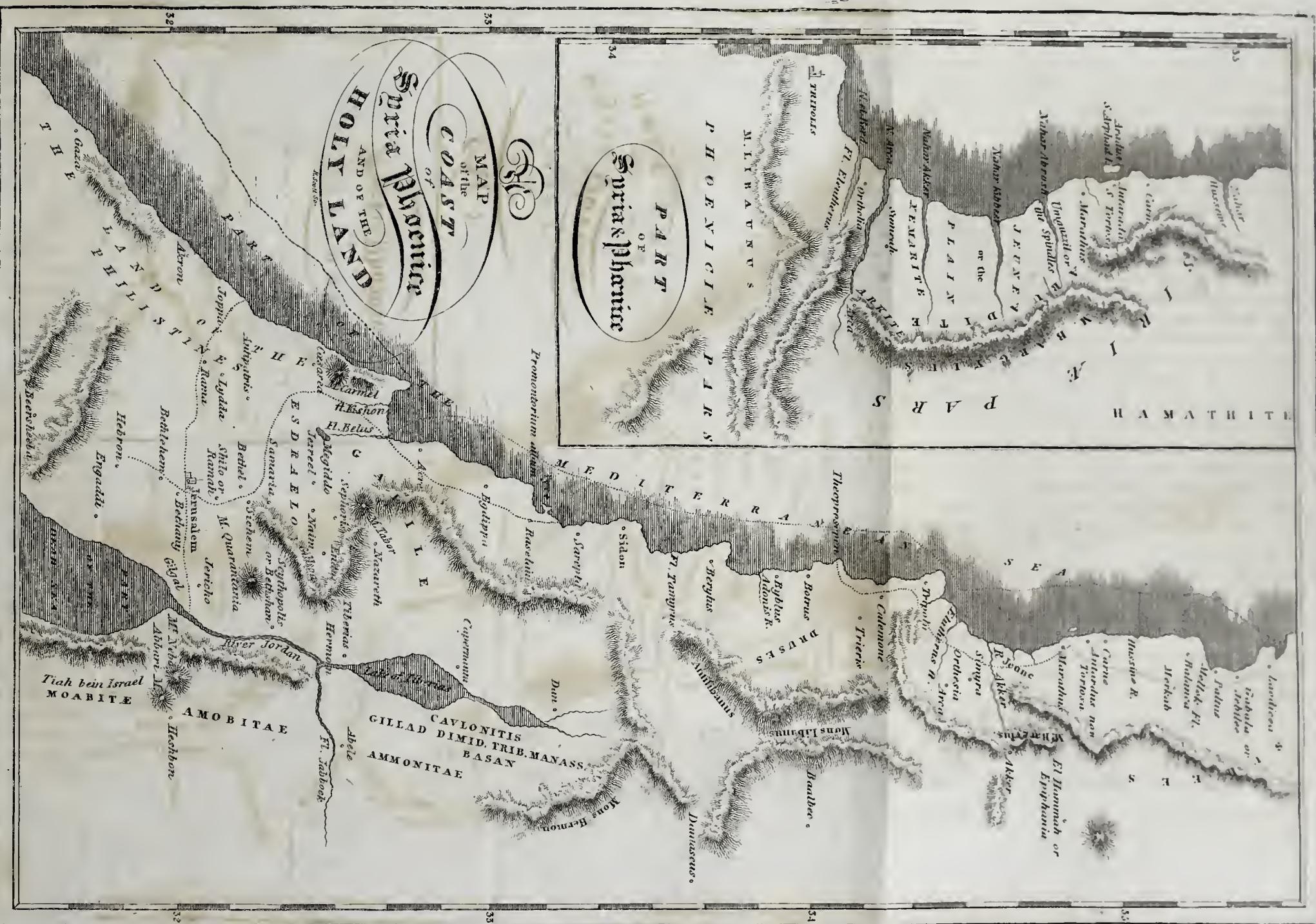
OCHUS^r meditated in earnest the reduction of Egypt to his obedience, which had long pretended to maintain itself in independence. Whilst he was making great preparations for this important expedition, he received advice of the revolt of Phœnicia. ^s That people, oppressed by the Persian governors, resolved to throw off so heavy a yoke, and made a league with Nectanebis king of Egypt, against whom Persia was marching its armies. As there was no other passage for that invasion but through Phœnicia, this revolt was very seasonable for Nectanebis, who therefore sent Mentor the Rhodian to support the rebels, with four thousand Grecian troops. He intended by that means to make Phœnicia his barrier, and to stop the Persians there. The Phœnicians took the field with that reinforcement, beat the governors of Syria and Cilicia, that had been sent against them, and drove the Persians entirely out of Phœnicia.

The Cyprians, who were not better treated than the Phœnicians, seeing the good success which had attended this revolt, followed their example, and joined in their league with Egypt. Ochus sent orders to Idriæus king of Caria, to make war against them; who soon after fitted out a fleet, and sent eight thousand Greeks along with it, under the command of Phocion the Athenian, and Evagoras, who was believed to have been the son of Nicocles. It is probable that he had been expelled by his uncle Protagoras, and that he had embraced with pleasure this opportunity of re-ascending the throne. His knowledge of the country, and the party he had there, made the king of Persia choose him very wisely to command in this expedition. They made a descent in the island, where their army increased to double its number by the reinforcements which came from Syria and Cilicia. The hopes of enriching themselves by the spoils of this island, which was very rich, drew thither abundance of troops; and they formed the siege of Salamin by sea and land. The island of Cyprus had at that time nine cities, considerable enough to have each

^r A. M. 3653. Ant. J. C. 351.

^t Diod. l. xvi. p. 440, 441.

^s Diod. l. xvi. p. 439.



of them a petty king. But all those kings were however subjects of Persia. They had upon this occasion united together to throw off that yoke, and to render themselves independent.

Ochus having observed that the Egyptian war was always unsuccessful, from the ill-conduct of the generals sent thither, he resolved to take the care of it upon himself. But before he set out, he signified his desire to the states of Greece, that they would put an end to their divisions, and cease to make war upon one another.

It is a just matter of surprise, that the court of Persia should insist so earnestly and so often, that the people of Greece should live in tranquillity with each other, and observe inviolably the articles of the treaty of Antalcides, the principal end of which was the establishment of a lasting union amongst them. It had formerly employed a quite different policy.

From the miscarriage of the enterprise against Greece under Xerxes, judging gold and silver a more proper means for subjecting it than that of the sword, the Persians did not attack it with open force, but by the method of secret intrigues. They conveyed considerable sums into it privately, to corrupt the persons of credit and authority in the great cities, and were perpetually watching occasions to arm them against each other, and to deprive them of the leisure and means to invade themselves. They were particularly careful to declare sometimes for one, sometimes for another, in order to support a kind of balance amongst them, which put it out of the power of any of those republics to aggrandize itself too much, and by that means to become formidable to Persia.

That nation employed a quite different conduct at this time, in prohibiting all wars to the people of Greece, and commanding them to observe an universal peace, upon pain of incurring their displeasure and arms, to such as should disobey. Persia, without doubt, did not take that resolution at a venture, and had its reasons to behave in such a manner with regard to Greece.

Its design might be to soften their spirit by degrees, in disarming their hands; to blunt the edge of that valour, which spurred them on perpetually by noble emulation; to extinguish in them their passion for glory and victory; to render languid, by long inaction and forced ease, the activity natural to them; and, in fine, to bring them into the number of those people, whom a quiet and effeminate life enervates, and who lose in sloth and peace that martial ardour, which combats, and even dangers, are apt to inspire.

The king of Persia who then reigned, had a personal interest, as well as his predecessor, in imposing these terms upon the Greeks. Egypt had long thrown off the yoke, and given the empire just cause of inquietude. Ochus had resolved to go in person to reduce the rebels. He had the expedition extremely at heart, and neglected nothing that could promote its success. The famous retreat of the ten thousand, without enumerating many other actions of a like nature, had left a great idea in Persia of the Grecian valour. That prince relied more upon a small body of Greeks in his pay, than upon the whole army of the Persians, as numerous as it was; and he well knew, that the intestine divisions of Greece would render the cities incapable of supplying the number of soldiers he had occasion for.

In fine, as a good politician, he could not enter upon action in Egypt, till he had pacified all behind him, Ionia especially, and its neighbouring provinces. Now, the most certain means to hold them in obedience, was to deprive them of all hope of aid from the Greeks, to whom they had always recourse in times of revolt, and without whom they were in no condition to form any great enterprises ^u.

When Ochus had taken all his measures, and made the necessary preparations, he repaired to the frontiers of Phœnicia, where he had an army of three hundred thousand foot, and thirty thousand horse, and put himself at the head of it. Mentor was at Sidon with the Grecian troops. The approach of so great an army staggered him, and he sent secretly to Ochus, to make him offers, not only of surrendering Sidon to him, but of serving him in Egypt, where he was well acquainted with the country, and might be very useful to him. Ochus agreed entirely to the proposal: upon which he engaged Tenes king of Sidon in the same treason; and they surrendered the place in concert to Ochus.

The Sidonians had set fire to their ships upon the approach of the king's troops, in order to lay the people under the necessity of making a good defence, by removing all hope of any other security. When they saw themselves betrayed, that the enemy were masters of the city, and that there was no possibility of escaping either by sea or land, in the despair of their condition, they shut themselves up in their houses, and set them on fire. Forty thousand men, without reckoning women and children, perished in this manner. The fate of

^u Diod. l. xvi. p. 441.—443.

Tenes their king was no better. Ochus, seeing himself master of Sidon, and having no further occasion for him, caused him to be put to death ; a just reward for his treason, and an evident proof, that Ochus did not yield to him in perfidy. At the time this misfortune happened, Sidon was immensely rich. The fire having melted the gold and silver, Ochus sold the cinders for a considerable sum of money.

The dreadful ruin of this city cast so great a terror into the rest of Phoenicia, that it submitted, and obtained conditions reasonable enough from the king ; Ochus made no great difficulty in complying with their demands, because he would not lose the time there he had so much occasion for in the execution of his projects against Egypt.

Before he began his march to enter it, he was joined by a body of ten thousand Greeks. From the beginning of this expedition he had demanded troops in Greece. The Athenians and Lacedæmonians had excused themselves from furnishing him any at that time ; it being impossible for them to do it, whatever desire they might have, as they said, to cultivate a good correspondence with the king. The Thebans sent him a thousand men, under the command of Lachares ; the Argives three thousand, under Nicostratus. The rest came from the cities of Asia. All these troops joined him immediately after the taking of Sidon.

^x The Jews must have had some share in the war of the Phœnicians against Persia ; for Sidon was no sooner taken, than Ochus entered Judea, and besieged the city of Jericho, which he took. Besides which, it appears that he carried a great number of Jewish captives into Egypt, and sent many others into Hyrcania, where he settled them along the coast of the Caspian sea.

^y Ochus also put an end to the war with Cyprus at the same time. That of Egypt so entirely engrossed his attention, that, in order to have nothing to divert him from it, he was satisfied to come to an accommodation with the nine kings of Cyprus, who submitted to him upon certain conditions, and were all continued in their little states. Evagoras demanded to be reinstated in the kingdom of Salamin. It was evidently proved, that he had committed the most flagrant oppressions during his reign, and that he had not been unjustly dethroned. Protagoras was therefore confirmed in the kingdom of Salamin, and the king gave Evagoras a remote government. He

^x Solin. c. xxxv. Euseb. in Chron. &c.

^y Diod. l. xvi. p. 443.

behaved no better in that, and was again expelled. He afterwards returned to Salamin, and was seized, and put to death. Surprising difference between Nicocles and his son Evagoras!

^z After the reduction of the isle of Cyprus, and the province of Phœnicia, Ochus advanced at length towards Egypt.

Upon his arrival, he encamped before Pelesium, from whence he detached three bodies of his troops, each of them commanded by a Greek and a Persian with equal authority. The first was under Dachares the Theban, and Rosaces governor of Lydia and Ionia. The second was given to Nicostratus the Argive, and Aristazenes, one of the great officers of the crown. The third had Mentor the Rhodian, and Baagoas one of Ochus's eunuchs, at the head of it. Each detachment had its particular orders. The king remained with the main body of the army in the camp he had made choice of at first, to wait events, and to be ready to support these troops in case of ill success, or to improve the advantages they might have.

Nectanebis had long expected this invasion, the preparations for which had made so much noise. He had an hundred thousand men on foot, twenty thousand of whom were Greeks, twenty thousand Lybians, and the rest of Egyptian troops. Part of them he bestowed in the places upon the frontiers, and posted himself with the rest in the passes, to dispute the enemy's entrance into Egypt. Ochus's first detachment was sent against Pelusium, where there was a garrison of five thousand Greeks. Lachares besieged the place. That under Nicostratus, on board four-and-twenty ships of the Persian fleet, entered one of the mouths of the Nile at the same time, and sailed into the heart of Egypt, where they landed, and fortified themselves well in a camp, of which the situation was very advantageous. All the Egyptian troops in these parts were immediately drawn together under Clinias, a Greek of the isle of Cos, and prepared to repel the enemy. A very warm action ensued, in which Clinias with five thousand of his troops were killed, and the rest entirely broken and dispersed.

This action decided the success of the war. Nectanebis, apprehending that Nicostratus after this victory would embark again upon the Nile, and take Memphis the capital of the kingdom, made all the haste he could to defend it, and abandoned the passes, which it was of the last importance to

^z Diod. l. xvi. p. 444. et 450.

secure, to prevent the entrance of the enemy. When the Greeks that defended Pelusium, were apprized of this precipitate retreat, they believed all lost, and capitulated with La-chares, upon condition of being sent back into Greece with all that belonged to them, and without suffering any injury in their persons or effects.

Mentor, who commanded the third detachment, finding the passes clear and unguarded, entered the country, and made himself master of it without any opposition. For, after having caused a report to be spread throughout his camp, that Ochus had ordered all those who would submit to be treated with favour, and that such as made resistance should be destroyed, as the Sidonians had been, he let all his prisoners escape, that they might carry the news into the country round about. Those poor people reported in their towns and villages what they had heard in the enemy's camp. The brutality of Ochus seemed to confirm it; and the terror was so great, that the garrisons, as well Greeks as Egyptians, strove which should be the foremost in making their submission.

^a Nectanebis, having lost all hope of being able to defend himself, escaped with his treasures and best effects into Æthiopia, from whence he never returned. He was the last king of Egypt of the Egyptian race, since whom it has always continued under a foreign yoke, according to the prediction of Ezekiel ^b.

Ochus having entirely conquered Egypt in this manner, dismantled the cities, pillaged the temples, and returned in triumph to Babylon, laden with spoils, and especially with gold and silver, of which he carried away immense sums. He left the government of it to Pherendates, a Persian of the first quality.

^c Here Manethon finishes his commentaries, or history of Egypt. He was a priest of Heliopolis in that country, and had written the history of its different dynasties from the commencement of the nation to the time we now treat of. His book is often cited by Josephus, Eusebius, Plutarch, Porphyry, and several others. This historian lived in the reign of Ptolemæus Philadelphus, king of Egypt, to whom he dedicates his work, of which * Syncellus has preserved us the abridgement.

^a A. M. 3654. Ant. J. C. 350.

^b Ezek. xxix. 14, 15.

^c Syncel. p. 265. Voss. de Hist. Græc. l. i. c. 14.

* George, a monk of Constantinople, so called from his being Syncellus, or vicar to the Patriarch Terasus, towards the end of the ninth century.

Nectanebis lost the crown by his too good opinion of himself. He had been placed upon the throne by Agesilaus, and afterwards supported in it by the valour and counsels of Diophantes the Athenian, and Lamius the Lacedæmonian, who, whilst they had the command of his troops, and the direction of the war, had rendered his arms victorious over the Persians in all the enterprises they had formed against him. It is a pity we have no account of them, and that Diodorus is silent upon this head. That prince, vain from so many successes, imagined, in consequence, that he was become sufficiently capable of conducting his own affairs in person, and dismissed those to whom he was indebted for all those advantages. He had time enough to repent his error, and to discover that the power does not confer the merit of a king.

^d Ochus rewarded very liberally the service which Mentor the Rhodian had rendered him in the reduction of Phœnicia, and the conquest of Egypt. Before he left that kingdom, he dismissed the other Greeks laden with his presents. As for Mentor, to whom the whole success of the expedition was principally owing, he not only made him a present of an hundred thousand * talents in money, besides many jewels of great value, but gave him the government of all the coast of Asia, with the direction of the war against some provinces, which had revolted in the beginning of his reign, and declared him generalissimo of all his armies on that side.

Mentor made use of his interest to reconcile the king with his brother Memnon, and Artabasus, who had married their sister. Both of them had been in arms against Ochus. We have already related the revolt of Artabasus, and the victories he obtained over the king's troops. He was, however, over-powered at last, and reduced to take refuge with Philip king of Macedon; and Memnon, who had borne a part in his wars, had also a share in his banishment. After this reconciliation, they rendered Ochus and his successors signal services; especially Memnon, who was one of the most valiant men of his times, and no less excellent in the art of war. Neither did Mentor want his great merits, nor deceive the king in the confidence he had reposed in him. For he had scarce taken possession of his government, when he re-established every where the king's authority, and reduced those who had revolted in his neighbourhood to return to their obedience; some he brought over by his address and stratagems, and others

* An hundred thousand crowns. d A. M. 3655. Ant. J. €. 349.

by force of arms. In a word, he knew so well how to take his advantages, that at length he subjected them all to the yoke, and reinstated the king's affairs in those provinces.

^e In the first year of the 108th Olympiad, died Plato, the famous Athenian philosopher. I shall defer speaking of him at present, that I may not interrupt the chain of the history.

SECTION V.

DEATH OF OCHUS. ARSES SUCCEEDS HIM.

OCHUS ^f, after the conquest of Egypt, and reduction of the revolted provinces of his empire, abandoned himself to pleasure and luxurious ease during the rest of his life, and left the care of affairs entirely to his ministers. The two principal of them were the eunuch Bagoas, and Mentor the Rhodian, who divided all power between them; so that the first had all the provinces of the Upper, and the latter all those of the Lower Asia under him.

^g After having reigned twenty-three years, Ochus died of poison given him by Bagoas. That eunuch, who was by birth an Egyptian, had always retained a love for his country, and a zeal for its religion. When his master conquered it, he flattered himself, that it would have been in his power to have softened the destiny of the one, and protected the other from insult. But he could not restrain the brutality of his prince, who acted a thousand things in regard to both, which the eunuch saw with extreme sorrow, and always violently resented in his heart.

Ochus, not contented with having dismantled the cities, and pillaged the houses and temples, as has been said, had besides taken away all the archives of the kingdom, which were deposited and kept with religious care in the temples of the Egyptians; and in ^h derision of their worship, he had caused the god Apis to be killed, that is, the sacred bull which they adored under that name. What gave occasion for this last action was, ⁱ that Ochus, being as lazy and heavy as he was cruel, the Egyptians, from the first of those qualities, had given him the shocking surname of the stupid animal they found he resembled. Violently enraged at this affront, Ochus said that he would make them sensible that he was not an ass, but a lion; and that the ass, whom they despised so

^e A. M. 3656. Ant. J. C. 343.

^f Diod. l. xvi. p. 490.

^g A. M. 3666.

Ant. J. C. 338.

^h Ælian. l. iv. c. 8.

ⁱ Plut. de Isid. et Osir. p. 363.

much, should eat their ox. Accordingly he ordered Apis to be dragged out of his temple, and sacrificed to an ass. After which he made his cooks dress and serve him up to the officers of his household. This piece of wit incensed Bagoas. As for the archives, he redeemed them afterwards, and sent them back to the place where it was the custom to keep them: but the affront which had been done to his religion, was irreparable; and it is believed, that was the real occasion of his master's death.

^k His revenge did not stop here: he caused another body to be interred instead of the king's; and to avenge his having made the officers of the house eat the god Apis, he made cats eat his dead body, which he gave them cut in small pieces; and for his bones, those he turned into handles for knives and swords, the natural symbols of his cruelty. It is very probable, that some new cause had awakened in the heart of this monster his ancient resentment; without which, it is not to be conceived that he could carry his barbarity so far in regard to his master and benefactor.

After the death of Ochus, Bagoas, in whose hands all power was at that time, placed Arses upon the throne, the youngest of all the late king's sons, and put the rest to death, in order to possess, with better security, and without a rival, the authority he had usurped. He gave Arses only the name of king, whilst he reserved to himself the whole power of the sovereignty. But perceiving that the young prince began to discover his wickedness, and took measures to punish it, he prevented him, by having him assassinated, and destroyed his whole family with him.

Bagoas, after having rendered the throne vacant by the murder of Arses, placed Darius upon it, the third of that name who reigned in Persia. His true name was Codomanus, of whom much will be said hereafter.

We see here in a full light the sad effect of the ill policy of the kings of Persia, who, to ease themselves of the weight of public business, abandoned their whole authority to an eunuch. Bagoas might have more address and understanding than the rest, and thereby merit some distinction. It is the duty of a wise prince to distinguish merit; but it is as consistent for him to continue always the entire master, judge, and arbiter of his affairs. A prince like Ochus, who had made the greatest crimes his steps for ascending the throne, and who had sup-

ported himself in it by the same measures, deserved to have such a minister as Bagoas, who vied with his master in perfidy and cruelty. Ochus experienced their first effects. Had he desired to have nothing to fear from him, he should not have been so imprudent as to render him formidable by giving him an unlimited power.

SECTION VI.

ABRIDGEMENT OF THE LIFE OF DEMOSTHENES.

As Demosthenes will have a great part in the history of Philip and Alexander, which will be the subject of the ensuing volume, it is necessary to give the reader some previous idea of him, and to let him know by what means he cultivated, and to what a degree of perfection he carried, his talent of eloquence; which made him more awful to Philip and Alexander, and enabled him to render greater services to his country, than the highest military virtue could have done.

¹ That orator, born * two years before Philip, and two hundred and fourscore before Cicero, was not the son of a dirty smoky blacksmith, as † Juvenal would seem to intimate, but of a man moderately rich, who gained considerably by forges. Not that the birth of Demosthenes could derogate in the least from his reputation, whose works are an higher title of nobility than the most splendid the world affords. ^m Demosthenes tells us himself, that his father employed thirty slaves at his forges, each of them valued at three minæ, or fifty crowns; two excepted, who were without doubt the most expert in the business, and directed the work; and these were each of them worth an hundred crowns. It is well known that part of the wealth of the ancients consisted in slaves. Those forges, all charges paid, cleared annually thirty minæ, that is, fifteen hundred crowns. To this first manufactory, appropriated to the forging of swords and such kind of arms, he added another, wherein beds and tables of fine wood and ivory were made, which brought him in yearly twelve minæ. In this only twenty slaves were employed, each of them valued at two minæ, or an hundred livres ⁿ.

¹ A. M. 3623. Ant. J. C. 381. Plut. in Demost. p. 847.—849.

^m In Orat. i. cont. Aphod. p. 896. ⁿ About L. 4, 10s.

* The fourth year of the ninety-ninth Olympiad.

† Quem pater ardantis massæ fuligine lippus,

A earbone et forcipibus, gladiosque parente

Incude, et luteo Vulcano ad rhetora misi.—JUV. l. iv. sat. 10.

Demosthenes' father died possessed of an estate of fourteen talents *. He had the misfortune to fall into the hands of sordid and avaricious guardians, who had no views but of making the most out of his fortune. They carried that base spirit so far as to refuse their pupil's masters the reward due to them ; so that he was not educated with the care which so excellent a genius as his required ; besides which, the weakness of his constitution, and the delicacy of his health, with the excessive fondness of a mother that doated on him, prevented his masters from obliging him to apply much to his studies.

The school of Isocrates †, in which so many great men had been educated, was at that time the most famous at Athens. But whether the avarice of Demosthenes' guardians prevented him from improving under a master, whose price was very high ‡, or that the soft and peaceful eloquence of Isocrates was not to his taste, at that time he studied under Isaeus, whose character was strength and vehemence. He found means however to get the principles of rhetoric taught by the former : but ¶ Plato in reality contributed the most in forming Demosthenes ; he read his works with great application, and received lessons from him also ; and it is easy to distinguish in the writings of the disciple, the noble and sublime air of the master.

¶ But he soon quitted the school of Isaeus and Plato for another, under a different kind of direction ; I mean, to frequent the bar ; of which this was the occasion. The orator Callistratus was appointed to plead the cause of the city Oropus, situated between Boeotia and Attica. Chabrias, having disposed the Athenians to march to the aid of the Thebans, who were in great distress, they hastened thither, and delivered them from the enemy. The Thebans, forgetting so great a service, took the town of Oropus, which was upon their frontier, from the Athenians. ¶ Chabrias was suspected, and charged with treason upon this occasion. Callistratus was chosen to plead against him. The reputation of the ora-

q Aul. Gel. l. iii. c. 13.

r Demost. in Mid. p. 613.

* Fourteen hundred crowns.

† Isocrates—cujus e ludo, tanquam ex equo Trojano, innumeri principes exierunt.—De Orat. n. 94.

‡ About L. 22, 10s.

¶ Lectitavisse Platonem studiose audivisse etiam, Demosthenes dicitur ; idque apparent ex genere et granditate sermonis.—Cic. in Brut. n. 121.

Illud jusjurandum, per caeos in Marathonē ac Salamine propugnatores recip. satis manifesto docet, praeceptorem ejus Platonem fuisse.—Quint. l. xii. c. 10.

tor and the importance of the cause, excited curiosity, and made a great noise in the city. Demosthenes, who was then sixteen years of age, earnestly entreated his masters to carry him with them to the bar, that he might be present at so famous a trial. The orator was heard with great attention; and having had extraordinary success, was attended home by a crowd of illustrious citizens, who seemed to vie with each other in praising and admiring him. The young man was extremely affected with the honours which he saw paid to the orator, and still more with the supreme power of eloquence on the minds of men, over which it exercises a kind of absolute power. He was himself sensible of its effects; and not being able to resist its charms, he gave himself wholly up to it; from henceforth renounced all other studies and pleasures; and during the continuance of Callistratus at Athens, he never quitted him, but made all the improvement he could from his precepts.

The first essay of his eloquence was against his guardians, whom he obliged to refund a part of his fortune. Encouraged by this success, he ventured to speak before the people, but with very ill success. He had a weak voice, a thick way of speaking, and a very short breath; notwithstanding which, his periods were so long, that he was often obliged to stop in the midst of them for respiration. This occasioned his being hissed by the whole audience; from whence he retired entirely discouraged, and determined to renounce for ever a function of which he believed himself incapable. One of his auditors, who had observed an excellent fund of genius in him, and a kind of eloquence which caine very near that of Pericles, gave him new spirit, from the grateful idea of so glorious a resemblance, and the good advice which he added to it.

He ventured therefore to appear a second time before the people, and was no better received than before: As he withdrew, hanging down his head, and in the utmost confusion, Satyrus, one of the most excellent actors of those times, who was his friend, met him, and having learned from himself the cause of his being so much dejected, he assured him that the evil was not without remedy, and that the case was not so desperate as he imagined. He desired him only to repeat some of Sophocles' or Euripides' verses to him, which he accordingly did. Satyrus spoke them after him, and gave them such graces by the tone, gesture, and spirit with which

he pronounced them, that Demosthenes himself found them quite different from what they were in his own manner of speaking. He perceived plainly what he wanted, and applied himself to the acquiring of it.

His efforts to correct his natural defect of utterance, and to perfect himself in pronunciation, of which his friend had made him understand the value, seem almost incredible, and prove, that an industrious perseverance can surmount all things. ^s He stammered to such a degree, that he could not pronounce some letters, amongst others, that with which the name of the art ^t he studied begins; and he was so short-breathed, that he could not utter a whole period without stopping. He overcame these obstacles at length, by putting small pebbles into his mouth, and pronouncing several verses in that manner without interruption, and that walking, and going up steep and difficult places, so that at last no letter made him hesitate, and his breath held out through the longest period. ^u He went also to the sea-side, and whilst the waves were in the most violent agitation, he pronounced harangues, to accustom himself, by the confused noise of the waters, to the roar of the people, and the tumultuous cries of the public assemblies.

^x Demosthenes took no less care of his action than of his voice. He had a large looking-glass in his house, which served to teach him gesture, and at which he used to declaim, before he spoke in public. To correct a fault which he had contracted by an ill habit of continually shrugging his shoulders, he practised standing upright in a kind of very narrow pulpit or rostrum, over which hung a halbert in such a manner, that if in the heat of action that motion escaped him, the point of the weapon might serve at the same time to admonish and correct him.

His pains were well bestowed; for it was by this means that he carried the art of declaiming to the highest degree of perfection of which it was capable; whence it is plain he well knew its value and importance: When he was asked three several times, which quality he thought most necessary in an orator, he gave no other answer than—pronunciation; insinuating, by making that reply ^{*} three times successively,

^s Cic. l. i. de Orat. n. 260, 261.

^u Quintil. l. x. c. 3.

^t Rhetoric.

^x Ibid. l. xi c. 3.

* *Actio in dicendo una dominatur. Sine hac summus orator esse in numero nullo potest, mediocris hac instructus summos saepe superare. Huic primas dedisse Demosthenes dicitur, cum rogaretur quid in dicendo esset primum; huic secundas, huic tertias.*—Cic. de Orat. l. iii. n. 213.

that qualification to be the only one of which the want could be least concealed, and which was the most capable of concealing other defects; and that pronunciation alone could give considerable weight, even to an indifferent orator, when without it the most excellent could not expect the least success. He must have had a very high opinion of it, as to attain a perfection in it, and for the instructions of Neoptolemus, the most excellent comedian then in being, he devoted so considerable a sum as ten thousand drachms *, though he was not very rich.

His application to study was no less surprising. To be the more removed from noise, and less subject to distraction, he caused a small chamber to be made for him under ground, in which he sometimes shut himself up for whole months, shaving on purpose half his head and face, that he might not be in a condition to go abroad. It was there, by the light of a small lamp, he composed the admirable orations, which were said by those who envied him, to smell of the oil; to imply that they were too elaborate. "It is plain," replied he, "yours did not cost you so much trouble." † He rose very early in the morning, and used to say, that he was sorry when any workman was at his business before him. ‡ We may judge of his extraordinary efforts to acquire an excellency of every kind, from the pains he took in copying Thucydides' history eight times with his own hand, in order to render the style of that great man familiar to him.

Demosthenes, after having exercised his talent of eloquence in several private causes, made his appearance in full light, and mounted the tribunal of harangues, to treat there upon public affairs; with what success, we shall see hereafter. Cicero ‡ tells us, that his success was so great, that all Greece came in crowds to Athens to hear Demosthenes speak; and he adds, that merit, so great as his, could not but have had that effect. I do not examine in this place, into the character of his eloquence, I have enlarged sufficiently upon that elsewhere ^a; I only consider its wonderful effects.

If we believe Philip on this head, of which he is certain-

^z Lucian. *Advers. Idiot.* p. 639.

^a *Art of Studying the Belles Lettres*, Vol. II.

* About 240l. Sterling.

† *Cui non sunt audite Demosthenis vigilæ? qui dolere se aiebat, si quando opificum antelucana victis esset industria.*—*Tusc. Quæst. I. iv. n. 44.*

‡ *Me illud quidem intelligent, non modo ita memorie proditum esse, sed ita necesse fuisse, cum Demosthenes dicturus esset, ut concursus, audiendi causa, ex tota Græcia fierent.*—*In Brut. n. 239.*

ly an evidence of unquestionable authority ^b, the eloquence of Demosthenes alone did him more hurt than all the armies and fleets of the Athenians. His harangues, he said, were like machines of war, and batteries raised at a distance against him, by which he overthrew all his projects, and ruined his enterprises, without its being possible to prevent their effect. "For I myself," says Philip of him, "had I been present, and heard that vehement orator declaim, should have concluded the first, that it was indispensably necessary to declare war against me." No city seemed impregnable to that prince, provided he could introduce a mule laden with gold into it; but he confessed, that, to his sorrow, Demosthenes was invincible in that respect, and that he always found him inaccessible to his presents. After the battle of Chæronæa, Philip, though victor, was struck with extreme dread at the prospect of the great danger to which that orator, by the powerful league he had been the sole cause of forming against him, exposed himself and his kingdom.

^c Antipater spoke to the same effect of him. "I value not," said he, "the Piræus, the galleys and armies of the Athenians; for what have we to fear from a people continually employed in games, feasts, and Bacchanals? Demosthenes alone gives me pain. Without him the Athenians differ in nothing from the meanest people of Greece. He alone excites and animates them. It is he that rouses them from their lethargy and stupefaction, and puts their arms and oars into their hands almost against their will: incessantly representing to them the famous battles of Marathon and Salamin, he transforms them into new men by the ardour of his discourses, and inspires them with incredible valour and fortitude. Nothing escapes his penetrating eyes, nor his consummate prudence. He foresees all our designs; he countermimes all our projects; and disconcerts us in every thing: and did Athens entirely confide in him, and wholly follow his advice, we were undone without remedy. Nothing can tempt him, nor diminish his love for his country. All the gold of Philip finds no more access to him, than that of Persia did formerly to Aristides."

He was reduced by necessity to give this glorious testimony for himself in his just defence against Æschines, his accuser

^b Lucian. in Encom. Demost. p. 940, 941.

^c Lucian. in Encom. Demost. p. 934—936.

and declared enemy. “ Whilst all the orators have suffered “ themselves to be corrupted by the presents of Philip and “ Alexander, it is well known,” says he, “ that neither de- “ licate conjectures, engaging expressions, magnificent pro- “ mises, hope, fear, favour, any thing in the world, have ever “ been able to induce me to give up the least right or interest “ of my country.” He adds, that instead of acting like those mercenary persons, who, in all they proposed, declared for such as paid them best, like scales, that always incline to the side from whence they receive most; he, in all the counsels he had given, had solely in view the interest and glory of his country, and that he had always continued inflexible and incorruptible to the Macedonian gold. The sequel will shew how well he supported that character to the end.

Such was the orator who is about to ascend the tribunal of harangues, or rather the statesman, to enter upon the administration of the public affairs, and to be the principle and soul of all the great enterprises of Athens against Philip of Macedon.

SECTION VII.

DIGRESSION ON THE MANNER OF FITTING OUT FLEETS BY THE ATHENIANS.

THE subject of this digression ought properly to have had place in the fourth section of the tenth book, where I have treated of the government and maritime affairs of the Athenians. But at that time, I had not the orations of Demosthenes which speak of them in my thoughts. It is a deviation from the chain of the history, which the reader may easily turn over if he thinks fit.

The word *Trierarchs* * signifies no more in itself than commanders of galleys. But those cities were also called *Trierarchs*, who were appointed to fit out the galleys in time of war, and to furnish them with all things necessary, or at least with part of them.

They were chosen out of the richest of the people, and there was no fixed number of them. Sometimes two, sometimes three, and even ten *trierarchs*, were appointed to equip one vessel.

* *Τριηράρχος.*

^d At length the number of trierarchs was established at twelve hundred, in this manner. Athens was divided into ten tribes. An hundred and twenty of the richest citizens of each tribe were nominated to furnish the expences of these armaments ; and thus each tribe furnishing six score, the number of the trierarchs amounted to twelve hundred.

These twelve hundred men were again divided into two parts, of six hundred each ; and those six hundred subdivided into two more, each of three hundred. The first three hundred were chosen from among such as were richest. Upon pressing occasions they advanced the necessary expences, and were reimbursed by the other three hundred, who paid their proportion, as the state of their affairs would admit.

A law was afterwards made, whereby those twelve hundred were divided into different companies, each consisting of sixteen men, who joined in the equipment of a galley. That law was very heavy upon the poorer citizens, and equally unjust at bottom ; as it decreed that this number of sixteen should be chosen by their age, and not their estates. It ordained that all citizens, from twenty-five to forty, should be included in one of these companies, and contribute one sixteenth ; so that by this law the poorer citizens were to contribute as much as the most opulent, and often found it impossible to supply an expence so much above their power. From whence it happened, that the fleet was either not armed in time, or very ill fitted out ; by which means Athens lost the most favourable opportunities for action.

^f Demosthenes, always intent upon the public good, to remedy those inconveniences, proposed the abrogation of this law by another. By the latter, the trierarchs were to be chosen, not by the number of their years, but by the value of their fortunes. Each citizen, whose estate amounted to ten talents ^{*}, was obliged to fit out one galley ; and if to twenty talents, two ; and so in proportion. Such as were not worth ten talents, were to join with as many others as were necessary to complete that sum, and to fit out a galley.

Nothing could be wiser than this law of Demosthenes, which reformed all the abuses of the other. By these means the fleet was fitted out in time, and provided with all things necessary : the poor were considerably relieved, and none but the rich displeased with it : for instead of contributing only

^d Ulpian in Olynth. ii. p. 32.

^f Demost. in Orat. de Classib.

^{*} Ten thousand crowns.

a sixteenth, as by the first law, they were sometimes obliged by the second to equip a galley, and sometimes two or more, according to the amount of their estates.

The rich were in consequence very much offended at Demosthenes upon this regulation; and it was, without doubt, an instance of no small courage in him to disregard their complaints, and to hazard the making himself as many enemies, as there were powerful citizens in Athens. Let us hear himself. “^g Seeing,” says he, speaking to the Athenians, “your maritime affairs are in the greatest decline, the rich possessed of an immunity purchased at a very low rate, the citizens of middle or small fortunes eat up with taxes, and the republic itself, in consequence of these inconveniences, never attempting any thing till too late for its service; I had the courage to establish a law, whereby the rich are restrained to their duty, the poor relieved from oppression, and what was of the highest importance, the republic enabled to make the necessary preparations for war in due time.” He adds, that there was nothing the rich would not have given him to forbear the proposing of this law, or at least to have suspended its execution: but he did not suffer himself to be swayed either by their threats or promises, and continued firm to the public good.

Not having been able to make him change his resolution, they contrived a stratagem to render it ineffectual; for it was without doubt at their instigation, that a certain person, named Patroclus, cited Demosthenes before the judges, and prosecuted him juridically as an infringer of the laws of his country. The accuser having only the fifth part of the voices on his side, was according to custom fined five hundred drachms ^{*}, and Demosthenes acquitted of the charge, who relates this circumstance himself.

It is doubtful, whether at Rome, especially in the latter times, the affair would have taken this turn; for we see, that whatever attempts were made by the tribunes of the people, and to whatever extremity the quarrel arose, it never was possible to induce the rich, who were far more powerful and enterprising than those of Athens, to renounce the possession of the lands, which they had usurped in manifest contravention of the institutions of the state. The law of Demosthenes was approved and confirmed by the senate and people.

^g Demost. pro Ctesip. p. 419.

^{*} About L. 12, 5s.

We find, from what has been said, that the trierarchs fitted out the galleys and their equipage at their own expence. The state paid the mariners and soldiers, generally at the rate of three oboli, or five pence a-day, as has been observed elsewhere. The officers had greater pay.

The trierarchs commanded the vessel, and gave all orders on board. When there were two of them to a ship, each commanded six months.

When they quitted their office, they were obliged to give an account of their administration, and delivered a state of the vessel's equipage to their successor, or the republic. The successor was obliged to go immediately and fill up the vacant place; and if he failed to be at his post by a time assigned him, he was fined for his neglect.

As the charge of trierarch was very expensive, those who were nominated to it were admitted to point out some other person richer than themselves, and to demand that they should be put into their place; provided they were ready to change estates with such person, and to act in the function of trierarch after such exchange. This law was instituted by Solon, and was called the Law of Exchanges.

Besides the equipment of galleys, which must have amounted to very great sums, the rich had another charge to support in the time of war, that was, the extraordinary taxes and imposts laid on their estates; upon which, sometimes the hundredth, sometimes a fiftieth, and even a twelfth, were levied, according to the different occasions of the state.

^h Nobody at Athens, upon any pretence whatsoever, could be exempted from these two charges, except the Novemviri, or nine Archontes, who were not obliged to fit out galleys. So that we see, without ships or money, the republic was not in a condition, either to support wars, or defend itself.

There were other immunities, and exemptions, which were granted to such as had rendered great services to the republic, and sometimes even to all their descendants; as maintaining public places of exercise, with all things necessary for such as frequented them; instituting a public feast for one of the ten tribes; and defraying the expences of games and shows; all which amounted to great sums.

These immunities, as has already been said, were marks of honour and rewards of services rendered the state; as well as statues which were erected to great men, the freedom of the

^h Demost. advers. Lept. p. 545.

city, and the privilege of being maintained in the Prytenæum at the public expence. The view of Athens in these honourable distinctions was to express their high sense of gratitude, and to kindle at the same time in the hearts of their citizens a noble thirst of glory, and an ardent love for their country.

Besides the statues erected to Harmodius and Aristogiton, the deliverers of Athens, their descendants were for ever exempted from all public employments, and enjoyed that honourable privilege many ages after.

ⁱ As Aristides died without any estate, and left his son Ly-simachus no other patrimony but his glory and poverty, the republic gave him an hundred acres of wood, and as much arable land in Eubœa, besides an hundred minæ * at one payment, and four drachms, or forty pence a-day.

^k Athens, in these services which were done it, regarded more the good will than the action itself. A certain person of Cyrene, named Epicerdus, being at Syracuse when the Athenians were defeated, touched with compassion for the unfortunate prisoners dispersed in Sicily, whom he saw ready to expire for want of food, distributed an hundred minæ amongst them, that is, about two hundred and forty pounds. Athens adopted him into the number of its citizens, and granted him all the immunities before mentioned. Some time after, in the war against the thirty tyrants, the same Epicerdus gave the city a talent †. These were but small matters on either occasion with regard to the grandeur and power of Athens; but they were infinitely affected with the good heart of a stranger, who without any view of interest, in a time of public calamity, exhausted himself in some measure for the relief of those with whom he had no affinity, and from whom he had nothing to expect.

^l The same freedom of the city of Athens, granted an exemption from customs to Leucon, who reigned in the Bosphorus, and his children, because they yearly imported from the lands of that prince a considerable quantity of corn, of which they were in extreme want, subsisting almost entirely upon what came from other parts. Leucon, in his turn, not to be outdone in generosity, exempted the Athenian merchants from

ⁱ Demost. in Orat. ad Lep. p. 558.
Orat. ad Lept. p. 545, 546.

^k Idem, p. 757.

^l Demost.

* L. 22, 10s. Sterling.
† A thousand crowns.

the duty of a thirtieth upon all grain exported from his dominions, and granted them the privilege of supplying themselves with corn in his country in preference to all other people. That exemption amounted to a considerable sum ; for they brought only from thence two millions of quarters of corn, of which the thirtieth part amounted to almost seventy thousand.

The children of Conon and Chabrias were also granted an immunity from public offices. The names only of those illustrious generals sufficiently justify that liberality of the Athenian people. A person, however, called Leptinus, out of a mistaken zeal for the public good, proposed the abrogation by a new law of all the grants of that kind, which had been made from immemorial time, except those which regarded the posterity of Harmodius and Aristogiton ; and to enact, that for the future the people should not be capable of granting such privileges.

Demosthenes strongly opposed this law, though with great complacency to the person who proposed it ; praising his good intentions, and not speaking of him but with esteem ; a much more efficacious manner of refuting, than those violent invectives, and that eager and passionate style, which serve only to alienate the people, and to render an orator suspected, who decries his cause himself, and shews its weak side, by substituting injurious terms for reasons, which are alone capable of convincing.

After having shewn, that so odious a reduction would prove of little or no advantage to the republic, from the inconsiderable number of the exempted persons, he goes on to explain its conveniences, and to set them in a full light.

“ It is first,” says he, “ doing injury to the memory of those great men, whose merit the state intended to acknowledge, and reward by such immunities ; it is in some manner calling in question the services they have done their country ; it is throwing a suspicion upon their great actions, injurious to, if not destructive of, their glory. And were they now alive, and present in this assembly, which of us all would presume to offer them such an affront ? Should not the respect we owe their memories make us consider them as always alive and present ?

“ But if we are little affected with what concerns them, can we be insensible to our own interest ? Besides that cancelling so ancient a law, is to condemn the conduct of our

“ ancestors, what shame shall we bring upon ourselves, and
“ what an injury shall we do our reputation? The glory of
“ Athens, and of every well governed state, is to value itself
“ upon its gratitude, to keep its word religiously, and to be
“ true to all its engagements. A private person who fails in
“ these respects, is hated and abhorred: and who is not afraid
“ of being reproached with ingratitude? And shall the com-
“ monwealth, in cancelling a law that has received the sanc-
“ tion of public authority, and been in a manner consecrated
“ by the usage of many ages, be guilty of so notorious a pre-
“ varication? We prohibit lying in the very markets, under
“ heavy penalties, and require truth and faith to be observed
“ in them; and shall we renounce them ourselves, by the re-
“ vocation of grants, passed in all their forms, and upon which
“ every private man has a right to insist?

“ To act in such a manner, would be to extinguish in the
“ hearts of our citizens all emulation for glory, all desire to
“ distinguish themselves by great exploits, all zeal for the
“ honour and welfare of their country; which are the great
“ sources and principles of almost all the actions of life.
“ And it is to no purpose to object the example of Sparta and
“ Thebes, which grant no such exemptions. Do we repent
“ our not resembling them in many things? and is there any
“ wisdom in proposing their defects, and not their virtues,
“ for our imitation?”

Demosthenes concludes with demanding the law of exemptions to be retained in all its extent; with this exception, that all persons should be deprived of the benefits of it, but those who had a just title to them; and that a strict inquiry should be made for that purpose.

It is plain that I have only made a very slight extract in this place of an exceeding long discourse, and that I designed to express only the spirit and sense, without confining myself to the method and expressions of it.

There was a meanness of spirit in Leptinus' desiring to obtain a trivial advantage for the republic, by retrenching the moderate expences that were an honour to it, and no charge to himself; whilst there were other abuses of far greater importance to reform.

Such marks of public gratitude perpetuated in a family, perpetuate also in a state an ardent zeal for its happiness, and a warm desire to distinguish that passion by glorious actions.

It is not without pain I find amongst ourselves, that part of the privileges granted to the family of the Maid of Orleans have been retrenched^m. Charles VII. had ennobled her, her father, three brothers, and all their descendants, even by the female line. In 1614, at the request of the attorney-general, the article of nobility by the women was retrenched.

^m Meserai.

BOOK FOURTEENTH.

THE
HISTORY
OF
PHILIP.

PLAN.

THE reigns of Philip king of Macedon, and Alexander his son, contain the space of thirty-six years, the reign of the former including twenty-four, and that of the latter twelve. They extend from the first year of the 105th Olympiad, or the year of the world 3644, to the first year of the 114th Olympiad, which answers to the year of the world 3680.

The kings who reigned during that time in Persia, were Artaxerxes Ochus, Arses, and Darius Codomanus. The Persian empire expired with the last.

We know not any thing concerning the transactions of the Jews during these thirty-six years, except what we are told by Josephus, book xi. chap. 7. & 8. of his *Antiquities of the Jews*, under the high-priests John, or Johanna, and Jaddus. These will be mentioned in the course of this history, with which that of the Jews is intermixed.

The above mentioned space of thirty-six years, with respect to the Roman history, extends from the 293d to the 429th year from the foundation of Rome. The great men who made the most conspicuous figure among the Romans during that space of time, were Appius Claudius the dictator, T. Quintius Capitolinus, Tit. Manlius Torquatus, L. Papirius Cursor, M. Valerius Corvinus, Q. Fabius Maximus, and the two Decii, who devoted themselves to death for the sake of their country.

SECTION I.

THE BIRTH AND INFANCY OF PHILIP. HIS FIRST CONQUESTS. THE BIRTH OF ALEXANDER.

MACEDON was an hereditary kingdom, situated in ancient Thrace, and bounded on the south by the mountains of Thessaly; on the east by Bœotia and Pieria, on the west by the Lyncestes, and on the north by Mygdonia and Pelagonia. But after Philip had conquered part of Thrace and Illyrium,

this kingdom extended from the Adriatic sea to the river Strymon. Edessa was at first the capital of it, but afterwards resigned that honour to Pella, famous for giving birth to Philip and Alexander.

Philip, whose history we are going to write, was the son of Amyntas II. who is reckoned the sixteenth king of Macedon from Caranus, who had founded that kingdom about four hundred and thirty years before, that is, anno mundi 3212, and before Christ 794. The history of all these monarchs is sufficiently obscure, and includes little more than several wars with the Illyrians, the Thracians, and other neighbouring people.

The kings of Macedon pretended to descend from Hercules by Caranus, and consequently to have been Greeks originally. Notwithstanding this, Demosthenes often styles them Barbarians, especially in his invectives against Philip. The Greeks, indeed, gave this name to all other nations, without excepting the Macedonians. ^a Alexander king of Macedon, in the reign of Xerxes, was excluded, upon pretence of his being a Barbarian, from the Olympic games; and was not admitted to share in them, till after having proved his being originally descended from Argos. ^b The above mentioned Alexander, when he went over from the Persian camp to that of the Greeks, in order to acquaint the latter that Mardonius was determined to charge them by surprise at day-break, justified his perfidy by his ancient descent, which he declared to be from the Greeks.

The ancient kings of Macedon did not think it beneath themselves to live at different times under the protection of the Athenians, Thebans, and Spartans, changing their alliances as it suited their interest. Of this we have several instances in Thucydides. One of them, named Perdiccas, with whom the Athenians were dissatisfied, became their tributary; which continued from their settling a colony in Amphipolis, under Agnon the son of Nicias, about forty-eight years before the Peloponnesian war, till Barsidas, the Lacedæmonian general, about the fifth or sixth year of that war, raised that whole province against them, and drove them from the frontiers of Macedon.

We shall soon see this Macedon, which formerly had paid tribute to Athens, become, under Philip, the arbiter of Greece, and triumph, under Alexander, over all the forces of Asia.

^a Herod. l. v. c. 22.

^b Idem, l. ix. c. 44.

Amyntas ^b, father of Philip, began to reign the third year of the 96th Olympiad. Having, the very year after, been warmly attacked by the Illyrians, and dispossessed of a great part of his kingdom, which he thought it scarce possible for him ever to recover again, he addressed himself to the Olynthians; and in order to engage them the more firmly in his interest, he had given up to them a considerable tract of land in the neighbourhood of their city. According to some authors, Argæus, who was of the blood royal, being supported by the Athenians, and taking advantage of the trouble which broke out in Macedonia, reigned there two years ^c. Amyntas was restored to the throne by the Thessalians; upon which he was desirous of resuming the possession of the lands, which nothing but the ill situation of his affairs had obliged him to resign to the Olynthians. This occasioned a war, but Amyntas, not being strong enough to make head singly against so powerful a people, the Greeks, and the Athenians in particular, sent him succours, and enabled him to weaken the power of the Olynthians, who threatened him with a total and impending ruin. ^d It was then that Amyntas, in an assembly of the Greeks, to which he had sent a deputation, engaged to unite with them, to enable the Athenians to possess themselves of Amphipolis, declaring that this city belonged to the last mentioned people. This strong alliance was continued after his death with Queen Eurydice, his widow, as we shall soon see.

^e Philip, one of the sons of Amyntas, was born the same year this monarch declared war against the Olynthians. This Philip was father of Alexander the Great, for we cannot distinguish him better, than by calling him the father of such a son, as ^{*} Cicero observes of the father of Cato of Utica.

^f Amyntas died, after having reigned twenty-four years. He left three legitimate children, whom Eurydice had brought him, *viz.* Alexander, Perdiccas, and Philip, and a natural son named Ptolemy.

Alexander succeeded his father as eldest son. In the very

^b A. M. 3606. Ant. J. C. 398. Diod. I. xiv. p. 307. 341.

^c A. M. 3621. Ant. J. C. 383. ^d Æschin. de Fals. Legat. p. 400.

^e A. M. 3621. Ant. J. C. 383. ^f A. M. 3629. Ant. J. C. 373. Diod. p. 373. Justin. I. vii. c. 4.

^{*} M. Cato sententiam dixit hujus nostri Catonis pater. Ut enim cæteri ex patribus, sic hic, qui lumen illud progeniuit, ex filio est nominandus.—De Offic. I. iii. n. 66.

beginning of his reign, he was engaged in a sharp war against the Illyrians, neighbours to, and perpetual enemies of, Macedonia. Concluding afterwards a peace with them, he put Philip, his younger brother, an infant, into their hands by way of hostage, who was soon sent back to him. Alexander reigned but one year.

^f The crown now belonged by right to Perdiccas, his brother, who was become eldest by his death; but Pausanias, a prince of the blood royal, who had been exiled, disputed it with him, and was supported by a great number of Macedonians. He began by seizing some fortresses. Happily for the new king, Iphicrates was then in that country, whither the Athenians had sent him with a small fleet; not to besiege Amphipolis as yet, but only to take a view of the place, and make the necessary preparations for besieging it. Eurydice, hearing of his arrival, desired to see him, intending to request his assistance against Pausanias. When he was come into the palace, and had seated himself, the afflicted queen, the better to excite his compassion, takes her two children, Perdiccas and Philip ^{*}, and sets the former in the arms, and the latter on the knees, of Iphicrates; she then spoke thus to him: “Remember, Iphicrates, that Amyntas, the father of these unhappy orphans, had always a love for your country, and adopted you for his son. This double tie lays you under a double obligation. The amity which that king entertained for Athens, requires that you should acknowledge us publicly for your friends; and the tenderness which that father had for your person, claims from you the heart of a brother to these children.” Iphicrates, moved with this sight and discourse, expelled the usurper, and restored the lawful sovereign.

^g Perdiccas [†] did not continue long in tranquillity. A new enemy, more formidable than the first, soon invaded his repose; this was Ptolemy his brother, natural son of Amyntas, as was before observed. He might possibly be the eldest son, and claim the crown as such. The two brothers referred the decision of their claim to Pelopidas, general of the Thebans,

^f A. M. 3630. Ant. J. C. 374. *Æsch. de Fals. Legat.* p. 399. 400.

^g Plutarch in *Pelop.* p. 292.

^{*} Philip was then not less than nine years old.

[†] Plutarch supposes, that it was with Alexander that Ptolemy disputed the empire, which cannot be made to agree with the relation of *Æschines*, who, being his contemporary, is more worthy of credit. I therefore thought proper to substitute Perdiccas instead of Alexander.

more revered for his probity than his valour. Pelopidas determined in favour of Perdiccas; and having judged it necessary to take pledges on both sides, in order to oblige the two competitors to observe the articles of the treaty accepted by them; among other hostages, he carried Philip with him to * Thebes, where he resided several years. He was then ten years of age. Eurydice, at her leaving this much loved son, earnestly besought Pelopidas to procure him an education worthy of his birth, and of the city to which he was going an hostage. Pelopidas placed him with Epaminondas, who had a celebrated Pythagorean philosopher in his house for the education of his son. Philip improved greatly by the instructions of his preceptor, and much more by those of Epaminondas, under whom he undoubtedly made some campaigns, though no mention is made of this. He could not possibly have had a more excellent master, whether for war or the conduct of life; for this illustrious Theban was at the same time a great philosopher, that is to say, a wise and virtuous man, and a great commander, as well as a great statesman. Philip was very proud of being his pupil, and proposed him as a model to himself; most happy, could he have copied him perfectly! Perhaps he borrowed from Epaminondas his activity in war, and his promptitude in improving occasions, which however formed but a very inconsiderable part of the merit of this illustrious personage: but with regard to his temperance, his justice, his disinterestedness, his sincerity, his magnanimity, his clemency, which rendered him truly great, these were virtues which Philip had not received from nature, and did not acquire by imitation.

The Thebans did not know that they were then forming and educating the most dangerous enemy of Greece. ^h After Philip had spent nine or ten years in their city, the news of a revolution in Macedon made him resolve to leave Thebes clandestinely. Accordingly he steals away, makes the utmost expedition, and finds the Macedonians greatly surprised at having lost their king Perdiccas, who had been killed in a great battle by the Illyrians, but much more so, to find they had as many enemies as neighbours. The Illyrians were on the point of returning into the kingdom with a greater force;

^h Diod. l. xvi. p. 407. Justin. l. vii. c. 5.

* Thebis triennio obses habitus, prima pueritiae rudimenta in urbe severitatis antiquae, et in domo Epaminondae summi et philosophi et imperatoris, depositus.—Justin: l. vii. c. 5. Philip lived in Thebes not only three, but nine or ten years.

the Peonians infested it with perpetual incursions; the Thracians were determined to place Pausanias on the throne, who had not abandoned his pretensions; and the Athenians were bringing Argæus, whom Mantias their general was ordered to support with a strong fleet and a considerable body of troops. Macedonia at the time wanted a prince of years to govern, and had only a child, Amyntas, the son of Perdiccas, and lawful heir of the crown. Philip governed the kingdom for some time, by the title of Guardian to the Prince; but the subjects, justly alarmed, deposed the nephew in favour of the uncle; and instead of the heir, whom nature had given them, set him upon the throne whom the present conjuncture of affairs required, persuaded that the laws of necessity are superior to all others.ⁱ Accordingly Philip, at twenty-four years of age, ascended the throne the first year of the 105th Olympiad.

The new king, with great coolness and presence of mind, used all his endeavours to answer the expectations of the people: accordingly he provides for and remedies every thing, revives the desponding courage of the Macedonians, and reinstates and disciplines the army.^k He was inflexibly rigid in the last point, well knowing that the success of all his enterprises depended on it. A soldier, who was thirsty, went out of the ranks to drink, which Philip punished with great severity. Another soldier, who ought to have stood to his arms, laid them down: him he immediately ordered to be put to death.

It was at this time he established the Macedonian phalanx, which afterwards became so famous, and was the choicest and best disciplined body of an army the world had ever seen, and might dispute precedence in those respects with the Greeks of Marathon and Salamin. He drew up the plan, or at least improved it from the idea suggested by Homer^l. That poet describes the union of the Grecian commanders under the image of a battalion, the soldiers of which, by the assemblage or conjunction of their shields, form a body impenetrable to the enemy's darts. I rather believe, that Philip formed the idea of the phalanx from the lessons of Epaminondas, and the sacred battalion of the Thebans. He treated those chosen foot soldiers with peculiar distinction, honoured them with the title of his Comrades or Companions*, and by

ⁱ A. M. 3644. Ant. J. C. 360. Diod. I. xvi. p. 404.—413.

^k Aelian. I. xiv. c. 49.

* Πεζεταυρος signifies verbatim, a foot soldier, comrade, companion.

such marks of honour and confidence, induced them to bear, without any murmuring, the hardest fatigues, and to confront the greatest dangers with intrepidity. Such familiarities as these cost a monarch little, and are of no common advantage to him. I shall insert, at the end of this section, a more particular description of the phalanx, and the use made of it in battles. I shall borrow from Polybius this description, the length of which would too much interrupt the series of our history; yet being placed separately, may probably please, especially by the judicious reflections of a man so well skilled in the art of war as that historian.

One of the first things Philip took care of, was the negotiating a captious peace with the Athenians, whose power he dreaded, and whom he was not willing to make his enemies, in the beginning of a reign hitherto but ill established. He therefore sends ambassadors to Athens, spares neither promises nor protestations of amity, and at last was so happy as to conclude a treaty, of which he knew how to make all the advantages he had proposed to himself.

Immediately after this, he does not seem so much to act like a monarch of but twenty-four years of age, as like a politician profoundly versed in the art of dissimulation; and who, without the assistance of experience, was already sensible, that to know when to lose at a proper season is to gain. ^m He had seized upon Amphipolis, a city situated on the frontiers of his kingdom, which consequently stood very convenient for him. He could not keep it, as that would have weakened his army too much, not to mention that the Athenians, whose friendship it was his interest to preserve, would have been exasperated at his holding a place which they claimed as their colony. On the other side, he was determined not to give up to his enemies one of the keys to his dominions. He therefore took the resolution to declare that place free, by permitting the inhabitants to govern themselves as a republic, and in this manner to set them at variance with their ancient masters. At the same time he disarmed the Peonians by dint of promises and presents; resolving to attack them, after he had disunited his enemies, and weakened them by that disunion.

This address and subtilty established him more firmly on the throne, and he soon found himself without competitors. Having barred the entrance of his kingdom to Pausanias, he marches against Argæus, comes up with him in the road from

^m Polyæn. Stratag. l. iv. c. 17.

Ægæ to Methone, defeats him, kills a great number of his soldiers, and takes a multitude of prisoners; attacks the Peonians, and subjects them to his power: he afterwards turns his arms against the Illyrians, cuts them to pieces, and obliges them to restore to him all the places possessed by them in Macedonia.

^m Much about this time the Athenians acted with the greatest generosity in regard to the inhabitants of Eubœa. That island, which is separated from Bœotia by the Eurippus, was so called from its large and beautiful pasture lands, and is now called Negropont. ⁿ It had been subject to the Athenians, who had settled colonies in Eretria and Chalcis, the two principal cities of it. Thucydides relates, that in the Peloponnesian war, the revolt of the Eubœans dismayed the Athenians very much, because they drew greater revenues from thence than from Attica. From that time Eubœa became a prey to factions; and at the same time of which we are now speaking, one of these factions implored the assistance of Thebes, and the other of Athens. At first the Thebans met with no obstacle, and easily made the faction they espoused triumphant. However, at the arrival of the Athenians, matters took a different turn. Though they were very much offended at the Eubœans, who had behaved very injuriously towards them, nevertheless, sensibly affected with the great danger to which they were exposed, and forgetting their private resentments, they immediately gave them such powerful succour both by sea and land, that in a few days they forced the Thebans to retire. And now, being absolute masters of the island, they restore the inhabitants their cities and liberty, persuaded, says Æschines in relating this circumstance, that justice requires we should obliterate the remembrance of past injuries, when the party offending reposes their trust in the offended. The Athenians, after having restored Eubœa to its former tranquillity, retired, without desiring any other benefit for all their services, than the glory of having appeased the troubles of that island.

But they did not always behave in this manner with regard to other states; and it was this gave rise^o to “the war of the allies,” of which I have spoken elsewhere.

Hitherto Philip, that is, during the first years of his reign,

^m A. M. 3646. Ant. J. C. 358. ⁿ Vell. Patrc. 1. i. c. 4. Thucyd. l. viii. p. 613. Demost. pro Ctesiph. p. 489. Æschin. contra Ctesiph. p. 441. ^o A. M. 3646.

had employed his endeavours to triumph over his competitors for the throne ; to pacify domestic divisions, to repel the attacks of his foreign enemies, and to disable them, by his frequent victories, from troubling him in the possession of his kingdom.

But he is now going to appear in another character. Sparta and Athens, after having long disputed the empire of Greece, had weakened themselves by their reciprocal divisions. This circumstance had given Thebes an opportunity of regaining its former grandeur ; but Thebes, having weakened itself by the wars in which it had been engaged against Sparta and Athens, gave Philip an occasion of aspiring also in his turn to the sovereignty of Greece. And now, as a politician and a conqueror, he resolves how he may best extend his frontiers, reduce his neighbours, and weaken those whom he was not able to conquer at present ; how he may introduce himself into the affairs of Greece, share in its intestine feuds, make himself its arbiter, join with one side to destroy the other ; in a word, to obtain the empire over all. In the execution of this great design, he spared neither artifices, open force, presents, nor promises. He employs for this purpose negotiations, treaties, and alliances, and each of them singly, in such a manner as he judges most conducive to the success of his design ; advantage solely determining him in the choice of measures.

We shall always see him acting under this second character, in all the steps he takes henceforth, till he assumes a third and last character, which is, preparing to attack the great king of Persia, and endeavouring to become the avenger of Greece, by subverting an empire which before had attempted to subject it, and which had always continued its irreconcileable enemy, either by open invasions or secret intrigues.

We have seen that Philip, in the very beginning of his reign, had seized upon Amphipolis, because well situated for his views ; but that, to avoid restoring it to the Athenians, who claimed it as one of their colonies, he had declared it a free city. But at this time, being no longer under such great apprehension from the Athenians, he resumed his former design of seizing Amphipolis. ^o The inhabitants of this city, being threatened with a speedy siege, sent ambassadors to the Athenians, offering to put themselves and their city under the protection of Athens, and beseeching them to accept the

^o Demost. Olynth. i. p. 2.

keys of Amphipolis. But that republic rejected their offer, for fear of breaking the peace they had concluded the preceding year with Philip. ^p However, this monarch was not so delicate in this point; for he besieged and took Amphipolis by means of the intelligence he carried on in the city, and made it one of the strongest barriers of his kingdom. Demosthenes, in his orations, frequently reproaches the Athenians with their indolence on this occasion, by representing to them, that, had they acted at this time with the expedition they ought, they would have saved a confederate city, and spared themselves a multitude of misfortunes.

^q Philip had promised the Athenians to give up Amphipolis into their hands, and by this means had made them supine and inactive; but he did not value himself upon keeping his word, and sincerity was in no manner the virtue he professed. So far from surrendering this city, he also possessed himself of Pydna * and of Potidæa †. The Athenians kept a garrison in the latter; these he dismissed without doing them the least injury; and gave up this city to the Olynthians, to engage them in his interest.

^r From thence he proceeded to seize Crenides, which the Thasians had built but two years before, and which he called Philippi from his own name. It was near this city, afterwards famous for the defeat of Brutus and Cassius, that he opened certain gold mines, which every year produced upwards of a thousand talents, that is, about an hundred and forty-four thousand pounds Sterling; a prodigious sum of money in that age. By this means, money became much more current in Macedon than before; and Philip first caused the golden specie to be coined there, which outlived ‡ mon-

^p A. M. 3646. Ant. J. C. 368. Diod. p. 412.

^q Diod. p. 412.

^r Idem. p. 413.

* Pydna, a city of Macedon, situated on the gulph anciently called Sinus Thermaicus, and now Golfo di Salonichi.

† Potidæa, another city of Macedonia, on the borders of ancient Thrace. It was but sixty stadia, or three leagues, from Olynthus.

[‡] Gratus Alexandro Regi magna fuit ille
Cherilus, incultis quid versibus et male natis
Rettulit acceptos, regale numisma, Philippos.

HORAT. l. ii. Ep. ad August.

Cherilus the Pelcan youth approved,

• Him he rewarded well, and him he loved;

His dull uneven verse, by a great good fate,

Got him his favour, and a fair estate.

CREECH'S HOR.

Hic sunt numerati aurei trecenti nummi, qui vocantur Philippi.

PLAUT. in POEN.

narchy. Superiority of finances is of endless advantage to a state ; and no prince understood them better than Philip, or neglected them less. By this fund he was enabled to maintain a powerful army of foreigners, and to bribe a number of creatures in most of the cities of Greece.

^s Demosthenes says, that when Greece was in its most flourishing condition, “ gold and silver were ranked in the “ number of prohibited arms.” But Philip thought, spoke, and acted in a quite different manner. ^t It is said, that consulting the oracle of Delphos, he received the following answer :

Ἄργυράς λόγχασι μάγος καὶ πάντα κρατήσεις.
Make coin thy weapons, and thou'l conquer all.

The advice of the priestess became his rule, and he applied it with great success. He owned, that he had carried more places by money than arms ; that he never forced a gate, till after having attempted to open it with a golden key ; and he did not think any fortress impregnable, into which a mule laden with silver could find entrance. * It has been said, that he was a merchant rather than a conqueror ; that it was not Philip, but his gold, which subdued Greece, and that he bought its cities rather than took them. He had pensioners in all the commonwealths of Greece, and retained those in his pay who had the greatest share in the public affairs. And indeed he was less proud of the success of a battle than that of a negotiation, well knowing, that neither his generals nor his soldiers could share in the honour of the latter.

Philip had married Olympias, daughter of Neoptolemus. The latter was son of Alcetas, king of Molossus or Epirus. Olympias brought him Alexander, surnamed the Great, who was born at Pella, the capital of Macedonia, the first year of

^s Philip. iii. p. 92.

^t Suidas.

* Callidus emptor Olynthi.

JUV. Sat. xii. l. 47.

Philippus majore ex parte mercator Græciæ, quam victor.

VAL. MAX. lib. vii. c. 2.

Diffidit hostium
Portas vir Macedo, et subruit ænulos
Reges muneribus.

HORAT. lib. iii. Od. xvi.

When engines, and when arts do fail,
The golden wedge can cleave the wall :
Gold Philips rival kings o'erthrew.

CREECH'S HOR.

the 106th Olympiad. ^u Philip, who at that time was absent from his kingdom, had three very agreeable ^{*} advices brought him; that he had carried the prize in the Olympic games; that Parmenio, one of his generals, had gained a great victory over the Illyrians; and that his wife was delivered of a son. This prince, terrified at so signal a happiness, which the heathens thought frequently the omen of some mournful catastrophe, cried out, "Great Jupiter! in return for so many blessings, send me as soon as possible some slight misfortune."

^x We may form a judgment of Philip's care and attention with regard to the education of this prince, by the letter he wrote a little after his birth to Aristotle, to acquaint him so early, that he had made choice of him for his son's preceptor. "I am to inform you," said he, "that I have a son born. I return thanks to the gods, not so much for having given him to me, as to have given him me in the time that Aristotle lived. I may justly promise myself, that you will make him a successor worthy of us both, and a king worthy of Macedonia." What noble thoughts arise from the perusal of this letter, far different from the manners of the present age, but highly worthy of a great monarch and a good father! I shall leave the reader to make such reflections on it as he shall think proper; and shall only observe, that this example may serve as a lesson even to private persons, as it teaches them how highly they ought to value a good master, and the extraordinary care they should take to find such an one; [†] for every son is an Alexander to his father. It appears that Philip [‡] put his son very early under Aristotle, convinced that the success of studies depends on the foundation first laid; and that the man cannot be too able, who is to teach the principles of learning and knowledge in the manner they ought to be inculcated.

^u A. M. 3648. Ant. J. C. 356. Plut. in Alex. p. 666. Justin. I. xii. c. 16. Plut. in Apophth. p. 187. ^x Aul. Gel. I. ix. 3.

^{*} Plutarch supposes, that this news was brought him immediately after the taking of Potidaea, but this city had been taken two years before.

[†] Fingamus Alexandrum dari nobis, impositum gremio, dignum tanta cura infantem: (quanquam suus cuique dignus est.)—Quintil. I. i. c. I.

[‡] An Philippus Macedonum rex Alexandro' filio suo prima literarum elementa tradi ab Aristotele summo ejus aetatis philosopho voluisset, aut ille suscepisset hoc officium, si non studiorum initio a perfectissimo quoque optime tractari, pertinere ad sumam credidisset?—Quintil. ibid.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE MACEDONIAN PHALANX.

^y THIS * was a body of infantry, consisting of sixteen thousand heavy-armed troops, who were always placed in the centre of the battle. Besides a sword, they were armed with a shield, and a pike or spear called by the Greeks *Σαρισσα*, Sarissa. This pike was fourteen cubits long, that is, twenty-one French feet, for the cubit consists of a foot and a half.

The phalanx was commonly divided into ten corps or battalions, each of which was composed of sixteen hundred men, an hundred feet in rank, and sixteen in file. Sometimes the file of sixteen was doubled, and sometimes divided, according to occasion; so that the phalanx was sometimes but eight, and at other times thirty-two deep: but its usual and regular depth was sixteen.

The space between each soldier upon a march was six feet, or, which is the same, four cubits; and the ranks were also about six feet asunder. When the phalanx advanced towards an enemy, there was but three feet distance between each soldier, and the ranks were closed in proportion. In fine, when the phalanx was to receive the enemy, the men who composed it drew still closer, each soldier occupying only the space of a foot and a half.

This evidently shows the different space which the front of the phalanx took up in these three cases, supposing the whole to consist of sixteen thousand men, at sixteen deep, and consequently always a thousand men, in front. This space or distance in the first case was six thousand feet, or one thousand fathoms, which make ten furlongs, or half a league. In the second case it was but half as much, and took up five furlongs, or five hundred fathoms †. And, in the third case, it was again diminished another half, and extended to the distance of only two furlongs and a half, or two hundred and fifty fathoms.

Polybius examines the phalanx in the second case, in which it marched to attack the enemy. There then was three feet in breadth and depth between each soldier. We observed above, that their pikes were fourteen cubits long. The space

^y Polyb. l. xvii. p. 764.—767. Id. l. xii. p. 664. *Ælian. de Instruend. Acieb.*

* Decem et sex millia pedum more Macedonum armati fuere quæ phalangites appellabantur. Hæc media acies fuit in fronte, in decem partes divisa.—*Tit. Liv. l. xxxviii. n. 40.*

† Five stadia.

between the two hands, and that part of the pike which projected beyond the right, took up four; and consequently the pike advanced ten cubits beyond the body of the soldier who carried it. This being supposed, the pikes of the soldiers placed in the fifth rank, whom I will call the *fifthis*, and so of the rest, projected two cubits beyond the first rank; the pikes of the fourths, four; those of the thirds, six; those of the seconds, eight cubits; in fine, the pikes of the soldiers who formed the first rank, advanced ten cubits towards the enemy.

The reader will easily conceive, that when the soldiers who composed the phalanx, this great and unwieldy machine, every part of which bristled with pikes, as we have seen, moved all at once, presenting their pikes to attack the enemy, that they must charge with great force. The soldiers, who were behind the fifth rank, held their pikes raised, but reclining a little over the ranks which preceded them; thereby forming a kind of roof, which, not to mention their shields, secured them from darts discharged at a distance, which fell without doing them any hurt.

The soldiers of all the other ranks beyond the fifth, could not indeed engage against the enemy, nor reach them with their pikes, but then they gave great assistance in battle to those in front of them. For, by supporting them behind with the utmost strength, and propping them with their backs, they increased in a prodigious manner the strength and impetuosity of the onset; they gave their comrades such a force as rendered them immovable in attacks, and at the same time deprived them of every hope or opportunity of flight by the rear; so that they were under the necessity either to conquer or die.

And indeed Polybius acknowledges, that as long as the soldiers of the phalanx preserved their disposition and order as a phalanx, that is, as long as they kept their ranks in the close order we have described, it was impossible for an enemy either to sustain its weight, or to open and break it. And this he demonstrates to us in a plain and sensible manner. The Roman soldiers, for it is these he compares to the Greeks in the place in question, says he, take up, in fight, three feet each. And as they must necessarily move about very much, either to shift their bucklers to the right and left, in defending themselves, or to thrust with the point, or strike with the edge, we must be obliged to suppose the distance of three feet between every soldier. In this manner every Roman

soldier takes up six feet, that is, twice as much distance as one of the * phalanx, and consequently opposes singly two soldiers of the first rank; and for the same reason, is obliged to make head against ten pikes, as we before observed. Now it is impossible for a single soldier to break, or force his way through ten pikes.

^z This Livy shews evidently in a few words, where he describes in what manner the Romans were repulsed by the Macedonians at the siege of a city. [†] The consul, says he, made his cohorts to advance, in order, if possible, to penetrate the Macedonian phalanx. When the latter, keeping very close together, had advanced forward their long pikes, the Romans, having discharged ineffectually their javelins against the Macedonians, whom their shields, pressed very close together, covered like a roof and a tortoise; the Romans, I say, drew their swords. But it was not possible for them either to come to a close engagement, or cut or break the pikes of the enemy; and if they happened to cut or break any one of them, the broken piece of the pike served as a point; so that this range of pikes, with which the front of the phalanx was armed, still existed.

^a Paulus *Æmilius* owned, that in the battle with Perseus, the last king of Macedon, this rampart of brass, and forest of pikes, impenetrable to his legions, filled him with terror and astonishment. He did not remember, he said, any thing so formidable as this phalanx; and often afterwards declared, that this dreadful spectacle had made so strong an impression upon him, as almost made him despair of the victory.

From what has been said above, it follows, that the Macedonian phalanx was invincible; nevertheless we find by history, that the Macedonians and their phalanx were vanquished and subdued by the Romans. It was invincible, replied Polybius, so long as it continued a phalanx, but this happened very rarely; for in order to its being so, it required a flat

^z Liv. l. xxxii. n. 17.

^a Plut. in Paul. *Æmil.* p. 265.

* It was before said, that each soldier of the phalanx took up three feet when he advanced to attack the enemy, and but half as much when he waited his coming up. In this last case, each Roman soldier was obliged to make head against twenty pikes.

[†] Cohortes invicem sub signis, quæ cuneum Macedonum (phalan gem ipsi vobant) si possent, vi perrumperent, emittebat.—Ubi conferti hastas ingentis longitudo præ se Macedones objecissent, velut in constructam densitate clypearum testudinem Romani, pilis nequicquam emissis, cum strinxissent, gladios; neque congrederi propius neque præcedere hastas poterant; et, si quam incidissent aut præfregissent, hastile fragmento ipso acuto inter spicula integrarum hastarum, velut valuum explebat.

even spot of ground of large extent, without either tree, bush, intrenchment, ditch, valley, hill, or river. Now we seldom find a spot of ground, of fifteen, twenty, or more furlongs * in extent; for so large a space is necessary for containing a whole army, of which the phalanx is but a part.

But let us suppose, (it is Polybius who still speaks), that a tract of ground, such as could be wished, were found; yet of what use could a body of troops drawn up in the form of a phalanx be, should the enemy, instead of advancing forward and offering battle, send out detachments to lay waste the country, plunder the cities, or cut off the convoys? That in case the enemy should come to battle, the general need only command part of his front, the centre for instance, to give way and fly, that the phalanx may have an opportunity of pursuing them; in this case, it is manifest the phalanx would be broke, and a large cavity made in it, in which the Romans would not fail to charge the phalanx in flank on the right and left, at the same time that those soldiers who are pursuing the enemy, may be attacked in the same manner.

This reasoning of Polybius appears to me very clear, and at the same time gives us a very just idea of the manner in which the ancients fought: which certainly ought to have its place in history, as it is an essential part of it.

Hence appears, as Mr Bossuet ^b observed after Polybius, the difference between the Macedonian † phalanx, formed of one large body, very thick on all sides, which was obliged to move all at once, and the Roman army, divided into small bodies, which for that reason were nimbler, and consequently more aptly disposed for motions of every kind. The phalanx cannot long preserve its natural property, (these are Polybius' words), that is to say, its solidity and thickness, because it requires its peculiar spots of ground, and those, as it were, made purposely for it; and that for want of such tracts, it encumbers, or rather breaks itself by its own motion; not to mention, that, if it is once broke, the soldiers who compose it can never rally again: Whereas the Roman army, by its division into small bodies, takes advantage of all places and situations, and suits itself to them. It is united or separated at pleasure.

^b Discourse on Universal History.

* Three quarters of a league, or a league, or perhaps more.

† *Staturius uterque miles, ordines servans; sed illa phalanx immobilis, et unius generis; Romana acies distinctior, ex pluribus partibus constans; facilis partienti quacumque opus esset, facilis jungenti.*—*Tit. Liv. l. ix. n. 19.*

Erant pleraque sylvestria circa, incommoda phalangi, maxime Macedonum, quæ nisi ubi prælongis hastis velut vallum ante clypeos objecit, quod ut fiat, libero campo opus est, nullius admodum usus est.—*Id. l. xxxi. n. 89.*

It files off, or draws together, without the least difficulty. It can very easily detach, rally, and form every kind of evolution, either in whole or in part, as occasion may require. In fine, it has a greater variety of motions, and consequently more activity and strength, than the phalanx.

^c This enabled Paulus *Æmilius* * to gain his celebrated victory over Perseus. He first attacked the phalanx in front. But the Macedonians keeping very close together, holding their pikes with both hands, and presenting this iron rampart to the enemy, could not be either broke or forced in any manner, and so made a dreadful slaughter of the Romans. But at last, the unevenness of the ground, and the great extent of the front in battle, not allowing the Macedonians to continue in all parts that range of shields and pikes, Paulus *Æmilius* observed, that the phalanx was obliged to leave several openings and intervals. Upon this he attacked them at these openings, not as before, in front, and in a general onset, but by detached bodies, and in different parts at one and the same time. By this means the phalanx was broke in an instant, and its whole force, which consisted merely in its union, and the impression it made all at once, was entirely lost, and Paulus *Æmilius* gained the victory.

^d The same Polybius, in the twelfth book above cited, describes in few words the order of battle observed by the cavalry. According to him, a squadron of horse consisted of eight hundred, generally drawn up one hundred in front, and eight deep; consequently such a squadron as this took up a furlong, or an hundred fathoms, supposing the distance of one fathom or six feet for each horseman; a space he must necessarily have, to make his evolutions and to rally. Ten squadrons, or eight thousand horse, occupied ten times as much ground, that is, ten furlongs, or a thousand fathoms, which makes about half a league.

^c Plutarch. in Paul. *Æmil.* p. 265, 266. Liv. l. xlii. n. 41.

^d Lib. xii. p. 633.

* Secunda legio immissa dissipavit phalangem; neque ulla evidenter causa vitoriæ fuit, quam quod multa passim prælia erant, quæ fluctuantem turbarunt primo, deinde disjecerunt phalangem cuius consertæ, et intentis torrentis hastis, intollerabiles vires sunt. Se carptim aggrediendo circumagere immobilem longitudine et gravitate hastam cogas, confusa strute implicantur: si vero ab latere, aut ab tergo, aliquid tumultus increpuit, ruinæ modo turbantur. Sicut tum aduersus catervatim irruentes Romanos, et interrupta multifarium acie, obviam ire cogebantur; et Romani, quacumque data intervalla essent, insinuabant ordines suos. Qui si universa acie in frontem adversus instructam phalangem concurressent—induissent se hastis, nec consertam aciem sustinuissent.—Tit. Liv.

From what has been said, the reader may judge how much ground an army took according to the number of infantry and cavalry of which it consisted.

SECTION II.

THE SACRED WAR. SEQUEL OF THE HISTORY OF PHILIP.

DISCORD ^e, which fomented perpetually in the Greeks dispositions not very remote from an open rupture, broke out with great violence upon account of the Phocæans. Those people who inhabited the territories adjacent to Delphos ploughed up certain lands that were sacred to Apollo, which were thereby profaned. Immediately the people in the neighbourhood exclaimed against them as guilty of sacrilege, some from a spirit of sincerity, and others in order to cover their private revenge with the veil of religion. The war that broke out on this occasion, was called the Sacred War, as undertaken from a religious motive, and lasted ten years. The people guilty of this profanation were summoned to appear before the Amphyctions, or states-general of Greece; and the whole affair being duly examined, the Phocæans were declared sacrilegious, and sentenced to pay a heavy fine.

Philomelus, one of their chief citizens, a bold man, and of great authority, having proved by some verses in ^f Homer, that the sovereignty of Delphos belonged anciently to the Phocæans, enflames them against this decree, determines with them to take up arms, and is appointed their general. He immediately went to Sparta to engage the Lacedæmonians in his interest. They were very much disgusted at the sentence which the Amphyctions had pronounced against them at the solicitation of the Thebans, by which they had also been condemned to pay a fine, for having seized upon the citadel of Thebes by fraud and violence. Archidamus, one of the kings of Sparta, gave Philomelus a handsome reception. This monarch, however, did not dare to declare openly in favour of the Phocæans, but promised to assist him with money, and to furnish him secretly with troops, as he accordingly did.

Philomelus, at his return home, raises soldiers, and begins by attacking the temple of Delphos, of which he possessed

^e A. M. 3649. Ant. J. C. 355. Diod. l. xvi. p. 425.—433.

^f Iliad. l. ii. v. 516.

himself without any great difficulty, the inhabitants of the country making but a weak resistance. The * Locrians, a people in the neighbourhood of Delphos, took arms against him, but were defeated in several encounters. Philomelus, encouraged by these first successes, increased his troops daily, and put himself in a condition to carry on his enterprise with vigour. Accordingly he enters the temple, tears from the pillars the decree of the Amphycions against the Phocæans, publishes all over the country, that he has no design to seize the riches of the temple, and that his sole view is to restore the Phocæans their ancient rights and privileges. It was necessary for him to have a sanction from the god who presided at Delphos, and to receive such an answer from the oracle as might be favourable to him. The priestess at first refused to co-operate on this occasion; but, being terrified by his menaces, he answered that the god permitted him to do whatever he should think proper; a circumstance he took care to publish to all the neighbouring nations.

The affair was now become a serious one. The Amphycions meeting a second time, a resolution was formed to declare war against the Phocæans. Most of the Grecian nations engaged in this quarrel, and sided with the one or the other party. The Boeotians, the Locrians, Thessalians, and several other neighbouring people, declared in favour of the god; whilst Sparta, Athens, and some other cities of Peloponnesus, joined with the Phocæans. Philomelus had not yet touched the treasures of the temple; but being afterwards not so scrupulous, he believed that the riches of the god could not be better employed, than in his (the deity's) defence, for he gave this specious name to this sacrilegious attempt; and being enabled, by this fresh supply, to double the pay of his soldiers, he raised a very considerable body of troops.

Several battles were fought, and the success for some time seemed doubtful on both sides. Every body knows how much religious wars are to be dreaded, and the prodigious length which a false zeal, when veiled with so venerable a name, is apt to go. The Thebans having in a encounter taken several prisoners, condemned them all to die as sacrilegious wretches, who were excommunicated. The Phocæans did the same by way of reprisal. These had at first gained several advantages; but having been defeated in a great battle, Philomelus their leader, being closely attacked upon an emi-

* Or Locri.

nence from which there was no retreating, defended himself for a long time with invincible bravery; which however not availing, he threw himself headlong from a rock, in order to avoid the torments he must unavoidably have undergone, had he fallen alive into the hands of his enemies. Onomarchus was his successor, and took upon him the command of the forces.

^f This new general had soon levied a fresh army, the advantageous pay he offered procuring him soldiers from all sides. He also by dint of money brought over several chiefs of the other party, and prevailed upon them either to retire or to do little or nothing, by which he gained great advantages.

Philip thought it most consistent with his interest to remain neuter in this general movement of the Greeks in favour either of the Phocæans or the Thebans. It was consistent with the policy of this ambitious prince, who had little regard for religion or the interest of Apollo, but was always intent upon his own, not to engage in a war by which he could not reap the least benefit; and to take advantage of a juncture, in which all Greece, employed and divided by a great war, gave him an opportunity to extend his frontiers, and push his conquests without any apprehension of opposition. He was also well pleased to see both parties weaken and consume each other, as he should thereby be enabled to fall upon them afterwards with greater advantage.

^g Being desirous of subjecting Thrace, and of securing the conquests he had already made in it, he determined to possess himself of Methone, a small city, incapable of supporting itself by its own strength, but which gave him disquiet, and obstructed his designs whenever it was in the hands of his enemies. Accordingly he besieged that city, made himself master of, and razed it. ^h He lost one of his eyes before Methone, by a very singular accident. Aster of Amphipolis had offered his service to Philip, as so excellent a marksman, that he could bring down birds in their most rapid flight. The monarch made this answer: “ Well, I will take you into my service when I make war upon starlings;” which answer stung the cross-bowman to the quick. A repartee proves often of fatal consequence to him who makes it, and it is not a small merit to know when to hold one’s tongue.

^f A. M. 3651. Ant. J. C. 353.

^g A. M. 3651. Ant. J. C. 353. Diod. p. 434.

^h Suidas in Παρεγγεν.

After having thrown himself into the city, he let fly an arrow on which was written, “To Philip’s right eye,” and gave him a most cruel proof that he was a good marksman; for he hit him in his right eye. Philip sent him back the same arrow, with this inscription, “If Philip takes the city, he “will hang up Aster;” and accordingly he was as good as his word.

ⁱ A skilful surgeon drew the arrow out of Philip’s eye with so much art and dexterity, that not the least scar remained; and though he could not save his eye, yet he took away the blemish. ^k But nevertheless this monarch was so weak, as to be angry whenever any person happened to let slip the word Cyclops, or even the word eye, in his presence. Men, however, seldom blush for an honourable imperfection. A Lacedæmonian woman thought more like a man, when, to console herself for a glorious wound that had lamed him, she said, “Now, son, every step you take will put you in mind of your “valour.”

¹ After the taking of Methone, Philip, ever studious either to weaken his enemies by new conquests, or gain new friends by doing them some important service, marched into Thessaly, which had implored his assistance against the tyrants. The liberty of that country seemed now secure, since Alexander of Pheræ was no more. Nevertheless, his brothers, who, in concert with his wife Thebæ, had murdered him, grown weary of having some time acted the part of deliverers, revived his tyranny, and oppressed the Thessalians with a new yoke. Lycophron, the eldest of the three brothers, who succeeded Alexander, had strengthened himself by the protection of the Phocæans. Onomarchus, their leader, brought him a numerous body of forces, and at first gained a considerable advantage over Philip; but engaging him a second time, he was entirely defeated, and his army routed. The flying troops were pursued to the sea-shore. Upwards of six thousand men were killed on the spot, among whom was Onomarchus, whose body was hung upon a gallows; and three thousand, who were taken prisoners, were thrown into the sea, by Philip’s order, as so many sacrilegious wretches, the professed enemies of religion. Lycophron delivered up the city of Pheræ, and restored Thessaly to its liberty by abandoning it. By the happy success of this expedition, Philip

ⁱ Plin. l. vii. c. 37.

^l Diod. p. 432.—435.

^k Demet. Phaler. de Elocut. c. iii.

acquired for ever the affection of the Thessalians, whose excellent cavalry, joined to the Macedonian phalanx, had afterwards so great a share in his victories, and those of his son.

Phayllus, who succeeded his brother Onomarchus, finding the same advantages he had done, from the immense riches he found in the temple, raised a numerous army ; and, supported by the troops of the Lacedæmonians, Athenians, and the other allies, whom he paid very largely, he went into Bœotia, and invaded the Thebans. For a long time victory shifted sides ; but at last, Phayllus being attacked with a sudden and violent distemper, after suffering the most cruel torments, ended his life in a manner worthy of his impieties and sacrilegious actions. Phaleucus, then very young, the son of Onomarchus, was placed in his room ; and Mnaseas, a man of great experience, and strongly attached to his family, was appointed his counsellor.

The new leader, treading in the steps of his predecessors, plundered the temple as they had done, and enriched all his friends. At last the Phocæans opened their eyes, and appointed commissioners to call all those to account who had any concern in the public monies. Upon this Phaleucus was deposed ; and, after an exact inquiry, it was found, that from the beginning of the war, there had been taken out of the temple upwards of ten thousand talents, that is, about one million five hundred thousand pounds.

^m Philip, after having freed the Thessalians, resolved to carry his arms into Phocis. This is his first attempt to get footing in Greece, and to have a share in the general affairs of the Greeks, from which the kings of Macedon had always been excluded as foreigners. In this view, upon pretence of going over into Phocis, in order to punish the sacrilegious Phocæans, he marched towards Thermopylæ, to possess himself of a pass, which gave him a free passage into Greece, and especially into Attica. The Athenians, upon hearing of a march which might prove of the most fatal consequence to them, hastened to Thermopylæ, and possessed themselves very seasonably of this important pass, which Philip did not dare attempt to force ; so that he was obliged to return back into Macedonia.

^m A. M. 3652. Ant. J. C. 352.

SECTION III.

DEMOSTHENES HARANGUES THE ATHENIANS AGAINST PHILIP.
THAT PRINCE TAKES OLYNTHUS.

As we shall soon see Philip engaged against the Athenians, and as they, by the strong exhortations and prudent counsels of Demosthenes, will become his greatest enemies, and the most powerful opposers of his ambitious designs ; it may not be improper, before we enter into that part of the history, to give a short account of the state of Athens, and of the disposition of the citizens at that time.

We must not form a judgement of the character of the Athenians, in the age we are now speaking of, from that of their ancestors, in the time of the battles of Marathon and of Salamis, from whose virtues they had extremely degenerated. They were no longer the same men, and had no longer the same maxims, and the same manners. They no longer discovered the same zeal for the public good ; the same application to the affairs of the state ; the same courage to support the fatigues of war by sea and land ; the same care of the revenues, the same willingness to hear salutary advice ; the same discernment in the choice of generals of the armies, and of magistrates to whom they entrusted the administration of the state. To these happy, these glorious dispositions, succeeded a fondness for repose, and an indolence with regard to public affairs ; an aversion for military fatigues, which they now left entirely to mercenary troops ; and a profusion of the public treasures in games and shows ; a love for the flattery which their orators lavished upon them ; and an unhappy facility in conferring public offices by intrigue and cabal ; all which usually precede the approaching ruin of states. Such was the situation of Athens at the time the king of Macedon began to turn his arms against Greece.

We have seen that Philip, after various conquests, had attempted to advance as far as Phocis, but in vain : because the Athenians, justly alarmed at the impending danger, had stopped him at the pass of Thermopylæ. ^m Demosthenes, taking advantage of so favourable a disposition of things, mounted the tribunal, in order to set before them a lively image of the impending danger to which they were exposed by the bound-

^m Demost. 1 Phil.

less ambition of Philip ; and to convince them of the absolute necessity they were under, from hence, to apply the most speedy remedies. Now, as the success of his arms, and the rapidity of his progress, spread throughout Athens a kind of terror bordering very near upon despair, the orator, by a wonderful artifice, first endeavours to revive their courage, and ascribes their calamities to their sloth and indolence. For, if they hitherto had acquitted themselves of their duty, and that, in spite of their activity and their utmost efforts, Philip had prevailed over them, they then, indeed, would not have the least resource or hope left. But in this oration, and all those which follow, Demosthenes insists strongly, that the grandeur of Philip is wholly owing to the supineness of the Athenians ; and that this supineness, which makes him bold and daring, swells him with such a spirit of haughtiness, as even insults the Athenians.

“ See,” says Demosthenes to them, speaking of Philip, “ to what a height the arrogance of that man rises, who will “ not suffer you to choose either action or repose ; but em- “ ploys menaces, and as fame says, speaks in the most inso- “ lent terms ; and not contented with his first conquests, but “ incapable of satiating his lust of dominion, engages every “ day in some new enterprise. Possibly, you wait till neces- “ sity reduces you to act ; can any one be greater to free-born “ men than shame and infamy ? Will you then for ever walk “ the public places with this question in your mouths, What “ news is there ? Can there be greater news than that a “ Macedonian has vanquished the Athenians, and made him- “ self the supreme arbiter of Greece ? “ Philip is dead,” says “ one ; “ he is only sick,” replies another. His being wound- “ ed at Methone had occasioned all these reports. But “ whether he be sick or dead is nothing to the purpose, O A- “ thens ! For the moment after heaven had deliveredd you from “ him, should you still behave as you now do, you would raise “ up another Philip against yourselves ; since the man in “ question owes his grandeur infinitely more to your indolence “ than to his own strength.”

But Demosthenes, not satisfied with bare remonstrances, or with giving his opinion in general terms, proposed a plan, the execution of which he believed would check the attempts of Philip. In the first place, he advises the Athenians to fit out a fleet of fifty galleys, and to resolve firmly to man them themselves. He requires them to reinforce these with ten galleys lightly armed, which may serve as a convoy to the

fleet and transports. With regard to the land forces, as in his time the general, elected by the most powerful faction, formed the army only of a confused assemblage of foreigners and mercenary troops, who did little service ; Demosthenes requires them to levy no more than two thousand chosen troops, five hundred of which shall be Athenians, and the rest raised from among the allies ; with two hundred horse, fifty of which shall also be Athenians.

The expence of this little army, with regard only to provisions and other matters independent from their pay, was to amount to little more per month than ninety * talents, (ninety thousand crowns), viz. forty talents for ten convoy galleys, at the rate of twenty *miuæ* (a thousand livres) per month for each galley ; forty talents for the two thousand infantry, and ten drachms (five livres) per month for each foot-soldier ; which five livres per month make a little more than three pence farthing French money per diem. Finally, twelve talents for the two hundred horse, or thirty drachms (fifteen livres) per month for each horseman ; which fifteen livres per month make ten sols per diem. The reason of my relating this so particularly, is to give the reader an idea of the expences of an army in those times. Demosthenes adds, if any one imagines, that the preparation of provisions is not a considerable step, he is very much mistaken ; for he is persuaded, that provided the forces do not want provisions, the war will furnish them with every thing besides ; and that without doing the least wrong to the Greeks or allies, they will not fail of sufficient acquisitions to make up all deficiencies and arrears of pay.

But as the Athenians might be surprised at Demosthenes' requiring so small a body of forces, he gave this reason for it, viz. that at present the commonwealth did not permit the Athenians to oppose Philip with a sufficient force in the field ; and that it would be their business to make excursions only. Thus his design was, that this little army should be hovering perpetually about the frontiers of Macedonia, to awe, observe, harass, and keep close to the enemy, in order to prevent them from concerting and executing such enterprises with ease, as they might think fit to attempt.

What the success of this harangue was, is not known. It is very probable, that as the Athenians were not attacked personally, they, according to the supineness natural to them,

* Each talent was worth a thousand crowns.

were very indolent with regard to the progress of Philip's arms. The divisions at this time in Greece were very favourable to that monarch. Athens and Lacedæmonia on one side employed themselves wholly in reducing the strength of Thebes their rival; whilst, on the other side, the Thessalians, in order to free themselves from their tyrants, and the Thebans, to maintain the superiority which they had acquired by the battles of Leuctra and Mantinea, devoted themselves in the most resolute manner to Philip; and assisted him, undesignedly, in making chains for themselves.

Philip, as an able politician, knew well how to take advantage of all these dissensions. This king, in order to secure his frontiers, had nothing more at heart than to enlarge them towards Thrace; and this he could scarce attempt but at the expence of the Athenians, who since the defeat of Xerxes had many colonies, esides several states, who were either their allies or tributarries, in that country.

Olynthus, a city of Thrace in the peninsula of Palene, was one of these colonies. The Olynthians had been at great variance with Amyntas, father of Philip, and had even very much opposed the latter, upon his accession to the crown. However, being not firmly established on his throne, he at first employed dissimulation, and requested the alliance of the Olynthians, to whom, some time after, he gave up Potidæa, an important fortress, which he had conquered, in concert with and for them, from the Athenians. When he found himself able to execute his project, he took proper measures in order to besiege Olynthus. The inhabitants of this city, who saw the storm gathering at a distance, had recourse to the Athenians, of whom they requested immediate aid. The affair was debated in an assembly of the people, and as it was of the utmost importance, a great number of orators met in the assembly. Each of them mounted it in his turn, which was regulated by their age. Demosthenes, who was then but four-and-thirty, did not speak till after his seniors had discussed the matter a long time.

ⁿ In this * discourse, the orator, the better to succeed in his aim, alternately terrifies and encourages the Athenians. For

n Olynth. ii.

* The oration which Demosthenes pronounced at that time, is generally looked upon as the second of the three Olynthiacs, which relate to this subject. But M. de Tourreil, chiefly on the authority of Dionysius Halicarnassensis, which ought to be of great weight on this occasion, changes the order generally observed in Demosthenes' orations, and places this at the head of the Olynthiacs. Though I am of his opinion, I shall cite the orations in the order they are printed.

this purpose, he represents Philip in two very different lights. On one side, he is a man whose unbounded ambition the empire of the world could not satiate ; an haughty tyrant, who looks upon all men, and even his allies, as so many subjects or slaves ; and who, for that reason, is no less incensed by too slow a submission, than an open revolt ; a vigilant politician, who, always intent to take advantage of the oversights and errors of others, seizes every favourable opportunity ; an indefatigable warrior, whom his activity multiplies, and who supports perpetually the most severe toils, without allowing himself a moment's repose, or having the least regard to the difference of seasons ; an intrepid hero, who rushes through obstacles, and plunges into the midst of dangers ; a corrupter, who with his purse traffics, buys, and employs gold no less than iron ; a happy prince, on whom fortune lavishes her favours, and for whom she seems to have forgot her inconstancy : but, on the other side, this same Philip is an imprudent man, who measures his vast projects, not by his strength, but merely by his ambition ; a rash man, who, by his attempts, digs himself the grave of his own grandeur, and opens precipices before him, down which a small effort would throw him ; a knave, whose power is raised on the most ruinous of all foundations, breach of faith, and villany ; an usurper, hated universally abroad, who, by trampling upon all laws, human and divine, has made all nations his enemies ; a tyrant detested even in the heart of his dominions, in which, by the infamy of his manners and other vices, he has tired out the patience of his captains, his soldiers, and of all his subjects in general ; to conclude, a perjured and impious wretch, equally abhorred by heaven and earth, and whom the gods are now upon the point of destroying by any hand that will administer to their wrath, and second their vengeance.

This is the double picture of Philip, which M. de Tourreil draws, by uniting the several detached lineaments in the present oration of Demosthenes. In it is shewn the great freedom with which the Athenians spoke of so powerful a monarch.

Our orator, after having represented Philip one moment as formidable, the next very easy to be conquered, concludes, that the only certain method for reducing such an enemy, would be to reform the new abuses, to revive the ancient order and regulations, to appease domestic dissensions, and to suppress the cabals which are incessantly forming ; and all this in such a manner, that every thing may unite in the sole point of the

public service; and that, at a common expence, every man, according to his abilities, may concur in the destruction of the common enemy.

Demades *, bribed by Philip's gold, opposed very strenuously the advice of Demosthenes, but in vain; for the Athenians sent, under the conduct of Chares the general, thirty galleys and two thousand men to succour the Olynthians, who, in this urgent necessity, which so nearly affected all the Greeks in general, could obtain assistance only from the Athenians.

However, this succour did not prevent the designs of Philip, or the progress of his arms. For he marches into Chalcis, takes several places of strength, the fortress of Gira, and spreads terror throughout the whole country. Olynthus, being thus in great danger of an invasion, and menaced with destruction, sent a second embassy to Athens, to solicit a new reinforcement. Demosthenes argues very strongly in favour of their request, and proves to the Athenians that they were equally obliged by honour and interest to have regard to it. This is the subject of the Olynthiac generally taken as the third.

The orator, always animated with a strong and lively zeal for the safety and glory of his country, endeavours to intimidate the Athenians, by setting before them the dangers with which they are threatened; exhibiting to them a most dreadful prospect of the future, if they do not rouse from their lethargy; for that, in case Philip seizes upon Olynthus, he will inevitably attack Athens afterwards with all his forces.

The greatest difficulty was the means of raising sufficient sums for defraying the expences requisite for the succour of the Olynthians, because the military funds were otherwise employed, viz. for the celebration of the public games.

When the Athenians, at the end of the war of Ægina, had concluded a thirty years peace with the Lacedæmonians, they resolved to put into their treasury, by way of reserve, a thousand talents every year; at the same time prohibiting any person, upon pain of death, to mention the employing any part of it, except for repulsing an enemy who should invade Attica. This was at first observed with the warmth and fervour which men have for all new institutions. Afterwards Pericles, in order to make his court to the people, proposed

* Suidas in voce *Δημάδης*.

to distribute among them, in times of peace *, the thousand talents, and to apply it in giving to each citizen two oboli at the public shows, upon condition, however, that they might resume this fund in time of war. The proposal was approved, and the restriction also. But, as all concessions of this kind degenerate one time or other into license, the Athenians were so highly pleased with this distribution, called by Demades, “a glue by which the Athenians might be catched,” that they absolutely would not suffer it to be retrenched on any account. The abuse was carried to such a height, that Eubulus, one of the faction which opposed Demosthenes, prohibited any person, upon pain of death, so much as to propose the restoring for the service of the war, those funds which Pericles had transferred to the games and public shows. Apollodorus was even punished for declaring himself of a contrary opinion, and for insisting upon it.

This absurd profusion had very strange effects. It was impossible to supply it but by imposing taxes, the inequality of which, being entirely arbitrary, perpetuated strong feuds, and made the military preparations so very slow, as quite defeated the designs of them, without lessening the expence. As the artificers and sea-faring people, who composed about two-thirds of the people of Athens, did not contribute any part of their substance, and only gave their persons, the whole weight of the taxes fell entirely upon the rich. These murmured upon that account, and reproached the others with the public monies being squandered upon festivals, comedies, and the like superfluities. But the people, being sensible of their superiority, paid very little regard to their complaints, and had no manner of inclination to subtract from their diversions, merely to ease people who possessed employments and dignities, from which they were entirely excluded. Besides, any person who should dare to propose this to the people seriously and in form, would be in great danger of his life.

However, Demosthenes presumed to introduce this subject at two different times; but then he treated it with the utmost art and circumspection. After shewing that the Athenians were indispensably obliged to raise an army, in order to stop the enterprises of Philip, he hints, but in a distant way, that those funds which were expended in theoretic representations, ought to be employed for levying and maintaining an armed

* These games, besides the two oboli which were distributed to each of the persons present, occasioned a great number of other expences.

force. He demanded that commissioners might be nominated, not to enact new laws, there being already but too many established, but to examine and abolish such as should be prejudicial to the commonwealth. He did not thereby become obnoxious to capital punishment, as enacted by those laws; because he did not require that they should be actually abolished, but only that commissioners might be nominated to inspect them. He only hinted, how highly necessary it was to abolish a law, which grieved the most zealous citizens, and reduced them to this sad necessity, either to ruin themselves, in case they gave their opinion boldly and faithfully, or to destroy their country, in case they observed a fearful prevaricating silence.

These remonstrances do not seem to have had the success they deserved, since in the following Olynthiac, which is commonly placed as the first, the orator was obliged to inveigh once more against the misapplication of the military funds. The Olynthians being now vigorously attacked by Philip, and having hitherto been very ill served by the venal succours of Athens, required, by a third embassy, a body of troops, which should not consist of mercenaries and foreigners as before, but of true Athenians, of men inspired with a sincere ardour for the interest both of their own glory, and the common cause. The Athenians, at the earnest solicitation of Demosthenes, sent Chares a second time, with a reinforcement of seventeen galleys, of two thousand foot and three hundred horse, all citizens of Athens, as the Olynthians requested.

o The following year Philip possessed himself of Olynthus. Neither the succours nor efforts of the Athenians could defend it from its domestic enemies. It was betrayed by Euthy-
cates and Lasthenes, two of its most eminent citizens, in actual employment at that time. Thus Philip entered by the breach which his gold had made. Immediately he plunders this unhappy city, lays one part of the inhabitants in chains, and sells the rest for slaves; and distinguishes those who had betrayed their city, no otherwise than by the supreme contempt he expressed for them. This king, like his son Alexander, loved the treason, but abhorred the traitor. And, indeed, how can a prince rely upon him who has betrayed his country? p Every one, even the common soldiers of the Macedonian army, reproached Euthycrates and Lasthenes for the

o A. M. 3656. Ant. J. C. 348. Diod. l. xvi. p. 450.—452.

p Plut. in Apophtheg. p. 175.

perfidy, who complaining to Philip upon that account, he only made this ironical answer, infinitely more severe than the reproach itself: “ Do not mind what a pack of vulgar fellows ‘ say, who call every thing by its real name.”

The king was overjoyed at his being possessed of this city, which was of the utmost importance to him, as its power might have very much checked his conquests. ^q Some years before, the Olynthians had long resisted the united armies of Macedon and Lacedæmonia; whereas Philip had taken it with very little resistance, at least had not lost many men in the siege.

He now caused shows and public games to be exhibited with the utmost magnificence; to these he added feasts, in which he made himself very popular, bestowing on all the guests considerable gifts, and treating them with the utmost marks of his friendship.

SECTION IV.

PHILIP DECLARES FOR THEBES AGAINST THE PHOCÆANS. HE SEIZES ON THERMOPYLÆ.

THE Thebans, being unable alone to terminate the war ^r, which they had so long carried on against the Phocæans, addressed Philip. Hitherto, as we before mentioned, he had observed a kind of neutrality with respect to the sacred war; and he seemed to wait for an opportunity of declaring himself, that is, till both parties should have weakened themselves by a long war, which equally exhausted them both. The Thebans had now very much abated of that haughtiness, and those ambitious views, with which the victories of Epaminondas had inspired them. The instant therefore that they requested the alliance of Philip, he resolved to espouse the interest of that republic, in opposition to the Phocæans. He had not lost sight of the project he had formed, of obtaining an entrance into Greece, in order to make himself master of it. To give success to his design, it was proper for him to declare in favour of one of the two parties which at that time divided all Greece, that is, either for the Thebans, or the Athenians and Spartans. He was not so void of sense as to imagine, that the latter party would assist his design of carry-

^q *Diod. I. xv. p. 341.*

^r *A. M. 3657. Ant. J. C. 347.*

ing his arms into Greece. He therefore had no more to do but to join the Thebans, who offered themselves voluntarily to him, and who stood in need of Philip's power to support themselves in their declining condition. He therefore declared at once in their favour. But to give a specious colour to his arms, besides the gratitude he affected to have at heart for Thebes, in which he had been educated, he also pretended to make an honour of the zeal with which he was fired, with regard to the violated god; and was very glad to pass for a religious prince, who warmly espoused the cause of the god, and of the temple of Delphos, in order to conciliate by that means the esteem and friendship of the Greeks. Politicians apply every pretext to their views, and endeavour to screen the most unjust attempts with the veil of probity, and sometimes even of religion; though they very frequently have no manner of regard for either.

^s There was nothing Philip had more at heart, than to possess himself of Thermopylæ, as it opened him a passage into Greece; to appropriate all the honour of the sacred war to himself, as if he had been principal in that affair, and to preside in the Pythian games. He was desirous of aiding the Thebans, and by their means to possess himself of Phocis: but then, in order to put this double design in execution, it was necessary for him to keep it secret from the Athenians, who had actually declared war against Thebes, and who for many years had been in alliance with the Phocæans. His business therefore was to make them change their measures, by placing other objects in their view; and on this occasion the politics of Philip succeeded to a wonder.

The Athenians, who began to grow tired of a war which was very burdensome, and of little benefit to them, had commissioned Ctesiphon and Phrynon to sound the intentions of Philip, and in what manner he stood disposed with regard to peace. These related that Philip did not appear averse to it, and that he even expressed a great affection for the commonwealth. Upon this, the Athenians resolved to send a solemn embassy, to inquire more strictly into the truth of things, and to procure the last explanations previously necessary to so important a negociation. Æschines and Demosthenes were among the ten ambassadors, who brought back three from Philip, viz. Antipater, Parmenio, and Eurylochus. All the ten executed their commission very faithfully, and

^s Demost. Orat. de Fals. Legat.

gave a very good account of it. Upon this, they were immediately sent back with full powers to conclude a peace, and to ratify it by oaths. It was then Demosthenes, who in his first embassy had met some Athenian captives in Macedonia, and had promised to return and ransom them at his own expence, endeavours to enable himself to keep his word ; and, in the mean time, advises his colleagues to embark with the utmost expedition, as the republic had commanded ; and to wait as soon as possible upon Philip, in what place soever he might be. However, these, instead of making a speedy dispatch, as they were desired, go an ambassador's pace, proceed to Macedonia by land, stay three months in that country, and give Philip time to possess himself of several other strong places belonging to the Athenians in Thrace. At last, meeting with the king of Macedonia, they agree with him upon articles of peace : but having lulled them asleep with the specious pretence of a treaty, he deferred the ratification of it from day to day. Philip had found means to corrupt the ambassadors one after another by presents, Demosthenes excepted, who being but one, opposed his colleagues to no manner of purpose.

In the mean time, Philip made his troops advance continually. Being arrived at Pheræ in Thessaly, he at last ratifies the treaty of peace, but refuses to include the Phocæans in it. When news was brought to Athens, that Philip had signed the treaty, it occasioned very great joy in that city, especially to those who were averse to the war, and dreaded the consequences of it. Among these was Isocrates ^t. He was a citizen very zealous for the commonwealth, whose prosperity he had very much at heart. The weakness of his voice, with a timidity natural to him, had prevented his appearing in public, and from mounting like others the tribunal of harangues. He had opened a school in Athens, in which he read rhetorical lectures, and taught youth eloquence with great reputation and success. However, he had not entirely renounced the care of public affairs ; and as others served their country *viva voce*, in the public assemblies, Isocrates contributed to it by his writings, in which he delivered his thoughts ; and these being soon made public, were very eagerly sought after.

On the present occasion, he wrote a piece of considerable length, which he addressed to Philip, with whom he held a

^t Isocrat. Orat. ad Philip.

correspondence, but in such terms as were worthy a good and faithful citizen. He was then very far advanced in years, being at least fourscore and eight. The scope of this discourse was to exhort Philip to take advantage of the peace he had just before concluded, in order to reconcile all the Greek nations, and afterwards to turn his arms against the king of Persia. The business was to engage in this plan four cities, on which all the rest depended, viz. Athens, Sparta, Thebes, and Argos. He confesses, that had Sparta or Athens been as powerful as formerly, he should have been far from making such a proposal, which he was sensible they would never approve; and which the pride of those two republics, whilst sustained and augmented by success, would reject with disdain. But that now, as the most powerful cities of Greece, wearied out and exhausted by long wars, and humbled in their turns by fatal reverses of fortune, have equally an interest in laying down their arms, and living in peace, pursuant to the example which the Athenians had begun to set them; the present is the most favourable opportunity Philip could have, to reconcile and unite the several cities of Greece.

In case he, Philip, should be so happy as to succeed in such a project, so glorious and beneficial a success would raise him above whatever had appeared most august in Greece. But this project, in itself, though it should not have so happy an effect as he might expect from it, would yet infallibly gain him the esteem, the affection, and confidence of all the nations of Greece; advantages infinitely preferable to the taking of cities, and all the conquests he might hope to obtain.

Such persons indeed, who were prejudicial against Philip, represent and exclaim against him as a crafty prince, who gives a specious *prétext* to his march, but, at the same time, has in reality no other object in view but the enslaving of Greece. Isocrates, either from a too great credulity, or from a desire of bringing Philip into his views, supposes, that rumours so injurious as these have no manner of foundation; it not being probable, that a prince who glories in being descended from Hercules, the deliverer of Greece, should think of invading and possessing himself of it. But these very reports, which are so capable of blackening his name, and of sullying all his glory, should prompt him to demonstrate the falsity of them in the presence of all Greece by the least suspicions of proofs, in leaving and maintaining each city in the full possession of its laws and liberties; in removing with the utmost

care all suspicions of partiality ; in not espousing the interest of one people against another ; in winning the confidence of all men by a noble disinterestedness, and an invariable love of justice ; in fine, by aspiring to no other title than that of the Reconciler of the divisions of Greece, a title far more glorious than that of Conqueror.

It is in the king of Persia's dominions he ought to merit those last titles. The conquest of it is open and sure to him, in case he could succeed in pacifying the troubles of Greece. He should call to mind that Agesilaus, with no other forces than those of Sparta, shook the Persian throne, and would infallibly have subverted it, had he not been recalled into Greece, by the intestine divisions which then broke out. The signal victory of the ten thousand under Clearchus, and their triumphant retreat in the sight of innumerable armies, prove what might be expected from the joint forces of the Macedonians and Greeks, when commanded by Philip against a prince inferior in every respect to him whom Cyrus had endeavoured to dethrone.

Isocrates concludes with declaring, that one would believe the gods had hitherto granted Philip so long a train of successes, with no other view but that he might be enabled to form and execute the glorious enterprise, the plan of which he had laid before him. He reduces the counsel he gave to three heads :—that this prince should govern his own empire with wisdom and justice ; should heal the divisions between the neighbouring nations and all Greece, without desiring to possess any part of it to himself ; and this being done, that he should turn his victorious arms against the country which from all ages had been the enemy of Greece, and had often vowed their destruction.—It must be confessed, that this is a most noble plan, and highly worthy of a great prince. But Isocrates had a very false idea of Philip, if he thought this monarch would ever put it in execution. Philip did not possess the equity, moderation, or disinterestedness, which such a project required. He really intended to attack Persia, but was persuaded, that it was his business to secure himself first of Greece, which indeed he was determined to do, not by services, but by force. He did not endeavour either to win over or persuade nations, but to subject and reduce them. As on his side he had no manner of regard for alliances and treaties, he judged of others by himself, and was for assuring himself of them by much stronger ties than those of friendship, gratitude, and sincerity.

As Demosthenes was better acquainted with the state of affairs than Isocrates, so he formed a truer judgment of Philip's designs. Upon his return from his embassy, he declares expressly, that he does not approve either of the discourse or the conduct of the Macedonian king, but that every thing is to be dreaded from him. On the contrary, *Æschines*, who had been bribed, assures the Athenians, that he had discovered the greatest candour and sincerity in the promises and proceedings of this king. He had engaged, that Thespiæ and Platæa should be repeopled in spite of the opposition of the Thebans; that in case he should proceed so far as to subject the Phocæans, he would preserve them, and not do them the least injury; that he would restore Thebes to the good order which had before been observed in it; that Oropus should be given up absolutely to the Athenians; and that, in lieu of Amphipolis, they should be put in possession of Eubœa. It was to no purpose that Demosthenes remonstrated to his fellow citizens, that Philip, notwithstanding all these glorious promises, endeavoured to possess himself, in an absolute manner, of Phocis; and that by abandoning it to him, they would betray the commonwealth, and give up all Greece into his hands. He was not heard, and the oration of *Æschines*, who engaged that Philip would make good his several promises, prevailed over that of Demosthenes.

^t These deliberations gave that prince an opportunity to possess himself of Thermopylæ, and to enter Phocis. Hitherto there had been no possibility of reducing the Phocæans; But Philip needed but appear, for the bare sound of his name filled them with terror. Upon the supposition that he was marching against a herd of sacrilegious wretches, not against common enemies, he ordered all his soldiers to wear crowns of laurel, and led them himself to battle, as under the conduct of the gods, whose honour they revenged. The instant they appeared, the Phocæans believed themselves overcome. Accordingly they sue for peace, and yield to Philip's mercy, who gives Phaleucus their leader leave to retire into Peloponnesus, with the eight thousand men in his service. In this manner, Philip, with very little trouble, engrossed all the honour of a long and bloody war, which had exhausted the forces of both parties. * This victory gained him incredible

^t A. M. 3658. Ant. J. C. 346. Diod. l. xvi. p. 455.

* Incredibile quantum ea res apud omnes nationes Philippo gloriæ dedit. Illum vindicem sacrilegij, illum ultorem religionum. Itaque Diis proximus habetur, per quam deorum majestas vindicata sit.—Justin. l. viii. c. 2.

honour throughout all Greece, and his glorious expedition was the topic of all conversation in that country. He was considered as the avenger of sacrilege, and the protector of religion; and they almost ranked him in the number of the gods, as the man who had defended their majesty with so much courage and success.

Philip, that he might not seem to do any thing by his own private authority, in an affair which concerned all Greece, assembles the council of the Amphictyons, and appoints them, for form-sake, supreme judges of the pains and penalties to which the Phocæans had rendered themselves obnoxious. Under the name of those judges, who were entirely at his devotion, he decrees that the cities of Phocis shall be destroyed, that they shall all be reduced to small towns of sixty houses each, and that those towns shall be at a certain distance one from the other; that those wretches, who have committed sacrilege, shall be absolutely proscribed; and that the rest shall not enjoy their possessions, but upon condition of paying an annual tribute, which shall continue to be levied till such time as the whole sums taken out of the temple of Delphos shall be repaid. Philip did not forget himself on this occasion. After he had subjected the rebellious Phocæans, he demanded that their seat in the council of the Amphictyons, which they had been declared to have forfeited, should be transferred to him. The Amphictyons, the instrument of whose vengeance he had now been, were afraid of refusing him, and accordingly admitted him a member of their body; a circumstance of the highest importance to him; as we shall see in the sequel, and of very dangerous consequence to all the rest of Greece. They also gave him the superintendence of the Pythian games, in conjunction with the Bœotians and Thessalians; because the Corinthians, who possessed this privilege hitherto, had rendered themselves unworthy of it, by sharing in the sacrilege of the Phocæans.

When news was brought to Athens of the treatment which the Phocæans had met with, the former perceived, but too late, the wrong step they had taken in refusing to comply with the counsels of Demosthenes, and in abandoning themselves blindly to the vain and idle promises of a traitor who had sold his country. Besides the shame and grief with which they were seized, for having failed in the obligations of the * confederacy, they found that they had betrayed their own in-

* With the Phocæans.

terests, in abandoning their allies. For Philip, by possessing himself of Phocis, was become master of Thermopylæ, which opened him the gates, and put into his hands the keys of Greece. ^u The Athenians, therefore, being alarmed upon their own account, gave orders that the women and children should be brought out of the country into the city ; that the walls should be repaired, and the Piræus fortified, in order to put themselves into a state of defence in case of an invasion.

The Athenians had no share in the decree by which Philip had been admitted among the Amphictyons. They perhaps had absented themselves purposely, that they might not authorize it by their presence ; or, which was more probable, Philip, in order to remove the obstacles, and avoid the remoras he might meet with in the execution of his design, assembled such of the Amphictyons only as were entirely at his devotion. In short, he conducted his intrigue so very artfully, that he obtained his ends. This election might be disputed as clandestine and irregular ; and therefore he required a confirmation of it from the people, who, as members of that body, had a right either to reject or ratify the new choice. Athens received the circular invitation ; but in an assembly of the people, which was called in order to deliberate on Philip's demand, several were of opinion, that no notice should be taken of it. Demosthenes, however, was of a contrary opinion ; and though he did not approve in any manner of the peace which had been concluded with Philip, he did not think it would be for their interest to infringe it in the present juncture ; since that could not be done without stirring up against the Athenians, both the new Amphictyon, and those who had elected him. His advice therefore was, that they should not expose themselves unseasonably to the dangerous consequences which might ensue, in case of their determinate refusal to consent to the almost unanimous decree of the Amphictyons ; and protested that it was their interest to submit, for fear of worse, to the present condition of the times ; that is, to comply with what it was not in their power to prevent. This is the subject of Demosthenes' discourse, entitled, *Oration on the Peace*. We may reasonably believe that his advice was followed.

^u Demost. de Fals. Legat. p. 312.

SECTION V.

PHILIP EXTENDS HIS CONQUESTS INTO ILLYRIA AND THRACE.
CHARACTER OF PHOCION. HIS SUCCESS AGAINST PHILIP.

AFTER Philip had settled every thing relating to the worship of the god ^u, and the security of the temple of Delphos, he returned into Macedonia with great glory, and the reputation of a religious prince and an intrepid conqueror. ^x Diodorus observes, that all those who had shared in profaning and plundering the temple, perished miserably, and came to a tragical end.

^y Philip, satisfied that he had opened himself a passage into Greece by his seizure of Thermopylæ; that he had subjected Phocis; had established himself one of the judges of Greece, by his new dignity of Amphictyon; and that he had gained the esteem and applause of all nations, by his zeal to revenge the honour of the deity; judged very prudently, that it would be proper for him to stop his career, in order to prevent all the states of Greece from taking arms against him, in case they should discover too soon his ambitious views with regard to that country. In order, therefore, to remove all suspicion, and to soothe the disquietudes which arose on that occasion, he turned his arms against Illyria, purposely to extend his frontiers on that side, and to keep always his troops in exercise by some new expedition.

The same motive prompted him afterwards to go over into Thrace. In the very beginning of his reign he had dispossessed the Athenians of several strong places in that country. Philip still carried on his conquests there. * Suidas observes, that before he took Olynthus, he had made himself master of thirty-two cities in Chalcis, which is part of Thrace. Chersonesus also was situated very commodiously for him. This was a very rich peninsula, in which there were a great number of powerful cities and fine pasture lands. It had formerly belonged to the Athenians. The inhabitants of it put themselves under the protection of Lacedæmon, after Lysander had destroyed Athens; but submitted again to their first masters, after Conon, the son of Timotheus, had reinstated that country. Cotys, king of Thrace, then dispossessed the Athe-

^u A. M. 3660. Ant. J. C. 344.

^x Diod. l. xvi. p. 456.

^y Idem. p. 463.

* In Καρας.

nians of Chersonesus; ^z but it was afterwards restored to them by Chersobleptus, son of Cotys, who finding himself unable to defend it against Philip, gave it up to them the fourth year of the 106th Olympiad; reserving, however, to himself Cardia, which was the most considerable city of the peninsula, and formed, as it were, the gate and entrance of it. ^a After Philip had deprived Chersobleptus of his kingdom, which happened the second year of the 109th Olympiad ^b, the inhabitants of Cardia, being afraid of falling into the hands of the Athenians, who claimed their city, which formerly belonged to them, submitted themselves to Philip, who did not fail to take them under his protection.

^c Diopithes, principal of the colony which the Athenians had sent into Chersonesus, looking upon this step in Philip as an act of hostility against the commonwealth, without waiting for an order, and fully persuaded that it would not be disavowed, marches suddenly into the dominions of that prince in the maritime part of Thrace, whilst he was carrying on an important war in Upper Thrace; plunders them before he had time to return and make head against him, and carries off a rich booty, all which he lodged safe in Chersonesus. Philip, not being able to revenge himself in the manner he could have wished, contented himself with making grievous complaints to the Athenians by letters, upon that account. Such as received pensions from him in Athens, served him but too effectually. These venal wretches loudly exclaimed against a conduct, which, if not prudent, was at least excusable. They declaim against Diopithes; impeach him of involving the state in war; accuse him of extortion and piracy; insist upon his being recalled, and pursue his condemnation with the utmost heat and violence.

Demosthenes, seeing at this juncture that the public warfare was inseparable from that of Diopithes, undertook his defence, which is the subject of his oration on Chersonesus. This Diopithes was father to Menander, the comic poet, whom Terence has copied so faithfully.

Diopithes was accused of oppressing the allies by his unjust exactions. However, Demosthenes lays the least stress on this, because it was personal; he nevertheless pleads his apology (transiently) from the example of all the generals, to whom the islands and cities of Asia Minor paid certain volun-

^z Diod. l. xvi. p. 434. ^a Ibid. p. 464. ^b A. M. 3669. Ant. J. C. 335.
c A. M. 3670. Ant. J. C. 334. Liban. in Demosth. p. 75.

tary contributions, by which they purchased security to their merchants, and procured convoys for them to guard them against the pirates. It is true, indeed, that a man may exercise oppressions, and ransom allies very unseasonably. But in this case, a bare decree *, an accusation in due form, a galley appointed to bring home the general recalled ; all this is sufficient to put a stop to abuses. But it is otherwise with regard to Philip's enterprises. These cannot be checked either by decrees or menaces ; and nothing will do this effectually, but raising troops and fitting out galleys.

“ Your orators,” says he, “ cry out eternally to you, that “ we must make choice either of peace or war ; but Philip “ does not leave this at our option, he who is daily meditat-“ ing some new enterprise against us. And can we doubt “ but it was he who broke the peace, unless it is pretended, “ that we have no reason to complain of him, as long as he “ shall forbear making any attempts on Attica and the Pi-“ ræus ? But it will then be too late for us to oppose him ; “ and it is now we must prepare strong barriers against his “ ambitious designs. You ought to lay it down as a certain “ maxim, O Athenians ! that it is you he aims at ; that he “ considers you as his most dangerous enemies ; that your “ ruin only can establish his tranquillity, and secure his con-“ quests ; and that whatever he is now projecting, is merely “ with the view of falling upon you, and of reducing Athens “ to a state of subjection. And, indeed, can any of you be so “ vastly simple, as to imagine that Philip is so greedy of a few “ paltry towns †, for what other name can we bestow on those “ he now attacks ? that he submits to fatigues, seasons, and “ dangers, merely for the sake of gaining them ; but that as “ for the harbours, the arsenals, the galleys, the silver mines, “ and the immense revenues of the Athenians, that he, I say, “ considers these with indifference, does not covet them in “ the least, but will suffer you to remain in quiet possession “ of them ?

“ What conclusion are we to draw from all that has been “ said ? Why, that so far from cashiering the army we have “ in Thrace, it must be considerably reinforced and strength-“ ened by new levies, in order that, as Philip has always one “ in readiness to oppress and enslave the Greeks, we, on our “ side, may always have one on foot, to defend and preserve “ them.” There is reason to believe, that Demosthenes' ad-“ vice was followed.

* It was called Πόρραιος.

† In Thrace.

^c The same year that this oration was spoke, Arymbas, king of Molossus or Epirus, died. He was son of Alcetas, and had a brother called Neoptolemus, whose daughter Olympias was married to Philip. This Neoptolemus, by the credit and authority of his son-in law, was raised so high as to share the regal power with his elder brother, to whom only it lawfully belonged. This first unjust action was followed by a greater. For after the death of Arymbas ^{*}, Philip played his part so well, either by his intrigues or his menaces, that the Molossians expelled Æcidas, son and lawful successor to Arymbas, and established Alexander, son of Neoptolemus, sole king of Epirus. This prince, who was not only brother-in-law, but son-in-law to Philip, whose daughter Cleopatra he had married, as will be observed in the sequel, carried his arms into Italy, and there died. After this, Æcidas re-ascended the throne of his ancestors, reigned alone in Epirus, and transmitted the crown to his son, the famous Pyrrhus, so famous in the Roman history, and second cousin to Alexander the Great, Alcetas being grandfather to both these monarchs.

Philip, after his expedition in Illyria and Thrace, turned his views towards Peloponnesus. ^d Terrible commotions prevailed at that time in this part of Greece. Lacedæmonia assumed the sovereignty of it, with no other right than of being the strongest. Argos and Messene, being oppressed, had recourse to Philip. He had just before concluded a peace with the Athenians, who, on the faith of their orators, who had been bribed by this prince, imagined he was going to break with the Thebans. However, so far from that, after having subdued Phocis, he divided the conquest with them. The Thebans embraced with joy the favourable opportunity which presented itself, of opening him a gate through which he might pass into Peloponnesus, in which country the inveterate hatred they bore to Sparta, made them foment divisions perpetually, and continue the war. They therefore solicited Philip to join with them, the Messenians and Argives, in order to humble in concert the power of Lacedæmonia.

This prince readily came into an alliance which suited with his views. He proposed to the Amphictyons, or rather dictated to them, the decree which ordained that Lacedæmonia should permit Argos and Messene to enjoy an entire indepen-

^c Diod. l. xvi. p. 465.

^d Demosth. in Philip. ii. Liban. in Demosth.

* Justin, book viii. chap. vi. curtails the genealogy of this Prince, and confounds this succession.

dence, pursuant to the tenor of a treaty lately concluded ; and, upon pretence of not exposing the authority of the states-general of Greece, he ordered at the same time a large body of troops to march that way. Lacedæmonia, being justly alarmed, requested the Athenians to succour them ; and by an embassy pressed earnestly for the concluding of such an alliance as their common safety might require. The several powers, whose interest it was to prevent this alliance from being concluded, used their utmost endeavours to gain their ends. Philip represented, by his ambassadors to the Athenians, that it would be very wrong in them to declare war against him ; that if he did not break with the Thebans, his not doing so was no infraction of the treaties ; that before he could have broke his word in this particular, he must first have given it ; and that the treaties themselves proved manifestly, that he had not made any promise to that purpose. Philip indeed said true, with regard to the written articles and the public stipulations ; but Æschines had made this promise by word of mouth in his name. On the other side, the ambassadors of Thebes, of Argos and Messene, were also very urgent with the Athenians ; and reproached them with having already secretly favoured the Lacedæmonians but too much, who were the professed enemies of the Thebans, and the tyrants of Peloponnesus.

^e But Demosthenes, insensible to all these solicitations, and mindful of nothing but the real interest of his country, ascended the tribunal, in order to enforce the negotiations of the Lacedæmonians. He reproached the Athenians, according to his usual custom, with supineness and indolence. He exposes the ambitious designs of Philip, which he still pursues ; and declares that they aim at no less than the conquest of all Greece. “ You excel,” says he to them, “ both you and he, in that circumstance which is the object of your application and your cares. You speak in a better manner than him, and he acts better than you. The experience of the past ought at least to open your eyes, and make you more suspicious and circumspect with regard to him : but this serves no other purpose than to lull you asleep. At this time his troops are marching towards Peloponnesus ; he is sending money to it, and his arrival in person, at the head of a powerful army, is expected every moment. Do you think that you will be secure, after he shall have pos-

“ sessed himself of the territories around you? Art has invented, for the security of cities, various methods of defence, “ as ramparts, walls, ditches, and the like works; but nature “ surrounds the wise with a common bulwark, which covers “ them on all sides, and provides for the security of states. “ What is this bulwark? It is diffidence.” He concludes with exhorting the Athenians to rouse from their lethargy, to send immediate succour to the Lacedæmonians; and, above all, to punish directly all such domestic traitors as have deceived the people, and brought their present calamities upon them by spreading false reports, and employing captious assurances.

The Athenians and Philip did not yet come to an open rupture; whence we may conjecture, that the latter delayed his invasion of Peloponnesus, in order that he might not have too many enemies upon his hands at the same time. However, he did not sit still, but turned his views another way. Philip had a long time considered Eubœa as proper, from its situation, to favour the designs he meditated against Greece; and, in the very beginning of his reign, had attempted to possess himself of it. He indeed set every engine to work at that time, in order to seize upon that island, which he called the Shackles of Greece. But it nearly concerned the Athenians, on the other side, not to suffer it to fall into the hands of an enemy; especially as it might be joined to the continent of Attica by a bridge. However, that people, according to their usual custom, continued indolent whilst Philip pursued his conquests. The latter, who was continually attentive and vigilant over his interest, endeavoured to carry on an intelligence in the island, and, by dint of presents, bribed those who had the greatest authority in it. ^f At the request of certain of the inhabitants, he sent some troops privately thither; possessed himself of several strong places; dismantled Porthmos, a very important fortress in Eubœa, and established three tyrants or kings over the country. He also seized upon Oreum, one of the strongest cities of Eubœa, of which it possessed the fourth part; and established five tyrants over it, who exercised an absolute authority there in his name.

^g Upon this, Plutarch of Eretria sent a deputation to the Athenians, conjuring them to come and deliver that island, every part of which was upon the point of submitting entirely to the Macedonians. The Athenians, upon this, sent some

^f Demosth. Philip. iii. p. 93.

^g Plut. in Phoc. p. 746, 747.

troops under the command of Phocion. ^h That general had already acquired great reputation, and will have, in the sequel, a great share in the administration of affairs, both foreign and domestic. He had studied in the academy under Plato, and afterwards under Xenocrates, and in that school had formed his morals and his life upon the model of the most austere virtue. We are told, that no Athenian ever saw him laugh, weep, or go to the public baths. Whenever he went into the country, or was in the army, he always walked ^{*} barefoot, and without a cloak, unless the weather happened to be insupportably cold; so that the soldiers used to say, laughing, " See ! Phocion has got his cloak on ; it is a sign of a hard winter."

He knew that eloquence is a necessary quality in a statesman, for enabling him to execute happily the great designs he may undertake during his administration. He therefore applied himself particularly to the attainment of it, and with great success. Persuaded that it is with words as with coins, of which the most esteemed are those that with less weight have most intrinsic value ; Phocion had formed himself to a lively, close, concise style, which expressed a great many ideas in few words. Appearing one day absent in an assembly, where he was preparing to speak, he was asked the reason of it : " I am considering," says he, " whether it is not possible for me to retrench any part of the discourse I am to make." He was a strong reasoner, and by that means carried every thing against the most sublime eloquence ; which made Demosthenes, who had often experienced this, whenever he appeared to harangue the public, say, " There is the axe which cuts away the effects of my words." One would imagine, that this kind of eloquence is absolutely contrary to the genius of the vulgar, who require the same things to be often repeated, and with greater extent, in order to their being the more intelligible. But it was not so with the Athenians ; lively, penetrating, and lovers of a hidden sense, they valued themselves upon understanding an orator at half a word, and really understood him. Phocion adapted himself to their taste, and in this point surpassed even Demosthenes ; which is saying a great deal.

Phocion, observing that those persons who at this time were concerned in the administration, had divided it into mi-

^h Ibid. p. 743, 745.

* Socrates used often to walk in that manner.

litary and civil ; that one part, as Eubulus, Aristophon, Demosthenes, Lycurgus, and Hyperides, confined themselves merely to haranguing the people, and proposing decrees ; that the other part, as Diopithes, Leosthenes, and Chares, advanced themselves by military employments ; he chose rather to imitate the conduct of Solon, Aristides, and Pericles, who had known how to unite both talents, the arts of government with military valour. Whilst he was in employment, peace and tranquillity were always his object, as being the end of every wise government ; and yet he commanded in more expeditions, not only than all the generals of his time, but even than all his predecessors. He was honoured with the supreme command five-and-forty times, without having once asked or made interest for it ; and frequently appointed to command the armies, in his absence. The world was astonished, that, being of so severe a turn of mind, and so great an enemy to flattery of every kind, how it was possible for him in a manner to fix in his own favour the natural levity and inconstancy of the Athenians, though he frequently used to oppose very strenuously their will and caprice, without regard to their captiousness and delicacy. The idea they had formed to themselves of his probity and zeal for the public good, extinguished every other opinion of him ; and that, according to Plutarch, generally made his eloquence so efficacious and triumphant.

I thought it necessary to give the reader this idea of Phocion's character, because frequent mention will be made of him in the sequel. It was to him the Athenians gave the command of the forces they sent to the aid of Plutarch of Eretria. But this traitor repaid his benefactors with ingratitude, set up the standard against them, and endeavoured openly to repulse the very army he had requested. However, Phocion was not at a loss how to act upon this unforeseen perfidy ; for he pursued his enterprise, won a battle, and drove Plutarch from Eretria.

After this great success, Phocion returned to Athens ; but he was no sooner gone, than all the allies regretted the absence of his goodness and justice. Though the professed enemy of every kind of oppression and extortion, he knew how to insinuate himself into the minds of men with art ; and at the same time that he made others fear him, he had the rare talent of making them love him still more. He one day made Chabrias a fine answer, who appointed him to go with ten light vessels to raise the tribute which certain cities, in

alliance with Athens, paid every year. “To what purpose,” says he, “is such a squadron? Too strong, if I am only to visit allies; but too weak, if I am to fight enemies.” The Athenians knew very well, by the consequences, the signal service which Phocion’s great capacity, valour, and experience, had done them in the expedition of Eubœa. For Molossus, who succeeded him, and who took upon himself the command of the troops after that general, was so unsuccessful, that he fell into the hands of the enemy.

ⁱ Philip, who did not lay aside the design he had formed of conquering all Greece, changed the attack, and sought for an opportunity of distressing Athens another way. He knew that this city, from the barrenness of Attica, stood in greater want of foreign corn than any other. To dispose at discretion of their transports, and by that means starve Athens, he marches towards Thrace, from whence that city imported the greatest part of its provisions, with an intention to besiege Perinthus and Byzantium. To keep his kingdom in obedience during his absence, he left his son Alexander in it, with sovereign authority, though he was but fifteen years old. This young prince gave, even at that time, some proofs of his courage; having defeated certain neighbouring states, subject to Macedonia, who had considered the king’s absence as a very proper time for executing the design they had formed of revolting. This happy success of Alexander’s first expedition was highly agreeable to his father, and at the same time an earnest of what might be expected from him. But fearing lest, allured by this dangerous bait, he should abandon himself inconsiderately to his vivacity and fire, he sent for him, in order to become his master, and form him in person for the trade of war.

Demosthenes still continued his invectives against the indolence of the Athenians, whom nothing could rouse from their lethargy; and also against the avarice of the orators, who, bribed by Philip, amused the people upon the specious pretence of a peace he had sworn to, and however violated openly every day, by the enterprises he formed against the commonwealth. This is the subject of his orations, called the Philippics.

^k “Whence comes it,” says he, “that all the Greeks formerly panted so strongly after liberty, and now run so

ⁱ Demosth. pro Ctes. p. 486, 487. A. M. 3664. Ant. J. C. 340.

^k Philip. iii. p. 90.

“ eagerly into servitude? The reason is, because there prevailed at that time among the people what prevails no longer among us; that which triumphed over the riches of the Persians; which maintained the freedom of Greece; which never acted inconsistently on any occasion either by sea or by land; but which, being now extinguished in every heart, has entirely ruined our affairs, and subverted the constitution of Greece. It is that common hatred, that general detestation, in which they held every person who had a soul abject enough to sell himself to any man who desired either to enslave, or even corrupt Greece. In those times, to accept of a present was a capital crime, which never failed of being punished with death. Neither their orators nor their generals exercised the scandalous traffic, now become so common in Athens, where a price is set upon every thing, and where all things are sold to the highest bidder.

¹ “ In those happy times, the Greeks lived in perfect union, founded on the love of the public good, and the desire of preserving and defending the common liberty. But in this age, the states abandon one another, and give themselves up to reciprocal distrusts and jealousies. All of them without exception, Argives, Thebans, Corinthians, Lacedæmonians, Arcadians, and ourselves no less than others; all, all, I say, from a separate interest; and this it is that renders the common enemy so powerful.

^m “ The safety of Greece consists therefore in our uniting together against this common enemy, if that be possible. But at least, as to what concerns each of us in particular, this incontestable maxim it is absolutely necessary to hold, that Philip attacks you actually at this time; that he has infringed the peace; that by seizing upon all the fortresses around you, he opens and prepares the way for attacking you yourselves; and that he considers us as his mortal enemies, because he knows that we only are able to oppose the ambitious designs he entertains of grasping universal power.

ⁿ “ These consequently we must oppose with all imaginable vigour; and for that purpose must ship off, without loss of time, the necessary aids for Chersonesus and Byzantium; you must provide instantly whatever necessaries your generals may require; in fine, you must concert together on

¹ Philipp. iv. p. 102.

^m Ibid. iii. p. 97.

ⁿ Ibid. iii. p. 98.

“ such means as are most proper to save Greece, which is
 “ now threatened with the utmost danger. ”^o Though all the
 “ rest of the Greeks, O Athenians ! should bow their necks to
 “ the yoke, yet you ought to persist in fighting always for
 “ the cause of liberty. After such preparations, made in pre-
 “ sence of all Greece, let us excite all other states to second
 “ us ; let us acquaint every people with our resolutions, and
 “ send ambassadors to Peloponnesus, Rhodes, Chio, and espe-
 “ cially to the king of Persia ; for it is his interest, as well as
 “ ours, to check the career of that man.”

The sequel will shew, that Demosthenes’ advice was followed almost exactly. At the time he was declaiming in this manner, Philip was marching towards Chersonesus. He opened the campaign with the siege of Perinthus, a considerable city of Thrace. ^p The Athenians having prepared a body of troops to succour that place, the orators prevailed so far by their speeches, that Chares was appointed commander of the fleet. This general was universally despised, for his manners, oppressions, and mean capacity ; but interest and credit supplied the place of merit on this occasion, and faction prevailed against the counsels of the most prudent and virtuous men, as happens but too often. The success answered the rashness of the choice which had been made : ^q but what could be expected from a general, whose abilities were as small as his voluptuousness was great ; who took along with him, in his military expeditions, a band of musicians, both vocal and instrumental, who were in his pay, which was levied out of the monies appointed for the service of the fleet ! In short, the cities themselves, to whose succour he was sent, would not suffer him to come into their harbours ; so that, his fidelity being universally suspected, he was obliged to sail from coast to coast, buying the allies, and contemned by the enemy.

^r In the mean time Philip was carrying on the siege of Perinthus with great vigour. He had thirty thousand chosen troops, and military engines of all kinds without number. He had raised towers eight cubits high, which far out posted those of the Perinthians. He therefore had a great advantage in battering their walls. On one side he shook the foundations of them by subterraneous mines ; and on the other, he beat down whole angles of it with his battering-rams : nor did the besieged make a less vigorous resistance ; for as soon

^o Ibid. p. 94. 95.

^q Athen. l. xii. p. 530.

^p Plutarch. in Phoc. p. 747.

^r Diod. l. xvi. p. 466.—468.

as one breach was made, Philip was surprised to see another wall behind it, just raised. The inhabitants of Byzantium sent them all the succours necessary. The Asiatic satrapæ, or governors, by the king of Persia's order, whose assistance, we observed, the Athenians had requested, likewise threw forces into the place. Philip, in order to deprive the besieged of the succours the Byzantines gave them, went in person to form the siege of that important city, leaving his army to carry on that of Perinthus.

He was desirous to appear, in outward shew, very tender of giving umbrage to the Athenians, whose power he dreaded, and whom he endeavoured to amuse with fine words. At the times we now speak of, Philip, by way of precaution against their disgust of his measures, wrote a letter to them, in which he endeavours to take off the edge of their resentment, by reproaching them in the strongest terms, for their infraction of the several treaties, which he boasts he had observed very religiously; this piece he interspersed very artfully, for he was a great master of eloquence, with such complaints and menaces, as are best calculated to restrain mankind, either from a principle of fear or shame. This letter is a masterpiece in the original. A majestic and persuasive vivacity shines in every part of it; a strength and justness of reasoning sustained throughout; a plain and unaffected declaration of facts, each of which is followed by its natural consequence; a delicate irony; in fine, that noble and concise style so proper for crowned heads. We might here very justly apply to Philip what was said of Cæsar *, "That he handled the pen "as well as he did the sword."

This letter is so long, and besides is filled with so great a number of private facts, though each of these are important, that it will not admit of being reduced to extracts, or to have a connected abridgement made of it. I shall therefore cite but one passage, by which the reader may form a judgement of the rest.

"At the time of our most open ruptures," says Philip to the Athenians, "you went no farther than to fit out privateers against me; to seize and sell the merchants that came to trade in my dominions; to favour any party that opposed my measures; and to infest the places subject to me by your hostilities: but now you carry hatred and injustice to such prodigious lengths, as even to send ambassadors to the

* Eodem animo dixit, quo bellavit.—Quintil. l. x. c. 1.

“ Persian, in order to excite him to declare war against me.
“ This must appear a most astonishing circumstance ; for
“ before he had made himself master of Egypt and Phœnicia,
“ you had resolved, in the most solemn manner, that in case
“ he should attempt any new enterprise, you then would in-
“ vite me, in common with the rest of the Greeks, to unite
“ our forces against him. And, nevertheless, at this time you
“ carry your hatred to such an height, as to negociate an al-
“ liance with him against me. I have been told, that former-
“ ly your fathers imputed to Pisistratus, as an unpardonable
“ crime, his having requested the succour of the Persians
“ against the Greeks, and yet you do not blush to commit a
“ thing which you were perpetually condemning in the person
“ of your tyrants.”

Philip's letter did him as much service as a good manifesto, and gave his pensioners in Athens a fine opportunity of justifying him to the people, who were very desirous of easing themselves of political inquietudes ; and greater enemies to expence and labour, than to usurpation and tyranny. The boundless ambition of Philip, and the eloquent zeal of Demosthenes, were perpetually clashing. There was neither a peace nor a truce between them. The one covered very industriously, with a specious pretence, his enterprises and infractions of treaty ; and the other endeavoured as strongly to reveal the true motives of them to a people, whose resolutions had a great influence with respect to the fate of Greece. On this occasion Demosthenes was sensible how vastly necessary it was to erase, as soon as possible, the first impressions which the perusal of this letter might make on the minds of the Athenians. Accordingly, that zealous patriot immediately ascends the tribunal. He at first speaks in an affirmative tone of voice, which is often more than half, and sometimes the whole proof in the eyes of the multitude. He affixes to the heavy complaints of Philip the idea of an express declaration of war ; then, to animate his fellow-citizens, to fill them with confidence in the resolution with which he inspires them, he assures them, that all things portend the ruin of Philip ; Gods, Greeks, Persians, Macedonians, and even Philip himself. Demosthenes does not observe, in this harangue, the exact rules of refutation ; he avoids contesting facts, which might have been disadvantageous, so happily had Philip disposed them, and so well had he supported them by proofs that seemed unanswerable.

^s The conclusion which this orator draws from all his arguments is this: “ Convinced by these truths, O Athenians ! “ and strongly persuaded that we can no longer be allowed to “ affirm that we enjoy peace, for Philip has now declared war “ against us by his letter, and has long done the same by “ his conduct, you ought not to spare either the public trea-“ sure, or the possessions of private persons ; but when occa-“ sion shall require, haste to your respective standards, and “ set abler generals at your head than those you have hither-“ to employed. For no one among you ought to imagine, “ that the same men, who have ruined your affairs, will have “ abilities to restore them to their former happy situation. “ Think how infamous it is, that a man from Macedon should “ contemn dangers to such a degree, that, merely to aggrandize “ his empire, he should rush into the midst of combats, and “ return from battle covered with wounds ; and that Athe-“ nians, whose hereditary right is to obey no man, but to “ impose laws on others sword in hand ; that Athenians, I “ say, merely through dejection of spirit and indolence, should “ degenerate from the glory of their ancestors, and abandon “ the interest of their country.”

At the very time they were examining this affair, news was brought of the shameful reception Chares had met with from the allies, which raised a general murmur among the people, who now, fired with indignation, greatly repented their having sent aid to the Byzantines. Phocion then rose up and told the people, that they ought not to be exasperated at the “ diffidence of the allies, but at the conduct of the generals “ who had occasioned it. For it is these, continued he, who “ render you odious and formidable even to those who can-“ not save themselves from destruction without your assist-“ ance.” And indeed Chares, as we have already observed, was a general without valour or military knowledge. His whole merit consisted in having gained a great ascendant over the people by the haughty and bold air he assumed. His presumption concealed his incapacity from himself ; and a sordid principle of avarice made him commit as many blunders as enterprises.

^t The people, struck with this discourse, immediately changed their opinion, and appointed Phocion himself to command a body of fresh troops, in order to succour the allies upon the Hellespont. This choice contributed chiefly to the

^s Plut. in Phoc. p. 748.

^t A. M. 3665. Ant. J. C. 339.

preservation of Byzantium. Phocion had already acquired great reputation, not only for his valour and ability in the art of war, but much more for his probity and disinterestedness. The Byzantines, on his arrival, opened their gates to him with joy, and lodged his soldiers in their houses, as their own brothers and children. The Athenian officers and soldiers, struck with the confidence reposed in them, behaved with the utmost prudence and modesty, and were entirely irreproachable in their conduct. Nor were they less admired for their courage; and in all the attacks they sustained, discovered the utmost intrepidity, which danger seemed only to improve. ^u Phocion's prudence, seconded by the bravery of his troops, soon forced Philip to abandon his design upon Byzantium and Perinthus. He was beat out of the Hellespont, which diminished very much his fame and glory, for he hitherto had been thought invincible, and nothing able to oppose him. Phocion took some of his ships, recovered many fortresses which he had garrisoned, and having made several descents into different parts of his territories, he plundered all the open country, till a body of forces assembling to check his progress, he was obliged to retire, after having been wounded.

* The Byzantines and Perinthians testified their gratitude to the people of Athens, by a very honourable decree, preserved by Demosthenes in one of his orations, the substance of which I shall repeat here. "Under Bosphorus the pontiff, Demagetus ^{*}, after having desired leave of the senate to speak, said in a full assembly, Inasmuch as in times past the continual benevolence of the people of Athens towards the Byzantines and Perinthians, united by alliance and their common origin, has never failed upon any occasion; that this benevolence, so often signalized, has lately displayed itself, when Philip of Macedon, who had taken up arms to destroy Byzantium and Perinthus, battered our walls, burned our country, cut down our forests; that in a season of so great calamity, this beneficent people succoured us with a fleet of an hundred and twenty sail, furnished with provisions, arms, and forces; that they saved us from the greatest dangers; in fine, that they restored us to the quiet possession of our government, our laws, and our tombs; the Byzantines and Perinthians grant, by decree, the Athenians to

^u Diod. l. xvi. p. 368.

^x Demosth. pro Ctes. p. 487, 488.

^{*} He probably was the chief magistrate.

" settle in the countries belonging to Perinthus and Byzantium ;
 " to marry in them, to purchase lands, and to enjoy all the
 " prerogatives of citizens ; they also grant them a distinguish-
 " ed place at public shows, and the right of sitting both in the
 " senate and the assembly of the people, next to the pontiffs ;
 " and further, that every Athenian who shall think proper to
 " settle in either of the two cities above mentioned, shall be
 " exempted from taxes of any kind ; that in the harbours,
 " three statues of sixteen cubits each shall be set up, which
 " statues shall represent the people of Athens crowned by
 " those of Byzantium and Perinthus ; and besides, that pre-
 "sents shall be sent to the four solemn games of Greece, and
 " that the crown we have decreed to the Athenians, shall
 " there be proclaimed ; so that the same ceremony may ac-
 " quaint all the Greeks, both with the magnanimity of the
 " Athenians, and the gratitude of the Perinthians and Byzan-
 " tines."

The inhabitants of Chersonesus made a like decree, the tenor of which is as follows : " Among the nations inhabiting the Chersonesus, the people of Sestos, of Ælia, of Madytis, and of Alopecconnesus, decree to the people and senate of Athens, a crown of gold of sixty talents * ; and erect two altars, the one to the goddess of gratitude, and the other to the Athenians, for their having, by the most glorious of all benefactions, freed from the yoke of Philip the people of Chersonesus, and restored them to the possession of their country, their laws, their liberty, and their temples : an act of beneficence, which they shall fix eternally in their memories, and never cease to acknowledge to the utmost of their power. All which they have resolved in full senate."

x Philip, after having been forced to raise the siege of Byzantium, marched against Atheas, king of Scythia, from whom he had received some personal cause of discontent, and took his son with him in this expedition. Though the Scythians had a very numerous army, he defeated them without any difficulty. He got a very great booty, which consisted not in gold or silver, the use and value of which the Scythians were not as yet so unhappy as to know ; but in cattle, in horses, and a great number of women and children.

At his return from Scythia, the Triballi, a people of Moesia, disputed the pass with him, laying claim to part of

x Justin. l. ix. c. 2, 3.

* Sixty thousand French crowns.

the plunder he was carrying off. Philip was forced to come to a battle, and a very bloody one was fought, in which great numbers on each side were killed on the spot. The king himself was wounded in the thigh, and with the same thrust had his horse killed under him. Alexander flew to his father's aid, and, covering him with his shield, killed or put to flight all who attacked him.

SECTION VI.

PHILIP APPOINTED GENERALISSIMO OF THE GREEKS. THE ATHENIANS AND THEBANS UNITE AGAINST HIM. HE GAINS A BATTLE AT CHÆRONEA.

THE Athenians had considered the siege of Byzantium as an absolute rupture, and an open declaration of war. ^y The king of Macedon, who was apprehensive of the consequences of it, and dreaded very much the power of the Athenians, whose hatred he had drawn upon himself, made overtures of peace, in order to soften their resentments. Phocion, little suspicious, and apprehensive of the uncertainty of military events, was of opinion that the Athenians should accept his offers. But Demosthenes, who had studied more than Phocion the genius and character of Philip, and was persuaded that, according to his usual custom, his only view was to amuse and impose upon the Athenians, prevented their listening to his pacific proposals.

^z It was very much the interest of this prince to terminate immediately a war, which gave him great cause of disquiet, and particularly distressed him by the frequent depredations of the Athenian privateers, who infested the sea bordering upon his dominions. They entirely interrupted all commerce, and prevented his subjects from exporting any of the products of Macedonia into other countries; or foreigners from importing into his kingdom the merchandise it wanted. Philip was sensible that it would be impossible for him to put an end to this war, and free himself from the inconveniences attending it, but by exciting the Thessalians and Thebans to break with Athens. He could not yet attack that city, with any advantage, either by sea or land. His naval forces were at this time inferior to those of that republic; and the passage by land to

^y A. M. 3666. Ant. J. C. 338. Plut. in Phoc. p. 748.

^z Demosth. pro Ctes. p. 497, 498.

Attica would be shut against him, as long as the Thessalians should refuse to join him, and the Thebans should oppose his passage. If, with the view of prompting them to declare war against Athens, he should ascribe no other motive for it than his private enmity, he was very sensible that it would have no effect with either of the states: but that in case he could once prevail with them to appoint him their chief, upon the specious pretence of espousing their common cause, he then hoped it would be easier for him to make them acquiesce with his desires, either by persuasion or deceit.

This was his aim, the smallest traces of which it highly concerned him to conceal, in order not to give the least opportunity for any one to suspect the design he meditated. In every city he retained pensioners, who sent him notice of whatever passed, and by that means were of great use to him, and were accordingly well paid. By their machinations he raised divisions among the Ozolæ of Locris, otherwise called the Locrians of Amphissa, from their capital city: their country was situated between Ætolia and Phocis; and they were accused of having profaned a spot of sacred ground, by ploughing up the Cirrhæan field, which lay very near the temple of Delphos. The reader has seen that a like cause of complaint occasioned the first sacred war. The affair was to be heard before the Amphycents. Had Philip employed in his own favour any known or suspicious agent, he plainly saw that the Thebans and the Thessalians would infallibly suspect his design, in which case all parties would not fail to stand upon their guard.

But Philip acted more artfully, by carrying on his designs by persons in the dark, which entirely prevented their taking air. By the assiduity of his pensioners in Athens, he had caused Æschines, who was entirely devoted to him, to be appointed one of the Pylagori, by which name those were called who were sent by the several Greek cities to the assembly of the Amphycents. The instant he came into it, he acted the more effectually in favour of Philip, as a citizen of Athens, which had declared openly against this prince, was less suspected. Upon his remonstrances, a descent was appointed, in order to visit the spot of ground, of which the Amphissians had hitherto been considered as the lawful possessors; but which they now were accused of usurping, by a most sacrilegious act.

Whilst the Amphycents were visiting the spot of ground in question, the Locrians fall upon them unawares, pour in a

shower of darts, and oblige them to fly. So open an outrage drew resentment and war upon these Locrians. Cottyphus, one of the Amphycctions, took the field with the army intended to punish the rebels; but many not coming to the rendezvous, the army retired without acting. In the following assembly of the Amphycctions, the affair was debated very seriously. It was there Æschines exerted all his eloquence, and, by a studied oration, proved to the deputies, or representatives, either that they must assess themselves to support foreign soldiers and punish the rebels, or else elect Philip for their general. The deputies, to save their commonwealth the expence, and secure them from the dangers and fatigues of a war, resolved on the latter. Upon which, by a public decree, “ambassadors were sent to Philip of Macedon, who, in the name of Apollo and the Amphycctions, implore his assistance; “beseech him not to neglect the cause of that god, which “the impious Amphissians make their sport; and notify to “him, that for this purpose all the Greeks, of the council of “the Amphycctions, elect him for their general, with full “power to act as he shall think proper.”

This was the honour to which Philip had long aspired, the aim of all his views, and end of all the engines he had set at work till that time. He therefore did not lose a moment, but immediately assembles his forces, and marches, by a feint, towards the Cirrhaean field; forgetting now both the Cirrhaeans and Locrians, who had only served as a specious pretext for his journey, and for whom he had not the least regard; he possessed himself of Elatæa, the greatest city in Phocis, standing on the river Cephissus; and the most happily situated for the design he meditated, of awing the Thebans, who now began to open their eyes, and to perceive the danger they were in.

^a This news being brought to Atheus in the evening, spread a terror through every part of it. The next morning an assembly was summoned, when the herald, as was the usual custom, cries with a loud voice, “Who among you will ascend the tribunal?” ^b However, no person appears for that purpose; upon which he repeated the invitation several times, but still no one rose up, though all the generals and orators were present; and although the common voice of the country, with repeated cries, conjured somebody to propose a salutary counsel: for, says Demosthenes, from whom these par-

^a Demosth. pro Ctes. p. 501.—504.

^b Diod. l. xvi. p. 474.—477.

ticulars are taken, whenever the voice of the herald speaks in the name of the laws, it ought to be considered as the voice of the country. During this general silence, occasioned by the universal alarm with which the minds of the Athenians were seized, Demosthenes, animated at the sight of the great danger his fellow-citizens were in, ascends the tribunal for harangues, and endeavours to revive the drooping Athenians, and inspire them with sentiments suitable to the present conjuncture, and the necessities of the state. Excelling equally in politics and eloquence, by the extent of his superior genius, he immediately forms a counsel, which includes all that was necessary for the Athenians to act both at home and abroad, by land as well as by sea.

The people of Athens were under a double error with regard to the Thebans, which he therefore endeavours to show. They imagined that people were inviolably attached, both from interest and inclination, to Philip; but he proves to them, that the majority of the Thebans waited only an opportunity to declare against that monarch; and that the conquest of Elatæa had apprised them of what they are to expect from him. On the other side, they looked upon the Thebans as their most ancient and most dangerous enemies, and therefore could not prevail with themselves to afford them the least aid in the extreme danger with which they were threatened. It must be confessed, that there had always been a declared enmity between the Thebans and Athenians, which rose so high, that Pindar was sentenced by the Thebans to pay a considerable fine, for * having applauded the city of Athens in one of his poems. Demosthenes, notwithstanding that prejudice had taken such deep root in the minds of the people, yet declares in their favour; and proves to the Athenians, that their own interest lies at stake; and that they could not please Philip more than in leaving Thebes to his mercy, the ruin of which would open him a free passage to Athens.

Demosthenes afterwards discovers to them the views of Philip in taking that city. “ What then is his design, and “ wherefore did he possess himself of Elatæa? He is desir- “ ous, on one side, to encourage those of his faction in “ Thebes, and to inspire them with greater boldness, by ap- “ pearing at the head of his army, and advancing his power

* He had called Athens a flourishing and renowned city, the bulwark of Greece, Αἴπαραι καὶ Αολίμοι, Ἐλλάδος ἔρεισμα, κλειναι Ἀθῆνας. But the Athenians not only indemnified the poet, and sent him money to pay his fine, but even erected a statue in honour of him.

“ and forces around that city. On the other side, he would “ strike unexpectedly the opposite faction, and stun them in “ such a manner, as may enable him to get the better of the “ other by terror or force. Philip,” says he, “ prescribes “ the manner in which you ought to act, by the example he “ himself sets you. Assemble, under Eleusis, a body of Athe- “ nians of an age fit for service, and support these by your “ cavalry. By this step you will shew all Greece, that you “ are ready armed to defend yourselves; and inspire your “ partisans in Thebes with such resolution, as may enable “ them both to support their reasons, and to make head “ against the opposite party, when they shall perceive, that as “ those who sell their country to Philip, have forces in Elatæa “ ready to assist them upon occasion; in like manner, those “ who were willing to fight for the preservation of their own “ liberties, have you at their gates ready to defend them in “ case of an invasion.” Demosthenes added, that it would be proper for them to send ambassadors immediately to the different states of Greece, and to the Thebans in particular, to engage them in a common league against Philip.

This prudent and salutary counsel was followed in every particular; and in consequence thereof a decree was formed, in which, after enumerating the several enterprises by which Philip had infringed the peace, it continues thus: “ For this “ reason the senate and people of Athens, calling to mind the “ magnanimity of their ancestors, who preferred the liberty “ of Greece to the safety of their own country, have resolved, “ that after offering up prayers and sacrifices, to call down “ the assistance of the tutelar gods and demi-gods of Athens “ and Attica, two hundred sail of ships shall be put to sea. “ That the admiral of their fleet shall go, as soon as possible, “ and cruise on the other side of the pass of Thermopylæ; “ at the same time, that the land-generals, at the head of a “ considerable body of horse and foot, shall march and en- “ camp in the neighbourhood of Eleusis. That ambassadors “ shall likewise be sent to the other Greeks; but first to the “ Thebans, as these are most threatened by Philip. Let them “ be exhorted not to dread Philip in any manner, but to main- “ tain courageously their particular independence, and the “ common liberty of all Greece. And let it be declared to “ them, that though formerly some motives of discontent “ might have cooled the reciprocal friendship between them “ and us, the Athenians, however, obliterating the remem- “ brance of past transactions, will now assist them with men,

“ money, darts, and all kinds of military weapons ; persuaded, “ that such as are natives of Greece may, very honourably, “ dispute with one another for pre-eminence ; but that they “ can never, without sullying the glory of the Greeks, and “ derogating from the virtue of their ancestors, suffer a fo- “ reigner to despoil them of that pre-eminence, nor consent “ to so ignominious a slavery.”

^c Demosthenes, who was at the head of this embassy, immediately set out for Thebes ; and indeed he had no time to lose, since Philip might reach Attica in two days. This prince also sent ambassadors to Thebes. Among these ^{*} Python was the chief, who distinguished himself greatly by his lively persuasive eloquence, which it was scarcely possible to withstand ; so that the rest of the deputies were mere novices in comparison to him ; however he here met with a superior. ^d And indeed Demosthenes, in an oration, where he relates the services he had done the commonwealth, expatiates very strongly on this, and places the happy success of so important a negociation at the head of his political exploits.

^e It was of the utmost importance for the Athenians to draw the Thebans into the alliance, as they were neighbours to Attica, and covered it ; had troops excellently well disciplined, and had been considered, from the famous victories of Leuctra and Mantinea, among the several states of Greece, as those who held the first rank for valour and ability of war. To effect this was no easy matter ; not only because of the great service Philip had lately done them during the war of Phocis, but likewise because of the ancient inveterate antipathy of Thebes and Athens.

Philip's deputies spoke first. These displayed in the strongest light the kindnesses with which Philip had loaded the Thebans, and the innumerable evils which the Athenians had made them suffer. They represented to the utmost advantage the great benefit they might reap from laying Attica waste, the flocks, goods, and power of which would be carried into their city ; whereas, by joining in league with the Athenians, Boeotia would thereby become the seat of war, and would alone suffer the losses, depredations, burnings, and all the other calamities which are the inevitable consequences of

^c Plut. in Demosth. p. 853, 854.
p. 509. ^e Ibid.

^d Demosth. in Orat. pro Coron.

* This Python was of Byzantium. The Athenians had presented him with the freedom of their city ; after which he went over to Philip.—Demost. p. 193. 745.

it. They concluded with requesting, either that the Thebans would join their forces with those of Philip against the Athenians; or, at least, permit him to pass through their territories to enter Attica.

The love of his country, and a just indignation at the breach of faith and usurpations of Philip, had already sufficiently animated Demosthenes: but the sight of an orator, who seemed to dispute with him the superiority of eloquence, inflamed his zeal, and heightened his vivacity still more. To the captious arguments of Python he opposed the actions themselves of Philip, and particularly the late taking of Elatæa, which evidently discovered his designs. He represented him as a restless, enterprising, ambitious, crafty, perfidious prince, who had formed the design of enslaving all Greece; but who, to succeed the better in his schemes, was determined to attack the different states of it singly: a prince whose pretended beneficence was only a snare for the credulity of those who did not know him, in order to disarm those whose zeal for the public liberty might be an obstacle to his enterprises. He proved to them, that the conquest of Attica, so far from satiating the immeasurable avidity of this usurper, would only give him an opportunity of subjecting Thebes, and the rest of the cities of Greece: That therefore, the interests of the two commonwealths being henceforward inseparable, they ought to erase entirely the remembrance of their former divisions, and unite their forces to repel the common enemy.

^f The Thebans were not long in determining. The strong eloquence of Demosthenes, says an historian, blowing into their souls like an impetuous wind, rekindled there so warm a zeal for their country, and so mighty a passion for liberty, that, banishing from their minds every idea of fear, of prudence, or gratitude, his discourse transported and ravished them like a fit of enthusiasm, and inflamed them solely with the love of true glory. Here we have a proof of the mighty ascendant which eloquence has over the minds of men, especially when it is heightened by a love and zeal for the public good. One single man swayed all things at his will in the assemblies of Athens and Thebes, where he was equally loved, respected, and feared.

Philip, quite disconcerted by the union of these two nations, sent ambassadors to the Athenians, to request them not to levy an armed force, but to live in harmony with him. However,

^f Theopom. apud Plut. in Vit. Demost. p. 854.

they were too justly alarmed and exasperated, to listen to any accommodation ; and would no longer depend on the word of a prince whose whole aim was to deceive. In consequence, preparations for war were made with the utmost diligence, and the soldiery discovered incredible ardour. However, many evil-disposed persons endeavoured to extinguish or damp it, by relating fatal omens and terrible predictions, which the priestess of Delphos was said to have uttered: but Demosthenes, confiding firmly in the arms of Greece, and encouraged wonderfully by the number and bravery of the troops, who desired only to march against the enemy, would not suffer them to be amused with these oracles and frivolous predictions. It was on this occasion he said, that the priestess Philippized, meaning, that it was Philip's money that inspired the priestess, opened her mouth, and made the god speak whatever she thought proper. He bade the Thebans remember their Epaminondas, and the Athenians their Pericles, who considered these oracles and predictions as idle scare-crows, and consulted only their reason. The Athenian army set out immediately, and marched to Eleusis ; and the Thebans, surprised at the diligence of their confederates, joined them, and waited the approach of the enemy.

Philip, on the other side, not having been able to prevent the Thebans from uniting with Athens, nor to draw the latter into an alliance with him, assembles all his forces, and enters Bœotia. This army consisted of thirty thousand foot and two thousand horse : that of the enemy was not quite so numerous. The valour of the troops might have been said to have been equal on both sides ; but the merit of the chiefs was not so. And indeed, what warrior was comparable to Philip at that time ? Iphicrates, Chabrias, Timotheus, all famous Athenian captains, were not his superiors. Phocion, indeed, might have opposed him ; but not to mention that this war had been undertaken against his advice, the contrary faction had excluded him the command, and had appointed generals, Chares, universally despised, and Lysicles, distinguished for nothing but his rash and daring audacity. It is the choice of such leaders as these, by the means of cabal alone, that paves the way to the ruin of states.

The two armies encamped near Chæronea, a city of Bœotia. Philip gave the command of his left wing to his son Alexander, who was then but sixteen or seventeen years old, having posted his ablest officers near him ; and took the command of the right wing upon himself. In the opposite army,

the Thebans formed the right wing, and the Athenians the left.

At sun-rise, the signal was given on both sides. The battle was bloody, and the victory a long time dubious, both sides exerting themselves with astonishing valour and bravery. Alexander, at that time, animated with a noble ardour for glory, and endeavouring to signalize himself, in order to answer the confidence his father reposed in him, under whose eye he fought, in quality of a commander for the first time, discovered in this battle all the capacity which could have been expected from a veteran general, with all the intrepidity of a young warrior. It was he who broke, after a long and vigorous resistance, the Sacred Battalion of the Thebans, which was the flower of their army. The rest of the troops who were round Alexander, being encouraged by his example, entirely routed them.

On the right wing, Philip, who was determined not to yield to his son, charged the Athenians with great vigour, and began to make them give way. However, they soon resumed their courage, and recovered their first post. ^g Lysicles, one of the two generals, having broke into some troops which formed the centre of the Macedonians, imagined himself already victorious; and in that rash confidence cried out, "Come on, my lads, let us pursue them into Macedonia." Philip, perceiving that the Athenians, instead of seizing the advantage of taking his phalanx in flank, pursued his troops too vigorously, cried out with a calm tone of voice, "The Athenians do not know how to conquer." Immediately he commanded his phalanx to wheel about to a little eminence: and perceiving that the Athenians, in disorder, were wholly intent on pursuing those they had broke, he charged them with his phalanx; and attacking them both in flank and rear, entirely routed them. Demosthenes, who was a greater statesman than a warrior, and more capable of giving wholesome counsel in his harangues, than of supporting them by an intrepid courage, threw down his arms, and fled with the rest. ^h It is even said, that in his flight, his robe being caught by a bramble, he imagined that some of the enemy had laid hold of him, and cried out, "Spare my life." More than a thousand Athenians were left upon the field of battle, and above two thousand taken prisoners, among whom was Demades the orator. The loss was as great on the Theban side.

^g Polyæn. Stratag. lib. iv.

^h Plut. in Vit. Decem. Orat. p. 846.

Philip, after having set up a trophy, and offered to the gods a sacrifice of thanksgiving for his victory, distributed rewards to the officers and soldiers, each according to his merit, and the rank he held.

His conduct after this victory shows, that it is much easier to overcome an enemy, than to conquer one's self, and triumph over one's own passions. Upon his coming from a grand entertainment, which he had given his officers, being equally transported with joy and the fumes of wine, he hurried to the spot where the battle had been fought, and there, insulting the dead bodies with which the field was covered, he turned into a song the beginning of the decree which Demosthenes had prepared to excite the Greeks to this war; and sung thus, himself beating time, "Demosthenes the Peanian, son of Demosthenes, has said." Every body was shocked to see the king dishonour himself by this behaviour, and sully his glory by an action so unworthy a king and a conqueror; but no one opened his lips about it. Demades the orator, whose soul was free, though his body was a prisoner, was the only person who ventured to make him sensible of the indecency of this conduct, telling him, "Ah, Sir, since fortune has given you the part of Agamemnon, are you not ashamed to act that of Thersites?" These words, spoke with so generous a liberty, opened his eyes, and made him turn them inward; and, so far from being displeased with Demades, he esteemed him the more for them, treated him with the utmost respect and friendship, and conferred all possible honours upon him.

From this moment Philip seemed quite changed, both in his disposition and behaviour, as if, says * an historian, the conversation of Demades had softened his temper, and introduced him to a familiar acquaintance with the Attic graces. He dismissed all the Athenian captives without any ransom, and gave the greater part of them clothes; with a view of acquiring the confidence of so powerful a commonwealth as Athens by that kind of treatment: in which, says Polybius ⁱ, he gained a second triumph, more glorious for himself, and even more advantageous than the first; for in the battle, his courage had prevailed over none but those who were present in it; but on this occasion, his kindness and clemency acquired him a whole city, and subjected every heart to him.

ⁱ Polyb. L. v. p. 359.

* Υπὸ τοῦ Δημάδης καθομιληθέντας τοῖς Ἀττικαῖς χάρισται.—Diod.

He renewed with the Athenians the ancient treaty of friendship and alliance, and granted the Boeotians a peace, after having left a strong garrison in Thebes.

^k We are told that Isocrates, the most celebrated rhetorician of that age, who loved his country with the utmost tenderness, could not survive the loss and ignominy with which it was covered, by the loss of the battle of Chæronea. The instant he received the news of it, being uncertain what use Philip would make of his victory, and determined to die a freeman, he hastened his end by abstaining from food. He was fourscore and eighteen years of age. I shall have occasion to speak elsewhere of his style and of his works.

Demosthenes seemed to have been the principal cause of the terrible shock which Athens received at this time, and which gave its power such a wound, as it never recovered. ^l But at the very instant that the Athenians heard of this bloody overthrow, which affected so great a number of families, when it would have been no wonder, had the multitude, seized with terror and alarms, given way to an emotion of blind zeal against the man whom they might have considered in some measure as the author of this dreadful calamity; even at this very instant, I say, the people submitted entirely to the counsels of Demosthenes. The precautions that were taken to post guards, to raise the walls, and to repair the fossés, were all in consequence of his advice. He himself was appointed to supply the city with provisions, and to repair the walls; which latter commission he executed with so much generosity, that it acquired him the greatest honour; and for which, at the request of Ctesiphon, a crown of gold was decreed him, as a reward for his having presented the commonwealth with a sum of money out of his own estate, sufficient to defray what was wanting of the sums for repairing the walls.

On the present occasion, that is, after the battle of Chæronea, such orators as opposed Demosthenes, having all risen up in concert against him, and having cited him to take his trial according to law, the people not only declared him innocent of the several accusations laid to his charge, but conferred more honours upon him than he had enjoyed before; so strongly did the veneration they had for his zeal and fidelity overbalance the efforts of calumny and malice.

^k Plut. in Isocr. p. 887.

^l Demost. pro. Ctes. p. 514. Plut. in Demost. p. 855.

The Athenians, a fickle wavering people, and apt to punish their own errors and omissions in the persons of those whose projects were often rendered abortive, for no other reason but because they had executed them too slowly, in thus crowning Demosthenes, in the midst of a public calamity which he alone seemed to have brought upon them, pay the most glorious homage to his abilities and integrity. By this wise and brave conduct, they seem in some measure to confess their own error, in not having followed his counsel neither fully nor early enough; and to confess themselves alone guilty of all the evils which had befallen them.

^m But the people did not stop here. The bones of such as had been killed in the battle of Chaeronea, having been brought to Athens to be interred, they appointed Demosthenes to compose the eulogium of those brave men; a manifest proof that they did not ascribe to him the ill success of the battle, but to Providence only, who disposes of human events at pleasure; a circumstance which was expressly mentioned in the inscription engraved on the monument of those illustrious deceased warriors.

“ This earth entombs those victims to the state,
Who fell a glorious sacrifice to zeal.
Greece, on the point of wearing tyrant chains,
Did, by their deaths alone, escape the yoke.
This Jupiter decreed: no effort, mortals,
Can save you from the mighty will of fate.
To gods alone belong the attribute
Of being free from crimes with never-ending joy.”

ⁿ Demosthenes opposed Æschines, who was perpetually reproaching him with having occasioned the loss of the battle in question, with this solid answer: “ Censure me,” says he, “ for the counsels I give; but do not calumniate me for the ill success of them. For it is the Supreme Being who conducts and terminates all things; whereas it is from the nature of the counsel itself that we are to judge of the intention of him who offers it. If therefore the event has declared in favour of Philip, impute it not to me as a crime, since it is God, and not myself, who disposed of the victory. But if you can prove that I did not exert myself with probity, vigilance, and an activity indefatigable, and superior to my strength; if with these I did not seek, I did

^m Plut. in Demost. p. 855. Demost. pro Ctes. p. 519, 520.

ⁿ Ibid. p. 505.

“ not employ, every method which human prudence could suggest ; and did not inspire the most necessary and noble resolutions, such as were truly worthy of Athenians ; shew me this, and then give what scope you please to your accusations.”

He afterwards used the bold, sublime figure following, which is looked upon as the most beautiful passage in his oration, and is so highly applauded by Longinus^o. Demosthenes endeavours to justify his own conduct, and prove to the Athenians, that they did not do wrong in giving Philip battle. He is not satisfied with merely citing in a frigid manner the example of the great men who had fought for the same cause in the plains of Marathon, at Salamis, and before Platæa : no, he makes a quite different use of them, says this rhetorician ; and on a sudden, as if inspired by some god, and possessed with the spirit of Apollo himself, cries out, swearing by those brave defenders of Greece : “ No, Athenians ! you have not erred. I swear by those illustrious men who fought on land at Marathon and Platæa ; at sea before Salamis and Artemisium ; and all those who have been honoured by the commonwealth with the common rites of burial ; and not those only who have been crowned with success, and came off victorius.” Would not one conclude, adds Longinus, that by changing the natural air of the proof, in this grand and pathetic manner of affirming by oaths of so extraordinary a nature, he deifies, in some measure, those ancient citizens ; and makes all who die in the same glorious manner so many gods, by whose names it is proper to swear ?

I have already observed in another place, how naturally apt these * orations, spoken in a most solemn manner to the glory of those who lost their lives in fighting for the cause of liberty, were to inspire the Athenian youth with an ardent zeal for their country, and a warm desire to signalize themselves in battle.

Another ceremony observed with regard to the children of those whose fathers died in the bed of honour, was no less efficacious to inspire them with the love of virtue. In a celebrated festival, in which shows were exhibited to the whole

^o Demost. pro Ctes. p. 508.

^p Longin. de Sublim. c. xiv.

^q Eschin. contra Ctesiph. p. 452.

* Demosthenes, in his oration against Leptinus, p. 562. observes, that the Athenians were the only people who caused funeral orations to be spoken in honour of such persons as had lost their lives in the defence of their country.

people, an herald came upon the stage, and producing the young orphans dressed in complete armour, he said with a loud voice: "These young orphans, whom an untimely death in the midst of dangers has deprived of their illustrious fathers, have found in the people a parent, who has taken care of them till no longer in a state of infancy. And now they send them back, armed cap-a-pee, to follow, under the most happy auspices, their own affairs; and invite each of them to emulate each other in deserving the chief emoluments of the state." By such methods martial bravery, the love of one's country, and a taste for virtue and solid glory, are perpetuated in a state.

It was the very year of the battle of Chæronea, and two years before the death of Philip, that Æschines drew up an accusation against Ctesiphon, or rather against Demosthenes; but the cause was not pleaded till seven or eight years after, about the fifth or sixth year of the reign of Alexander. I shall relate the event of it in this place, to avoid breaking in upon the history of the life and actions of that prince.

No cause ever excited so much curiosity, nor was pleaded with so much pomp. * People flocked to it from all parts, says Cicero, and they had great reason for so doing; for what fight could be nobler, than a conflict between two orators, each of them excellent in his way; both formed by nature, improved by art, and animated by perpetual dissensions, and an implacable animosity against each other?

These two orations have always been considered as the master-pieces of antiquity, especially that of Demosthenes. ^r Cicero had translated the latter, a strong proof of the high opinion he entertained of it. Unhappily for us, the preamble only to that performance is now extant, which suffices to make us very much regret the loss of the rest.

Amidst the numberless beauties which are conspicuous in every part of these two orations, methinks there appears, if I may be allowed to censure the writings of such great men, a considerable error, that very much lessens their perfection, and which appears to me directly repugnant to the rules of solid, just eloquence; and that is, the gross injurious terms in which the two orators reproach one another. The same objection

^r De Opt. Gen. Orat.

* Ad quod judicium concursus dicitur e tota Græcia factus esse. Quid enim aut tam visendum, aut tam audiendum fuit, quam summorum oratorum, in gravissima causa, accurata et inimicitiis incensa, contentio? — Cicer. de Opt. Gen. Orat. n. 22.

has been made to Cicero, with regard to his orations against Anthony. I have already declared, that this manner of writing, this kind of gross, opprobrious expressions, were the very reverse of solid eloquence ; and indeed every speech, which is dictated by passion and revenge, never fails of being suspected by those who judge of it ; whereas an oration that is strong and invincible from reason and argument, and which at the same time is conducted with reserve and moderation, wins the heart, whilst it informs the understanding ; and persuades no less by the esteem it inspires for the orator, than by the force of his arguments.

The juncture seemed to favour Æschines very much ; for the Macedonian party, whom he always befriended, was very powerful in Athens, especially after the ruin of Thebes : nevertheless, Æschines lost his cause, and was justly sentenced to banishment for his rash accusation. He thereupon went and settled himself in Rhodes, where he opened a school of eloquence, the fame and glory of which continued for many ages. He began his lectures with the two orations that had occasioned his banishment. Great encomiums were given to that of Æschines ; but when they heard that of Demosthenes, the plaudits and acclamations were redoubled : and it was then he spoke these words, so greatly laudable in the mouth of an enemy and a rival : “ But what applauses would you “ not have bestowed, had you heard Demosthenes speak it “ himself ! ”

To conclude, the victor made a good use of his conquest ; for the instant Æschines left Athens, in order to embark for Rhodes, Demosthenes ran after him, and forced him to accept of a purse of money ; which must have obliged him so much the more, as he had less room to expect such an offer. On this occasion Æschines cried out, * “ How will it be possible for me not to regret a country, in which I leave an enemy more generous than I can hope to find friends in any other part of the world ! ”

* Some authors ascribe these words to Demosthenes, when, three years after he met with the same fate as Æschines, and was also banished from Athens.

SECTION VII.

PHILIP DECLARED GENERALISSIMO OF THE GREEKS AGAINST
THE PERSIANS. HIS DEATH.

THE battle of Chæronea ^r may be said to have enslaved Greece. Macedon at that time, with no more than thirty thousand soldiers, gained a point, which Persia, with millions of men, had attempted unsuccessfully at Platæa, at Salamis, and at Marathon. Philip, in the first years of his reign, had repulsed, divided, and disarmed his enemies. In the succeeding ones, he had subjected, by artifice or force, the most powerful states of Greece, and had made himself its arbiter; but now he prepares to revenge the injuries which Greece had received from the Barbarians, and meditates no less a design than the destruction of their empire. ^s The greatest advantage he gained by his last victory, and this was the object he long had in view, and never lost sight of, was to get himself appointed, in the assembly of the Greeks, their generalissimo against the Persians. In this quality he made preparations, in order to invade that mighty empire. He nominated, as leaders of part of his forces, Attalus and Parmenio, two of his captains, on whose valour and wisdom he chiefly relied, and made them set out for Asia Minor.

^t But whilst every thing abroad was glorious and happy for Philip, he found the utmost uneasiness at home; division and trouble reigning in every part of his family. The ill temper of Olympias, who was naturally jealous, choleric, and vindictive, raised dissensions perpetually in it, which made Philip almost out of love with life. Not to mention, that as he himself had defiled the marriage-bed, it is said that his consort had repaid his infidelity in kind. But whether he had a just subject of complaint, or was grown weary of Olympias, it is certain he proceeded so far as to divorce her. Alexander, who had been disgusted upon several other accounts, was highly offended at this treatment of his mother.

Philip, after divorcing Olympias, married Cleopatra, niece to Attalus, a very young lady, whose beauty was so exquisite, that he could not resist its charms. In the midst of their rejoicings upon occasion of the nuptials, and in the heat of

^r A. M. 3667. Ant. J. C. 837.

^s Diod. l. xvi. p. 479.

^t Plut. in Alex. p. 669.

wine, Attalus, who was uncle to the new queen by the mother's side, took it into his head to say, that the Macedonians ought to beseech the gods to give them a lawful successor to their king. Upon this Alexander, who was naturally choleric, exasperated at these injurious words, cried out, "Wretch " that thou art, dost thou then take me for a bastard?" And at the same time flung the cup at his head. Attalus returned the compliment, upon which the quarrel grew warmer. Philip, who sat at another table, was very much offended to see the feast interrupted in this manner; and not recollecting that he was lame, drew his sword, and ran directly to his son. Happily the father fell, so that the guests had an opportunity of stepping in between them. The greatest difficulty was, to keep Alexander from rushing upon his ruin. Exasperated at a succession of such heinous affronts, in spite of all the guests could say, concerning the duty he owed Philip as his father and his sovereign, he vented his resentments in the bitter words following: "The Macedonians, indeed, have a captain " there, vastly able to cross from Europe into Asia; he, who "cannot step from one table to another without running the "hazard of breaking his neck!" After these words, he left the hall, and taking Olympias, his mother, along with him, who had been so highly affronted, he conducted her to Epirus, and himself went over to the Illyrians.

In the mean time, Demaratus of Corinth, who was engaged to Philip by the ties of friendship and hospitality, and was very free and familiar with him, arrived at his court. After the first civilities and caresses were over, Philip asked him whether the Greeks were in amity? "It indeed becomes "you, Sir," replied Demaratus, "to be concerned about "Greece, who have filled your own house with feuds and dis- "sensions." The prince, sensibly affected with this reproach, came to himself, acknowledged his error, and sent Demaratus to Alexander to persuade him to return home.

Philip did not lose sight of the conquest of Asia. Full of the mighty project he revolved, he consults the gods to know what would be the event of it. The priestess replied, "The victim is already crowned, his end draws nigh, and he "will soon be sacrificed." Philip hearing this, did not hesitate a moment, but interpreted the oracle in his own favour, the ambiguity of which ought at least to have kept him in some suspense. In order, therefore, that he might be in a

^u A. M. 3668. Ant. J. C. 338.

condition to apply entirely to his expedition against the Persians, and devote himself solely to the conquest of Asia, he dispatches with all possible diligence his domestic affairs. After this, he offers up a solemn sacrifice to the gods, and prepares to celebrate, with incredible magnificence, in Egæ, a city of Macedonia, the nuptials of Cleopatra, his daughter, whom he gave in marriage to Alexander, king of Epirus, and brother to Olympias his queen. He had invited to it the most considerable persons of Greece; and heaped upon them friendships and honours of every kind, by way of gratitude for electing him generalissimo of the Greeks. The cities made their court to him in emulation of each other, by sending him gold crowns; and Athens distinguished its zeal above all the rest. Neoptolemus the poet had written, purposely for that festival, a tragedy *, entitled *Cinyras*, in which, under borrowed names, he represented this prince as already victor over Darius, and master of Asia. Philip listened to these happy presages with joy; and, comparing them with the answer of the oracle, assured himself of conquest. The day after the nuptials, games and shows were solemnized. As these formed part of the religious worship, there were carried in it, with great pomp and ceremony, twelve statues of the gods, carved with inimitable art. A thirteenth, that surpassed them all in magnificence, was that of Philip, which represented him as a god. The hour for his leaving the palace arrived, and he went forth in a white robe; and advanced with an air of majesty, in the midst of acclamations, towards the theatre, where an infinite multitude of Macedonians, as well as foreigners, waited his coming with impatience. His guards marched before and behind him, leaving, by his order, a considerable space between themselves and him, to give the spectators a better opportunity of surveying him; and also to show that he considered the affections which the Grecians bore him as his safest guard.

But all the festivity and pomp of these nuptials ended in the murder of Philip; and it was his refusal to do an act of justice that occasioned his death. Some time before, Attalus, inflamed with wine at an entertainment, had insulted, in the most shocking manner, Pausanias, a young Macedonian nobleman. The latter had long endeavoured to revenge the

* Suetonius, among the presages of Caligula's death, who died in much the same manner as Philip, observes, that Mnester the Pantomine exhibited the same piece which Neoptolemus had represented the very day Philip was murdered.

cruel affront, and was perpetually imploring the king's justice. But Philip, unwilling to disgust Attalus, uncle to Cleopatra, whom, as was before observed, he had married after his divorcing Olympias his first queen, would never listen to Pausanias's complaints. However, to console him in some measure, and to express the high esteem he had for, and the great confidence he reposed in him, he made him one of the chief officers of his life-guard. But this was not what the young Macedonian required, whose anger now swelling to fury against his judge, he forms the design of wiping out his shame, by imbruining his hands in a most horrid murder.

When once a man is determined to die, he is vastly strong and formidable. Pausanias, the better to put his bloody design in execution, chose the instant of that pompous ceremony, when the eyes of the whole multitude were fixed on the prince; doubtless to make his vengeance more conspicuous, and proportion it to the injury for which he conceived he had a right to make the king responsible, as he had long solicited that prince in vain for the satisfaction due to him. Seeing him therefore alone, in the great space which his guards left round him, he advances forwards, stabs him with a dagger, and lays him dead at his feet. Diodorus observes, that he was assassinated the very instant his statue entered the theatre. The assassin had prepared horses ready for his escape, and would have got off, had not an accident happened which stopped him, and gave the pursuers time to overtake him. Pausanias was immediately torn to pieces upon the spot.
^u Thus died Philip, at forty-seven years of age, after having reigned twenty-four. Artaxerxes Ochus, king of Persia, died also the same year.

Demosthenes had private notice sent him of Philip's death, and in order to prepare the Athenians to resume their courage, he went to the council with an air of joy, and said, That the night before he had a dream, which promised some great felicity to the Athenians. A little after, couriers arrived with the news of Philip's death, on which occasion the people abandoned themselves to the transports of immoderate joy, which far exceeded all bounds of decency. Demosthenes had particularly inspired them with these sentiments; for he himself appeared in public, crowned with a wreath of flowers, and dressed with the utmost magnificence, though his daughter had been dead but seven days. He also engaged the Athe-

^u A. M. 3668. Abt. J. C. 236. *Æschin. contra Ctesiph.* p. 440.

nians to offer sacrifices, to thank the gods for the good news ; and, by a decree, ordained a crown to Pausanias, who had committed the murder.

On this occasion Demosthenes and the Athenians acted quite out of character ; and we can scarce conceive, how it came to pass that, in so detestable a crime as the murder of a king, policy, at least, did not induce them to dissemble such sentiments as reflected dishonour on them, without being at all to their advantage ; and which shewed, that honour and probity were utterly extinct in their minds.

SECTION VIII.

MEMORABLE ACTIONS AND SAYINGS OF PHILIP. GOOD AND BAD QUALITIES OF THAT PRINCE.

HERE are, in the lives of great men, certain facts and expressions, which often give us a better idea of their character than their most shining actions ; because in the latter they generally study their conduct, act a borrowed part, and propose themselves to the view of the world ; whereas in the former, as they speak and act from nature, they exhibit themselves such as they really are, without art and disguise. M. de Tourreil has collected with sufficient industry most of the memorable actions and sayings of Philip, and he has been particularly careful to draw the character of this prince. The reader is not to expect much order and connection, in the recital of these detached actions and sayings.

Though Philip loved flattery, so far as to reward the adulation of Thrasideus with the title of king in Thessaly, he however at some intervals loved truth. He permitted ^x Aristotle to give him precepts on the art of reigning. He declared, that he was obliged to the Athenian orators for having corrected him of his errors, by frequently reproaching him with them. He kept a man in his service to tell him every day, before he gave audience, “ Philip, remember thou art mortal.”

^y He ^{*} discovered great moderation, even when he was spoken to in shocking and injurious terms ; and also, which

^x Arist. Epist. Plutarch. in Apoph. p. 177. *Aelian.* lib. viii. c. 15.

^y Senec. de Ira, l. iii. c. 23.

^{*} Siquæ alia in Philippo virtus, fuit et contumeliarum patientia ingens instrumentum ad tutelam regni.

is no less worthy of admiration, when truth was told him ; a great quality, says Seneca, in kings, and highly conducive to the happiness of their reign. At the close of an audience, which he gave to some Athenian ambassadors who were come to complain of some act of hostility, he asked, whether he could do them any service ? “ The greatest service thou couldst do us,” says Demosthenes, “ would be to hang thyself.” Philip, though he perceived all the persons present were highly offended at these words, however, made the following answer, with the utmost calmness of temper : “ Go, tell your superiors, “ that those who dare make use of such insolent language, are “ more haughty, and less peaceably inclined, than they who “ can forgive them.”

^z Being present, in an indecent posture, at the sale of some captives, one of them, going up to him, whispered in his ear, “ Let down the lappet of your robe ;” upon which Philip replied, “ Set the man at liberty : I did not know till now that “ he was one of my friends.”

^a The whole court soliciting him to punish the ingratitude of the Peloponnesians, who had hissed him publicly in the Olympic games ; “ What won’t they attempt,” replied Philip, “ should I do them any injury, since they laugh at me, after “ having received so many favours at my hand ?”

^b His courtiers advising him to drive from him a certain person who spake ill of him ; “ Yes, indeed,” says he, “ and “ so he’ll go and speak injuriously of me every where.” Another time, that they advised him to dismiss a man of probity, who had reproached him : “ Let us first take care,” says he, “ that we have not given him any reason to do so.” Hearing afterwards that the person in question was but in poor circumstances, and in no favour with the courtiers, he was very bountiful to him ; on which occasion his reproaches were changed into applauses, that occasioned another fine saying of this prince’s ; “ It is in the power of kings to make themselves “ beloved or hated.”

^c Being urged to assist, with the credit and authority he had with the judges, a person whose reputation would be quite lost by the sentence which was going to be pronounced against him ; “ I had rather,” says he, “ he should lose his reputation, “ than I mine.”

^d Philip, rising from an entertainment, at which he had sat several hours, was addressed by a woman, who begged him

to examine her cause, and to hear several reasons she had to alledge which were not pleasing to him. He accordingly heard it, and gave sentence against her; upon which she replied very calmly, “I appeal.” “How!” says Philip, “from your king? To whom then?” “To Philip when fasting,” replied the woman. The manner in which he received this answer, would do honour to the most sober prince. He afterwards gave the cause a second hearing, found the injustice of his sentence, and condemned himself to make it good.

^e A poor woman used to appear often before him, to sue for audience, and to beseech him to put an end to her law-suit; but Philip always told her he had no time. Exasperated at these refusals, which had been so often repeated, she replied one day with emotion, “If you have not time to do me justice, be no longer king.” Philip was strongly affected with this rebuke, which a just indignation had extorted from this poor woman; and so far from being offended at it, he satisfied her that instant, and afterwards became more exact in giving audience. He indeed was sensible, that a king and a judge are the same thing; that the throne is a tribunal; that the sovereign authority is a supreme power, and at the same time an indispensible obligation to do justice; that to distribute it to his subjects, and to grant them the time necessary for that purpose, was not a favour, but a duty and a debt; that he ought to appoint persons to assist him in this function, but not to discharge himself absolutely from it; and that he was no less obliged to be a judge than a king. All these circumstances are included in this natural, unaffected, and very wise expression, “Be no longer king *;” and Philip comprehended all its force.

^f He understood raillery, was very fond of smart sayings, and very happy at them himself. Having received a wound near the throat, and his surgeon importuning him daily with some new request: “Take what thou wilt,” says he, “for thou hast me by the throat.”

^g It is also related, that after hearing two villains, who accused each other of various crimes, he banished the one, and sentenced the other to follow him.

^h Menecrates, the physician, who was so mad as to fancy himself Jupiter, wrote to Philip, as follows: “Menecrates to Jupiter to Philip, greeting.” Philip answered, “Philip to

^e Plut.

^f Plut.

^g Ibid.

^h *Aelian. lib. xi. cap. 51.*

* *Kαὶ μὴ Βασιλεὺς.*

“Menecrates, health and reason *.” But the king did not stop here ; for he hit upon a pleasant remedy for his visionary correspondent. Philip invited him to a grand entertainment. Menecrates had a separate table at it, where nothing was served up to him but incense and perfume, whilst all the other guests fed upon the most exquisite dainties. The first transports of joy with which he was seized, when he found his divinity acknowledged, made him forget that he was a man ; but hunger afterwards forcing him to recollect his being so, he was quite tired with the character of Jupiter, and took leave of the company abruptly.

ⁱ Philip made an answer which redounded highly to the honour of his prime minister. That prince being one day reproached with devoting too many hours to sleep ; “ I indeed “ sleep,” says he, “ but Antipater wakes.”

^k Parmenio hearing the ambassadors of all Greece murmuring one day because Philip lay too long in bed, and did not give them audience : “ Do not wonder,” says he, “ if he sleeps “ whilst you wake ; for he waked whilst you slept.” By this he wittily reproached them for their supineness, in neglecting their interests, whilst Philip was very vigilant in regard to his. This Demosthenes was perpetually observing to them with his usual freedom.

¹ Every one of the ten tribes of Athens used to elect a new general every year. These did their duty by turns, and every general for the day commanded as generalissimo. But Philip joked upon this multiplicity of chiefs, and said, “ In my whole “ life I could never find but one general, Parmenio, whereas “ the Athenians can find ten every year, at the very instant “ they want.”

The letter which Philip wrote to Aristotle on the birth of his son, proves the regard that prince paid to learned men ; and at the same time, the taste he himself had for the polite arts and sciences. The other letters of his, which are still extant, do him no less honour. But his great talent was that of war and policy, in which he was equalled by few ; and it is time to consider him under this double character. I beg the reader to remember, that M. de Tourréil is the author of most of the subsequent particulars, and that it is he who is going to give them the picture of king Philip.

It would be difficult to determine whether this prince

ⁱ Plut.

^k Plutarch.

¹ Ibid. in Apoph. p. 177.

* The Greek word *σύναντος* signifies both these things.

were more conspicuous as a warrior or a statesman. Surrounded from the very beginning of his reign, both at home and abroad, with powerful enemies, he employed artifice and force alternately to defeat them. He uses his endeavours with success to divide his opponents: to strike the surer, he eludes and diverts the blows which were aimed at himself; equally prudent in good and ill fortune, he does not abuse victory; as ready to pursue or wait for it, he either hastens his pace, or slackens it, as necessity requires; he leaves nothing to the caprice of chance, but what cannot be directed by wisdom; in fine, he is ever immovable, ever fixed in the just bounds which divide boldness from temerity.

In Philip we perceive a king who commands his allies as much as his own subjects, and is as formidable in treaties as in battles; a vigilant and active monarch, who is his own superintendant, his own prime minister and generalissimo. We see him fired with an insatiable thirst of glory, searching for it where it is sold at the dearest price; making fatigue and danger his dearest delights; forming incessantly that just, that speedy harmony of reflection and action which military expeditions require; and with all these advantages turning the fury of his arms against commonwealths, exhausted by long wars, torn by intestine divisions, sold by their own citizens, served by a body of mercenary or undisciplined troops; obstinately deaf to good advice, and seemingly determined on their ruin.

He united in himself two qualities which are commonly found incompatible, viz. a steadiness and calmness of soul that enabled him to weigh all things, in order to take advantage of every juncture, and to seize the favourable moment, without being disconcerted by disappointments; this calmness, I say, was united with a restless activity, ardour, and vivacity, which were regardless of the difference of seasons, or the greatest of dangers. No warrior was ever bolder, or more intrepid in fight. Demosthenes, who cannot be suspected to have flattered him, gives a glorious testimony of him on this head; for which reason I will cite his own words. ^m “I saw,” says this orator, “this very Philip, with whom we disputed for “sovereignty and empire; I saw him, though covered with “wounds, his eye struck out, his collar-bone broke, maim-“ed both in his hands and feet; still resolutely rush into “the midst of dangers, and ready to deliver up to

^m Demosth. pro Ctes. p. 483.

“ fortune, any other part of his body she might desire, provided he might live honourably and gloriously with the rest of it.”

Philip was not only brave himself, but inspired his whole army with the same valour. Instructed by able masters in the science of war, as the reader has seen, he had brought his troops to the most exact regular discipline; and trained up men capable of seconding him in his great enterprises. He had the art, without lessening his own authority, to familiarize himself with his soldiers; and commanded rather as the father of a family, than as the general of an army, whenever consistent with discipline: and indeed, from his affability, which merited so much the greater submission and respect as he required less, and seemed to dispense with it, his soldiers were always ready to follow him to the greatest dangers, and paid him the most implicit obedience.

No general ever made a greater use of military stratagems than Philip. The dangers to which he had been exposed in his youth, had taught him the necessity of precaution, and the art of resources. A wise diffidence, which is of service, as it shews danger in its true light, made him not fearful and irresolute, but cautious and prudent. What reason soever he might have to flatter himself with the hope of success, he never depended upon it; and thought himself superior to the enemy only in vigilance. Ever just in his projects, and inexhaustible in expedients; his views were unbounded; his genius was wonderful, in fixing upon proper junctures for the executing of his designs; and his dexterity in acting in an imperceptible manner no less admirable. Impenetrable, as to his secrets, even to his best friends, he was capable of attempting or concealing any thing. The reader may have observed, that he strenuously endeavoured to lull the Athenians asleep, by a specious outside of peace; and to lay silently the foundations of his grandeur, in their credulous security and blind indolence.

But these exalted qualities were not without imperfections. Not to mention his excess in eating and carousing, to which he abandoned himself with the utmost intemperance, he also has been reproached with the most dissolute abandoned manners. We may form a judgement of this from those who were most intimate with him, and the company which usually frequented his palace. A set of profligate debauchees, buffoons, pantomimes, and wretches worse than these, flatterers I mean, whom avarice and ambition draw in crowds round

the great and powerful,—such were the people who had the greatest share in his confidence and bounty. Demosthenes is not the only person who reproaches Philip with these frailties, for this might be expected in an enemy: but Theopom-ⁿpus ⁿ, a famous historian, who had written the history of that prince in fifty-eight books, of which unhappily a few frag-
ments only are extant, gives a still more disadvantageous char-
acter of him. “ Philip,” says he, ^o “ despised modesty and
“ regularity of life. He lavished his esteem and liberality
“ on men abandoned to debauch and the last excesses of licen-
“ tiousness. He was pleased to see the companions of his
“ pleasures excel no less in the abominable arts of injustice
“ and malignity, than in the science of debauchery. Alas !
“ what species of infamy, what sort of crimes did they not
“ commit ? ”

But a circumstance, in my opinion, which reflects the greatest dishonour on Philip, is that very one in which he is chief-
ly esteemed by many persons; I mean, his politics. He is considered as a prince of the greatest abilities in this art that ever lived: and, indeed, the reader may have observed, by the history of his actions, that in the very beginning of his reign, he had laid down a plan, from which he never deviated, and this was to raise himself to the sovereignty of Greece. When scarce seated on his throne, and surrounded on every side with powerful enemies, what probability was there that he could form, at least that he could execute, such a project as this? However, he did not once lose sight of it. Wars, battles, treaties of peace, alliances, confederacies; in short, all things terminated there. He was very lavish of his gold and silver, merely to engage creatures in his service. He carried on a private intelligence with all the cities of Greece; and by the assistance of pensioners, on whom he had settled very large stipends, he was informed very exactly of all the resolutions taken in them, and generally gave them the turn in his own favour. By this means he deceived the prudence, eluded the efforts, and lulled asleep the vigilance of states, who till then had been looked upon as the most active, the wisest, and most penetrating of all Greece. In treading in these steps for twenty years together, we see him proceed-
ing with great order, and advancing regularly towards the mark on which his eye was fixed; but always by windings and subterraneous passages, the outlets of which only discover the design.

ⁿ Diod. Sic. l. xvi. p. 408.

^o Apud Athen. l. vi. p. 206.

p Polyænns shews us evidently the methods whereby he subjected Thessaly, which was of great advantage to the completing of his other designs. “ He did not,” says he, “ carry on an open war against the Thessalians; but took advantage of the discord that divided the cities and the whole country into different factions. He succoured those who sued for his assistance; and whenever he had conquered, he did not entirely ruin the vanquished, he did not disarm them, nor raze their walls; on the contrary, he protected the weakest, and endeavoured to weaken and subject the strongest; in a word, he rather fomented than appeased their divisions, having in every place orators in his pay, those artificers of discord, those firebands of commonwealths. And it was by these stratagems, not by his arms, that Philip subdued Thessaly.”

q All this is a master-piece, a miracle in point of politics. But what engines does this art play, what methods does it employ to compass its designs? Deceit, craft, fraud, falsehood, perfidy, and perjury. Are these the weapons of virtue? We see in this prince a boundless ambition, conducted by an artful, insinuating, subtile genius; but we do not find him possessed of the qualities which form the truly great man. Philip had neither faith nor honour; every thing that could contribute to the aggrandizing of his power, was in his sense just and lawful. He gave his word with a firm resolution to break it; and made promises that he would have been very sorry to keep. He thought himself skilful in proportion as he was perfidious, and made his glory consist in deceiving all with whom he treated. r He did not blush to say, “ That children were amused with play-things, and men with oaths.”

How shameful was it for a prince to be distinguished by being more artful, a greater dissembler, more profound in malice, and more a knave, than any other person of his age, and to leave so infamous an idea of himself to all posterity! What idea could we form to ourselves in the commerce of the world, of a man who should value himself for tricking others, and rank insincerity and fraud among the virtues? Such a character in private life, is detested as the bane and ruin of society. How then can it become an object of esteem and admiration in princes and ministers of state, persons who are bound by stronger ties than the rest of men, because

p Polyæn. l. iv. e. 19.

q Demosth. Olyn. ii. p. 22.

r Ælian. l. vii. c. 12.

of the eminence of their stations, and the importance of the employments they fill, to revere sincerity, justice, and, above all, the sanctity of treaties and oaths; to bind which they invoke the name and majesty of a God, the inexorable avenger of perfidy and impiety? A bare promise among private persons ought to be sacred and inviolable, if they have the least sense of honour; but how much more ought it to be so among princes! "We are bound," says a celebrated writer *, "to speak truth to our neighbour; for the use and application of speech implies a tacit promise of truth; speech having been given us for no other purpose. It is not a compact between one private man with another; it is a common compact of mankind in general, and a kind of right of nations, or rather a law of nature. Now, whoever tells an untruth, violates this law and common compact." How greatly is the enormity of violating the sanctity of an oath increased, when we call upon the name of God to witness it, as it is the custom always in treaties? "Were sincerity and truth banished from every other part of the earth," said John I. king of France, upon his being solicited to violate a treaty, "they ought to be found in the hearts and in the mouths of kings."

The circumstance which prompts politicians to act in this manner, is, their being persuaded that it is the only means to make a negociation succeed. But though this were the case, yet can it ever be lawful to purchase such success at the expence of probity, honour, and religion? ^s "If your father-in-law, Ferdinand the Catholic," said Lewis XII. to Philip archduke of Austria, "has acted perfidiously, I am determined not to imitate him; and I am more pleased in having lost a kingdom, Naples, which I am able to recover, than I should have been had I lost my honour, which can never be recovered."

But those politicians, who have neither honour nor religion, deceive themselves, even in this very particular. I shall not have recourse to the Christian world for princes and ministers whose notions of policy were very different from these. To go no farther than our Greek history, how many great men have we seen perfectly successful in the administration of public affairs, in treaties of peace and war, in a word, in the most important negociations, without once

^s Mezerai.

^t Ibid.

* M. Nicole on the epist. of the 19th Sunday after Whitsuntide.

making use of artifice and deceit? An Aristides, a Cimon, a Phocion, and so many more; some of whom were so very scrupulous in matters relating to truth, as to believe they were not allowed to tell a falsehood, even laughing and in sport. Cyrus, the most famous conqueror of the East, thought nothing was more unworthy of a prince, nor more capable of drawing upon him the contempt and hatred of his subjects, than lying and deceit. It therefore ought to be looked upon as a truth, that no success, how shining soever, can, or ought to cover the shame and ignominy which arise from breach of faith and perjury.

BOOK FIFTEENTH.

THE
HISTORY
OF
ALEXANDER.

PLAN.

I HAVE already observed, that the history of Alexander, comprised in the following book, contains the space of twelve years and eight months.

SECTION I.

ALEXANDER'S BIRTH. ARISTOTLE APPOINTED HIS PRECEPTOR. HE BREAKS BUCEPHALUS.

ALEXANDER ^a came into the world the first year of the 106th Olympiad.

The very day he came into the world, the celebrated temple of Diana in Ephesus was burned. The reader knows without doubt, that it was one of the seven wonders of the world. It had been built in the name, and at the expence of all Asia Minor. A great number of years ^{*} were employed in building it. Its length was four hundred and twenty five feet, and its breadth two hundred and twenty. It was supported by an hundred and twenty-seven columns, threescore feet eight, which so many [†] kings had caused to be wrought at a great expence, and by the most excellent artists, who endeavoured to excel one another on this occasion. The rest of the temple was equal to the columns in magnificence.

^a A. M. 3648. Ant. J. C. 356. Plin. l. xxxvi. c. 14.

^{*} Pliny says two hundred and twenty years, which is not probable.

[†] Anciently, most cities were governed by their particular king.

^b Hegesias * of Magnesia, according to Plutarch, says, “ That it was no wonder the temple was burned, because Diana was that day employed at the delivery of Olympias, to facilitate the birth of Alexander.” A reflection, says our author, so very † cold, that it might have extinguished the fire. ‡ Cicero, who ascribes this saying to Timæus, declares it a very smart one, at which I am very much surprised. Possibly the fondness he had for jokes made him not very delicate in things of this kind.

^c One Herostratus had fired that temple on purpose. Being put to the torture, in order to force him to confess his motive for committing so infamous an action, he confessed that it was the view of making himself known to posterity, and to immortalize his name, by destroying so noble a structure. The states general of Asia imagined they should prevent the success of his view, by publishing a decree to prohibit the mention of his name. However, their prohibition only excited a greater curiosity; for scarce one of the historians of that age has omitted to mention so monstrous an extravagance, and at the same time have told us the name of the criminal.

^d The passion which prevailed most in Alexander, even from his tender years, was ambition, and an ardent desire for glory; but not for every species of glory. Philip, like a sophist, valued himself upon his eloquence and the beauty of his style; and had the vanity to have engraved on his coins the several victories he had won at the Olympic games, in the chariot-race. But it was not to this his son aspired. His friends asking him one day, whether he would not be present at the games above mentioned, in order to dispute the prize bestowed on that occasion, for he was very swift of foot; he answered, “ That he would contend in them, provided kings were to be his antagonists.”

Every time news was brought him, that his father had taken some city, or gained some great battle, Alexander, so far from sharing in the general joy, used to say in a plaintive

^b Plut. in Alex. p. 665.

^c Valer. Max. 1. viii. c. 14.

^d Plut. in Alex. p. 665.—668. Id de Fortun. Alex. p. 342.

* He was an historian, and lived in the time of Ptolemy, son of Lagus.

† I don't know whether Plutarch's reflection be not still colder.

‡ Concinne, ut multa, Timæus; qui, cum in historia dixisset, qua nocte natus Alexander esset, eadem Diana Ephesiae templum deflagravisse, adjunxit, minime id esse mirandum, quod Diana, cum in partu Olympiadis adesse veluisset, abfuisset domo.—De Nat. Deor. 1. 2. n. 69.

tone of voice, to the young persons that were brought up with him, "Friends, my father will possess himself of every thing, " and leave nothing for us to do."

One day some ambassadors from the king of Persia being arrived at court during Philip's absence, Alexander gave them so kind and so polite a reception, and regaled them in so noble and generous a manner, as charmed them all; but that which most surprised them was, the good sense and judgement he discovered in the several conversations they had with him. He did not propose to them any thing that was trifling, and like one of his age; such, for instance, as inquiring about the so much boasted gardens suspended in the air; the riches and magnificence of the palace and court of the king of Persia, which excited the admiration of the whole world; the famous golden plantane-tree; ^e and that golden vine, the grapes of which were of emeralds, carbuncles, rubies, and all sorts of precious stones, under which the Persian monarch was said frequently to give audience: Alexander, I say, asked them questions of a quite different nature; inquiring which was the road to Upper Asia; the distance of the several places; in what the strength and power of the king of Persia consisted; in what part of the battle he fought; how he behaved towards his enemies; and in what manner he governed his subjects. These ambassadors admired him all the while; and perceiving even at that time how great he might one day become, they observed, in a few words, the difference they found between Alexander and Artaxerxes ^f, by saying one to another, " * This young prince is great, and our's is rich." That man must be vastly insignificant, who has no other merit than his riches.

So ripe a judgement in this young prince, was owing as much to the good education which had been given him, as to the happiness of his natural parts. Several preceptors were appointed to teach him all such arts and sciences as are worthy the heir of a great kingdom; and the chief of these was Leonidas, a person of the most severe morals, and a relation of the queen. Alexander himself tells us afterwards, that this Leonidas, in their journies together, used frequently to look into the trunks where his beds and clothes were laid, in order to see if Olympias, his mother, had not put something superfluous into them, which might administer to delicacy and luxury.

• Athen. I. xii. p. 739.

f Artaxerxes Ochus.

* Οπαῖς ὁτος, Βασιλεὺς ὁ δὲ ἡμέτερος, πλάσιος.

But the greatest service Philip did his son, was appointing Aristotle his preceptor, the most famous and the most learned philosopher of his age, whom he intrusted with the whole care of his education. ^g One of the reasons which prompted Philip to choose him a master of so conspicuous a reputation and merit was, as he himself tells us, that his son might avoid committing a great many faults, of which he himself had been guilty.

Philip was sensible how great a treasure he possessed in the person of Aristotle; for which reason he settled a very considerable stipend upon him, and afterwards rewarded his pains and care in an infinitely more glorious manner; for having destroyed and laid waste the city of * Stagira, the native place of that philosopher, he rebuilt it, purely out of affection for him; reinstated the inhabitants who had fled from it, or were made slaves; and gave them a fine park in the neighbourhood of Stagira, as a place for their studies and assemblies. Even in Plutarch's time, the stone seats which Aristotle had placed there were standing; as also spacious vistas, under which those who walked were shaded from the sun-beams.

Alexander likewise discovered no less esteem for his master, whom he believed himself bound to love as much as if he had been his father; declaring, † “That he was indebted to the one “for living, and to the other for living well.” The progress of the pupil was equal to the care and abilities of the preceptor. ‡ He grew vastly fond of philosophy; and learned the several parts of it, but in a manner suitable to his birth. Aristotle endeavoured to improve his judgement, by laying down sure and certain rules, by which he might distinguish just and solid reasoning, from what is but speciously so; and by accustoming him to separate in discourse all such parts as only dazzle, from those which are truly solid, and should constitute its whole value. He also exercised him in metaphysics, which may be of great benefit to a prince, provided he applies himself to them with moderation, as they explain to him the nature of the human mind; how greatly it differs from matter; in what manner he perceives spiritual things; how he is sensible of the impression of those that surround him; and many other questions of the like import. The reader will naturally suppose, that he did not omit either the mathema-

^g Plut. in Apoph. p. 178.

^h A city of Macedon, near the sea-shore.

[†] Ως δι ἐξου πιν ζων, δια τετον δε καλως ζειν.

[‡] Retinuit ex sapientia modum.—Tacit.

ties, which gave the mind so just a turn of thinking ; or the wonders of nature, the study of which, besides a great many other advantages, shows how very incapable the mind of man is to discover the secret principles of the things to which he is daily an eye-witness. But Alexander applied himself chiefly to morality, which is properly the science of kings, because it is the knowledge of mankind, and of all their duties. This he made his serious and profound study ; and considered it, even at that time, as the foundation of prudence and wise policy. How much must such an education contribute to the good conduct of a prince, with regard to his own interests and the government of his people !

^h The greatest master of rhetoric that antiquity could ever boast, and who has left so excellent a treatise on that subject, took care to make that science part of his pupil's education ; and we find that Alexander, even in the midst of his conquests, was often very urgent with Aristotle to send him a treatise on that subject. To this we owe the work entitled Alexander's Rhetoric ; in the beginning of which, Aristotle proves to him the vast advantages a prince may reap from eloquence, as it gives him the greatest ascendant over the minds of men, which he ought to acquire as well by his wisdom as authority. Some answers and letters of Alexander, which are still extant, show that he possessed, in its greatest perfection, that strong, that manly eloquence, which abounds with sense and ideas ; and which is so entirely free from superfluous expressions, that every single word has its meaning ; which, properly speaking, is the eloquence of kings.

His esteem, or rather his passion * for Homer, shows, not only with what vigour and success he applied himself to polite literature, but the judicious use he made of it, and the solid advantages he proposed to himself from it. He was not prompted to peruse this poet merely out of curiosity, or to unbend his mind, or from a great fondness for poesy ; but his view in studying this admirable writer was, in order to borrow such sentiments from him, as are worthy a great king and conqueror, courage, intrepidity, magnanimity, temperance, prudence ; the art of commanding well in war and peace. And indeed the verse that pleased him most in Homer †, was that where Agamemnon is represented “as a good king, and a “brave warrior.”

After this it is no wonder that Alexander should have so

^h Aristot. in Rhetor. ad Alex. p. 608, 609.

* Imperatoria bravitate.—*Tacit.*

† Αυτόπερον, βασιλὺς τ' ἀγελός, πρεστής τ' αἰχμήτης.—*Iliad.* iii. v. 172.

high an esteem for this poet. Thus when, after the battle of Arbela, the Macedonians had found amongst the spoils of Darius, a gold box, enriched with precious stones, in which the excellent perfumes used by that prince were put; Alexander, who was quite covered with dust, and regardless of essences and perfumes, ordered that this box should be employed to no other use than to hold Homer's poems, which he believed the most perfect, the most precious * productions of the human mind. He admired particularly the Iliad, which he called " † The best provision for a warrior." He always had with him that edition of Homer which Aristotle had revised and corrected, and to which the title of the " Edition of the Box" was given; and he laid it, with his sword, every night, under his pillow.

ⁱ Fond even to excess of every kind of glory, he was displeased with Aristotle, his master, for having published in his absence certain metaphysical pieces, which he himself desired to possess only; and even at the time when he was employed in the conquest of Asia, and the pursuit of Darius, he wrote to him a letter, which is still extant, wherein he complains upon that very account. Alexander says in it, that " ‡ He had much rather surpass the rest of men in the knowledge of sublime and excellent things, than the greatness and extent of his power." He in like manner requested ^k Aristotle not to shew the treatise of rhetoric above mentioned to any person but himself. I will confess, that there is an excess in this strong desire of glory, which prompts him to suppress the merit of others, in order that his only may appear; but then we at least must confess, that it discovers such a passion for study as is very laudable in a prince; and the very reverse of that indifference, not to say contempt and aversion, which most young persons of high birth express for all things that relate to learning and study.

Plutarch tells us in few words the infinite advantage that Alexander reaped from this taste, with which his master, than whom no man possessed greater talents for the education of

ⁱ Aul. Gel. l. xx. c. 5.

^k Arist. p. 609.

* Pretiosissimum humani animi opus.—Plut. l. vii. c. 29.

† Τῆς πολεμικῆς ἀρετῆς ἐφόδιον. This word, which I have not been able to render better, signifies, that we find in the Iliad whatever relates to the art of war, and the qualities of a general; in a word, all things necessary to form a good commander.

‡ Εγὼ δὲ θελούμενος ὡν ταῖς περὶ τὰ ἀριστὰ ἐμπειρίαις, ἢ ταῖς δυνάμεσσι, διαφέρειν.

youth, had inspired him from his most tender infancy.¹⁰ “ He ‘‘ loved,” said that author, “ to converse with learned men, “ to improve himself in knowledge, and to study * ;” three sources of a monarch’s happiness, and which enable him to secure himself from numberless difficulties ; three certain and infallible methods of learning to reign without the assistance of others. The conversation of persons of fine sense instructs a prince by way of amusement, and teaches him a thousand curious and useful things without costing him the least trouble. The lessons which able masters give him, on the most exalted sciences, and particularly upon politics, improve his mind wonderfully, and furnish him with rules to govern his subjects with wisdom. In fine, study, especially that of history, crowns all the rest, and is to him a preceptor for all seasons, and for all hours, who, without ever growing troublesome, acquaints him with truths which no one else would dare to tell him, and, under fictitious names, exhibits the prince to himself ; teaches him to know himself as well as mankind, who are the same in all ages. Alexander owed all these advantages to the excellent education Aristotle gave him.

¹ He had also a taste for the whole circle of arts, but in such a manner as became a prince ; that is, he knew the value and usefulness of them. Music, painting, sculpture, architecture, flourished in his reign, because they found in him both a skilful judge and a generous protector, who was able to distinguish and reward merit.

^m But he despised certain trifling feats of dexterity that were of no use. Some Macedonians admired very much a man who employed himself very attentively in throwing small pease through the eye of a † needle, which he would do at a considerable distance, and without once missing. Alexander, seeing him at this exercise, ordered him, as we are told, a present suitable to his employment, viz. a basket of pease.

Alexander was of a sprightly disposition, was resolute, and very tenacious of his opinion, which never gave way to force, but at the same time would submit immediately to reason and good sense. It is very difficult to treat with persons of this turn of mind. Philip accordingly, notwithstanding his double authority of king and father, believed it necessary to employ persuasion rather than force with respect to his son, and endeavoured to make himself beloved rather than feared by him.

¹ Plut. de Fortun. Alex. Serm. ii. p. 333.

^m Quintil. lib. ii. cap. 21.

^{*} Ηγ φιλόλογος καὶ φιλοσοφής, καὶ φιλανθρωπός.

[†] We may suppose that it was some instrument in the shape of a needle.

An accident made him entertain a very advantageous opinion of Alexander. There had been sent from Thessaly to Philip a war-horse, a noble, strong, fiery, generous beast, called * Bucephalus. The owner would sell him for thirteen talents, about £ 1900 Sterling. The king went into the plains, attended by his courtiers, in order to view the perfections of this horse; but upon trial he appeared so very fierce, and pranced about in so furious a manner, that no one dared to mount him. Philip, being angry that so furious and unmanageable a creature had been sent him, gave orders for their carrying him back again. Alexander, who was present at that time, cried out, "What a noble horse they are going to lose, for want of address and boldness to back him!" Philip, at first, considered these words as the effect of folly and rashness, so common to young men: but as Alexander insisted still more upon what he had said, and was very much vexed to see so noble a creature just going to be sent home again, his father gave him leave to try what he could do. The young prince, overjoyed at this permission, goes up to Bucephalus, takes hold of the bridle, and turns his head to the sun; having observed, that the thing which frightened him was his own shadow, he seeing it dance about, or sink down, in proportion as he moved. He therefore first stroaked him gently with his hand, and soothed him with his voice; then seeing his mettle abate, and artfully taking his opportunity, he let fall his cloak, and springing swiftly upon his back, first slackens the rein, without once striking or vexing him; and when he perceived that his fire was cooled, that he was no longer so furious and violent, and wanted only to move forward, he gave him the rein, and spurring him with great vigour, animated him with his voice to his full speed. While this was doing, Philip and his whole court trembled for fear, and did not once open their lips; but when the prince, after having run his first heat, returned with joy and pride, at his having broke a horse which was judged absolutely ungovernable, all the courtiers in general endeavoured to outvie one another in their applauses and congratulations; and we are told Philip shed tears of joy on this occasion, and embracing Alexander after he was alighted, and kissing his head, he said to him, "My son, seek a kingdom more worthy of thee, for Macedon is below thy merit."

We are told a great many surprising particulars of this Bu-

* Some think he was called so, because his head was like that of an ox.

cephalus: for whatever had any relation to Alexander, was to be of the marvellous kind. ⁿ When this creature was saddled and equipped for battle, he would suffer no one to back him but his master; and it would not have been safe for any other person to go near him. Whenever Alexander wanted to mount him, he would kneel down upon his two forefeet. According to some historians, in the battle against Porus, where Alexander had plunged too imprudently amidst a body of the enemy, his horse, though wounded in every part of his body, did however exert himself in so vigorous a manner, that he saved his master's life; and notwithstanding the deep wounds he had received, and though almost spent through the great effusion of blood, he brought off Alexander from among the combatants, and carried him with inexpressible vigour to a place of security; where, perceiving * the king was no longer in danger, and overjoyed in some measure at the service he had done him, he expired. This indeed is a very noble end for a horse. Others say, that Bucephalus, quite worn out, died at thirty years of age. Alexander bewailed his death bitterly, believing that he had lost in him a most faithful and affectionate friend; and afterwards built a city on the very spot where he was buried, near the river Hydaspes, and called it Bucephalia in honour of him.

I have related elsewhere, that Alexander, at sixteen years of age, was appointed regent of Macedonia, and invested with absolute authority during his father's absence; that he behaved with great prudence and bravery; and that afterwards he distinguished himself in a most signal manner at the battle of Chæronea.

SECTION II.

ALEXANDER ASCENDS THE THRONE. DECLARED GENERALISSIMO OF THE GREEKS AGAINST THE PERSIANS.

DARIUS and Alexander ^o began to reign the same year: the latter was but twenty when he succeeded to the crown. His first care was to solemnize the funeral obsequies of his father with the utmost pomp, and to revenge his death.

Upon his accession to the throne, he saw himself surrounded

ⁿ Aul. Gel. l. v. c. 2. ^o A. M. 3668. Ant. J. C. 386. Plut. in Alex. p. 670, 672. Diod. l. xvii. p. 486.—489. Arian. l. i. de Expedit. Alex. p. 2.—23.

* Et domini jam superstitis securus, quasi cum sensus humani solatio, animam expiravit.—Aul. Gel.

with extreme dangers. The barbarous nations against whom Philip had fought during his whole reign, and from whom he had made several conquests, which he had united to his crown, after having dethroned their natural kings, thought proper to take advantage of this juncture, in which a new prince, who was but young, had ascended the throne, for recovering their liberty, and uniting against the common usurper. Nor was he under less apprehensions from Greece. Philip, though he had permitted the several cities and commonwealths to continue their ancient form of government, had however entirely changed it in reality, and made himself absolute master of it. Though he were absent, he nevertheless ruled in all the assemblies; and not a single resolution was taken, but in subordination to his will. Though he had subdued all Greece, either by the terror of his arms, or the secret machinations of policy, he had not had time sufficient to subject and accustom it to his power, but had left all things in it in great ferment and disorder, the minds of the vanquished not being yet calmed or moulded to subjection.

The Macedonians, reflecting on this precarious situation of things, advised Alexander to relinquish Greece, and not persist in his resolution of subduing it by force; to recover by gentle methods the Barbarians who had taken arms, and to soothe, as it were, those glimmerings of revolt and innovation by prudent reserve, complacency, and insinuations, in order to conciliate affection. However, Alexander would not listen to these timorous counsels, but resolved to secure and support his affairs by boldness and magnanimity; firmly persuaded, that should he relax in any point at first, all his neighbours would fall upon him; and that were he to endeavour to compromise matters, he should be obliged to give up all Philip's conquests, and by that means confine his dominions to the narrow limits of Macedon. He therefore made all possible haste to check the arms of the Barbarians, by marching his troops to the banks of the Danube, which he crossed in one night. He defeated the king of the Triballi in a great battle; made the Getæ fly at his approach; subdued several barbarous nations, some by the terror of his name, and others by force of arms; and notwithstanding the arrogant ^{*} answer of their ambassadors, he taught them to

^{*} Alexander, imagining that his name only had struck these people with terror, asked their ambassadors what they dreaded most? They replied, with a haughty tone of voice, that they were afraid of nothing but the falling of the sky and stars.

dread a danger still more near them than the falling of the sky and planets.

Whilst Alexander was thus employed at a distance against the Barbarians, all the cities of Greece, who were animated more particularly by Demosthenes, formed a powerful alliance against that prince. A false report which prevailed, of his death, inspired the Thebans with a boldness that proved their ruin. They cut to pieces part of the Macedonian garrison in their citadel. ^p Demosthenes, on the other side, was every day haranguing the people; and fired with contempt for Alexander, whom he called a child, and a hair-brained boy ^{*}, he assured the Athenians, with a decisive tone of voice, that they had nothing to fear from the new king of Macedon, who did not dare to stir out of his kingdom; but would think himself vastly happy, could he sit peaceably on his throne. At the same time he writ letters upon letters to Attalus, one of Philip's lieutenants in Asia Minor, to excite him to rebel. This Attalus was uncle to Cleopatra, Philip's second wife, and was very much disposed to listen to Demosthenes' proposals. Nevertheless, as Alexander was grown very diffident of him, for which he knew there was but too much reason, he therefore, to eradicate from his mind all the suspicions he might entertain, and the better to screen his designs, sent all Demosthenes' letters to that prince. But Alexander saw through all his artifices, and thereupon ordered Hecataeus, one of his commanders, whom he had sent into Asia for that purpose, to have him assassinated, which was executed accordingly. Attalus' death restored tranquillity to the army, and entirely destroyed the seeds of discord and rebellion.

^q When Alexander had secured his kingdom from the Barbarians, he marched with the utmost expedition towards Greece, and passed the Thermopylæ. He then spoke as follows to those who accompanied him: " Demosthenes called " me, in his orations, a child; when I was in Illyria, and " among the Triballi; he called me a young man when I was " in Thessaly; and I must now shew him, before the walls of " Athens, that I am a man grown." He appeared so suddenly in Bœotia, that the Thebans could scarce believe their eyes; and being come before their walls, was willing to give them time to repent, and only demanded to have Phœnix and Pro-

^p Aeschin. contra Ctesiph. p. 453.

^q A. M. 3670. Ant: J. C. 334.

^{*} It is *μαργαρητης* in Greek, a word which signifies many things in that language.

thutes, the two chief ringleaders of the revolt, delivered up to him ; and published, by sound of trumpet, a general pardon to all who should come over to him. But the Thebans, by way of insult, demanded to have Philotas and Antipater delivered to them ; and invited, by a declaration, all who were solicitous for the liberty of Greece, to join with them in its defence.

Alexander, finding it impossible for him to get the better of their obstinacy by offers of peace, saw with grief that he should be forced to employ his power, and decide the affair by force of arms. A great battle was thereupon fought, in which the Thebans exerted themselves with a bravery and ardour much beyond their strength, for the enemy exceeded them vastly in numbers : but after a long and vigorous resistance, such as survived of the Macedonian garrison in the citadel, coming down from it, and charging the Thebans in the rear, surrounded on all sides, the greatest part of them were cut to pieces, and the city taken and plundered.

It would be impossible for words to express the dreadful calamities which the Thebans suffered on this occasion. Some Thracians having pulled down the house of a virtuous lady of quality, Timoclea by name, carried off all her goods and treasures ; and their captain having seized the lady, and satiated his brutal lust with her, afterwards inquired whether she had not concealed gold and silver. Timoclea, animated by an ardent desire of revenge, replying that she had hid some, took him with herself only into her garden, and shewing him a well, told him, that the instant she saw the enemy enter the city, she herself had thrown into it the most valuable things in her possession. The officer, overjoyed at what he heard, drew near the well, and stooping down to see its depth, Timoclea, who was behind, pushing him with all her strength, threw him into the well, and afterwards killed him with great stones which she threw upon him. She was instantly seized by the Thracians, and being bound in chains, was carried before Alexander. The prince perceived immediately by her mien that she was a woman of quality and great spirit, for she followed those brutal wretches with a very haughty air, and without discovering the least fear. Alexander asking her who she was, Timoclea replied, I am sister to Theagenes, who fought against Philip for the liberty of Greece, and was killed in the battle of Chæronea, where he commanded. The prince admiring the generous answer of that lady, and still more the

action that she had done, gave orders that she should have leave to retire wherever she pleased with her children.

Alexander then debated in council, how to act with regard to Thebes. The Phocæans and the people of Platæa, Thespiaæ, and Orchomenus, who were all in alliance with Alexander, and had shared in his victory, represented to him the cruel treatment they had met with from the Thebans, who also had destroyed their several cities; and reproached them with the zeal which they had always discovered in favour of the Persians against the Greeks, who held them in the utmost detestation; the proof of which was, the oath they had all taken to destroy Thebes, after they should have vanquished the Persians.

Cleades, one of the prisoners, being permitted to speak, endeavoured to excuse, in some measure, the revolt of the Thebans, a fault which, in his opinion, should be imputed to a rash and credulous imprudence, rather than to depravity of will and declared perfidy. He remonstrated, that his countrymen, upon a false report of Alexander's death, had indeed too rashly broke into rebellion, not against the king, but against his successors: That what crimes soever they might have committed, they had been punished for them with the utmost severity, by the dreadful calamity which had befallen their city: That there now remained in it none but women, children, and old men, from whom they had nothing to fear; and who were so much the greater objects of compassion, as they had been no ways concerned in the revolt. He concluded with reminding Alexander, that Thebes, which had given birth to so many gods and heroes, several of whom were that king's ancestors, had also been the seat of his father Philip's rising glory, and like a second native country to him.

These motives, which Cleades urged, were very strong and powerful; nevertheless, the anger of the conqueror prevailed, and the city was destroyed. However, he set at liberty the priests; all such as had right of hospitality with the Macedonians; the descendants of Pindar, the famous poet, who had done so much honour to Greece; and such as had opposed the revolt: but all the rest, in number about thirty thousand, he sold, and upwards of six thousand had been killed in battle. The Athenians were so sensibly afflicted at the sad disaster which had befallen Thebes, that being about to solemnize the festival of the great mysteries, they suspended them, upon account of their extreme grief, and received with the greatest humanity all those who had fled from the battle and the plunder of Thebes, and made Athens their asylum.

Alexander's so sudden arrival in Greece had very much abated the haughtiness of the Athenians, and extinguished Demosthenes' vehemence and fire; but the ruin of Thebes, which was still more sudden, threw them into the utmost consternation. They therefore had recourse to entreaties, and sent a deputation to Alexander, to implore his clemency. Demosthenes was among them, but was no sooner arrived at Mount Cytheron, than, dreading the anger of that prince, he quitted the embassy, and returned home.

Immediately Alexander sent to Athens, requiring the citizens to deliver up to him ten orators, whom he supposed to have been the chief instruments in forming the league which Philip his father had defeated at Chæronea. It was on this occasion Demosthenes related to the people the fable of the wolves and dogs, in which it is supposed, “That the wolves “one day told the sheep, that in case they desired to be at “peace with them, they must deliver up to them the dogs “who were their guard.” The application was easy and natural, especially with respect to the orators, who were justly compared to dogs, whose duty is to watch, to bark, and to fight, in order to save the lives of the flock.

In this prodigious dilemma of the Athenians, who could not prevail with themselves to deliver up their orators to certain death, though they had no other way to save their city, Demades, whom Alexander had honoured with his friendship, offered to undertake the embassy alone, and intercede for them. The king, whether he had satiated his revenge, or endeavoured to blot out, if possible, by some act of clemency, the barbarous action he had just before committed; or rather to remove the several obstacles which might retard the execution of his grand design, and by that means not leave, during his absence, the least pretence for murmurs; waved his demand with regard to the delivery of the orators, and was pacified by their sending Carridemus into banishment, who being a native of * Oræa, had been presented by the Athenians with his freedom, for the services he had done the republic. He was son-in-law to Chersobleptus, king of Thrace; had learned the art of war under Iphicrates; and had himself frequently commanded the Athenian armies. To avoid the pursuit of Alexander, he took refuge with the king of Persia.

As for the Athenians, he not only forgave them the several

* A city of Eubœa.

injuries he pretended to have received, but expressed a particular regard for them, exhorting them to apply themselves vigorously to public affairs, and to keep a watchful eye over the several transactions which might happen; because, in case of his death, their city was to give laws to the rest of Greece. Historians relate, that many years after this expedition, he was seized with deep remorse for the calamity he had brought upon the Thebans, and that this made him behave with much greater humanity towards other nations.

So dreadful an example of severity towards so powerful a city as Thebes, spread the terror of his arms through all Greece, and made all things give way before him. He summoned, at Corinth, the * assembly of the several states, and the free cities of Greece, to obtain from them the same supreme command against the Persians, as had been granted his father a little before his death. No diet ever debated on a more important subject. It was the western world deliberating upon the ruin of the east, and the methods for executing a revenge suspended for more than an age. The assembly held at this time will give rise to events, the relation of which will appear astonishing, and almost incredible; and to revolutions, which will change the disposition of most things in the world.

To form such a design, required a prince bold, enterprising, and experienced in war; one of great views, who having acquired a mighty name by his exploits, was not to be intimidated by dangers, nor checked by obstacles; but above all, a monarch who had a supreme authority over all the states of Greece, none of which singly was powerful enough to make so arduous an attempt; and which required, in order for their acting in concert, to be subject to one chief, who might give motion to the several parts of that great body, by making them all concur to the same end. Such a prince was Alexander. It was not difficult for him to rekindle in the minds of the people their ancient hatred of the Persians, their perpetual and irreconcileable enemies; whose destruction they had more than once sworn, and whom they had determined to extirpate, in case an opportunity should present itself for that purpose; a hatred, which the intestine feuds of the Greeks might indeed have suspended, but could never extinguish. The immortal retreat of the ten thousand Greeks, notwithstanding the vigorous opposition of the prodigious

* Plutarch places that diet or assembly here, but others fix it earlier; whence Dr Prideaux supposed it was summoned twice.

army of the Persians; the terror which Agesilaus, with a handful of men, had struck even as far as Susa, shewed plainly what might be expected from an army composed of the flower of the forces of all the cities of Greece, and those of Macedon, commanded by generals and officers formed under Philip; and, to say all in a word, led by Alexander. The deliberations of the assembly were therefore very short, and that prince was unanimously appointed generalissimo against the Persians.

Immediately a great number of officers and governors of cities, with many philosophers, waited upon Alexander, to congratulate him upon his election. He flattered himself, that Diogenes of Sinope, who was then at Corinth, would also come like the rest, and pay his compliments. This philosopher, who entertained a very mean idea of grandeur, thought it improper to congratulate men just upon their exaltation; but that mankind ought to wait till those persons have performed actions worthy of their high stations. Diogenes therefore did not stir out of his house; upon which Alexander, attended by all his courtiers, made him a visit. This philosopher was at that time lying down in the sun; but seeing so great a crowd of people advancing towards him, he sat up, and fixed his eyes on Alexander. This prince, surprised to see so famous a philosopher reduced to such extreme poverty, after saluting him in the kindest manner, asked whether he wanted any thing? Diogenes replied, “Yes, that you would “stand a little out of my sun-shine.” This answer raised the contempt and indignation of all the courtiers; but the monarch, struck with the philosopher’s greatness of soul, “Were I not “Alexander,” says he, “I would be Diogenes.” A very profound sense lies hid in this expression, that shews perfectly the bent and disposition of the heart of man. Alexander is sensible that he is formed to possess all things; such is his destiny, in which he makes his happiness to consist: but then, in case he should not be able to compass his ends, he is also sensible, that to be happy he must endeavour to bring his mind to such a frame as to want nothing. In a word, all or nothing presents us with a true image of Alexander and Diogenes. * How great and powerful soever that prince might think himself, he could not deny himself, on this occasion, inferior to a man to whom he could give, and from whom he could take nothing.

* *Homo supra mensuram humanæ superbiæ tumens, vidit aliquem, cui nec dare quidquam posset, nec eripere.* — *Senec. de Benef. l. v. c. 6.*

Alexander, before he set out for Asia, was determined to consult the oracle of Apollo. He therefore went to Delphos; he happened to arrive at it on those days which are called Unlucky, a season in which the people are forbid consulting the oracle; and accordingly the priestess refused to go to the temple. But Alexander, who could not bear any contradiction to his will, took her forcibly by the arm; and as he was leading her to the temple, she cried out, “* My son, thou art “irresistible.” This was all he desired; and catching hold of these words, which he considered as spoke by the oracle, he set out for Macedonia, in order to make preparations for his great expedition.

NOTE WITH REGARD TO THE SEQUEL OF THE HISTORY.

I COULD have wished, and it was even my design, to prefix to the exploits of Alexander, a geographical map, as I did to those of Cyrus the Younger; this being of great assistance to the reader, and enables him to follow the hero in all his conquests. But it was not in my power to do this here, the map of Alexander's conquests being too large to be conveniently inserted in this volume. But to supply, in some measure, this defect, I shall here give, in one view, a short account of those countries through which Alexander passed, till his return from India.

Alexander sets out for Macedonia, which is part of Turkey in Europe, and crosses the Hellespont, or the Straits of the Dardanelles.

He crosses Asia Minor (Natolia), where he fights two battles, the first at the pass of the river Granicus, and the second near the city of Issus.

After this second battle, he enters Syria and Palestine; goes into Egypt, where he builds Alexandria, on one of the arms of the Nile; advances as far as Lybia, to the temple of Jupiter Ammon; whence he returns back; arrives at Tyre, and from thence marches towards the Euphrates.

He crosses that river, then the Tigris, and gains the celebrated victory of Arbella; possesses himself of † Babylon, and Ecbatana, the chief city of Media.

From thence he passes into Hyrcania, to the sea which goes by that name, otherwise called the Caspian sea; and enters Parthia, Drangiana, and the country of Paropanisus.

* *Αὐτέντος εἰ ὡς πάτε.*

† The capital of Babylonia.

He afterwards goes into Bactriana and Sogdiana ; advances as far as the river Iaxarthes, called by Q. Curtius the Tanais, the farther side of which is inhabited by the Scythians, whose country forms part of Great Tartary.

Alexander, after having gone through various countries, crosses the river Indus ; enters India, which lies on this side the Ganges, and forms part of the Grand Mogul's empire, and advances very near the river Ganges, which he also intended to pass, had not his army refused to follow him. He therefore contents himself with marching to view the ocean, and goes down the river Indus to its mouth.

From Macedonia to the Ganges, almost to which river Alexander marched, is computed at least eleven hundred leagues.

Add to this the various turnings in Alexander's marches ; first, from the extremity of Cilicia, where the battle of Issus was fought, to the temple of Jupiter Ammon in Lybia ; and his returning from thence to Tyre, a journey of three hundred leagues at least, and as much space at least for the windings of his route in different places ; we shall find that Alexander, in less than eight years, marched his army upwards of seventeen hundred leagues, without including his return to Babylon.

SECTION III.

ALEXANDER SETS OUT AGAINST THE PERSIANS. OBTAINS A FAMOUS VICTORY AT THE RIVER GRANICUS.

ALEXANDER being arrived in his kingdom^r, held a council with the chief officers of his army, and the grandees of his court, on the expedition he meditated against Persia, and the measures he should take in order to succeed in it. The whole assembly was unanimous, except in one article. Antipater and Parmenio were of opinion, that the King, before he engaged in an enterprise which would necessarily be a long one, ought to make choice of a consort, in order to secure himself a successor to his throne. But Alexander, who was of a violent, fiery temper, did not approve of this advice ; and believed, that after he had been nominated generalissimo of the Greeks, and that his father had left him an

^r A. M. 3670. Ant. J. C. 334. Diod. l. xvii. p. 549.—593. Arrian. l. i. p. 23.—36. Plut. in Alex. p. 672, 678. Justin. l. xi. s. 5, 6.

invincible army, it would be a shame for him to lose his time in solemnizing his nuptials, and waiting for the fruits of it; for which reason he determined to set out immediately.

Accordingly he offered up very splendid sacrifices to the gods, and caused to be celebrated at Dia, a city of Macedon, * Scenical games, that had been instituted by one of his ancestors in honour of Jupiter and the Muses. This festival continued nine days, agreeable to the number of those goddesses. He had a tent raised large enough to hold an hundred tables, on which consequently nine hundred covers might be laid. To this feast, the several princes of his family, all the ambassadors, generals, and officers, were invited. ^s He also treated his whole army. It was then he had the famous vision, in which he was exhorted to march speedily into Asia, of which mention will be made in the sequel.

Before he set out upon this expedition, he settled the affairs of Macedon, over which he appointed Antipater as viceroy, with twelve thousand foot, and near the same number of horse.

He also inquired into the domestic affairs of his friends, giving to one an estate in land, to another a village, to a third the revenues of a town, to a fourth the toll of an harbour. And as all the revenues of his demesnes were already employed and exhausted by his donations, Perdiccas said to him, “ My lord, what is it you reserve for yourself?” Alexander replying, “ Hope:” Says Perdiccas, “ The same hope ought “ therefore to satisfy us;” and so refused very generously to accept of what the king had appointed him.

The knowledge of the human heart, and the art of governing it, is of great importance to a prince. Now Alexander was sensible, that this secret consists in making it the interest of every individual to promote his grandeur; and to govern his subjects in such a manner, that they may feel his power by no other marks than his bounty. It is then the interest of every person unites with that of the prince. They are one's own possessions, one's own happiness, which we love in his person; and we are so many times attached to him, and by as close ties, as there are things we love, and receive from him. All the sequel of this history will shew, that no person ever made a more happy use of this maxim than Alexander, who thought himself raised to the throne, merely that he

^s Joseph. Antiq. lib. xi.

* Theatrical representations were so called.

might do good; and indeed his liberality, which was truly royal, was neither satisfied nor exhausted by the noblest acts of beneficence.

Alexander, after having completely settled affairs in Macedonia, and used all the precautions imaginable to prevent any troubles from arising in it during his absence, set out for Asia in the beginning of the spring. His army consisted of little more than thirty thousand foot, and four or five thousand horse; but then they were all brave men; were well disciplined, and inured to fatigues; had made several campaigns under Philip, and were each of them *, in case of necessity, capable of commanding. Most of the officers were near threescore years of age; and when they were either assembled †, or drawn up at the head of a camp, they had the air of a venerable senate. Parmenio commanded the infantry. Philotas, his son, had one thousand eight hundred horse ‡ under him; and Callas, the son of Harpalus, the same number of Thessalian cavalry. The rest of the horse, who were composed of natives of the several states of Greece, and amounted to six hundred, had their particular commander. The Thracians and Pæonians, who were always in front, were headed by Cassander. Alexander began his route along the lake Cercinum towards Amphipolis; crossed the river Strymon, near its mouth; afterwards the Hebrus, and arrived at Sestos after twenty days march. He then commanded Parmenio to cross over from Sestos to Abydos, with all the horse and part of the foot; which he accordingly did by the assistance of an hundred and threescore galleys, and several flat-bottomed vessels. As for Alexander, he went from Eleontum to the port of the Achæians, himself steering his own galley; and being got to the middle of the Hellespont, he sacrificed a bull to Neptune and the Nereides; and made effusions in the sea from a golden cup. It is also related, that after having thrown a javelin at the land, as thereby to take possession of it, he landed the first in Asia, and leaped from the ship, completely armed; and in the highest transports of joy, he erected altars on the shore to Jupiter, to Minerva, and to Hercules, for having favoured him with so propitious a descent. He had done the same at his leaving Europe.

* Ut non tam milites, quam magistros militæ electos putares.—Jurtin. l. xi. c. 6.

† Ut, si principia castrorum cerneret, senatum te alicujus priscæ reip. videre diceres.—Id.

‡ These were all Macedonians.

He depended so entirely on the happy success of his arms, and the rich spoils he should find in Asia, that he had made very little provision for so great an expedition ; persuaded that war, when carried on successfully, would supply all things necessary for war. He had but seventy * talents in money, to pay his army, and only a month's provision. I before observed, that he had divided his patrimony among his generals and officers ; and a circumstance of great importance is, that he had inspired his soldiers with so much courage and security, that they fancied they marched, not to precarious war, but certain victory.

^t Being arrived at the city of Lampsacus, which he was determined to destroy, in order to punish the rebellion of its inhabitants, Anaximenes, a native of that place, came to him. This man, who was a famous historian, had been very intimate with Philip his father ; and Alexander himself had a great esteem for him, having been his pupil. The king, suspecting the business he was come upon, to be beforehand with him, swore, in express terms, that he would never grant his request. "The favour I have to desire of you," says Anaximenes, "is, "that you would destroy Lampsacus." By this witty evasion the historian saved his country.

From thence Alexander arrived at Ilion, where he paid great honours to the manes of Achilles, and caused games to be celebrated round his tomb. He admired and envied the double felicity of that renowned Grecian, in having found, during his lifetime, a faithful friend in Patroclus ; and, after his death, a herald in Homer, worthy the greatness of his exploits. And indeed †, had it not been for the Iliad, the name of Achilles would have perished in the same grave with his body.

At last Alexander arrived on the banks of the Granicus, a river of Phrygia. The Satrapæ, or deputy-lieutenants, waited his coming on the other side of it, firmly resolved to dispute the passage with him. Their army consisted of ‡ one hun-

^t Val. Max. I. vii. c. 3.

* Seventy thousand crowns.

† Cum in Sigæo ad Achillis tumulum constitisset : O fortunate, inquit, adolescens, qui tuae virtutis Homerum praconem inveneris! Et vere. Nam, nisi Ilias illa extisset, idem tumulus, qui corpus ejus contexerat, etiam nomen obruisset.—Cic. pro Arch. n. 24.

‡ According to Justin, their army consisted of six hundred thousand foot, whereas Arrian declares there were no more than twenty thousand. Both these accounts are improbable, and there is doubtless some fault in the text, and therefore I follow Diodorus Siculus.

dred thousand foot, and upwards of ten thousand horse. Memnon, who was a Rhodian, and commanded under Darius all the coast of Asia, had advised the generals not to venture a battle; but to lay waste the plains, and even the cities, thereby to starve Alexander's army, and oblige him to return back into Europe. Memnon was the best of all Darius' generals, and had been the principal agent in his victories. It is not easy to determine what we ought to admire most in him; whether his great wisdom in counsel, his courage and capacity in the field, or his zeal and attachment to his sovereign. The counsel he gave on this occasion was excellent, when we consider that his enemy was fiery and impetuous; had neither town, magazine, or place of retreat; that he was entering a country to which he was absolutely a stranger, inhabited by enemies; that delays alone would weaken and ruin him; and that his only hopes lay in giving battle immediately. But Arsites, a Phrygian satrap, opposed the opinion of Memnon, and protested he would not suffer the Grecians to make such havoc in the territories he governed. This ill counsel prevailed over that of the foreigner, Memnon, whom the Persians, to their great prejudice, suspected of a design to protract the war, and by that means make himself necessary to Darius.

Alexander, in the mean time, marched on at the head of his heavy-armed infantry drawn up in two lines, with the cavalry in the wings: the baggage followed in the rear. Being arrived upon the banks of the Granicus, Parmenio advised him to encamp there in battle-array, in order that his forces might have time to rest themselves; and not to pass the river till very early next morning, because the enemy would then be less able to prevent him. He added, that it would be too dangerous to attempt crossing a river in sight of an enemy, especially as that before them was deep, and its banks very craggy; so that the Persian cavalry, who waited their coming in battle-array, on the other side, might easily defeat them before they were drawn up. That, besides the loss which would be sustained on this occasion, this enterprise, in case it should prove unsuccessful, would be of dangerous consequence to their future affairs; the fame and glory of arms depending on the first actions.

However, these reasons were not able to make the least impression on Alexander, who declared, that it would be a shame, should he, after crossing the Hellespont, suffer his progress to be retarded by a rivulet, for so he called the Granicus out of contempt: That they ought to take the advantage

of the terror which the suddenness of his arrival, and the boldness of his attempt, had spread amongst the Persians, and answer the high opinion the world conceived of his courage, and the valour of the Macedonians. The enemy's horse, which was very numerous, lined the whole shore, and formed a large front, in order to oppose Alexander, wherever he should endeavour to pass; and the foot, which consisted chiefly of Greeks, in Darius' service, was posted behind, upon an easy ascent.

The two armies continued a long time in sight of each other on the banks of the river, as if dreading the event. The Persians waited till the Macedonians should enter the river, in order to charge them to advantage upon their landing; and the latter seemed to be making choice of a place proper for crossing, and to survey the countenance of their enemies. Upon this Alexander, having ordered his horse to be brought, commanded the noblemen of the court to follow him, and behave gallantly. He himself commanded the right wing, and Parmenio the left. The king first caused a strong detachment to march into the river, himself following it with the rest of his forces. He made Parmenio advance afterwards with the left wing. He himself led on the right wing, into the river, followed by the rest of the troops; the trumpets sounding, and the whole army raising cries of joy.

The Persians, seeing this detachment advance forward, began to let fly their arrows, and marched to a place where the declivity was not so great, in order to keep the Macedonians from landing. But now the horse engaged with great fury; one part endeavouring to land, and the other striving to prevent them. The Macedonians, whose cavalry was vastly inferior in number, besides the advantage of the ground, were wounded with darts that were shot from the eminence; not to mention that the flower of the Persian horse were drawn together in this place; and that Memnon, in concert with his sons, commanded there. The Macedonians therefore at first gave ground, after having lost the first ranks, which made a vigorous defence. Alexander, who had followed them close, and reinforced them with his best troops, heads them himself, animates them with his presence, pushes the Persians, and routs them; upon which the whole army follow after, cross the river, and attack the enemy on all sides.

Alexander first charged the thickest part of the enemy's horse, in which the generals fought. He himself was particularly conspicuous by his shield, and the plume of feathers

that overshadowed his helmet, on the two sides of which there rose two wings, as it were, of a great length, and so vastly white, that they dazzled the eyes of the beholder. The charge was very furious about his person; and though only horse engaged, they fought like foot, man to man, without giving way on either side; every one striving to repulse his adversary, and gain ground of him. Spithrobates, lieutenant-governor of Ionia, and son-in-law to Darius, distinguished himself above the rest of the generals by his superior bravery. Being surrounded by forty Persian lords, all of them his relations, of experienced valour, and who never moved from his side, he carried terror wherever he moved. Alexander observing in how gallant a manner he signalized himself, clapped spurs to his horse, and advanced towards him. Immediately they engaged, and each having thrown a javelin, wounded the other slightly. Spithrobates falls furiously, sword in hand, upon Alexander, who, being prepared for him, thrusts his pike into his face, and laid him dead at his feet. At that very moment, Rosaces, brother to that nobleman, charging him on the side, gives him so furious a blow on the head with his battle-axe, that he beat off his plume, but went no deeper than the hair. As he was going to repeat his blow on the head, which now appeared through his fractured helmet, Clitus cuts off Rosaces' hand with one stroke of his scimitar, and by that means saved his sovereign's life. The danger to which Alexander had been exposed, greatly animated the courage of his soldiers, who now perform wonders. The Persians in the centre of the horse, upon whom the light armed troops, who had been posted in the intervals of the horse, poured a perpetual discharge of darts; being unable to sustain any longer the attack of the Macedonians, who struck them all in the face, the two wings were immediately broke and put to flight. Alexander did not pursue them long, but turned about immediately to charge the foot.

These, says the historian, at first stood their ground, which was owing to the surprise they were seized with, rather than bravery. But when they saw themselves attacked at the same time by the cavalry, and the Macedonian phalanx, which had crossed the river, and that the battalions were now engaged, those of the Persians did not make either a long or a vigorous resistance, and were soon put to flight, the Grecian infantry in Darius's service excepted. This body of foot retiring to a hill, demanded a promise from Alexander to let them march away unmolested; but, following the dictates of

his wrath, rather than those of reason, he rushed into the midst of this body of foot, and presently lost his horse, not Bucephalus, who was killed with the thrust of a sword. The battle was so hot round him, that most of the Macedonians who lost their lives on this occasion fell here; for they fought against a body of men who were well disciplined, had been inured to war, and fought in despair. They were all cut to pieces, two thousand excepted, who were taken prisoners.

A great number of the chief Persian commanders lay dead on the spot. Arsites fled into Phrygia, where it is said he laid violent hands upon himself, for having been the cause that the battle was fought. It would have been more glorious for him, had he died in the field. Twenty thousand foot, and two thousand five hundred horse, were killed in this engagement, on the side of the Barbarians: and of the Macedonians, twenty-five of the royal horse were killed at the first attack. Alexander ordered Lysippus to make their statues in brass, all which were set up in a city of Macedon called Dia, in honour of them, from whence they were many years after carried to Rome by Q. Metellus. About threescore of the other horse were killed; and near thirty foot, who, the next day, were all laid, with their arms and equipage, in one grave; and the king granted an exemption to their fathers and children from every kind of tribute and service.

He also took the utmost care of the wounded, visited them, and saw their wounds dressed. He inquired very particularly into their adventures, and permitted every one of them to relate his actions in the battle, and boast his bravery. A prince gains many advantages by such a familiarity and condescension. He also granted the rites of sepulture to the grandees of Persia, and did not even refuse it to such Greeks as died in the Persian service; but all those whom he took prisoners he laid in chains, and sent them to work as slaves in Macedonia, for having fought under the Barbarian standards against their country, contrary to the express prohibition made by Greece upon that head.

Alexander made it his duty and pleasure to share the honour of his victory with the Greeks; and sent particularly to the Athenians three hundred shields, being part of the plunder taken from the enemy; and caused the glorious inscription following to be inscribed on the rest of the spoils: "Alexander, son of Philip, with the Greeks, the Lacedæmonians excepted, gained these spoils from the Barbarians who inhabit Asia." A conduct of this kind argues a very un-

common and amiable greatness of soul in a conqueror, who generally cannot, without great reluctance, admit others to share in his glory. The greatest part of the gold and silver plate, the purple carpets, and other furniture of the Persian luxury, he sent to his mother.

SECTION IV.

ALEXANDER CONQUERS THE GREATEST PART OF ASIA MINOR. DESCRIPTION OF DARIUS' MARCH.

THE success of the battle of the Granicus had all the happy consequences that could naturally be expected from it^u. Sardis, which was in a manner the bulwark of the Barbarian empire on the side next the sea, surrendered to Alexander, who thereupon gave the citizens their liberty, and permitted them to live after their own laws. Four days after, he arrived at Ephesus, carrying with him those who had been banished from thence for being his adherents, and restored its popular form of government. He assigned to the temple of Diana the tributes which were paid to the kings of Persia. He offered a great number of sacrifices to that goddess; so-lemnized her mysteries with the utmost pomp, and conducted the ceremony with his whole army drawn up in battle-array. The Ephesians had begun to rebuild the temple of Diana, which had been burned the night of Alexander's birth, as was before observed, and the work was now very forward. Di-nocrates, a famous architect, who superintended this edifice, was employed by this king to build Alexandria in Egypt. Alexander offered to pay the Ephesians all the expences they had already been at, and to furnish the remainder, provided they would inscribe the temple only with his name; for he was fond, or rather insatiable of every kind of glory. The inhabitants of Ephesus not being willing to consent to it, and however afraid to refuse him that honour openly, had recourse to an artful flattery for an evasion. They told him that it was inconsistent for one god to erect monuments to another. Before he left Ephesus, the deputies of the cities of Trallis and Magnesia waited upon him with the keys of those places.

He afterwards marched to Miletus, which city, flattered with the hopes of a sudden and powerful support, shut their

^u A. M. 3671. Ant. J. C. 333. Diod. l. xviii. p. 503.—511. Arrian. l. i. p. 36.—59. et l. ii. p. 60.—66. Plut. in Alex. p. 673, 674. Q. Curt. l. iii. c. 1.—3. Justin. l. xi. c. 7. 8. Strab. l. xiv. p. 640. Solin. c. xl.

gates against him ; and indeed the Persian fleet, which was very considerable, made shew as if it would succour that city ; but after having made several fruitless attempts to engage that of the enemy, it was forced to sail away. Memnon had shut himself up in this fortress, with a great number of his soldiers who had escaped from the battle, and was determined to make a good defence. Alexander, who would not lose a moment's time, attacked it, and planted scaling-ladders on all sides. The scalado was carried on with great vigour, and opposed with no less intrepidity, though Alexander sent fresh troops to relieve one another without the least intermission, and this lasted several days. At last, finding his soldiers were every where repulsed, and that the city was provided with every thing for a long siege, he planted all his machines against it, made a great number of breaches, and whenever these were attacked, a new scalado was attempted. The besieged, after sustaining all these efforts with prodigious bravery, capitulated for fear of being taken by storm. Alexander treated all the Milesians with the utmost humanity, and sold all the foreigners who were found in it. The historians do not make any mention of Memnon, but we may reasonably suppose that he marched out with the garrison.

* Alexander, seeing that the enemy's fleet was sailed away, resolved to lay up his own, the expence of it being too great, not to mention that he wanted money for things of greater importance. Some historians are even of opinion, that as he was upon the point of coming to a battle with Darius, which was to determine the fate of the two empires, he was resolved to deprive his soldiers of all hopes of retreat, and to leave them no other resource than that of victory. He therefore retained such vessels only of his fleet, as were absolutely necessary for transporting the military engines, and a small number of other galleys.

After possessing himself of Miletus, he marched into Caria, in order to lay siege to Halicarnassus. The city was of prodigiously difficult access from its happy situation, and had been strongly fortified. Besides, Memnon, the ablest as well as the most valiant of all Darius's commanders, had got into it with a body of choice soldiers, with design to signalize his courage and fidelity for his sovereign. He accordingly made a very noble defence, in which he was seconded by Ephialtes, another general of great merit. Whatever could be expect-

ed from the most intrepid bravery, and the most consummate knowledge in the science of war, was conspicuous on both sides on this occasion. After the besiegers had, with incredible labour, filled up part of the ditches, and brought their engines near the walls, they had the grief to see their works demolished in an instant, and their engines set on fire, by the frequent vigorous sallies of the besieged. After beating down part of a wall with their battering rams, they were astonished to see a new one behind it; which was so sudden, that it seemed to rise out of the ground. The attack of these walls, which were built in a semicircular form, destroyed a prodigious number of men; because the besieged, from the top of the towers that were raised on the several sides, took the enemy in flank. It was evidently seen at this siege, that the strongest fortifications of a city, are the valour and courage of its defenders. The siege was held out so long, and attended with such surprising difficulties, as would have discouraged any warrior but an Alexander; yet his troops were animated by the view of dangers, and their patience was at last successful. Memnon, finding it impossible for him to hold out any longer, was forced to abandon the city. As the sea was open to him, after having put a strong garrison into the citadel, which was well stored with provisions, he took with him the surviving inhabitants, with all their riches, and conveyed them into the island of Cos, which was not far from Halicarnassus. Alexander did not think proper to besiege the citadel, it being of little importance after the city was destroyed, which he demolished to the very foundations. He left it, after having encompassed it with strong walls, and left some good troops in the country.

After the death of Artemisa, queen of Caria, Idriæus her brother reigned in her stead. The sceptre devolved upon Ada, sister and wife of Idriæus, according to the custom of the country; but she was dethroned by Prexodorus, to whom succeeded, by Darius' command, Orontobates his son-in-law. Ada, however, was still possessed of a fortress called Allinda, the keys of which she had carried to Alexander, the instant she heard of his arrival in Caria, and had adopted him for her son. The king was so far from contemning this honour, that he left her the quiet possession of her own city: and, after having taken Halicarnassus, as he by that means was master of the whole country, he restored the government of it to Ada.

y This lady, as a testimony of the deep sense she had of the favours received from Alexander, sent him every day meats dressed in the most exquisite manner; delicious pies of all sorts, and the most excellent cooks of every kind. Alexander answered the queen on this occasion, "That all this train was "of no service to him, for that he was possessed of much better cooks, whom * Leonidas his governor had given him: "one of whom prepared him a good dinner, and that was by "walking a great deal in the morning very early; and the "other prepared him an excellent supper, and that was dining "very moderately."

Several kings of Asia Minor submitted voluntarily to Alexander. Mithridates king of Pontus was one of these, who afterwards adhered to this prince, and followed him in his expeditions. He was son to Ariobarzanes, governor of Phrygia, and king of Pontus, of whom mention has been made elsewhere. ^z He is computed to be the sixteenth king from Artabazus, who is considered as the founder of that kingdom, of which he was put in possession by Darius, son of Hystaspes his father. The famous Mithridates, who so long employed the Roman armies, was one of his successors.

Alexander, before he went into winter-quarters, permitted all such of his soldiers as had married that year, to return into Macedonia, there to spend the winter with their wives, upon condition that they would return in the spring. He appointed three officers to march them thither and back again. This agrees exactly with the law of ^a Moses, and, as we do not find that this law or custom was used by any other nation, it is very probable that Aristotle had learned it from some Jew, with whom he became acquainted in Asia; and that approving it as a very wise and just custom, he therefore had recommended it to his pupil, who remembered it on this occasion.

The next year Alexander began the campaign very early. He had debated, whether it would be proper for him to march directly against Darius, or should first subdue the rest of the maritime provinces. The latter opinion appeared the safest, since he thereby would not be molested by such nations as he should leave behind him. ^b This progress was a little interrupted at first. Near Phaselis, a city situated between Lycia

y Plut. in Alex. p. 677.

z Florus, l. iii. c. 5.

a Deut. xxiv. 5.

b Strab. l. xiv. p. 666.

* Βελτίωνας γαρ ὁ Φούστιος ἔχειν ὑπὸ τῆς παιδικῆς Λεωνίδης δεδομένης ὅντω πρὸς μὲν το ἀριστον γυντοπορίαν, πρὸς δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ὁλιγοφερίαν.

and Pamphylia, is a defile along the sea-shore, which is always dry at low water, so that travellers may pass it at that time; but when the sea rises, it is all under water. As it was now winter, Alexander, whom nothing could daunt, was desirous of passing it before the waters fell. His forces were therefore obliged to march a whole day in the water, which came up to their waist. Some historians, purely to embellish this incident, relate that the sea, by the divine command, had submitted spontaneously to Alexander, and had opened a way to him, contrary to the usual course of nature; among these writers is Quintus Curtius. It is surprising that Josephus the historian, to weaken the authority of the miracle of the Jews passing through the Red Sea, as on dry land, should have cited this circumstance by way of example, the falsity of which Alexander himself had refuted. For Plutarch relates, that he had wrote only as follows in one of his letters, “ That when “ he left the city of Phaselis, he marched on foot through the “ pass of the mountain called Climax : ” And it is very well known that this prince, who was vastly fond of the marvellous, never let slip any opportunity of persuading the people, that the gods protected him in a very singular manner.

During his being in the neighbourhood of Phaselis, he discovered a conspiracy which was carrying on by Alexander son of Eropus, whom he had a little before appointed general of the Thessalian cavalry, in the room of Calas, whom he had made governor of a province. Darius, upon the receipt of a letter which this traitor had sent him, promised him a reward of a thousand * talents of gold, with the kingdom of Macedonia, in case he could murder Alexander; believing this was not paying too dear for a crime, which would rid him of so formidable an enemy. The messenger who carried the king's answer being seized, made a full confession, by which means the traitor was brought to condign punishment.

Alexander, after having settled affairs in Cilicia and Pamphylia, marched his army to Celænæ, a city of Phrygia, watered by the river Marsyas, which the fictions of poets have made so famous. He summoned the garrison of the citadel, whither the inhabitants were retired, to surrender; but these believing it impregnable, answered haughtily, that they would first die. However, finding the attack carried on with great vigour, they desired a truce of sixty days, at the expiration of which they promised to open their gates, in case they were not

* About one million five hundred thousand pounds Sterling.

succoured. And accordingly, no aid arriving, they surrendered themselves on the day fixed.

From thence the king marched into Phrygia, the capital of which was called Gordion, the ancient and famous residence of king Midas, situated on the river Sangarius. Having taken the city, he was desirous of seeing the famous chariot to which the Gordion knot was tied. This knot, which fastened the yoke to the beam, was tied with so much art, and the strings were twisted in so wonderful a manner, that it was impossible to discover where it began or ended. According to an ancient tradition of the country, an oracle had foretold, that the man who could untie it should possess the empire of Asia. Now Alexander was firmly persuaded that this promise related to himself; after many fruitless trials, he cried, ^c “ It is no matter which way it be untied,” and thereupon cut it with his sword, and by that means, says the historian, either eluded or fulfilled the oracle.

In the mean time Darius was setting every engine at work in order to make a vigorous defence. Memnon the Rhodian advised him to carry the war into Macedonia, which counsel seemed the most proper to extricate him from present danger; for the Lacedæmonians, and several other Greek nations, who had no affection for the Macedonians, would have been ready to join him; by which means Alexander must have been forced to leave Asia, and return suddenly over sea, to defend his own country. Darius approved this counsel, and, having determined to follow it, charged Memnon to put it in execution. Accordingly, he was declared admiral of the fleet, and captain-general of all the forces designed for that expedition.

That prince could not possibly have made a better choice. Memnon was the ablest general in his service, and had fought a great many years under the Persian standards with the utmost fidelity. Had his advice been taken, the battle of the Granicus had not been fought. He did not abandon his master’s interest after that misfortune, but had assembled the scattered remains of the army, and immediately went first to Miletos, from thence to Halicarnassus, and lastly into the island of Cos, where he was when he received his new commission. This place was the rendezvous of the fleet; and Memnon was now meditating wholly upon the manner how to put his design in execution. He made himself master of the island of Chios, and all Lesbos, the city of Mitylene excepted. From thence

^c Sortem oraculi vel elusit, vel implevit.—Quint. Curt.

he was preparing to pass over into Eubœa, and to make Greece and Macedonia the seat of the war, but died before Mytilene, which city he had been forced to besiege. His death was the greatest misfortune that could possibly have happened to Persia. We see on this occasion the inestimable worth of a man of merit, whose death is sometimes the ruin of a state. The loss of Memnon frustrated the execution of the plan he had formed; for Darius, not having one general in his army, who was able to supply Memnon's place, abandoned entirely the only enterprise which could have saved his empire. His whole refuge therefore now lay in the armies of the east. Darius, dissatisfied with all his generals, resolved to command in person, and appointed Babylon for the rendezvous of his army; whereupon being mustered, they were found to be about four, five, or six hundred thousand men, for historians differ very much on this head.

Alexander, having left Gordion, marched into Paphlagonia and Cappadocia, which he subdued. It was there he heard of Memnon's death, the news whereof confirmed him in the resolution he had taken of marching immediately into the provinces of Upper Asia. Accordingly he advanced by hasty marches into Cilicia, and arrived in the country called * Cyrus' Camp. From thence there is no more than fifty stadia, two leagues and a half each, to the pass of Cilicia, which is a very narrow strait, through which travellers are obliged to go from Cappadocia to Tarsus. The officer who guarded it in Darius' name, had left but few soldiers in it, and those fled the instant they heard of the enemy's arrival. Upon this Alexander entered the pass, and, after viewing very attentively the situation of the place, he admired his own good fortune; and confessed, that he might have been very easily stopped and defeated there, merely by the throwing of stones: for, not to mention that this pass was so narrow, that four men completely armed could scarcely walk a-breast in it; the top of the mountain hung over the road, which was not only strait, but broke in several places, by the fall of torrents from the mountains.

Alexander marched his whole army to the city of Tarsus, where it arrived the instant the Persians were setting fire to that place, to prevent his plundering the great riches of so flourishing a city. But Parmenio, whom the king had sent

* Quintus Curtius supposes it to be so called from Cyrus the Great, and Arrian from the younger Cyrus, which opinion appears the most probable.

thither with a detachment of horse, arrived very seasonably to stop the progress of the fire, and marched into the city, which he saved; the Barbarians having fled the moment they heard of his arrival.

Through this city the Cydnus runs, a river not so remarkable for the breadth of its channel, as for the beauty of its waters, which are vastly limpid; but at the same time excessively cold, because of the tufted trees with which its banks are overshadowed. It was now about the end of summer, which is excessively hot in Cilicia, and in the hottest part of the day, when the king, who was quite covered with sweat and dirt, arriving on its banks, had a mind to bathe in that river, invited by the beauty and clearness of the stream. However, the instant he plunged into it, he was seized with so violent a shivering, that all the standers-by fancied he was dying. Upon this, he was carried to his tent, after fainting away. The news of this sad disaster threw the whole army into the utmost consternation. They all burst into tears, and breathed their plaints in the following words: "The greatest prince that ever lived is torn from us in the midst of his prosperities and conquests; not in a battle, or at the storming of a city; but dies by his bathing in a river. Darius, who is coming up with us, will conquer before he has seen his enemy. We shall be forced to retire like so many fugitives, through those very countries which we entered with triumph; and as the places through which we must pass are either desert or depopulated, hunger only, should we meet no other enemy, will itself destroy us. But who shall guide us in our flight, or dare to set himself up in Alexander's stead? And should we be so happy as to arrive at the Hellespont, how shall we furnish ourselves with vessels to cross it?" After this, directing their whole thoughts to the prince, and forgetting themselves, they cried aloud: "Alas! how sad is it that he who was our king, and the companion of our toils, a king in the flower of his youth, and in the course of his greatest prosperities, should be taken off, and in a manner torn from our arms!"

At last the king recovered his senses by degrees, and began to know the persons who stood round him; though the only symptoms he gave of his recovery was, his being sensible of his illness. But he was more indisposed in mind than in body, for news was brought that Darius might soon arrive. Alexander bewailed perpetually his hard fate, in being thus exposed naked and defenceless to his enemy, and robbed of so

noble a victory, since he was now reduced to the melancholy condition of dying obscurely in his tent, and far from having attained the glory he had promised himself. Having ordered his confidants and physicians to come into his tent, “ You “ see,” said he, “ my friends, the sad extremity to which for- “ tune reduces me. Methinks I already hear the sound of “ the enemy’s arms, and see Darius advancing. He undoubt- “ edly held intelligence with my evil * genius, when he wrote “ letters to his lieutenants in so lofty and contemptuous a “ strain; however, he shall not obtain his desire, provided “ such a cure as I want is attempted. The present condi- “ tion of my affairs will not admit either of slow remedies or “ fearful physicians. A speedy death is more eligible to me “ than a slow cure. In case the physicians think it is in their “ power to do me any good, they are to know, that I do not “ so much wish to live as to fight.”

The sudden impatience of the king spread an universal alarm. The physicians, who were sensible they should be answerable for the event, did not dare to hazard violent and extraordinary remedies, especially as Darius had published, that he would reward with a thousand talents † the man who should kill Alexander. However Philip, an Acarnanian, one of his physicians, who had always attended upon him from his youth, loved him with the utmost tenderness, not only as his sovereign, but his child; raising himself, merely out of affection to Alexander, above all prudential considerations, offered to give him a dose, which, though not very violent, would nevertheless be speedy in its effects; and desired three days to prepare it. At this proposal every one trembled; but him only whom it most concerned; Alexander being afflicted upon no other account, than because it would keep him three days from appearing at the head of his army.

Whilst these things were doing, Alexander received a letter from Parmenio, who was left behind in Cappadocia, in whom Alexander put greater confidence than in any other of his courtiers; the purport of which was, to bid him beware of Philip, for that Darius had bribed him, by the promise of a thousand talents, and his sister in marriage. This † letter

* Darius, who imagined himself sure of overcoming Alexander, had writ to his lieutenants, that they should chastise this young fool; and after clothing him in purple out of derision, should send him bound hand and foot to the court.—Friesheim in Quint. Curt.

† About L. 145,000 Sterling.

‡ Ingentem animo solicitudinem literæ incusserant; et quicquid in utramque partem aut mctus aut spes subjecerat, secreta aestimatione pensabat.—Q. Curt.

gave him great uneasiness, for he was now at full leisure to weigh all the reasons he might have to hope or to fear. But the confidence in a physician, whose sincere attachment and fidelity he had proved from his infancy, soon prevailed, and removed all his doubts. Upon this he folded up the letter, and put it under his bolster, without acquainting any one with the contents of it.

The day being come, Philip enters the tent with his medicine, when Alexander, taking the letter from under the bolster, gives it to Philip to read. At the same time he takes the cup, and, fixing his eyes on the physician, swallows the draught without the least hesitation, or without discovering the least suspicion or uneasiness. Philip, as he perused the letter, had showed greater signs of indignation than of fear or surprise; and throwing himself upon the king's bed—"Royal Sir," says he, with a resolute tone of voice, "your recovery will soon clear me of the guilt of parricide with which I am charged. The only favour I beg is, that you would be easy in your own mind, and suffer the draught to operate, and not regard the intelligence you have received from servants, who indeed have shown their zeal for your welfare; which zeal, however, is very indiscreet and unseasonable." These words did not only revive the king, but filled him with hope and joy; so, taking Philip by the hand, "Be you yourself easy," says he to him, "for I believe you are disquieted upon a double account; first for my recovery, and secondly for your own justification."

In the mean time, the physic worked so violently, that the accidents which attended it, strengthened Parmenio's accusation; for the king lost his speech, and was seized with such strong fainting fits, that he had hardly any pulse left, or the least symptoms of life. Philip employed all the powers of physic to recover him, and in every lucid interval, diverted him with agreeable subjects; discoursing one moment about his mother and his sisters, and another about the mighty victory which was advancing, with hasty steps, to crown his past triumphs. At last the physician's art having gained the ascendant, and diffused through every vein a salutary and vivific virtue; his mind first began to resume its former vigour, and afterwards his body, much sooner than had been expected. Three days after, he showed himself to the army, who were never satisfied with gazing on him, and could scarce believe their eyes; so much the greatness of the danger had surprised and dejected them. No caresses were enough for the physi-

cian; every one embracing him with the utmost tenderness, and returning him thanks as to a god who had saved the life of their sovereign.

Besides the respect which these people had naturally for their kings, words can never express how greatly they admired this monarch more than any other, and the strong affection they bore him. They were persuaded that he did not undertake any thing but by the immediate assistance of the gods; and as success always attended his designs, his rashness became glorious in him, and seemed to have something inexpressibly divine in it. His youth, which one would have concluded incapable of such mighty enterprises, and which however overcame all difficulties, gave a fresh merit and a brighter lustre to his actions. * Besides, certain advantages that generally are little regarded, and which yet engage in a wonderful manner the hearts of the soldiery, greatly augmented the merit of Alexander; such as, his taking delight in bodily exercises; his discovering a skill and excellency in them; his going clothed like the common soldiers, and knowing how to familiarize himself with inferiors, without lessening his dignity; his sharing in toils and dangers with the most laborious and intrepid qualities; which, whether Alexander owed them to nature, or had acquired them by reflection, made him equally beloved and respected by his soldiers.

During the interval, Darius was on his march, full of vain security in the infinite number of his troops, and forming a judgement of the two armies merely from their disparity in that point. The plains of Assyria, in which he was encamped, gave him an opportunity of extending his horse as he pleased, and of taking the advantage which the great difference between the number of soldiers in each army gave him; but instead of this, he resolves to march to narrow passes, where his cavalry and the multitude of his troops, so far from doing him any service, would only encumber one another; and accordingly he advances towards the enemy, for whom he should have waited, and runs visibly to his own destruction. Nevertheless, the grandees of his court, whose custom it was to flatter and applaud his every action, congratulated him beforehand on the victory he would soon obtain, as if it had been certain and inevitable. There was at that time, in the army of Darius, one Caridemus an Athenian, a man of great ex-

* Quæ leviora haberi solent, plerumque in re militari gratiora vulgo sunt.
—Q. Curt.

perience in war, who personally hated Alexander, for having caused him to be banished from Athens. Darius, turning to this Athenian, asked whether he believed him powerful enough to defeat his enemy? Caridemus, who had been brought up in the bosom of liberty, and forgetting that he was in a country of slavery, where to oppose the inclination of a prince is of the most dangerous consequence, replied as follows: "Possibly, Sir, you may not be pleased with my telling you the truth; but in case I do not do it now, it will be too late hereafter. This mighty parade of war, this prodigious number of men which has drained all the East, might indeed be formidable to your neighbours. Gold and purple shine in every part of your army, which is so prodigiously splendid, that those who have not seen it could never form an idea of its magnificence. But the soldiers who compose the Macedonian army, terrible to behold, and bristling in every part with arms, do not amuse themselves with such idle show. Their only care is to discipline, in a regular manner, their battalions, and to cover themselves close with their bucklers and pikes. Their phalanx is a body of infantry, which engages without flinching; and keeps so close in their ranks, that the soldiers and their arms form a kind of impenetrable work. In a word, every single man among them, the officers as well as soldiers, are so well trained up, so attentive to the command of their leaders, that, whether they are to assemble under their standards, to turn to the right or left, to double their ranks, and face about to the enemy on all sides, at the least signal they make every motion and evolution of the art of war. But that you may be persuaded these Macedonians are not invited hither * from the hopes of gaining gold and silver, know, that this excellent discipline has subsisted hitherto by the sole aid and precepts of poverty. Are they hungry? they satisfy their appetite with any kind of food. Are they weary? they repose themselves on the bare ground, and in the day-time are always upon their feet. Do you fancy that the Thessalian cavalry, and that of Arcania and Ætolia, who all are armed cap-a-pee, are to be repulsed by stones hurled from slings, and with sticks burned at the end? Such troops as are like themselves will be able to check their career; and succours must be procured from their country, to oppose

* *Et, ne auri argenteique studio teneri putas, adhuc illa disciplina paupertate magistra stetis.—Q. Curt.*

“ their bravery and experience. Send therefore thither all “ the useless gold and silver which I see here, and purchase “ formidable soldiers.” * Darius was naturally of a mild tractable disposition ; but good fortune will corrupt the most happy temper. Few monarchs are resolute and courageous enough to withstand their own power, to repulse the flattery of the many people who are perpetually fomenting their passions, and to esteem a man who loves them so well as to contradict and displease them, in telling them the genuine truth. But Darius, not having strength of mind sufficient for this, gives orders for dragging to execution a man who had fled to him for protection, was at that time his guest, and gave him at that time the best counsel that could have been proposed to him. However, as this cruel treatment could not silence Cnidemus, he cried aloud, with his usual freedom, “ My avenger “ is at hand, the very man in opposition to whom I gave you “ counsel, and he will soon punish you for despising it. † As “ for you, Darius, in whom sovereign power has wrought so “ sudden a change, you will teach posterity, that when once “ men abandon themselves to the delusion of fortune, she “ erases from their minds all the seeds of goodness implanted “ in them by nature.” Darius soon repented his having put to death so valuable a person ; and experienced, but too late, the truth of all he had told him.

The king advanced with his troops towards the Euphrates. It was a custom long used by the Persians, never to set out upon a march till after sun-rise, at which time the trumpet was sounded for that purpose from the king's tent. Over this tent was exhibited to the view of the whole army, the image of the sun set in crystal. The order they observed in their march was this :

First, they carried silver altars, on which there lay fire, called by them sacred and eternal ; and these were followed by the Magi, singing hymns after the manner of their country. They were accompanied by three hundred and sixty-five youths, agreeable to the number of days in a year, clothed in purple robes. Afterwards came a chariot consecrated to ‡ Jupiter, drawn by white horses, and followed by a courser

* Erat Dario mite ac tractabile ingenium, nisi etiam suam naturam plerumque fortuna corrumperet.—Q. Curt. I suspect the particle *suam*.

† Tu quidem, licentia regni subito mutatus documentum eris posteris, homines, cum se permisere fortunæ, etiam naturam dediscere.—Q. Curt.

‡ Jupiter was a god unknown to the Persians. Quintus Curtius therefore, in all probability, calls the first and greatest of their gods by that name.

of a prodigious size, to whom they gave the name of the sun's horse; and the equerries were dressed in white, each having a golden rod in his hand.

Ten chariots, adorned with sculptures in gold and silver, followed after. Then marched a body of horse, composed of twelve nations, whose manners and customs were various, and all armed in a different manner. Next advanced those whom the Persians called the Immortals, amounting to ten thousand, who surpassed the rest of the Barbarians in the sumptuousness of their apparel. They all wore golden collars, were clothed in robes of gold tissue, with surtouts, having sleeves to them, quite covered with precious stones.

Thirty paces from them, followed those called the king's cousins or * relations, to the number of fifteen thousand, in habits very much resembling those of women, and more remarkable for the vain pomp of their dress than the glitter of their arms.

Those called the † Doryphori came after; they carried the king's cloak, and walked before his chariot, in which he seemed to sit as on a high throne. This chariot was enriched on both sides with images of the gods in gold and silver; and from the middle of the yoke, which was covered with jewels, rose two statues a cubit in height, the one representing war, the other peace, having a golden eagle between them, with wings extended, as ready to take its flight.

But nothing could equal the magnificence of the king. He was clothed in a vest of purple, striped with silver, and over it a long robe glittering all over with gold and precious stones, that represented two falcons rushing from the clouds, and pecking at one another. Around his waist he wore a ‡ golden girdle, after the manner of women, whence his scimitar hung, the scabbard of which flamed all over with gems. On his head he wore a tiara or mitre, round which was a fillet of blue mixed with white.

On each side of him walked two hundred of his nearest relations, followed by ten thousand pikemen, whose pikes were adorned with silver, and tipped with gold; and lastly, thirty thousand infantry, who composed the rear-guard. These were followed by the king's horses, four hundred in number, all which were led.

* This was a title of dignity. Possibly a great number of the king's relations were in this body.

† These were guards who carried a half pike.

‡ Cedaris.

About one hundred, or an hundred and twenty paces from thence, came Sysigambis, Darius' mother, seated in a chariot, and his consort in another, with the several female attendants of both queens riding on horseback. Afterwards came fifteen large chariots, in which were the king's children, and those who had the care of their education, with a band of eunuchs, who are to this day in great esteem with those nations. Then marched the concubines, to the number of three hundred and sixty in the equipage of queens, followed by six hundred mules and three hundred camels, which carried the king's treasure, and were guarded by a great body of archers.

After these came the wives of the crown officers, and of the greatest lords of the court; then the sutlers, and servants of the army, seated also in chariots.

In the rear were a body of light-armed troops, with their commanders, who closed the whole march.

Would not the reader believe, that he had been reading the description of a tournament, not the march of an army? Could he imagine that princes of the least reason would have been so stupid, as to incorporate with their forces so cumbersome a train of women, princesses, concubines, eunuchs, and domestics of both sexes? But the custom of the country was reason sufficient. Darius, at the head of six hundred thousand men, and surrounded with this mighty pomp, prepared for himself only, fancied he was great, and rose in the idea he had formed of himself. Yet should we reduce him to his just proportion and his personal worth, how little would he appear! But he is not the only one in this way of thinking, and of whom we may form the same judgement. But it is time for us to bring the two monarchs to blows.

SECTION V.

ALEXANDER GAINS A FAMOUS VICTORY OVER DARIUS AT ISSUS. CONSEQUENCES OF THAT VICTORY.

For the clearer understanding of Alexander's march ^d, and that of Darius; and the better fixing the situation of the spot where the second battle was fought, we must distinguish three straits or passes. ^e The first of these is immediately at the descent from mount Taurus, in the way to the city of Tarsus,

^d A. M. 3672. Ant. J. C. 332. ^e Diod. l. xvii. p. 512.—518. Arrian. l. ii. p. 66.—82. Plut. in Alex. p. 675, 676. Q. Curt. l. iii. e. 4.—12. Justin. l. xi. c. 9. 10.

through which, as we have already seen, Alexander marched from Cappadocia into Cilicia. The second is the pass of Cilicia or Syria, leading from Cilicia into Syria; and the third is the pass of Amanus, so called from that mountain. This pass, which leads into Cilicia from Assyria, is much higher than the pass of Syria, northward.

Alexander had detached Parmenio with part of the army to seize the pass of Syria, in order to secure it for his march. As for himself, after marching from Tarsus, he arrived the next day at Anchiala, a city which Sardanapalus is said to have built. His tomb is still to be seen in that city, with this inscription, “Sardanapalus built Anchiala and Tarsus in one “day;” GO, PASSENGER, EAT, DRINK, AND REJOICE, FOR THE REST IS NOTHING. From thence he came to Solæ, where he offered sacrifices to *Æsculapius*, in gratitude for the recovery of his health. Alexander himself headed the ceremony with lighted tapers, followed by the whole army, and he there solemnized games; after which he returned to Tarsus. Having commanded Philotas to march the cavalry through the plains of Aleius, towards the river Pyramus, he himself went with the infantry and his life-guard to Magarsus, whence he arrived at Mallos, and afterwards at Castabala. Advice had been brought him, that Darius, with his whole army, was encamped at Sochus in Assyria, two days journey from Cilicia. There Alexander held a council of war upon that news; when all his generals and officers entreating him to march towards Darius, he set out the next day to give him battle. Parmenio had taken the little city of Issus, and, after possessing himself of the pass of Syria, had left a body of forces to secure it. The king left the sick in Issus, marched his whole army through the pass, and encamped near the city of Myriandrus, where the badness of the weather obliged him to halt.

In the mean time, Darius was in the plains of Assyria, of great extent. The Grecian commanders who were in his service, and formed the chief strength of his army, advised him to wait there the coming up of the enemy. For, besides that this spot was open on all sides, and very advantageous for his horse, it was spacious enough to contain his vastly-numerous host, with all the baggage and other things belonging to the army. However, if he should not approve of their counsel, they then advised him to separate this multitude, and select such only as were the flower of his troops; and consequently not venture his whole army upon a single battle, which perhaps might be decisive. However, the courtiers, with whom

the courts of monarchs, as Arrian observes, for ever abound, called these Greeks an unfaithful nation, and venal wretches ; and hinted to Darius, that the only motive of their counselling the king to divide his troops was, that after they should once be separated from the rest, they might have an easier opportunity of delivering up into the enemy's hands whatever might be in their power ; but that the safest way would be, to surround them with the whole army, and cut them to pieces, as an illustrious example of the punishment due to traitors. This proposal was vastly shocking to Darius, who was naturally of a very mild and humane disposition. He therefore answered, " That he was far from ever designing to " commit so horrible a crime ; that should he be guilty of it, " no nation would afterwards give the least credit to his pro- " mises ; that it was never known that a person had been put " to death for giving imprudent counsel * ; that no man would " ever venture to give his opinion, if it were attended with " such danger, a circumstance that would be of the most fa- " tal consequence to princes." He then thanked the Greeks for their zeal and good will, and condescended to lay before them the reasons which prompted him not to follow their advice.

The courtiers had persuaded Darius, that Alexander's long delay in coming up with them, was a proof and an effect of the terror with which the approach of the Persian army had filled him, for they had not heard a word of his indisposition ; that fortune, merely for their sake, had led Alexander into straits and narrow passes, whence it would be impossible for him to get out, in case they should fall upon him immediately ; that they ought to seize this favourable opportunity, for fear the enemy should fly, by which means Alexander would escape them. Upon this it was resolved in council, that the army should march in search of him ; the gods, says an historian ^f, blinding the eyes of that prince, that he might rush down the precipice they had prepared for him, and thereby make way for the destruction of the Persian monarchy.

Darius having sent his treasure with his most precious moveables to Damascus, a city of Syria, under a small convoy, marched the main body of his army towards Cilicia, and entered it by the pass of Amanus, which lies far above the

^f Arrian.

* Neminem stolidum consilium capite luere debere ; defuturos enim qui suadent, se suassisse periculum esset.—Q. Curt.

passes of Syria. His queen and mother, with the princesses his daughters, and the little prince his son, followed the army according to the custom of the Persians, but were in the camp during the battle. When he had advanced a little way into Cilicia, from east westward, he turned short towards Issus, not knowing that Alexander was behind ; for he had been assured that this prince fled before him, and was retired in great disorder into Syria ; and therefore Darius was now considering how he might best pursue him. He barbarously put to death all the sick who were then in the city of Issus, a few soldiers excepted, whom he dismissed, after making them view every part of his camp, in order that they might be spectators of the prodigious multitude of his forces. These soldiers accordingly brought Alexander word of Darius' approach, which he could scarce believe, from its great improbability, though there was nothing he desired more earnestly. But he himself was soon an eye-witness to the truth of it, upon which he began to think seriously of preparing for battle.

Alexander fearing, as the Barbarians were so numerous, that they would attack him in his camp, fortified it with ditches and pallisadoes, discovering an incredible joy to see his desire fulfilled, which was, to engage in those passes, whether the gods seemed to have led Darius expressly to deliver him into his hands.

And, indeed, this spot of ground, which was but wide enough for a small army to act and move at liberty in, reduced, in some measure, the two armies to an equality. By this means the Macedonians had space sufficient to employ their whole army ; whereas the Persians had not room for the twentieth part of theirs.

Nevertheless Alexander, as frequently happens to the greatest captains, felt some emotion when he saw that he was going to hazard all at one blow. The more fortune had favoured him hitherto, the more he now dreaded her frowns ; the moment approaching which was to determine his fate. But, on the other side, his courage revived from the reflection, that the rewards of his toils exceeded the dangers of them ; and though he was uncertain with regard to the victory, he at least hoped to die gloriously, and like Alexander. However, he did not divulge these thoughts to any one, well knowing, that upon the approach of a battle, a general ought not to discover the least marks of sadness or perplexity ; and that the troops should read nothing but resolution and intrepidity in the countenance of their commander.

Having made his soldiers refresh themselves, and ordered them to be ready by the third watch of the night, which began at twelve, he went * to the top of a mountain, and there, by torch-light, sacrificed, after the manner of his country, to the gods of the place. As soon as the signal was given, his army, which was ready to march and fight, being commanded to make greater speed, arrived by day-break at the several posts assigned them; but now the couriers bringing word that Darius was not above thirty furlongs from them, the king caused his army to halt, and then drew it up in battle-array. The peasants in the greatest terror came also and acquainted Darius with the arrival of the enemy, which he would not at first believe, imagining, as we have observed, that Alexander fled before him, and endeavoured to escape. This news threw his troops into the utmost confusion, who in that surprise ran to their arms with great precipitation and disorder.

The spot where the battle was fought, lay near the city of Issus, which the mountains bounded on one side, and the sea on the other. The plain, that was situated between them both, must have been considerably broad, as the two armies encamped in it; and I before observed, that Darius' was vastly numerous. The river Pinarius ran through the middle of this plain from the mountain to the sea, and divided it very near into two equal parts. The mountain formed a hollow like a gulf, the extremity of which in a curve line bounded part of the plain.

Alexander drew up his army in the following order. He posted at the extremity of the right wing, which stood near the mountains, the † Argyraspides, commanded by Nicanor; then the phalanx of Coenus, and afterwards that of Perdiccas, which terminated in the centre of the main army. On the extremity of the left wing he posted the phalanx of Amyntas, then that of Ptolemy, and lastly that of Meleager. Thus the famous Macedonian Phalanx was formed, which we find was composed of six distinct corps or brigades. Each of these bodies was headed by able generals; but Alexander, being always generalissimo, had consequently the command of the whole army. The horse were placed on the two wings; the Macedonians, with the Thessalians, on the right, and those of Peloponnesus, with the other allies, on the left. Craterus commanded all the foot which composed the left wing, and

* The ancients used to offer up their sacrifices upon eminences.

† This was a body of infantry distinguished by their silver shields, but much more so by their great bravery.

Parmenio the whole wing. Alexander had reserved to himself the command of the right. He had desired Parmenio to keep as near the sea as possible, to prevent the Barbarians from surrounding him; and Nicanor, on the contrary, was ordered to keep at some distance from the mountains, to keep himself out of the reach of the arrows discharged by those who were posted on them. He covered the horse of his right wing with the light horse of Protomachus and the Pæonians, and his foot with the bowmen of Antiochus. He reserved the * Agrians, commanded by Attalus, who were greatly esteemed, and some forces that were newly arrived from Greece, to oppose those Darius had posted on the mountains.

As for Darius' army, it was drawn up in the following order. Having heard that Alexander was marching towards him in battle-array, he commanded thirty thousand horse and twenty thousand bowmen to cross the river Pinarius, that he might have an opportunity to draw up his army in a commodious manner on the hither side. In the centre he posted the thirty thousand Greeks in his service, who, doubtless, were the flower and chief strength of his army, and were not at all inferior in bravery to the Macedonian phalanx, with thirty thousand Cardacians on their right, and as many on their left; the field of battle not being able to contain a greater number. These were all heavily armed. The rest of the infantry, distinguished by their several nations, were ranged behind the first line. It is a pity Arrian does not tell us the depth of each of those two lines; but it must have been prodigious, if we consider the extreme narrowness of the pass, and the amazing multitude of the Persian forces. On the mountains which lay to their left, against Alexander's right wing, Darius posted twenty thousand men, who were so ranged, in the several windings of the mountain, that some were behind Alexander's army, and others before it.

Darius, after having set his army in battle-array, made his horse cross the river again, and dispatched the greatest part of them towards the sea against Parmenio, because they could fight on that spot with the greatest advantage: the rest of his cavalry he sent to the left, towards the mountain. However, finding that these would be of no service on that side, because of the too great narrowness of the spot, he caused a great part of them to wheel about to the right. As for himself, he took his post in the centre of his army, pursuant to the custom of the Persian monarchs.

* Agria was a city between the mountains Hæmus and Rhodope.

Alexander, observing that most of the enemy's horse was to oppose his left wing, which consisted only of those of Peloponnesus, and some other allies, detached immediately to it the Thessalian cavalry, which he caused to wheel round behind his battalions, to prevent their being seen by the Barbarians. On the same side, the left, he posted, before his foot, the Cretan bowmen, and the Thracians of Sitacles, a king of Thrace, who were covered by the horse. The foreigners in his service were behind all the rest.

Perceiving that his right wing did not extend so far as the left of the Persians, which might surround and attack it in flank, he drew from the centre of his army two regiments of foot, which he detached thither, with orders for them to march behind, to prevent their being seen by the enemy. He also reinforced that wing of his forces which he had opposed to the Barbarians on the mountains; for, seeing they did not come down, he made the Agrians and some other bowmen attack them, and drive them towards the summit of it; so that he left only three hundred horse to keep them in, and sent the rest, as I observed, to reinforce his right wing, which by this means extended farther than that of the Persians.

The two armies being thus drawn up in order of battle, Alexander marched very slowly, that his soldiers might take a little breath; so that it was supposed they would not engage till very late: for Darius still continued with his army on the other side of the river, in order not to lose the advantageous situation of his post; and even caused such parts of the shore as were not craggy to be secured with palisadoes, whence the Macedonians concluded that he was already afraid of being defeated. The two armies being come in sight, Alexander, riding along the ranks, called, by their several names, the principal officers both of the Macedonians and foreigners; and exhorted the soldiers to signalize themselves, speaking to each nation according to its peculiar genius and disposition. To the Macedonians he represented "the victories they had formerly gained in Europe; the still recent glory of the battle of the Granicus; the great number of cities and provinces they had left behind them, all which they had subdued." He added, "that by one single victory they would possess themselves of the Persian empire; and that the spoils of the East would be the reward of their bravery and toils." The Greeks he animated "by the remembrance of the many calamities which the Persians, those irreconcileable enemies to Greece, had brought upon them;" and set before them

“ the famous battles of Marathon, of Thermopylæ, of Salamis, “ of Platæa, and the many others by which they had ac- “ quired immortal glory.” He bid the Illyrians and Thra- cians, nations who used to subsist by plunder and rapine, “ view the enemy’s army, every part of which shone with gold “ and purple, and was not loaded so much with arms as with “ booty: That they therefore should push forward, they “ who were men, and strip all those women of their orna- “ ments; and exchange their mountains, covered perpetually “ with ice and snow, for the smiling plains and rich fields of “ Persia.” The moment he had ended, the whole army set up a shout, and eagerly desired to be led on directly against the enemy.

Alexander had advanced at first very slowly, to prevent the ranks, or the front of his phalanx, from breaking, and halted by intervals: but when he was got within bow-shot, he com- manded all his right wing to plunge impetuously into the river, purposely that they might surprise the Barbarians, come sooner to a close engagement, and be less exposed to the ene- my’s arrows; in all which he was very successful. Both sides fought with the utmost bravery and resolution; and being now forced to fight close, they charged on both sides sword in hand, when a dreadful slaughter ensued; for they engaged man to man, each aiming the point of his sword at the face of his opponent. Alexander, who performed the duty both of a private soldier and a commander, wished nothing so ardently as the glory of killing with his own hand Darius, who, being seated on a high chariot, was conspicuous to the whole army; and by that means was a powerful object, both to encourage his own soldiers to defend, and the enemy to attack him. And now the battle grew more furious and bloody than be- fore; so that a great number of Persian noblemen were killed. Each side fought with incredible bravery. Oxathres, brother to Darius, observing that Alexander was going to charge that monarch with the utmost vigour, rushed before his chariot with the horse under his command, and distin- guished himself above all the rest. The horses that drew Da- rius’ chariot, being quite covered with wounds, began to prance about; and shook the yoke so violently, that they were upon the point of overturning the king, who, seeing himself going to fall alive into the hands of his enemies, leaped down and mounted another chariot. The rest observing this, fled as fast as possible, and, throwing down their arms, made the best of their way. Alexander had received a slight wound

in his thigh, but happily it was not attended with ill consequences.

Whilst part of the Macedonian infantry, posted to the right, were carrying on the advantages they had gained against the Persians, the remainder of them who engaged the Greeks met with greater resistance. These observing that the body of infantry in question were no longer covered by the right wing of Alexander's army, which was pursuing the enemy, came and attacked it in flank. The engagement was very bloody, and victory a long time doubtful. The Greeks endeavoured to push the Macedonians into the river, and to recover the disorder into which the left wing had been thrown. The Macedonians also signalized themselves with the utmost bravery, in order to preserve the advantage which Alexander had just before gained, and support the honour of their phalanx, which had always been considered as invincible. There was also a perpetual jealousy between these two nations, the Greeks and Macedonians, which greatly increased their courage, and made the resistance on each side very vigorous. On Alexander's side, Ptolemy the son of Seleucus lost his life, with an hundred and twenty other considerable officers, who had all behaved with the utmost gallantry.

In the mean time the right wing, which was victorious under its monarch, after defeating all who opposed it, wheeled to the left against those Greeks who were fighting with the rest of the Macedonian phalanx, whom they charged very vigorously; and attacking them in flank, entirely routed them.

At the very beginning of the engagement, the Persian cavalry which was in the right wing, without waiting for their being attacked by the Macedonians, had crossed the river, and rushed upon the Thessalian horse, several of whose squadrons were broke by it. Upon this, the remainder of the latter, in order to avoid the impetuosity of the first charge, and oblige the Persians to break their ranks, made a feint of retiring, as terrified by the prodigious numbers of the enemy. The Persians, seeing this, were filled with boldness and confidence, and thereupon the greatest part of them, advancing without order or precaution, as to a certain victory, had no thoughts but of pursuing the enemy. Upon this the Thessalians, seeing them in such confusion, faced about on a sudden, and renewed the fight with fresh ardour. The Persians made a brave defence, till they saw Darius put to flight, and the Greeks cut to pieces by the phalanx.

The routing of the Persian cavalry completed the defeat

of the army. The Persian horse suffered very much in the retreat, from the great weight of the arms of their riders; not to mention, that as they retired in disorder, and crowded in great numbers through passes, they bruised and unhorsed one another, and were more annoyed by their own soldiers than by the enemy. Besides, the Thessalian cavalry pursued them with so much fury, that they were as much shattered as the infantry, and lost as many men.

With regard to Darius, as we before observed, the instant he saw his left wing broke, he was one of the first who fled in his chariot; but getting afterwards into craggy rugged places, he mounted on horseback, throwing down his bow, shield, and royal mantle. Alexander, however, did not attempt to pursue him, till he saw his phalanx had conquered the Greeks, and the Persian horse put to flight; which was of great advantage to the prince that fled.

About eight thousand of the Greeks that were in Darius' service, with their officers at their head, who were very brave, retired over the mountains, towards Tripoli in Syria, where finding the transports which had brought them from Lesbos upon dry ground, they fitted out as many of them as suited their purpose, and burned the rest to prevent their being pursued.

As for the Barbarians, having exerted themselves with bravery enough in the first attack, they afterwards gave way in the most shameful manner; and being intent upon nothing but saving themselves, they took different ways. Some struck into the high road which led directly to Persia; others ran into woods and lonely mountains; and a small number returned to their camp, which the victorious enemy had already taken and plundered.

Sysigambis, Darius' mother, and that monarch's queen, who also was his sister, remained in it, with two of the king's daughters, a son of his, a child, and some Persian ladies. For the rest had been carried to Damascus, with part of Darius' treasure, and all such things as contributed only to the luxury and magnificence of his court. No more than three thousand talents * were found in his camp; but the rest of the treasure fell afterwards into the hands of Parmenio, at his taking the city of Damascus.

As Alexander, weary of pursuing Darius, seeing night draw on, and that it would be impossible for him to overtake that monarch, returned to the enemy's camp, which his soldiers

had just before plundered. Such was the end of this memorable battle, fought the fourth year of Alexander's reign. The Persians*, either in the engagement or the route, lost a great number of their forces, both horse and foot; but very few were killed on Alexander's side.

That very evening he invited the grandees of his court, and his chief officers, to a feast, at which he himself was present, notwithstanding the wound he had received, it having only grazed the skin. But they were no sooner sat down at table, than they heard from a neighbouring tent, a great noise intermixed with groans, which frightened all the company; insomuch that the soldiers, who were upon guard before the king's tent, ran to their arms, being afraid of an insurrection. But it was found, that the persons who made this clamour were the mother and the wife of Darius, and the rest of the captive ladies, who supposing that prince dead, bewailed his loss, according to the custom of the Barbarians, with dreadful cries and howlings. An eunuch, who had seen Darius' cloak in the hands of a soldier, imagining he had killed him, and afterwards stripped him of that garment, had carried them that false account.

We are told that Alexander, upon being told the reason of this false alarm, could not refrain from tears, when he considered the sad calamity of Darius, and the tender disposition of those princesses, whom his misfortunes only affected. He therefore sent Leonatus, one of his chief courtiers, to assure them, that the man whose death they bewailed was alive. Leonatus, taking some soldiers with him, came to the tent of the princesses, and sent word, that he was come to pay them a visit in the king's name. The persons, who were at the entrance of the tent, seeing a band of armed men, imagined that their mistresses were undone; and accordingly ran into the tent, crying aloud, that their last hour was come, and that soldiers were dispatched to murder them; so that these princesses being seized with the utmost distraction, did not make the least answer, but waited in deep silence for the orders of the conqueror. At last, Leonatus, having staid a long time, and seeing no one appear, left his soldiers at the door, and came into the tent: But their terror increased, when they saw a man enter among them without being introduced. They thereupon threw themselves at his feet, and entreated,

* According to Quintus Curtius and Arrian, the Persians lost 100,000 foot, and 10,000 horse. And the former historian relates that no more than 150 horse and 300 foot were lost on Alexander's side, which does not seem very probable.

that “before he put them to death, they might be allowed to bury Darius after the manner of their country; and that when they had paid this last duty to their king, they should die contented.” Leonatus answered, “That Darius was living; and that so far from giving them any offence, they should be treated as queens, and live in their former splendour.” Sysigambis, hearing this, began to recover her spirits, and permitted Leonatus to give her his hand, to raise her from the ground.

The next day Alexander, after visiting the wounded, caused the last honours to be paid to the dead, in presence of the whole army, drawn up in the most splendid order of battle. He treated the Persians of distinction in the same manner, and permitted Darius’ mother to bury whatever persons she pleased, according to the customs and ceremonies practised in her country. However, this prudent princess used that permission in regard only to a few who were her near relations; and that with such a modesty and reserve as she thought suited her present condition. The king testified his joy and gratitude to the whole army, especially to the chief officers, whose actions he applauded in the strongest terms, as well those of which he himself had been an eye-witness, as such as had only been related to him; and he made presents to all, according to their merit and station.

After Alexander had performed these several duties, truly worthy a great monarch, he sent a message to the queens, to inform them that he was coming to pay them a visit; and accordingly, commanding all his train to withdraw, he entered the tent accompanied only by Hephaestion. He was his favourite, and as they had been brought up together, the king revealed his secrets to him, and nobody else dared to speak so freely to him *; but even Hephaestion made so cautious and discreet an use of that liberty, that he seemed to take it, not so much out of inclination, as from a desire to obey the king, who would have it so. They were of the same age, but Hephaestion was taller, so that the queens took him at first for the king, and paid him their respects as such: But some captive eunuchs showing them Alexander, Sysigambis fell prostrate before him, and begged his pardon; declaring, that as she had never seen him, she hoped that consideration would plead her apology. The king, raising her from the ground,

* Libertatis quoque in eo admonendo non aliis jus habebat; quod tamen ita usurpabat, ut magis a rege permissum quam vindicatum ab eo videtur. — Quintus Curtius.

“ Dear mother,” says he, “ you are not mistaken, for he also is an Alexander * : ” A fine expression, which does honour to both ! Had Alexander always thought and acted in this manner, he would have justly merited the title of Great ; but fortune had not yet corrupted his soul † . He bore her at first with moderation and wisdom ; but at last she overpowered him, and he became unable to resist her.

Sysigambis, strongly affected with these testimonies of goodness and humanity, could not forbear testifying her gratitude upon that account. “ Great prince,” said she to him, “ what words shall I find to express my thanks, in such a manner as may answer your generosity ! You call me your mother, and honour me still with the title of Queen, whereas I confess myself your captive. ‡ I know what I have been, and what I now am. I know the whole extent of my past grandeur, and find I can support all the weight of my present ill fortune. But it will be glorious for you, as you now have an absolute power over us, to make us feel it by your clemency only, and not by ill treatment.”

The king, after comforting the princesses, took Darius’ son in his arms. This little child, without discovering the least terror, embraced Alexander, who being affected with his confidence, and turning about to Hephaestion, said to him, “ O that Darius had some portion of this tender disposition ! ”

It is certain that Darius, in the beginning of his reign, behaved in such a manner, that he surpassed, in clemency and goodness, all the kings his predecessors ; and was superior to a passion which conquers and enslaves the strongest. Darius’ consort was the most lovely princess in the world, as he himself was the most beautiful of princes, and of a very tall and most majestic shape ; and the princesses their daughters resembled them. They were, says Plutarch, in Alexander’s camp, not as in that of an enemy, but as in a sacred temple, and a sanctuary assigned for the asylum of chastity, in which all the princesses lived so retired, that they were not seen by any person, nor did any one dare to approach their apartments.

* O donum inclyte vocis, dandi pariter atque accipienti speciosum ! — Val. Max. l. iv. c. 7.

† Sed nondum fortuna se animo ejus infuderat. Itaque orientem eam moderate et prudenter tulit : ad ultimum magnitudinem ejus non cepit. — Q. Curt.

‡ Et præteritæ fortunæ fatigium capio, et præsentis jugum pati possum. — Q. Curt.

We even find, that after the first visit above mentioned, which was a respectful and a ceremonious one, Alexander, to avoid exposing himself to the dangers of human frailty, took a solemn resolution never to visit Darius' queen any more ^h. He himself informs us of this memorable circumstance, in a letter wrote by him to Parmenio, in which he commanded him to put to death certain Macedonians, who had forced the wives of some foreign soldiers. In this letter the following words were read: "For, as to myself, it will be found that I neither saw nor would see the wife of Darius: and did not suffer any person to speak of her beauty before me." We are to remember that Alexander was young, victorious, and free, that is, not engaged in marriage, as has been observed of the first Scipio on a like occasion ⁱ: "Et juvenis, et cœlebs, et victor."

To conclude, he treated these princesses with such humanity, that nothing but the remembrance that they were captives could have made them sensible of their calamity; and of all the advantages they possessed before, nothing was wanting with regard to Alexander, but that trust and confidence, which no one can repose in an enemy, how kindly soever he behaves.

SECTION VI.

ALEXANDER MARCHES VICTORIOUS INTO SYRIA. LAYS SIEGE TO TYRE, WHICH HE TAKES BY STORM.

ALEXANDER ^k set out towards Syria, after having consecrated three altars on the river Pinarius, the first to Jupiter, the second to Hercules, and the third to Minerva, as so many monuments of his victory. He had sent Parmenio to Damascus, in which Darius' treasure was deposited. The governor of the city betraying his sovereign, from whom he had now no further expectations, wrote to Alexander to acquaint him that he was ready to deliver up into his hands all the treasure and other rich stores of Darius. But being desirous of covering his treason with a specious pretext, he pretended that he was not secure in the city, and so caused, by day-break, all the money and the richest things in it to be put on men's backs, and fled away with the whole, seemingly with intention to se-

^h Plut. in Alex.

ⁱ Val. Max. I. iv. c. 3.

^k Diod. I. xvii. p. 517, 518. Arrian. I. ii. p. 83.—86. Plut. in Alex. p. 678. Quint. Curt. I. iv. c. 1. Justin. I. xi. c. 10.

cure them, but in reality to deliver them up to the enemy, as he had agreed with Parmenio, who had opened the letter addressed to the king. At the first sight of the forces which this general headed, those who carried the burdens being frightened, threw them down, and fled away, as did the soldiers who convoyed them, and the governor himself, who was most terrified. On this occasion immense riches were seen scattered up and down the fields; all the gold and silver designed to pay so great an army; the splendid equipages of so many great lords and ladies; the golden vases and bridles, magnificent tents, and carriages abandoned by their drivers; in a word, whatever the long prosperity and frugality of so many kings had amassed during many ages, was abandoned to the conqueror.

But the most moving part of this sad scene was, to see the wives of the satraps and grandees of Persia, most of whom dragged their little children after them; so much the greater objects of compassion, as they were less sensible of their misfortune. Among these were three young priucesses, daughters of Ochus, who had reigned before Darius; the widow of this Ochus; the daughter of Oxathres, brother to Darius; the wife of Artabasus, the greatest lord of the court, and his son Ilioneus. There also were taken prisoners the wife and son of Pharnabazus, whom the king had appointed admiral of all the coasts; three daughters of Mentor; the wife and son of Memnon, that illustrious general; insomuch, that scarce one noble family in all Persia but shared in this calamity.

There also was found in Damascus the ambassadors of the Grecian cities, particularly those of Lacedæmonia and Athens, whom Darius thought he had lodged in a safe asylum, when he put them under the protection of that traitor.

Besides money, and plate which was afterwards coined, and amounted to immense sums, thirty thousand men, and seven thousand beasts laden with baggage, were taken. We find, by Parmenio's letter¹ to Alexander, that he found in Damascus three hundred and twenty-nine of Darius' concubines, all admirably well skilled in music; and also a multitude of officers, whose business was to regulate and prepare every thing relating to entertainments; such as to make wreaths, to prepare perfumes and essences, to dress viands, to make pies, and all things in the pastry way, to preside over the wine cellars, to give out the wine, and such like. There were four hundred and ninety-two of these officers; a train worthy a prince who runs to his destruction!

¹ Athen. l. xiii. p. 607.

Darius, who a few hours before was at the head of so mighty and splendid an army, and who came into the field mounted on a chariot, with the pride of a conqueror, rather than with the equipage of a warrior, was flying over plains, which, from being before covered with the infinite multitude of his forces, now appeared like a desert or vast solitude. This ill-fated prince rode swiftly the whole night, accompanied by a very few attendants; for all had not taken the same road, and most of those who accompanied him could not keep up with him, as he often changed his horses. At last he arrived at * Soschus, where he assembled the remains of his army, which amounted only to four thousand men, including Persians as well as foreigners; and from hence he made all possible haste to Thapsacus, in order to have the Euphrates between him and Alexander.

In the mean time, Parmenio having carried all the booty into Damascus, the king commanded him to take care of it, and likewise of the captives. Most of the cities of Syria surrendered at the first approaches of the conqueror. Being arrived at Marathes, he received a letter from Darius, in which he styled himself King, without bestowing that title on Alexander. He commanded, rather than entreated him, “to ask any sum of money he should think proper by way of ransom for his mother, his wife, and children. That with regard to their dispute for empire, he might, if he thought proper, decide it in one general battle, to which both parties should bring an equal number of troops; but that, in case he were still capable of good counsel, he would advise him to rest contented with the kingdom of his ancestors, and not invade that of another; that they should henceforward live as good friends and faithful allies; that he himself was ready to swear to the observance of these articles, and to receive Alexander’s oath.”

This letter, which breathed so unseasonable a pride and haughtiness, exceedingly offended Alexander. He therefore wrote the following answer: “Alexander the king to Darius. The ancient Darius, whose name you assume, in former times entirely ruined the Greeks who inhabit the coasts of the Hellespont, and the Ionians, our ancient colonies. He next crossed the sea at the head of a powerful army, and carried the war into the very heart of Macedonia and Greece. After him, Xerxes made another descent with a dreadful

* This city was two or three days journey from the place where the battle was fought.

“ number of Barbarians, in order to fight us; and having been
“ overcome in a naval engagement, he left, at his retiring,
“ Mardonius in Greece, who plundered our cities, and laid
“ waste our plains. But who has not heard, that Philip, my
“ father, was assassinated by wretches suborned thereto by
“ your partisans, in hopes of a great reward? For it is cus-
“ tomary with the Persians to undertake impious wars, and
“ when armed in the field, to set a price upon the heads of
“ their enemies. And even you yourself, though at the head
“ of a vast army, however, promised a thousand talents to any
“ person who should kill me. I therefore only defend myself,
“ and consequently am not the aggressor. And indeed the
“ gods, who always declare for the just cause, have favoured
“ my arms; and aided by their protection, I have subjected
“ a great part of Asia, and defeated you, Darius, in a pitched
“ battle. However, though I ought not to grant any request
“ you make, since you have not acted fairly in this war; ne-
“ vertheless, in case you will appear before me in a supplicat-
“ ing posture, I give you my word, that I will restore to you,
“ without any ransom, your mother, your wife, and children.
“ I will let you see, that I know how to conquer, and to ob-
“ lige the conquered *. If you are afraid of surrendering
“ yourself to me, I now assure you, upon my honour, that you
“ may do it without the least danger; but remember, when
“ you next write to me, that you write not only to a king,
“ but to your king.” Thersippus was ordered to carry this
letter.

Alexander, marching from thence into Phœnicia, the citizens of Byblos opened their gates to him. Every one submitted as he advanced, but no people did this with greater pleasure than the Sidonians. We have seen in what manner Ochus had destroyed their city eighteen years before, and put all the inhabitants of it to the sword. After he was returned into Persia, such of the citizens as, upon account of their traffic, or for some other cause, had been absent, and by that means had escaped the massacre, returned thither, and rebuilt their city. But they had retained so violent a hatred of the Persians, that they were overjoyed at this opportunity to throw off their yoke; and indeed they were the first in that country who submitted to the king by their deputies, in opposition to Strato their king, who had declared in favour of Darius.

* *Et vincere, et consulere victis scio.—Q. Curt.*

Alexander dethroned him, and permitted Hephaestion to elect in his stead whomsoever of the Sidonians he should judge worthy of so exalted a station.

This favourite was quartered at the house of two brothers, who were young, and of the most considerable family in the city: to these he offered the crown; but they refused it, telling him, that according to the laws of their country, no person could ascend the throne, unless he were of the blood royal. Hephaestion admiring this greatness of soul, which could contemn what others strive to obtain by fire and sword; “*Con-*tinue,” says he to them, “in this way of thinking; you who before were sensible that it is much more glorious to refuse a diadem, than to accept it. However, name me some person of the royal family, who may remember, when he is king, that it was you set the crown upon his head.” The brothers, observing that several through excessive ambition aspired to this high station, and to obtain it, paid a servile court to Alexander’s favourites, declared that they did not know any person more worthy of the diadem than one Abdolonymus, descended, though at a great distance, from the royal line; but who at the same time was so poor, that he was obliged to get his bread by day labour in a garden without the city. His honesty and integrity had reduced him, as well as many more, to such extreme poverty. Solely intent upon his labour, he did not hear the clashing of the arms which had shaken all Asia.

Immediately the two brothers went in search of Abdolonymus with the royal garments, and found him weeding his garden. They then saluted him king, and one of them addressed him thus: “You must now change your tatters for the dress I have brought you. Put up that mean and contemptible habit in which you have grown old; * assume the sentiments of a prince, but when you are seated on the throne, continue to preserve the virtue which made you worthy of it. And when you shall have ascended it, and by that means become the supreme dispenser of life and death over all your citizens, be sure never to forget the condition in which, or rather for which, you was elected.” Abdolonymus looked upon the whole as a dream, and, unable to guess the meaning of it, asked if they were not ashamed to ridicule him in

* *Cape regis animum, et in eam fortunam, qua dignus es, istam continentiam profer.* Et, cum in regali solio residebis, vita necisque omnium civium dominus, *cave* obliviscaris hujus status in quo accipis regnum, *imo* hercule, propter quem. Curt.

that manner. But, as he made a greater resistance than suited their inclinations, they themselves washed him, and threw over his shoulders a purple robe richly embroidered with gold; then, after repeated oaths of their being in earnest, they conducted him to the palace.

The news of this was immediately spread over the whole city. Most of the inhabitants were overjoyed at it, but some murmured, especially the rich, who, despising Abdolonymus' former abject state, could not forbear shewing their resentments upon that account in the king's court. Alexander commanded the new-elected prince to be sent for; and after surveying him attentively a long time, spoke thus: "Thy * air and mien do not contradict what is related of thy extraction; but I should be glad to know with what frame of mind thou didst bear thy poverty."—"Would to the gods," replied he, "that I may bear this crown with equal patience. These hands have procured me all I desired; and whilst I possessed nothing, I wanted nothing." This answer gave Alexander a high idea of Abdolonymus' virtue; so that he presented him not only with all the rich furniture which had belonged to Strato, and part of the Persian plunder, but likewise annexed one of the neighbouring provinces to his dominions.

^m Syria and Phœnicia were already subdued by the Macedonians, the city of Tyre excepted. This city was justly entitled the Queen of the Sea, that element bringing to it the tribute of all nations. She boasted her having first invented navigation, and taught mankind the art of braving the wind and waves by the assistance of a frail bark. The happy situation of Tyre, the convenience and extent of its ports, the character of its inhabitants, who were industrious, laborious, patient, and extremely courteous to strangers, invited thither merchants from all parts of the globe; so that it might be considered not so much as a city belonging to any particular nation, as the common city of all nations, and the centre of their commerce.

^m Diod. l. xvii. p. 518.—525. Arrian. l. ii. p. 87.—100. Plut. in Alex. p. 678.—697. Q. Curt. l. iv. c. 2, 3, 4. Justin. l. xi. c. 10.

* Corporis, inquit, habitus, famæ generis non repugnat. Sed libet scire, inopiam qua patientia tuleris. Tum ille; utinam, inquit, eodem animo regnum pati possim †! Haec manus sufficere desiderio nœo. Nihil habenti, nihil defuit.—Q. Curt.

† The thought is beautiful and just. He considers the regal power as a burden more difficult to be borne than poverty;—regnum pati.

Upon Alexander's advancing towards it, the Tyrians sent him an embassy with presents for himself, and refreshments for his army. They were willing to have him for their friend, but not for their master: so that when he discovered a desire of entering the city, in order to offer a sacrifice to Hercules, its tutelar god, they refused him admission. But this conqueror, after gaining so many victories, had too high an heart to put up such an affront, and thereupon was resolved to force them to it by a siege, which they, on the other side, were determined to sustain with the utmost vigour. The spring was now coming on. Tyre was at that time seated in an island of the sea, about a quarter of a * league from the continent. It was surrounded with a strong wall an hundred and fifty feet high, which the waves of the sea washed; and the Carthaginians, a colony from Tyre, a mighty people, and sovereigns of the ocean, whose ambassadors were at that time in the city offering to Hercules, according to ancient custom, an annual sacrifice, had engaged themselves to succour the Tyrians. It was this made them so haughty. Firmly determined not to surrender, they fix machines on the ramparts and on the towers, arm their young men, and build workhouses for the artificers, of whom there were great numbers in the city; so that every part resounded with the noise of warlike preparations. They likewise cast iron grapples, to throw on the enemy's works, and tear them away; as also cramp-irons, and such like instruments, invented for the defence of cities.

Alexander imagined that there were essential reasons why he should possess himself of Tyre. He was sensible that he could not invade Egypt easily, so long as the Persians should be masters of the sea; nor pursue Darius with safety, in case he should leave behind him so large an extent of country, the inhabitants of which were either enemies, or suspected to be so. He likewise was afraid lest some insurrection should break out in Greece; and that his enemies, after having retaken in his absence the maritime cities of Asia Minor, and increased their fleet, would make his country the seat of war, during his being employed in pursuing Darius in the plains of Babylon. These apprehensions were the more justly grounded, as the Lacedæmonians had declared openly against him, and the Athenians sided with him more out of fear than affection. But, that in case he should conquer Tyre, all Phœnicia being then subject to him, he would be able to dispossess the

* Four furlongs.

Persians of half their naval army, which consisted of the fleet of that province; and would soon make himself master of the island of Cyprus and of Egypt, which could not resist him the instant he was become master at sea.

On the other side, one would have imagined that, according to all the rules of war, Alexander, after the battle of Issus, ought to have pursued Darius vigorously, and neither given him an opportunity of recovering from the fright into which his defeat had thrown him, nor allowed him time to raise a new army; the success of the enterprise, which appeared infallible, being the only thing that could make him formidable and superior to all his enemies. Add to this, that in case Alexander should not be able to take this city, which was not very unlikely, he would discredit his own arms, would lose the fruit of his victories, and prove to the enemy that he was not invincible. But God, who had appointed this monarch to chastise the pride of Tyre, as will be seen hereafter, did not once permit those thoughts to enter his mind; but determined him to lay siege to the place, in spite of all the difficulties which opposed so hazardous a design, and the many reasons which should have prompted him to pursue quite different measures.

It was impossible to come near this city in order to storm it, without making a bank which would reach from the continent to the island; and an attempt of this kind would be attended with difficulties that were seemingly insurmountable. The little arm of the sea, which separated the island from the continent, was exposed to the west wind, which often raised such dreadful storms there, that the waves would in an instant sweep away all works. Besides, as the city was surrounded on all sides by the sea, there was no fixing scaling-ladders, nor throwing up batteries, but at a distance in the ships; and the wall which projected into the sea towards the lower part, prevented people from landing; not to mention that the military engines which might have been put on board the galleys, could not do much execution, the waves were so very tumultuous.

But nothing was capable of checking or vanquishing the resolution of Alexander, who was determined to carry the city at any rate. However, as the few vessels he possessed lay at a great distance from him, and the siege of so strong a place might possibly last a long time, and so retard his other enterprises, he thought proper to endeavour an accommodation. Accordingly he sent heralds, who proposed a peace between

Alexander and their city; but these the Tyrians killed, contrary to the law of nations, and threw them from the top of the walls into the sea. Alexander, exasperated at so cruel an outrage, formed a resolution at once, and employed his whole attention in raising a dike. He found in the ruins of old Tyre, which stood on the continent, and was called Palæo-Tyros, materials to make piers, taking all the stones and rubbish from it. Mount Libanus, which was not far distant from it, so famous in scripture for its cedars, furnished him with wood for piles, and other timber work.

The soldiers began the pier with great alacrity, being animated by the presence of their sovereign, who himself gave out all the orders; and who *, knowing perfectly how to insinuate himself into, and gain the affections of his troops, excited some by praises, and others by slight reprimands, intermixed with kind expressions, and softened by promises. At first they advanced with pretty great speed, the piles being easily driven into the slime, which served as mortar for the stones; and as the place where those works were carrying on was at some distance from the city, they went on without interruption. But the farther they went from the shore, the greater difficulties they met with; because the sea was deeper, and the workmen were very much annoyed by the darts discharged from the top of the walls. The enemy, who were masters of the sea, coming forward in great boats, and razing every part of the dike, prevented the Macedonians from carrying it on with vigour. Then adding insults to their attacks, they cried aloud to Alexander's soldiers, "That it was a "noble sight to see those conquerors, whose names were so "renowned all the world over, carrying burdens on their backs "like so many beasts." And they would afterwards ask them in a contemptuous tone of voice, "whether Alexander were "greater than Neptune, and if they pretended to prevail over "that god?"

But these taunts did but inflame the courage of the soldiers. At last the bank appeared above water, began to shew a level of a considerable breadth, and to approach the city. Then the besieged, perceiving with terror the vastness of the work, which the sea till then had kept from their sight, came in their ship-boats in order to view the bank, which was not yet very firm. These boats were full of slingers, bowmen, and others, who hurled javelins, and even fire, and being spread to the

* *Haudquaquam rudis tractandi militares animos.*—Q. Curt.

right and left about the bank, they shot on all sides upon the workmen, several of whom were wounded ; it not being possible for them to ward off the blows, because of the great ease and swiftness with which the boats moved backwards and forwards ; so that they were obliged to leave the work to defend themselves. It was therefore resolved, that skins and sails should be spread to cover the workmen ; and that two wooden towers should be raised at the head of the bank, to prevent the approaches of the enemy.

On the other side, the Tyrians made a descent on the shore out of the view of the camp, where they landed some soldiers, who cut to pieces those that carried the stones ; and on Mount Libanus there also were some Arabian peasants, who meeting the Macedonians straggling up and down, killed near thirty of them, and took very near the same number. These small losses obliged Alexander to separate his troops into different bodies.

The besieged, in the mean time, employed every invention, every stratagem that could be found, to ruin the enemy's works. They took a transport vessel, and filling it with brushes and such like dry materials, made a large inclosure near the prow, wherein they threw all these things, with sulphur and pitch, and other combustible matters. In the middle of this inclosure they set up two masts, to each of which they fixed two sail-yards, on which were hung kettles full of oil, and such like unctuous substances. They afterwards loaded the hinder part of the vessel with stones and sand, in order to raise the prow ; and taking advantage of a favourable wind, they towed it to sea by the assistance of their galleys. As soon as they were come near the towers, they set fire to the vessel in question, and drew it towards the point or extremity of the bank. In the mean time the sailors who were in it leaped into the sea, and swam away. Immediately the fire caught, with great violence, the towers, and the rest of the works, which were at the head of the bank ; and then the sail-yards being drove backwards and forwards, threw oil upon the fire, which very much increased the flame. But to prevent the Macedonians from extinguishing it, the Tyrians, who were in their galleys, were perpetually hurling at the towers fiery darts and burning torches, insomuch that there was no approaching them. Several Macedonians lost their lives in a miserable manner on the bank ; being either shot through with arrows or burned to death ; whilst others, throwing down their

arms, leaped into the sea. But as they were swimming away, the Tyrians, choosing to take them alive rather than kill them, maimed their hands with clubs and stones ; and after disabling them carried them off. At the same time the besieged, coming out of the city in little boats, beat down the edges of the bank, tore up its stakes, and burned the rest of the engines.

Alexander, though he saw most of his designs defeated, and his works demolished, was not at all dejected upon that account. His soldiers endeavoured, with redoubled vigour, to repair the ruins of the bank ; and made and planted new machines with so prodigious a speed, as quite astonished the enemy. Alexander himself was present on all occasions, and superintended every part of the works. His presence and great abilities advanced these still more than the multitude of hands employed in them. The whole was nearly finished, and brought almost to the wall of the city, when there arose on a sudden an impetuous wind, which drove the waves with so much fury against the bank, that the cement and other things that bound it gave way, and the water rushing through the stones, broke it in the middle. As soon as the great heap of stones which supported the earth was thrown down, the whole sunk at once into an abyss.

Any warrior but Alexander would that instant have quite laid aside his enterprise ; and indeed he himself debated whether he should not raise the siege. But a superior Power, who had foretold and sworn the ruin of Tyre, and whose orders this prince only executed, prompted him to continue the siege, and, dispelling all his fear and anxiety, inspired him with courage and confidence, and fired the breasts of his whole army with the same sentiments. For now the soldiers, as if but that moment arrived before the city, forgetting all the toils they had undergone, began to raise a new mole, at which they worked incessantly.

Alexander was sensible, that it would not be possible for him either to complete the bank, or to take the city, as long as the Tyrians should continue masters at sea. He therefore resolved to assemble before Sidon his few remaining galleys. At the same time, the kings of Aradus * and Byblos, hearing that Alexander had conquered their cities, abandoned the Persian fleet, and joined him with theirs and that of the Sidonians, which made in all eighty sail. There arrived also, much about the same time, ten galleys from Rhodes, three

* Cities of Phoenicia.

from Solæ and Malos, ten from Lycia, and one from Macedonia of fifty oars. A little after, the king of Cyprus, hearing that the Persian army had been defeated near the city of Issus, and that Alexander had possessed himself of Phoenicia, brought him a reinforcement of upwards of one hundred and twenty galleys.

The king, whilst his soldiers were preparing the ships and engines, took some troops of horse, with his own regiment of guards, and marched towards a mountain of Arabia, called Antilibanus. The tender regard he had for an old gentleman, formerly his tutor, who was absolutely resolved to follow his pupil, exposed Alexander to very great danger. This was Lysimachus, who gave the name of Achilles to his scholar, and called himself Phœnix *. When the king was got to the foot of the mountain, he leaped from his horse, and began to walk. His troops got a considerable way before him. It was already late, and Alexander not being willing to leave his preceptor, who was very corpulent, and scarce able to walk, he by that means was separated from his little army, accompanied only by a very few soldiers; and in this manner spent the whole night very near the enemy, who were so numerous, that they might easily have overpowered him. However, his usual good fortune and courage extricated him from this danger; so that, coming up afterwards with his forces, he advanced forward into the country, took all the strong places either by force or capitulation, and returned the eleventh day to Sidon, where he found Alexander, son of Polemocrates, who had brought him a reinforcement of four thousand Greeks from Peloponnesus.

The fleet being ready, Alexander took some soldiers from among his guards, and these he embarked with him, in order to employ them in close fight with the enemy; and then set sail towards Tyre in battle-array. He himself was at the point or extremity of the right wing, which extended itself towards the main ocean, being accompanied by the kings of Cyprus and Phœnicia; the left was commanded by Craterus. The Tyrians were at first determined to give battle; but after they heard of the uniting of these forces, and saw the army advance, which made a great appearance, for Alexander had halted to wait the coming up of his left wing, they kept all their galleys in the harbours, to prevent the enemy from entering them. When the king saw this, he advanced near-

* It is well known that Phœnix was governor of Achilles.

er the city ; and finding it would be impossible for him to force the port which lay towards Sidon, because of the great narrowness of the entrance, and its being defended by a large number of galleys, whose prows were all turned towards the main ocean, he only sunk three of them which lay without, and afterwards came to an anchor with his whole fleet, pretty near the bank, along the shore, where his ships rode in safety.

Whilst all these things were doing, the new bank was carried on with great vigour. The workmen threw into the sea whole trees, with all their branches on them ; and laid great stones over these, on which they put other trees, and the latter they covered with clay, which served instead of mortar. Afterwards heaping more trees and stones on these, the whole thus joined together formed one entire body. This bank was made wider than the former ones, in order that the towers that were built in the middle might be out of the reach of such arrows as should be shot from those ships which might attempt to break down the edges of the bank. The besieged, on the otherside, exerted themselves with extraordinary bravery, and did all that lay in their power to stop the progress of the work. But nothing was of so much service to them as their divers, who swimming under water, came unperceived quite up to the bank, and with hooks drew such branches to them as projected beyond the work ; and pulling forward with great strength, forced away every thing that was over them. This was one *remora* to the carrying on of the work ; however, after many delays, the patience of the workmen surmounting every obstacle, it was at last finished in its utmost perfection. The Macedonians placed military engines of all kinds on the bank, in order to shake the walls with battering-rams, and hurl on the besieged arrows, stones, and burning torches.

At the same time Alexander ordered the Cyprian fleet, commanded by Andromachus, to take its station before the harbour which lay towards Sidon ; and that of Phœnicia before the harbour on the other side of the bank facing Egypt, towards that part where his own tent was pitched ; and enabled himself to attack the city on every side. The Tyrians, in their turn, prepared for a vigorous defence. On that side which lay towards the bank, they had erected towers on the wall, which was of a prodigious height, and of a proportionable breadth, the whole built with great stones cemented together with mortar. The access to any other part was very near

as difficult, the enemy having fenced the foot of the wall with great stones, to keep the Greeks from approaching it. The business then was, first to draw these away, which could not be done but with the utmost difficulty, because, as the soldiers stood in ships, they could not keep very firm on their legs. Besides, the Tyrians advanced with covered galleys, and cut the cables which held the ships at anchor ; so that Alexander was obliged to cover, in like manner, several vessels of thirty rowers each, and to station these cross-wise, to secure the anchors from the attacks of the Tyrian galleys. But still, divers came and cut them unperceived, so that they were at last forced to fix them with iron chains. After this, they drew these stones with cable-ropes, and carrying them off with engines, they were thrown to the bottom of the sea, where it was not possible for them to do any further mischief. The foot of the wall being thus cleared, the vessels had very easy access to it. In this manner the Tyrians were invested on all sides, and attacked at the same time both by sea and land.

The Macedonians had joined two and two galleys, with four men changed to each oar, in such a manner, that the prows were fastened, and the sterns so far distant one from the other, as was necessary for the pieces of timber between them to be of a proper length. After this they threw from one stern to the other sail-yards, which were fastened together by planks laid cross-wise, in order for the soldiers to stand fast on the space. The galleys being thus equipped, they rowed towards the city, and shot under covert, against those who defended the walls, the prows serving them as so many parapets. The king caused them to advance about midnight, in order to surround the walls, and make a general assault. The Tyrians now gave themselves up for lost, when on a sudden the sky was overspread with such thick clouds, as quite took away the faint glimmerings of light which before darted through the gloom. The sea rises by insensible degrees ; and the billows, being swelled by the fury of the winds, rise to a dreadful storm. The vessels dash one against the other with so much violence, that the cables, which before fastened them together, are either loosened, or break to pieces ; the planks split, and, making a horrible crash, carry off the soldiers with them ; for the tempest was so furious, that it was not possible to manage or steer galleys thus fastened together. The soldier was a hindrance to the sailor, and the sailor to the soldier ; and, as happens on such occasions, those obeyed whose business it was to com-

mand ; fear and anxiety throwing all things into confusion. But now the rowers exerted themselves with so much vigour, that they got the better of the sea, and seemed to tear their ships out of the waves. At last they brought them near the shore, but the greatest part in a shattered condition.

At the same time there arrived at Tyre thirty ambassadors from Carthage, who did not bring the least succours, though they had promised such mighty things. Instead of this, they only made excuses, declaring that it was with the greatest grief the Carthaginians found themselves absolutely unable to assist the Tyrians in any manner ; for that they themselves were engaged in a war, not as * before, for empire, but to save their country. And indeed the Syracusans were laying waste all Africa at that time with a powerful army, and had pitched their camp not far from the walls of Carthage. The Tyrians, though frustrated in this manner of the great hopes they had conceived, were no ways dejected. They only took the wise precautions to send most of their women and children to Carthage, in order that they themselves might be in a condition to defend themselves to the last extremity, and bear more courageously the greatest calamities which might befall them, when they had once lodged, in a secure asylum, what they most valued in the world.

There was in the city a brazen statue of Apollo, of an enormous size. This Colossus had formerly stood in the city of Gela in Sicily. ⁿ The Carthaginians having taken it about the year four hundred and twelve before Christ, had given it, by way of present, to the city of Tyre, which they always considered as the mother of Carthage. The Tyrians had set it up in their city, and worship was paid to it. During the siege, on a dream which one of the citizens had, the Tyrians imagined that Apollo was determined to leave them, and go over to Alexander. Immediately they fastened with a gold chain his statue to Hercules' altar, to prevent the deity in question from leaving them. For these people were silly enough to believe, that after his statue was thus fastened down, it would not be possible for him to make his escape ; and that he would be prevented from doing so by Hercules, the tutelar god of the city. What a strange idea the heathens had of their divinities !

Some of the Tyrians proposed the restoring of a sacrifice which had been discontinued for many ages ; and this was, to

ⁿ Diod. I. xiii. p. 226.

* See Vol. I. in the history of Carthage.

sacrifice a child born of free parents to Saturn. The Carthaginians, who had borrowed this sacrilegious custom from their founders, preserved it till the destruction of their city ; and had not the old men, who were invested with the greatest authority in Tyre, opposed this cruelly superstitious custom, a child would have been butchered on this occasion.

The Tyrians, finding their city exposed every moment to be taken by storm, resolved to fall upon the Cyprian fleet, which lay at anchor off Sidon. They took the opportunity to do this at a time when the seamen of Alexander's fleet were dispersed up and down, and when he himself was withdrawn to his tent, pitched on the sea-shore. Accordingly, they came out, about noon, with thirteen galleys, all manned with choice soldiers who were used to sea-fights ; and rowing with all their might, came thundering on the enemy's vessels. Part of them they found empty, and the rest had been manned in great haste. Some of these they sunk, and drove several of them against the shores, where they dashed to pieces. The loss would have been still greater, had not Alexander, the instant he heard of this sally, advanced at the head of his whole fleet, with all imaginable dispatch, against the Tyrians. However, these did not wait their coming up, but withdrew into the harbour, after having also lost some of their ships.

And now, the engines playing, the city was warmly attacked on all sides, and as vigorously defended. The besieged, taught and animated by imminent danger, and the extreme necessity to which they were reduced, invented daily new arts to defend themselves, and repulse the enemy. They warded off all the darts discharged from the balistas against them by the assistance of turning wheels, which either broke them to pieces, or carried them another way. They deadened the violence of the stones that were hurled at them, by setting up a kind of sails and curtains made of a soft substance, which easily gave way. To annoy the ships which advanced against their walls, they fixed grappling-irons and scythes to joists or beams ; then straining their catapultas, an enormous kind of cross-bow, they laid these great pieces of timber upon them instead of arrows, and shot them off on a sudden at the enemy. These crushed some to pieces by their great weight ; and the hooks or pensile scythes, with which they were armed, tore others to pieces, and did considerable damage to their ships. They also had brazen shields, which they drew red-hot out of the fire ; and filling these with burning sand, hurled them in an instant from the top of the wall upon the enemy. There

was nothing the Macedonians so much dreaded as this last invention; for the moment this burning sand got to the flesh, through the crevices in the armour, it pierced to the very bone, and stuck so close, that there was no pulling it off; so that the soldiers, throwing down their arms, and tearing their clothes to pieces, were in this manner exposed, naked and defenceless, to the shot of the enemy.

It was then Alexander, discouraged at so vigorous a defence, debated seriously, whether it would not be proper for him to raise the siege, and go for Egypt; for, after having over-run Asia with prodigious rapidity, he found his progress unhappily retarded; and lost, before a single city, the opportunity of executing a great many projects of infinitely greater importance. On the other side, he considered that it would be a great blemish to his reputation, which had done him greater service than his arms, should he leave Tyre behind him, and thereby prove to the world, that he was not invincible. He therefore resolved to make a last effort with a great number of ships, which he manned with the flower of his army. Accordingly a second naval engagement was fought, in which the Tyrians, after fighting with intrepidity, were obliged to draw off their whole fleet towards the city. The king pursued their rear very close, but was not able to enter the harbour, being repulsed by arrows shot from the walls: however, he either took or sunk a great number of their ships.

Alexander, after letting his forces repose themselves two days, advanced his fleet and his engines, in order to attempt a general assault. Both the attack and defence were now more vigorous than ever. The courage of the combatants increased with the danger; and each side, animated by the most powerful motives, fought like lions. Wherever the battering-rams had beat down any part of the wall, and the bridges were thrown out, instantly the Argyraspides mounted the breach with the utmost valour, being headed by Admetus, one of the bravest officers in the army, who was killed by the thrust of a partisan *, as he was encouraging his soldiers. The presence of the king, and especially the example he set, fired his troops with unusual bravery. He himself ascended one of the towers, which was of a prodigious height, and there was exposed to the greatest danger his courage had ever made him hazard; for, being immediately known by his insignia and the richness of his armour, he served as a mark for all the arrows

* A kind of halbert.

of the enemy. On this occasion he performed wonders ; killing, with javelins, several of those who defended the wall ; then advancing nearer to them, he forced some with his sword, and others with his shield, either into the city or the sea ; the tower where he fought almost touching the wall. He soon went over it, by the assistance of floating bridges, and followed by the nobility, possessed himself of two towers, and the space between them. The battering-rams had already made several breaches ; the fleet had forced into the harbour ; and some of the Macedonians had possessed themselves of the towers which were abandoned. The Tyrians, seeing the enemy master of their rampart, retired towards an open place, called Agenor, and there stood their ground ; but Alexander, marching up with his regiment of body-guards, killed part of them, and obliged the rest to fly. At the same time, Tyre being taken on that side which lay towards the harbour, the Macedonians ran up and down every part of the city, sparing no person who came in their way, being highly exasperated at the long resistance of the besieged, and the barbarities they had exercised towards some of their comrades who had been taken in their return to Sidon, and thrown from the battlements, after their throats had been cut in the sight of the whole army.

The Tyrians seeing themselves overpowered on all sides, some fly to the temples, to implore the assistance of the gods ; others, shutting themselves in their houses, escape the sword of the conqueror by a voluntary death ; in fine, others rush upon the enemy, firmly resolved to sell their lives at the dearest rate. Most of the citizens were got on the house-tops, whence they threw stones, and whatever came first to hand, upon such as advanced forward into the city. The king gave orders for killing all the inhabitants, those excepted who had sheltered themselves in the temples, and to set fire to every part of Tyre. Although this order was published by sound of trumpet, yet not one person who carried arms flew to the asylums. The temples were filled with such old men and children only as had remained in the city. The old men waited at the doors of their houses, in expectation every instant of being sacrificed to the rage of the soldiers. It is true, indeed, that the Sidonian soldiers, who were in Alexander's camp, saved great numbers of them. For, having entered the city indiscriminately with the conquerors, and calling to mind their ancient affinity with the Tyrians, Agenor having founded both Tyre and Sidon, they, for that reason, carried off great numbers privately on board their ships, and conveyed them to

Sidon. By this kind of deceit, fifteen thousand were saved from the rage of the conqueror; and we may judge of the greatness of the slaughter from the number of the soldiers who were cut to pieces on the rampart of the city only, who amounted to six thousand. However, the king's anger not being fully appeased, he exhibited a scene, which appeared dreadful even to the conquerors; for two thousand men remaining after the soldiers had been glutted with slaughter, Alexander caused them to be fixed upon crosses along the seashore. He pardoned the ambassadors of Carthage, who were come to their metropolis to offer up a sacrifice to Hercules, according to annual custom. The number of prisoners, both foreigners and citizens, amounted to thirty thousand, who were all sold. As for the Macedonians, their loss was very inconsiderable.

^o Alexander himself sacrificed to Hercules, and conducted the ceremony with all the land forces under arms, in concert with the fleet. He also solemnized gymnastic exercises in honour of the same god, in the temple dedicated to him. With regard to the statue of Apollo, above mentioned, he took off the chains from it, restored it to its former liberty, and commanded that this god should thenceforwards be surnamed Philalexander, that is, the friend of Alexander. If we may believe Timæus, the Greeks began to pay him this solemn worship, for having occasioned the taking of Tyre, which happened the day and hour that the Carthaginians had carried off this statue from Gela. The city of Tyre was taken about the end of September, after having sustained a seven months siege.

Thus were accomplished the menaces which God had pronounced by the mouth of his prophets against the city of Tyre. * Nabuchodonosor had begun to execute those threats by besieging and taking it; and they were completed by the sad catastrophe we have here described. As this double event forms one of the most considerable passages in history, and as the scriptures have given us several very remarkable circumstances of it, I shall endeavour to unite here, in one view, all that they relate concerning the city of Tyre, its power, riches, haughtiness, and irreligion; the different punishments with which God chastised its pride and other vices; in fine, its last re-establishment, but in a manner entirely different from

^o A. M. 3672. Ant. J. C. 332.

* Or Nebuchadnezzar, as he is called in our version,

that of others. Methinks I revive on a sudden, when, through the multitude of profane histories which heathen antiquity furnishes, and in every part whereof there reigns an entire oblivion, not to say more, of the Almighty, the sacred scriptures exhibit themselves, and unfold to me the secret designs of God over kingdoms and empires ; and teach me what idea we are to form of those things which appear the most worthy of esteem, the most august in the eyes of men.

But before I relate the prophecies concerning Tyre, I shall here present the reader with a little extract of the history of that famous city ; by which he will be the better enabled to understand the prophecies.

p Tyre was built by the Sidonians, two hundred and forty years before the building of the temple of Jerusalem : for this reason it is called by Isaiah, the Daughter of Sidon. It soon surpassed its mother-city in extent, power, and riches.

q It was besieged by Salmanasar, and alone resisted the united fleets of the Assyrians and Phoenicians ; a circumstance which greatly heightened its pride.

r Nabuchodonosor laid siege to Tyre at the time that Ithobalus was king of that city ; but did not take it till thirteen years after. But before it was conquered, the inhabitants had retired, with most of their effects, into a neighbouring island, where they built a new city. The old one was razed to the very foundations ; and has since been no more than a village known by the name of Palæ-Tyros, or Ancient Tyre : but the new one rose to greater power than ever.

It was in this great and flourishing condition when Alexander besieged and took it. And here begins the seventy years of obscurity and oblivion in which it was to lie, according to Isaiah. It was indeed soon repaired, because the Sidonians who entered the city with Alexander's army, saved fifteen thousand of their citizens, as was before observed, who, after their return, applied themselves to traffic, and repaired the ruins of their country with incredible application ; besides which, the women and children, who had been sent to Carthage, and lodged in a place of safety, returned to it at the same time : But Tyre was confined to the island in which it stood. Its trade extended no farther than the neighbouring cities, and it had lost the empire of the sea. And when,

p A. M. 2992. Ant. J. C. 1712. Joseph. Antiq. l. viii. c. 3.

q A. M. 3285. Ant. J. C. 719. Ibid. l. 9. c. 14.

r A. M. 3432. Ant. J. C. 572. Ibid. l. x. c. 11.

eighteen years after, Antigonus besieged it with a strong fleet, we do not find that the Tyrians had any maritime forces to oppose him. This second siege, which reduced it a second time to captivity, plunged it into the state of oblivion from which it endeavoured to extricate itself; and this oblivion continued the exact time foretold by Isaiah.

This term of years being expired, Tyre recovered its former credit, and, at the same time, resuined its former vices; till at last, converted by the preaching of the gospel, it became a holy and religious city. The sacred writings acquaint us with part of these revolutions, and this is what we are now to shew.

* Tyre, before the captivity of the Jews in Babylon, was considered as one of the most ancient and flourishing cities in the world. Its industry and very advantageous situation had raised it to the sovereignty of the seas, and made it the centre of all the trade in the universe. From the extreme parts of Arabia, Persia, and India, to the most remote western coasts, from Scythia, and the northern countries, to Egypt, Ethiopia, and the southern countries, all nations contributed to the increase of its riches, splendour, and power. Not only the several things useful and necessary to society, which those various regions produced; but whatever they had of a rare, curious, magnificent, or precious kind, and best adapted to the support of luxury and pride; all these, I say, were brought to its markets. And Tyre, on the other side, as from a common source, dispersed this varied abundance over all kingdoms, and infected them with its corrupt manners, by inspiring mankind with a love for ease, vanity, luxury, and voluptuousness.

† A long uninterrupted series of prosperities had swelled the pride of Tyre. She delighted to consider herself as the queen of cities: a queen whose head is adorned with a diadem; whose correspondents are illustrious princes; whose rich traders dispute for superiority with kings; who sees every maritime power, either as her allies or dependants; and who made herself necessary or formidable to all nations.

Tyre had now filled up the measure of her iniquity, by her impiety against God, and her barbarity exercised against his people. She had rejoiced over the ruins of Jerusalem, in the insulting words following: “^u Behold then the gates of this

^s Ezek. xxvi. and xxvii. throughout. Ezek. xxviii. 4.—25.

^t Ezek. xxvi. 17. xxvii. 3, 4, 25—33. ^u Ezek. xxvii. 2.

“ so populous city are broken down. Her inhabitants shall “ come to me, and I will enrich myself with her spoils, now “ she is laid waste.” ^x She was not satisfied with having reduced the Jews to a state of captivity, notwithstanding the alliance between them ; with selling them to the Gentiles, and delivering them up to their most cruel enemies ; ^y she likewise had seized upon the inheritance of the Lord, and carried away from his temple the most precious things, to enrich therewith the temples of her idols.

^z This profanation and cruelty drew down the vengeance of God upon Tyre. God resolved to destroy her, because she relied so much upon her own strength, her wisdom, her riches, and her alliances. He therefore brought against her Nabuchodonosor, that king of kings, to overflow her with his mighty hosts, as with waters that overspread their banks, in order to demolish her ramparts, to ruin her proud palaces, to deliver up her merchandises and treasures to the soldier, and to raze Tyre to the very foundations, after having set fire to it, and either extirpated or dispersed all its inhabitants.

^a By this so unexpected a fall, the Almighty will teach the astonished nations, that he more evidently displays his providence by the most incredible revolutions of states ; and that his will only directs the enterprises of men, and guides them as he pleases, in order to humble the proud.

But Tyre, after she had recovered her losses, and repaired her ruins, forgot her former state of humiliation, and the guilt which had reduced her to it. ^b She still was puffed up with the glory of possessing the empire of the sea; of being the seat of universal commerce ; of giving birth to the most famous colonies ; of having within her walls merchants, whose credit, riches, and splendour, equalled them to the princes and great men of the earth ; ^c of being governed by a monarch, who might justly be entitled god of the sea ; of tracing back her origin to the most remote antiquity ; of having acquired, by a long series of ages, a kind of eternity ; and of having a right to promise herself another such eternity in times to come.

^d But since this city, corrupted by pride, by avarice, and luxury, has not profited by the first lesson which God had given her, in the person of the king of Babylon ; and that, af-

^x Joel iii. 2.—8. Amos i. 9, 10. ^y Joel iii. 2, 4, 7. Amos i. 9, 10.
^z Jerem. xlvi. 2, 6. Ezek. xxvi. 3.—12, and 19. xxvii. 27, 34. ^a Ezek. xxvi. 15, 18, and xxvii. 33, 36. Isa. xxiii. 8, 9. ^b Isa. xxiii. 3, 4, 7, 8, 12.
^c Ezek. xxviii. 2. ^d Isa. xxiii. 13.

ter being oppressed by all the forces of the East, she still would not learn to confide no longer in the false and imaginary supports of her own greatness ; ^e God foretels her another chastisement, which he will send upon her from the west, near four hundred years after the first. ^f Her destruction will come from Chittim, that is, Macedonia ; from a kingdom so weak and obscure, that it had been despised a few years before ; a kingdom whence she could never have expected such a blow. “ Tyre, possessed with an opinion of her own wisdom, and “ proud of her fleets, of her immense riches, which she heap- “ ed up as mire in the streets,” and also protected by the whole power of the Persian empire, does not imagine she has any thing to fear from those new enemies, who being situated at a great distance from her, without either money, strength, or reputation, having neither harbours nor ships, and being quite unskilled in navigation, cannot therefore, as she imagines, annoy her with their land-forces. ^g Tyre looks upon herself as impregnable, because she is defended by lofty fortifications, and surrounded on all sides by the sea as with a moat and a girdle : Nevertheless, Alexander, by filling up the arm of the sea which separates her from the continent, will force off her girdle, and demolish those ramparts which served her as a second inclosure.

Tyre, thus dispossessed of her dignity as queen and as a free city, boasting no more her diadem nor her girdle, will be reduced, during seventy years, to the mean condition of a slave. “ ^h The lord hath purposed it, to stain the pride of all glory, “ and to bring into contempt all the honourable of the earth.” ⁱ Her fall will drag after it the ruin of trade in general, and she will prove to all cities a subject of sorrow and groans, by making them lose the present means, and the future hopes of enriching themselves.

^k To prove, in a sensible manner, to Tyre, that the prophecy concerning her ruin is not incredible, and that all the strength and wisdom of man can no ways ward off or suspend the punishment which God has prepared for the pride and the abuse of riches, Isaiah sets before her the example of Babylon, whose destruction ought to have been an example to her. * This city, in which Nimrod laid the foundations of his

^e Isa. xxiii. 11, 12, 13.

^f 1 Maccab. i. 1. Zech. ix. 2, 5.

^g Isa. xxiii. 10, 11, 13.

^h Isa. xxiii. 9.

ⁱ Ibid. 1, 11, 14.

^k Ibid. 13, 14.

* “ Behold the land of the Chaldeans ; this people was not till the Assyrians founded it for them that dwell in the wilderness ; they set up the towers thereof, they raised up the palaces thereof, and he brought it to ruin. Howl, ye ships of Tarshish ; for your strength is laid waste.” — Isa. xxiii. 13, 14.

empire, was the most ancient, the most populous, and embellished with more edifices, both public and private, than any other city. She was the capital of the first empire that ever existed, and was founded in order to command over the whole earth, which seemed to be inhabited only by families, which she had brought forth and sent out as so many colonies, whose common parent she was. Nevertheless, says the prophet, she is no more, neither Babylon nor her empire. The citizens of Babylon had multiplied their ramparts and citadels, to render even the besieging it impracticable. The inhabitants had raised pompous palaces, to make their names immortal ; but all these fortifications were but as so many dens, in the eyes of Providence, for wild beasts to dwell in ; and these edifices were doomed to fall to dust, or else to sink to humble cottages.

After so signal an example, continues the prophet, shall Tyre, which is so much inferior to Babylon in many respects, dare to hope that the menaces pronounced by Heaven against her, viz. to deprive her of the empire of the sea, and destroy her fleets, will not be fulfilled ?

¹ To make her the more strongly sensible how much she has abused her prosperity, God will reduce her to a state of humiliation and oblivion during threescore and ten years. ^m But after this season of obscurity, she will again endeavour to appear with the air of an harlot, whose charms and artifices she shall assume ; she will employ her utmost endeavours to corrupt youth, and soothe their passions. To promote her commerce, she will use fraud, deceit, and the most insidious arts. She will visit every part of the world to collect the most rare and most delicious products of every country ; to inspire the various nations of the universe with a love and admiration for superfluities and splendour ; and fill them with an aversion for the simplicity and frugality of their ancient manners. And she will set every engine at work, to renew her ancient treaties ; to recover the confidence of her former correspondents ; and to compensate, by a speedy abundance, the sterility of seventy years.

ⁿ Thus, in proportion as the Almighty shall give Tyre an opportunity of recovering her trade and credit, she shall return to her former shameful traffic, which God had ruined, by stripping her of the great possessions she had applied to such pernicious uses.

^o But at last, Tyre, converted by the gospel, shall no more

¹ Isa. xxiii.15.

^m Ibid. 16.

ⁿ Ibid. 17.

^o Ibid. 18.

be a scandal and a stumbling-block to nations. She shall no longer sacrifice her labour to the idolatry of wealth, but to the worship of the Lord, and the comfort of those that serve him. She shall no longer render her riches barren and useless by detaining them, but shall scatter them, like fruitful seed, from the hands of believers and ministers of the gospel.

One of God's designs, in the prophecies just now cited, is to give us a just idea of a traffic, whose only motive is avarice, and whose fruits are pleasures, vanity, and immorality. Mankind look upon cities enriched with a commerce like that of Tyre, and it is the same with private persons, as happier than any other ; as worthy of envy, and as fit, from their industry, labour, and the success of their applications and conduct, to be proposed as patterns for the rest to copy after : But God, on the contrary, exhibits them to us under the shameful image of a woman lost to all sense of virtue ; as a woman, whose only view is to seduce and corrupt youth ; who only soothes the passions, and flatters the senses ; who abhors modesty, and every sentiment of honour ; and who, banishing from her countenance every characteristic of chastity, glories in ignominy. We are not to infer from hence, that traffic is sinful in itself ; but we should separate from the essential foundation of trade, which is just and lawful when rightly used, the passions of men, which intermix with, and by that means pervert the order and end of it. Tyre, converted to Christianity, teaches merchants in what manner they are to carry on their traffic, and the uses to which they ought to apply their profits.

SECTION VII.

ALEXANDER'S JOURNEY TO JERUSALEM. HE SUBDUES EGYPT.
IS DECLARED SON OF JUPITER.

WHILST Alexander was carrying on the siege of Tyre, he had received a second letter from Darius, who at last gave him the title of King. He offered him ten thousand talents, "thirty millions, as a ransom for the captive princesses, and "his daughter Statira in marriage, with all the country he "had conquered as far as the Euphrates. Darius hinted to "him the inconstancy of fortune ; and described, in the most "pompous terms, the numberless troops who were still under "his command. Could he, Alexander, think that it was so

p Plut. in Alex. p. 681. Q. Curt. l. iv. c. 5. Arrian. l. ii. p. 101.

“ very easy to cross the Euphrates, the Tigris, the Araxes, “ and the Hydaspes, which were so many bulwarks to the “ Persian empire ? That he should not be always shut up be- “ tween rocks and passes : that they ought both to appear in “ a plain, and that then Alexander would be ashamed to come “ before him with only a handful of men.” The king here- upon summoned a council, in which Parmenio was of opinion, that he ought to accept of these offers, declaring he himself would agree to them, were he Alexander. “ And so would I,” replied Alexander, “ were I Parmenio.” He therefore re- turned the following answer : “ That he did not want the mo- “ ney Darius offered him : That it did not become Darius to “ offer a thing he no longer possessed, or to pretend to distri- “ bute what he had entirely lost : That in case he was the “ only person who did not know which of them was superior, “ a battle would soon determine it : That he should not think “ to intimidate with rivers, a man who had crossed so many “ seas : That to whatsoever place he might find it proper “ to retire, Alexander would not fail to find him out.” Da- riush, upon receiving this answer, lost all hopes of an accom- modation, and prepared again for war.

q From Tyre Alexander marched to Jerusalem, firmly re- solved to shew it no more favour than he had done the for- mer city ; and for this reason : The Tyrians were so much employed in traffic, that they quite neglected husbandry, and brought most of their corn and other provisions from the countries in their neighbourhood. r Galilea, Samaria, and Judea, furnished them with the greatest quantities. At the same time that Alexander laid siege to their city, he himself was obliged to send for provisions from those countries : he therefore sent commissioners to summon the inhabitants to sub- mit, and furnish his army with whatever they might want. The Jews, however, desired to be excused, alledging that they had taken an oath of fidelity to Darius ; and persisted in an- swering, that they would never acknowledge any other sove- reign as long as he was living : a rare example of fidelity, and worthy of the only people who in that age acknowledged the true God ? The Samaritans, however, did not imitate them in this particular ; for they submitted with cheerfulness to Alexander, and even sent him eight thousand men, to serve at the siege of Tyre and in other places. For the better un- derstanding of what follows, it may be necessary for us to

q Joseph. Antiq. l. xi. c. 8.

r Acts xii. 20.

present the reader, in few words, with the state of the Samaritans at that time, and the cause of the strong antipathy between them and the Jews.

I observed * elsewhere, that the Samaritans did not descend from the Israelites, but were a colony of idolaters, taken from the countries on the other side of the Euphrates, whom Asaraddon, king of the Assyrians, had sent to inhabit the cities of Samaria, after the ruin of the kingdom of the ten tribes. These people, who were called Cuthæi, blended the worship of the God of Israel with that of their idols: and on all occasions discovered an enmity to the Jews. This hatred was much stronger after the return of the Jews from the Babylonish captivity, before and after the restoration of the temple.

Notwithstanding the reformation which the holy man Nehemiah had wrought in Jerusalem, with regard to the marrying of strange or foreign women, the evil had spread so far, that the high priest's house, which ought to have been preserved more than any other from these criminal mixtures, was itself polluted with them. ^s One of the sons of Jehoiada the high-priest, whom Josephus calls Manasses, had married the daughter of Sanaballat the Heronite; and many more had followed his example. But Nehemiah, zealous for the law of God, which was so shamefully violated, commanded, without exception, all who had married strange women, either to put them away immediately, or depart the country. ^t Manasses chose to go into banishment rather than separate himself from his wife, and accordingly withdrew to Samaria, whither he was followed by great numbers, as rebellious as himself; he there settled them under the protection of Sanaballat, his father-in-law, who was governor of that country.

The latter obtained of Darius Nothus, whom probably the war which broke out between Egypt and Persia had forced into Phœnicia, leave to build on mount Garizim, near Samaria, a temple like that of Jerusalem, and to appoint Manasses, his son-in-law, priest thereof. From that time Samaria became the asylum of all the malcontents of Judea. And it was this that raised the hatred of the Jews against the Samaritans to its greatest height, when they saw that the latter, notwithstanding the express prohibition of the law, which fixed the solemn worship of the God of Israel in the city of Jerusalem, had nevertheless raised altar against altar, and temple against

^s 2 Esd. xiii. 28.

^t Joseph. Antiq.

* Vol. II. of the Assyrians.

temple, and refused all who fled from Jerusalem, to screen themselves from the punishment which would have been inflicted upon them for violating the law.

Such was the state of Judea when Alexander laid siege to Tyre. The Samaritans, as we before observed, had sent him a considerable body of troops ; whereas the Jews thought they could not submit to him, as long as Darius, to whom they had taken an oath of allegiance, should be alive.

Alexander, being little used to such an answer, particularly after he had obtained so many victories, and thinking that all things ought to bow before him, resolved, the instant he had conquered Tyre, to march against the Jews, and punish their disobedience as rigorously as he had done that of the Tyrians.

In this imminent danger, Jaddus, the high-priest, who governed under the Persians, seeing himself exposed, with all the inhabitants, to the wrath of the conqueror, had recourse to the protection of the Almighty, gave orders for the offering up public prayers to implore his assistance, and made sacrifices. The night after, God appeared to him in a dream, and bid him "to cause flowers to be scattered up and down the city; to "set open all the gates, and go, clothed in his pontifical robes, "with all the priests dressed also in their vestments, and all "the rest clothed in white, to meet Alexander, and not to "fear any evil from the king, inasmuch as he would protect "them." This command was punctually obeyed ; and accordingly this august procession, the very day after, marched out of the city to an eminence called Sapha *, whence there was a view of all the plain, as well as of the temple and city of Jerusalem. Here the whole procession waited the arrival of Alexander.

The Syrians and Phœnicians, who were in his army, were persuaded that the wrath of this prince was so great, that he would certainly punish the high-priest after an exemplary manner, and destroy that city in the same manner as he had done Tyre ; and, flushed with joy upon that account, they waited in expectation of glutting their eyes with the calamities of a people to whom they bore a mortal hatred. As soon as the Jews heard of the king's approach, they set out to meet him with all the pomp before described. Alexander was struck at the sight of the high-priest, in whose mitre and forehead a golden plate was fixed, on which the name of God was writ-

* The Hebrew word, Sapha, signifies to discover from far, as from a tower or sentry-box.

ten. The moment the king perceived the high-priest, he advanced towards him with an air of the most profound respect ; bowed his body, adored the august name upon his front, and saluted him who wore it with a religious veneration. Then the Jews, surrounding Alexander, raised their voices to wish him every kind of prosperity. All the spectators were seized with inexpressible surprise ; they could scarce believe their eyes ; and did not know how to account for a sight so contrary to their expectation, and so vastly improbable.

Parmenio, who could not yet recover from his astonishment, asked the king how it came to pass that he, who was adored by every one, adored the high-priest of the Jews. "I do not," replied Alexander, "adore the high-priest, but the God whose minister he is ; for whilst I was at Dia in Macedonia, (my mind wholly fixed on the great design of the Persian war), as I was resolving the methods how to conquer Asia, this very man, dressed in the same robes, appeared to me in a dream, exhorted me to banish every fear, bid me cross the Hellespont boldly, and assured me that God would march at the head of my army, and give me the victory over that of the Persians." Alexander added, that the instant he saw this priest, he knew him by his habit, his stature, his air, and his face, to be the same person whom he had seen at Dia ; that he was firmly persuaded, it was by the command, and under the immediate conduct of Heaven, that he had undertaken this war ; that he was sure he should overcome Darius hereafter, and destroy the empire of the Persians ; and that this was the reason why he adored this God in the person of his priest. Alexander, after having thus answered Parmenio, embraced the high-priest, and all his brethren ; then walking in the midst of them, he arrived at Jerusalem, where he offered sacrifices to God, in the temple, after the manner prescribed to him by the high-priest.

The high-priest, afterwards, showed him those passages in the prophecy of Daniel, which are spoken of that monarch. I shall here give an extract of them, to show how conspicuously the most distant events are present to the Creator.

^u God manifests, by the prophecy of Daniel, that grandeur, empire, and glory, are his ; that he bestows them on whomsoever he pleases, and withdraws them, in like manner, to punish the abuse of them ; that his wisdom and power solely determine the course of events in all ages ; ^x that he changes,

by the mere effect of his will, the whole face of human affairs ; that he sets up new kingdoms, overthrows the ancient ones, and effaces them, even to the very footsteps of them, with the same ease as the wind carries off the smallest chaff from the threshing-floor.

y God's design in subjecting states to such astonishing revolutions, is to teach men, that they are in his presence as nothing ; that he alone is the most high, the eternal King, the sovereign arbiter; who acts as he pleases, with supreme power both in heaven and in earth. z For the putting this design in execution, the prophet sees an august council, in which the angels, being appointed as spectators and overseers of governments and kings, inquire into the use which these make of the authority that heaven intrusted them with, in quality of his ministers ; and when they abuse it, these * spirits, zealous for the glory of their Sovereign, beseech God to punish their injustice and ingratitude ; and to humble their pride, by casting them from the throne, and reducing them to the most abject among mankind.

a God, to make these important truths still more sensible, shows Daniel four dreadful beasts who rise from the vast sea, in which the four winds combat together with fury ; and, under these symbols, he represents to the prophet the origin, the characteristics, and fall of the four great empires, which are to govern the whole world successively. A dreadful, but too real image ! For empires rise out of noise and confusion, they subsist in blood and slaughter ; they exercise their power with violence and cruelty ; they think it glorious to carry terror and desolation into all places ; but yet, in spite of their utmost efforts, they are subject to continual vicissitudes, and unforeseen destruction.

b The prophet then relates more particularly the character of each of these empires. After having represented the empire of the Babylonians under the image of a lioness, and that of the Medes and Persians under the form of a bear greedy of prey, he draws the picture of the Grecian monarchy, by presenting us with such of its characteristics as it is more immediately known by. Under the image of a spotted leopard, with four heads and four wings, he shadows Alexander, inter-

y Dan. iv. 32, 34, 35, 36.

a Dan. vii. 2, 3.

z Ibid. 14.

b Ibid. vii. 4, 5, 6.

* It was at the desire of these angels, that Nebuchodonosor was driven from the society of men to herd with wild beasts.

mixed with good and bad qualities ; rash and impetuous in his resolution, rapid in his conquests, flying with the swiftness of a bird of prey, rather than marching with the weight of an army laden with the whole equipage of war ; supported by the valour and capacity of his generals, four of whom, after having assisted him in conquering his empire, divided it among themselves.

^c To this picture the prophet adds elsewhere new touches. He enumerates the order of the succession of the kings of Persia ; he declares, in precise terms, that after the three first kings, viz. Cyrus, Cambyses, and Darius, a fourth monarch will arise, who is Xerxes ; and that he will exceed all his predecessors in power and in riches ; that this prince, puffed up with the idea of his own grandeur, which shall have risen to its highest pitch, will assemble all the people in his boundless dominions, and lead them to the conquest of Greece. But as the prophet takes notice only of the march of this multitude, and does not tell us what success they met with, he thereby gives us pretty clearly to understand, that Xerxes, a soft, injudicious, and fearful prince, will not have the least success in any of his projects.

^d On the contrary, from among the Greeks in question, attacked unsuccessfully by the Persians, there will arise a king of a genius and turn of mind quite different from that of Xerxes ; and this is Alexander the Great. He shall be a bold valiant monarch ; he shall succeed in all his enterprises ; he shall extend his dominions far and wide, and shall establish an irresistible power on the ruins of the vanquished nations : but at a time when he shall imagine himself to be most firmly seated on the throne, he shall lose his life with the regal dignity, and not leave any posterity to succeed him in it. This new monarchy, losing on a sudden the splendour and power for which it was so renowned under Alexander, shall divide itself towards the four winds of heaven. From its ruins there shall arise not only four great kingdoms, Egypt, Syria, Asia Minor, and Macédon, but also several other foreigners, or Barbarians, shall usurp its provinces, and form kingdoms out of these.

^e In fine, in the eighth chapter, the prophet completes the description in still stronger colours, the character, the battles, the series of successes, the rise and fall, of these two rival empires. By the image he gives of a powerful ram, having two

^c Dan. xi. 2.

^d Ibid. xi. 3, 4.

^e Ibid. viii.

horns of an unequal length, he declares that the first of these empires shall be composed of Persians and Medes; that its strength shall consist in the union of these two nations; that the Persians shall nevertheless exceed the Medes in authority; that they shall have a series of conquests, without meeting with any opposition; that they shall first extend them towards the west, by subduing the Lydians, the provinces of Asia Minor, and Thrace; that they shall afterwards turn their arms towards the north, in order to subdue part of Scythia, and the nations bordering on the Caspian Sea; in fine, that they shall endeavour to enlarge their dominions towards the south, by subjecting Egypt and Arabia; but that they shall not invade the nations of the East.

The monarchy of the Greeks is afterwards exhibited to Daniel, under the symbol of a he-goat of prodigious size; he perceives that the Macedonian army will march from the west, in order to invade the empire of the Persians; that it will be headed by a warrior famous for his power and glory; that it will take immense marches in quest of the enemy, even into the very heart of his dominions; that it shall advance towards this enemy with such rapidity, that it will seem only to skim the ground; that it will give this empire its mortal wound; entirely subvert it by repeated victories, and destroy the double power of the Persians and Medes; during which not one monarch, whether its ally or neighbour, shall give it the least succour.

But as soon as this monarchy shall have risen to its greatest height, Alexander, who formed its greatest strength, shall be snatched from it; and thence there will arise, towards the four parts of the world, four Grecian monarchies, which, though vastly inferior to that of Alexander, will, however, be very considerable.

Can any thing be more wonderful, more divine, than a series of prophecies, all of them so clear, so exact, and so circumstantial; prophecies which go so far as to point out, that a prince should die without leaving a single successor from among his own family, and that four of his generals will divide his empire between them? But we must peruse these prophecies in the scriptures themselves. The Vulgate agrees, a few places excepted, pretty nearly with the Hebrew, which I shall translate * agreeable to the original text.

* We have not followed Mr Rollin's translation here, believing it more proper to make use of our own version of the Bible.

“ ^f In the third year of the reign of king Belshazzar, a vision appeared unto me, even unto me, Daniel, after that which appeared unto me at the first. And I saw in a vision, and it came to pass when I saw, that I was at Shushan in the palace, which is in the province of Elam ; and I saw in a vision, and I was by the river of Ulai. Then I lifted up mine eyes, and saw, and behold there stood before the river a RAM, which had two horns, and the two horns were high : But one was higher than the other, and the higher came up last. I saw the ram pushing westward, and northward, and southward : So that no beasts might stand before him, neither was there any that could deliver out of his hand, but he did according to his will, and became great. And as I was considering, behold, an he-goat came from the west, on the face of the whole earth, and touched not the ground ; and the goat had a notable horn between his eyes. And he came to the ram that had two horns, which I had seen standing before the river, and ran unto him in the fury of his power. And I saw him come close unto the ram, and he was moved with choler against him, and smote the ram, and brake his two horns, and there was no power in the ram to stand before him, but he cast him down to the ground, and stamped upon him : And there was none that could deliver the ram out of his hand. Therefore the he-goat waxed very great, and when he was strong, the great horn was broken ; and from it came out four notable ones towards the four winds of heaven.”

A great number of very important reflections might be made on the prophecies I have now repeated : But these I shall leave to the reader’s understanding and religion, and will make but one remark ; on which, however, I shall not expatiate so much as the subject might deserve.

The Almighty presides in general over all events which happen in the world ; and rules, with absolute sway, the fate of all men in particular, of all cities, and of all empires ; but then he conceals the operations of his wisdom, and the wonders of his providence, beneath the veil of natural causes and ordinary events. All that profane history exhibits to us, whether sieges, or the conquests of cities ; battles won or lost ; empires established or overthrown ; in all these, I say, there appears nothing but what is human and natural : God seems to have no concern in these things, and we should be tempted

to believe that he abandons men entirely to their views, their talents, and their passions ; if we, perhaps, except the Jewish nation, whom he considered as his own peculiar people.

To prevent our falling into a temptation so repugnant to religion and even reason itself, God breaks at every interval his silence, and disperses the clouds which hide him, and condescends to discover to us the secret springs of his providence, by causing his prophets to foretel, a long series of years before the event, the fate he has prepared for the different nations of the earth. He reveals to Daniel the order, the succession, and the different characteristics of the four great empires, to which he is determined to subject all the nations of the universe, *viz.* that of the Babylonians, of the Persians and Medes, of the Greeks ; and, lastly, that of the Romans.

It is in the same view that he insists, very strongly, on the two most famous conquerors that ever existed ; I mean, Cyrus and Alexander, the one founder, the other destroyer, of the powerful empire of Persia. He causes the former to be called by his name two hundred years before his birth ; prophecies, by the mouth of Isaiah, his victories ; and relates the several circumstances of the taking of Babylon, the like of which had never been seen before. On this occasion he points out Alexander by the mouth of Daniel, and ascribes such qualities and characteristics as can agree with none but him, and which denote him as if he had been named.

These passages of scripture, in which God explains himself clearly, should be considered as very precious ; and serve as so many keys to open to us the path to the secret methods by which he governs the world. These faint glimmerings of light should enable a rational and religious man to see every thing else clearly ; and make him conclude, from what is said of the four great empires of Cyrus and Alexander, of Babylon and Tyre, that we ought to acknowledge and admire, in the several events of profane history, God's perpetual care and regard for all men and all states, whose destiny depends entirely on his wisdom, his power, and his pleasure.

We may easily figure to ourselves the great joy and admiration with which Alexander was filled, upon hearing such clear, such circumstantial, and advantageous promises. Before he left Jerusalem, he assembled the Jews, and bid them ask any favour whatsoever. They answered, that their request was, to be allowed to live according to the laws which their ancestors had left them, and to be exempted, the seventh year, from their usual tribute ; and for this reason, because

they were forbid by their laws to sow their fields, and consequently could have no harvest. Alexander granted their request, and upon the high-priest's beseeching him to suffer the Jews, who lived in Babylonia and Media, to live likewise agreeable to their own laws, he also indulged them in this particular with the utmost humanity ; and said further, that in case any of them would be willing to serve under his standards, he would give them leave to follow their own way of worship, and to observe their respective customs : Upon which offer great numbers enlisted themselves.

He was scarce come from Jerusalem, but the Samaritans waited upon him with great pomp and ceremony, humbly entreating him to do them the honour to visit their temple. As these had submitted voluntarily to Alexander, and sent him succours, they imagined that they deserved his favour much more than the Jews ; and flattered themselves that they should obtain the same, and even much greater indulgence. It was in this view they made the pompous procession above mentioned, in order to invite Alexander to their city ; and the eight thousand men they had sent to serve under him, joined in the request made by their countrymen. Alexander thanked them courteously ; but said that he was obliged to march into Egypt, and therefore had no time to lose ; however, that he would visit their city at his return, in case he had opportunity. They then besought him to exempt them from paying a tribute every seventh year ; upon which Alexander asked them, whether they were Jews ? They made an ambiguous answer, which the king not having time to examine, he also suspended this matter till his return, and immediately continued his march towards Gaza.

g Upon his arrival before that city, he found it provided with a strong garrison, commanded by Betis, one of Darius' eunuchs. This governor, who was a brave man, and very faithful to his sovereign, defended it with great vigour against Alexander. As this was the only inlet or pass into Egypt, it was absolutely necessary for him to conquer it, and therefore he was obliged to besiege it. But although every art of war was employed, notwithstanding his soldiers fought with the utmost intrepidity, he was however forced to lie two months before it. Exasperated at its holding out so long, and his receiving two wounds, he was resolved to treat the governor,

g. Diod. l. xvii. p. 526. Arrian. l. ii. p. 101.—103. Quint. Curt. l. iv. q. 6. Plut. in Alex. p. 679.

the inhabitants, and soldiers, with a barbarity absolutely inexcusable ; for he cut ten thousand men to pieces, and sold all the rest, with their wives and children, for slaves. When Betis, who had been taken prisoner in the last assault, was brought before him, Alexander, instead of using him kindly, as his valour and fidelity justly merited, this young monarch, who otherwise esteemed bravery even in an enemy, fired on that occasion with an insolent joy, spoke thus to him : “ Be-
“ tis, thou shalt not die the death thou desiredst. Prepare
“ therefore to suffer all those torments which revenge can in-
“ vent.” Betis, looking upon the king, not only with a firm, but an haughty air, did not make the least reply to his menaces ; upon which the king, more enraged than before at his disdainful silence——“ Observe,” said he, “ I beseech you, “ that dumb arrogance. Has he bended the knee ? Has he
“ spoke but even so much as one submissive word ? But I
“ will conquer this obstinate silence, and will force groans
“ from him, if I can draw nothing else.” At last Alexander’s anger * arose to fury ; his conduct now beginning to change with his fortune : upon which he ordered a hole to be made through his heels, when a rope being put through them, and this being tied to a chariot, he ordered his soldiers to drag Betis round the city till he died. He boasted his having imitated, on this occasion, Achilles, from whom he was descended ; who, as Homer relates, caused the dead body of Hector to be dragged in the same manner round the walls of Troy † : as if a man ought ever to pride himself for having imitated so ill an example. Both were very barbarous, but Alexander was much more so, in causing Betis to be dragged alive ; and for no other reason, but because he had served his sovereign with bravery and fidelity, by defending a city with which he had intrusted him ; a fidelity, that ought to have been admired, and even rewarded, by an enemy, rather than punished in so cruel a manner.

He sent the greatest part of the plunder he found in Gaza to Olympias, to Cleopatra his sister, and to his friends. He also presented Leonidas, his preceptor, with five hundred quintals, or an hundred weight of frankincense, and an hundred quintals of myrrh ; calling to mind a caution Leonidas had given him when but a child, and which seemed, even at that time, to presage the conquests this monarch had lately atchieved. For Leonidas, observing Alexander take up whole hand-

* Iram deinde vertit in rabiem, jam tum peregrines ritus nova subeunte fortuna.
—Quint. Curt.

† Decipit exemplar virtutis imitabile.—Horat.

fuls of incense at a sacrifice, and throw it into the fire, said to him : “ Alexander, when you shall have conquered the country which produces these spices, you then may be as profuse of incense as you please ; but, till that day comes, be sparing of what you have.” The monarch, therefore, wrote to Leonidas as follows : “ I send you a large quantity of incense and myrrh, in order that you may no longer be so reserved and sparing in your sacrifices to the gods.”

^h As soon as Alexander had ended the siege of Gaza, he left a garrison there, and turned the whole power of his arms towards Egypt. In seven days march he arrived before Pelusium, whither a great number of Egyptians had assembled, with all imaginable diligence, to recognize him for their sovereign.

The hatred these people bore to the Persians was so great, that they valued very little who should be their king, provided they could but meet with a hero to rescue them from the insolence and indignity with which themselves, and those who professed their religion, were treated. For, how false soever a religion may be, and it is scarce possible to imagine one more absurd than that of the Egyptians, so long as it continues to be the established religion, the people will not suffer it to be insulted ; nothing affecting their minds so strongly, nor firing them to a greater degree. Ochus had caused their god Apis to be murdered, in a manner highly injurious to themselves and their religion ; and the Persians to whom he had left the government, continued to make the same mock of that deity. Thus several circumstances had rendered the Persians so odious, that, upon Amyntas’ coming a little before with a handful of men, he found them prepared to join, and assist him in expelling the Persians.

This Amyntas had deserted from Alexander, and entered into the service of Darius. He had commanded the Grecian forces at the battle of Issus ; and having fled into Syria, by the country lying towards Tripoli, with four thousand men, he had there seized upon as many vessels as he wanted, burned the rest, and immediately set sail towards the island of Cyprus, and afterwards towards Pelusium, which he took by surprise, upon feigning that he had been honoured with a commission from Darius, appointing him governor of Egypt, in the room of Sabaces, killed in the battle of Issus. As soon

^h A. M. 3673. Ant. J. C. 331. Diod. I. xvii. p. 526.—529. Arrian. I. iii. p. 104.—110. Plat. in Alex. p. 681. Quint Curt. I. iv. c. 7. and 8. Justin. I. xi. c. 11.

as he found himself possessed of this important city, he threw off the mask, and made public pretensions to the crown of Egypt; declaring, that the motive of his coming was to expel the Persians. Upon this, a multitude of Egyptians, who wished for nothing so earnestly as to free themselves from these insupportable tyrants, went over to him. He then marched directly for Memphis, the capital of the kingdom; when coming to a battle, he defeated the Persians, and shut them up in the city. But, after he had gained this victory, having neglected to keep his soldiers together, they straggled up and down in search of plunder; which the enemy seeing, they sallied out upon such as remained, and cut them to pieces, with Amyntas their leader.

This event, so far from lessening the aversion the Egyptians had for the Persians, increased it still more; so that the moment Alexander appeared upon the frontiers, the people, who were all disposed to receive that monarch, ran in crowds to submit to him. His arrival, at the head of a powerful army, presented them with a secure protection, which Amyntas could not afford them; and from this consideration, they all declared openly in his favour. Mazaeus, who commanded in Memphis, finding it would be to no purpose for him to resist so triumphant an army, and that Darius, his sovereign, was not in a condition to succour him; he therefore set open the gates of the city to the conqueror, and gave up eight hundred talents, about one hundred and forty thousand pounds, and all the king's furniture. Thus Alexander possessed himself of all Egypt, without meeting with the least opposition.

At Memphis he formed a design of visiting the temple of Jupiter-Ammon. This temple was situated in the midst of the sandy deserts of Lybia, and twelve days journey from Memphis. Hamⁱ, the son of Noah, first peopled Egypt and Lybia, after the flood; and, when idolatry began to gain ground in the world some time after, he was the chief deity of those two countries in which his descendants had continued. A temple was built to his honour in the midst of these deserts, upon a spot of pretty good ground, about two leagues^k broad, which formed a kind of island in a sea of sand. It is he whom the Greeks call *Zeus*, Jupiter, * and the Egyptians, Am-

ⁱ Plin. lib. v. c. 9.

^k Forty furlongs.

* For this reason the city of Egypt, which the scriptures [†] call No-Ammon, the city of Ham or of Ammon, is called by the Greeks *Διόστρατος*, or the city of Jupiter.

[†] Jerem. xlvi. 25. Ezek. xxx. 15. Nahum. iii. 8.

mon : in process of time these two names were joined, and he was called Jupiter-Ammon.

The motive of this journey, which was equally rash and dangerous, was owing to a ridiculous vanity. Alexander, having read in Homer, and other fabulous authors of antiquity, that most of their heroes were represented as the sons of some deity ; and as he himself was desirous of passing for an hero, he was determined to have some god for his father. Accordingly he fixed upon Jupiter-Ammon for this purpose, and began by bribing the priests, and teaching them the part they were to act.

It would have been to no purpose, had any one endeavoured to divert him from a design, which was great in no other circumstances than the pride and extravagance that gave birth to it. Puffed up with his victories, he had already begun to assume, as Plutarch observes, that character of tenaciousness and inflexibility which will do nothing but command ; which cannot suffer advice, and much less bear opposition ; which knows neither obstacles nor dangers ; which makes the beautiful to consist in impossibility ; in a word, which fancies itself able to force, not only enemies, but fortresses, seasons, and the whole order of nature ; the usual effect of a long series of prosperities, which subdues the strongest, and makes them at length forget that they are men. We ourselves have seen a famous * conqueror, who boasted his treading in the steps of Alexander, carry farther than he had ever done this kind of savage heroism ; and lay it down as a maxim to himself, never to recede from his resolution.

¹ Alexander therefore sets out ; and going down from the river Memphis, till he came to the sea, he coasts it ; and, after having passed Canopus, he observes, opposite to the island of Pharos, a spot he thought very well situated for the building of a city. He himself drew the plan of it, and marked out the several places where the temples and public squares were to be erected. For the building it, he employed Dinocrates the architect, who had acquired great reputation by his re-building, at Ephesus, the temple of Diana, which Herôstratus had burnt. This city he called after his own name, and it afterwards rose to be the capital of the kingdom. As its harbour, which was very commodious, had the Mediterranean on one side, and the Nile and the Red Sea in its neighbour-

¹ A. M. 3673. Ant. J. C. 331.

* Charles XII. king of Sweden.

hood, it drew all the traffic of the east and west ; and thereby became, in a very little time, one of the most flourishing cities in the universe.

Alexander had a journey to go of one thousand six hundred stadia, or fourscore French leagues, to the temple of Jupiter-Ammon ; the most of the way was through sandy deserts. The soldiers were patient enough for the first two days march, before they arrived in the vast dreadful solitudes ; but as soon as they found themselves in vast plains, covered with sands of a prodigious depth, they were greatly terrified. Surrounded as with the sea, they gazed round as far as their sight could extend, to discover, if possible, some place that was inhabited, but all in vain, for they could not perceive so much as a single tree ; nor the least footsteps of any land that had been cultivated. To increase their calamity, the water that they had brought in goat-skins, upon camels, now failed ; and there was not so much as a single drop in all that sandy desert. They therefore were reduced to the sad condition of dying almost with thirst ; not to mention the danger they were in of being buried under mountains of sand, that were sometimes raised by the winds ; and which had formerly destroyed fifty thousand of Cambyses' troops. Every thing was by this time scorched to so violent a degree, and the air became so hot, that the men could scarcely breathe ; when on a sudden, whether by chance, say the historians, or the immediate indulgence of Heaven, the sky was so completely overspread with thick clouds, that they hid the sun, which was a great relief to the army ; though they were still in prodigious want of water. But the storm having discharged itself in a violent rain, every soldier got as much as he wanted ; and some had so violent a thirst, that they stood with their mouths open, and catched the rain as it fell. The judicious reader knows what judgement he is to form of these marvellous incidents with which historians have thought proper to embellish this relation.

They were several days in crossing these deserts, and, upon their arriving near the place where the oracle stood, they perceived a great number of ravens flying before the most advanced standard. These ravens sometimes flew to the ground, when the army marched slowly ; and at other times advanced forward, to serve them as guides, till they at last came to the temple of the God. A vastly surprising circumstance is, that although this oracle be situated in the midst of an almost boundless solitude, it nevertheless is surrounded with a grove

so very shady, that the sun-beams can scarcely pierce it ; not to mention that the grove or wood is watered with several springs of fresh water, which preserve it in perpetual verdure. It is related, that near this grove there is another, in the midst of which is a fountain, called the Water, or Fountain of the Sun. At day-break it is lukewarm, at noon cold ; but in the evening it grows warmer insensibly, and at midnight boiling-hot ; after this, as day approaches, it decreases in heat, and continues this vicissitude for ever.

The god, who is worshipped in this temple, is not represented under the form which painters and sculptors generally give to gods ; for he is made of emeralds, and other precious stones, and from the head to the navel *, resembles a ram. The king being come into the temple, the senior priest declared him to be the son of Jupiter ; and assured him, that the god himself bestowed this name upon him. Alexander accepted it with joy, and acknowledged Jupiter as his father. He afterwards asked the priest, whether his father Jupiter had not allotted him the empire of the whole world ? To which the priest, who was as much a flatterer as the king was vain-glorious, answered, that he should be monarch of the universe. At last he inquired, whether all his father's murderers had been punished ? but the priest replied, that he blasphemed ; that his father was immortal, but with regard to the murderers of Philip, they had all been extirpated ; adding, that he should be invincible, and afterwards take his seat among the deities. Having ended his sacrifice, he offered magnificent presents to the god, and did not forget the priests, who had been so faithful to his interest.

Swelled with the splendid title of the Son of Jupiter, and fancying himself raised above the human species, he returned from his journey as from a triumph. From that time, in all his letters, his orders, and decrees, he always wrote in the style following : **ALEXANDER, KING, SON OF JUPITER-AMMON** : In answer to which, Olympias, his mother, one day made a very witty remonstrance in a few words, by desiring him not to quarrel any longer with Juno.

Whilst Alexander prided himself in these chimeras, and tasted the great pleasure his vanity made him conceive from this pompous title, every one derided him in secret ; and some, who had not yet put on the yoke of abject flattery, ventured

m Varro apud Aul. Gel. l. xiii. c. 4.

* This passage in Quintus Curtius is pretty difficult, and is variously explained by interpreters.

to approach him upon that account; but they paid very dear for that liberty, as the sequel will show. Not satisfied with endeavouring to pass for the son of a god, and of being persuaded, in case this were possible, that he really was such, he himself would also pass for a god; till at last Providence, having acted that part of which she was pleased to make him the instrument, brought him to his end, and thereby levelled him with the rest of mortals.

Alexander, upon his return from the temple of Jupiter Ammon, being arrived at the Palus Mareotis, which was not far from the island of Pharos, made a visit to a new city, part of which was now built. He took the best methods possible to people it, inviting thither all sorts of persons, to whom he offered the most advantageous conditions. ⁿ He drew to it, among others, a considerable number of Jews, by allowing them very great privileges; for he not only left them the free exercise of their religion and laws, but put them on the same footing in every respect with the Macedonians, whom he settled there. From thence he went to Memphis, where he spent the winter.

Varro observes, that at the time this king built Alexandria, the use of papyrus, for writing, was found in Egypt; but this I shall mention elsewhere.

o During Alexander's stay in Memphis, he settled the affairs of Egypt, suffering none but Macedonians to command the troops. He divided the country into districts, over each of which he appointed a lieutenant, who received orders from himself only; not thinking it safe to intrust the general command of all the troops to one single person, in so large and populous a country. With regard to the civil government, he invested one Deloaspes with the whole power of it; for, being desirous that Egypt should still be governed by its ancient laws and customs, he was of opinion that a native of Egypt, to whom they must be familiar, was fitter for that office than any foreigner whatsoever.

To hasten the building of this new city, he appointed Cleomenes inspector over it, with orders for him to levy the tribute which Arabia was to pay. But this Cleomenes was a very wicked wretch, who abused his authority, and oppressed the people with the utmost barbarity.

ⁿ Joseph. contra Appian. ^o Arrian. l. iii. p. 108.—110. Q. Curt. l. iv. c. 8.

SECTION VIII.

ALEXANDER RESOLVES TO GO IN PURSUIT OF DARIUS.
THE FAMOUS BATTLE OF ARBELLA.

ALEXANDER having settled the affairs of Egypt p, set out from thence about spring-time, to march into the east against Darius. In his way through Palestine, he heard news which gave him great uneasiness. At his going into Egypt, he had appointed Andromachus, whom he highly esteemed, governor of Syria and Palestine. Andromachus coming to Samaria to settle some affairs in that country, the Samaritans mutinied, and setting fire to the house in which he was, burned him alive. It is very probable, that this was occasioned by the rage with which that people were fired, at their having been denied the same privileges that had been granted the Jews, their enemies. Alexander was highly exasperated against them for this cruel action, and accordingly he put to death all those who had any hand in it, banished the rest from the city of Samaria, supplying their room with a colony of Macedonians, and divided the rest of their lands among the Jews.

He made some stay in Tyre, to settle the various affairs of the countries he left behind him, and advanced towards new conquests.

¶ He was scarce set out, when an eunuch brought word, that Darius' consort was dead in child-bed. Hearing this, he returned back, and went into the tent of Sysigambis, whom he found bathed in tears, and lying on the ground, in the midst of the young princesses, who also were weeping; and near them the son of Darius, a child *, who was the more worthy of compassion, as he was left sensible to evils which concerned him more than any other. Alexander consoled them in so kind and tender a manner, as plainly showed that he himself was deeply and sincerely afflicted. He caused her funeral obsequies to be performed with the utmost splendour and magnificence. One of the eunuchs who superintended the chamber, and who had been taken with the princesses,

p Diod. l. xvii. p. 530.—736. Arrian. l. iii. p. 111.—128. Plut. in Alex. p. 681.—685. Quint. Curt. l. iv. c. 9.—16. Justin. l. ix. c. 12.—14.

q A. M. 3674. Ant. J. C. 330.

* Ob id ipsum miserabilis quod nondum sentiebat calamitatem, maxima ex parte ad ipsum redundantem.—Q. Curt.

fled from the camp, and ran to Darius, whom he informed of his consort's death. The Persian monarch was seized with the most violent affliction upon hearing this news; particularly as he supposed she would not be allowed the funeral ceremonies due to her exalted rank. But the eunuch undeceived him on this occasion, by telling him the honours which Alexander had paid his queen after her death, and the civilities he had always shown her in her lifetime. Darius, upon hearing these words, was fired with suspicions of so horrid a kind, that they did not leave him a moment's quiet.

Taking the eunuch aside, he spoke to him as follows. "If thou dost still acknowledge Darius for thy lord and sovereign, tell me, by the respect and veneration thou owest to that great splendour of * Mithres, which enlightens us, and to this hand which the king stretches out to thee; tell me, I say, whether, in bemoaning the death of Statira, I do not bewail the least of her evils; and whether, as she fell into the hands of a young monarch, she did not first lose her honour, and afterwards her life." The eunuch, throwing himself at Darius' feet, besought him not to think so injuriously of Alexander's virtue; nor dishonour his wife and sister after her death; and not deprive himself of the greatest consolation he could possibly have in his misfortunes, viz. to be firmly persuaded, that the prince who had triumphed over him, was superior to the frailties of other men; that he ought rather to admire Alexander, as he had given the Persian ladies much stronger proofs of his virtue and continence, than he had given the Persians themselves of his valour. After this, he confirmed all he had before said, by the most dreadful oaths and imprecations: and then gave him a particular account of what public fame had related, concerning the wisdom, temperance, and magnanimity of Alexander.

Darius, returning into the hall where his courtiers were assembled, and lifting up his hands to heaven, he broke into the following prayer: "Ye gods, who preside over the birth of men, and who dispose of kings and empires, grant that, after having raised the fortune of Persia from its dejected state, I may transmit it to my descendants with the same lustre in which I received it; in order that, after having triumphed over my enemies, I may acknowledge the favours which Alexander has shown in my calamity to per-

* The Persians worshipped the sun under the name of Mithres, and the moon under that of Mithra.

“ sons who, of all others, are most dear to me : or, in case
“ the time ordained by the fates is at last come, or that it
“ must necessarily happen, from the anger of the gods, or the
“ ordinary vicissitudes of human affairs, that the empire of
“ Persia must end ; grant, great gods, that none but Alex-
“ ander may ascend the throne of Cyrus.”

In the mean time, Alexander having set out upon his march, arrived with his whole army at Thapsacus, where he passed a bridge that lay across the Euphrates, and continued his journey towards the Tigris, where he expected to come up with the enemy. Darius had already made overtures of peace to him twice, but finding at last that there were no hopes of their concluding one, unless he resigned the whole empire to him, he therefore prepared himself again for battle. For this purpose, he assembled in Babylon an army half as numerous again as that of Issus, and marched it towards Nineveh : his forces covered all the plains of Mesopotamia. Advice being brought, that the enemy was not far off, he caused Satropates, colonel of the cavalry, to advance at the head of a thousand chosen horse ; and likewise gave six thousand to Mazæus, governor of the province ; all of whom were to prevent Alexander from crossing the river, and to lay waste the country through which that monarch was to pass : but he arrived too late.

Of all the rivers of the east, this is the most rapid ; and not only a great number of rivulets mix in its waves, but those also drag along great stones ; so that it is named Tigris, by reason of its prodigious rapidity, an arrow being so called in the Persian tongue. Alexander sounded those parts of the river which were fordable, and there the water, at the entrance, came up to the horses bellies, and in the middle to their breasts. Having drawn up his infantry in the form of a half-moon, and posted his cavalry on the two wings, they advanced to the current of the water with no great difficulty, carrying their arms over their heads. The king walked on foot among the infantry, and was the first who appeared on the opposite shore, where he pointed out with his hand the ford to the soldiers ; it not being possible for him to make them hear him. But it was with the greatest difficulty they kept themselves above water, because of the slipperiness of the stones, and the impetuosity of the stream. Such soldiers as not only carried their arms, but their clothes also, were much more fatigued ; for these being unable to go forward, were carried into whirlpools, unless they threw away their burdens. At the same time, the great number of clothes floating up and down beat away the burdens of several ; and

as every man endeavoured to catch at his own things, they annoyed one another more than the river did. It was to no purpose that the king commanded them, with a loud voice, to save nothing but their arms; and assured them, that he himself would compensate their other losses; for not one of them would listen to his admonitions or orders, so great was the noise and tumult. At last, they all passed over that part of the ford where the water was shallowest, and the stream less impetuous, recovering however but a small part of their baggage.

It is certain, that this army might easily have been cut to pieces, had they been opposed by a general who dared to conquer; that is, who made ever so little opposition to their passage. But Mazæus, who might easily have defeated them, had he come up when they were crossing the river in disorder and confusion, did not arrive till they were drawing up in battle-array. A like good fortune had always attended this prince hitherto, both when he passed the Granicus in sight of so prodigious a multitude of horse and foot, who waited his coming on the shore; and also in the rocks of Cilicia, when he found the passes and straits quite open and defenceless, where a small number of troops might have checked his progress. This * circumstance may lessen our surprise at that excess of boldness, which was his peculiar characteristic, and which perpetually prompted him to attempt blindly the greatest dangers; since, as he was always fortunate, he never had once room to suspect himself guilty of rashness.

The king having encamped two days near the river, commanded his soldiers to be ready for marching on the morrow; but about nine or ten in the evening, the moon first lost its light, and appeared afterwards quite sullied, and, as it were, tinctured with blood. Now, as this happened just before a great battle was going to be fought, the doubtful success of which filled the army with sufficient disquietude, they were first struck with a religious awe, and being afterwards seized with fear, they cried out, “ That heaven displayed the marks “ of its anger; and that they were dragged, against the will “ of it, to the extremities of the earth; that rivers opposed “ their passage; that the stars refused to lend their usual “ light; and that they could now see nothing but deserts and “ solitudes; that, merely to satisfy the ambition of one man, “ so many thousands shed their blood; and that for a man

* *Audacæ quoque, qua maxime viguit, ratio mundi potest; quia numquam in discrimen venit, an temere fecisset.*—Q. Curt.

“ who contemned his own country, disowned his father, and
“ pretended to pass for a god.”

These murmurs were rising to an open insurrection, when Alexander, whom nothing could intimidate, summoned the officers of the army into his tent, and commanded such of the Egyptian soothsayers as were best skilled in the knowledge of the stars, to declare what they thought of this phænomenon. These knew very well the natural causes of eclipses of the moon; but without entering into physical inquiries, they contented themselves with saying, that the sun was on the side of the Greeks, and the moon on that of the Persians; and that, whenever it suffered an eclipse, it always threatened the latter with some grievous calamity, whereof they mentioned several examples, all which they gave as true and indisputable. Superstition has a surprising ascendant over the minds of the vulgar. How headstrong and inconstant soever they may be, yet if they are once struck with a vain image of religion, they will sooner obey soothsayers than their leaders. The answer made by the Egyptians being dispersed among the soldiers, revived their hopes and courage.

The king, purposely to take advantage of this ardour, began his march after midnight. On his right hand lay the Tigris, and on his left the mountains called Gordyæi. At day-break the scouts, whom he had sent to view the enemy, brought word that Darius was marching towards him; upon which he immediately drew up his forces in battle-array, and set himself at their head. However, it was afterwards found, that they were only a detachment of a thousand horse that was going upon discoveries, and which soon retired to the main army. Nevertheless, news was brought the king, that Darius was now but an hundred and fifty stadia * from the place where they then were.

Not long before this, some letters had been intercepted, by which Darius solicited the Grecian soldiers either to kill or betray Alexander. Nothing can reflect so great an odium on the memory of this prince, as an attempt of that kind; an attempt so abject and black, and more than once repeated. Alexander was in no doubt with himself, whether it would be proper for him to read these letters in a full assembly, relying as much on the affection and fidelity of the Greeks, as on that of the Macedonians. But Parmenio dissuaded him from

* Seven or eight leagues.

it; declaring, that it would be dangerous even to awake such thoughts in the minds of soldiers; that one only was sufficient to strike the blow; and that avarice was capable of attempting the most enormous crimes. The king followed this prudent counsel, and ordered his army to march forward.

Although Darius had twice sued in vain for peace, and imagined he had nothing to trust to but his arms; nevertheless, being overcome by the advantageous circumstances which had been told him concerning Alexander's tenderness and humility towards his family, he dispatched ten of his chief relations, who were to offer him fresh conditions of peace, more advantageous than the former; and to thank him for the kind treatment he had given his family. Darius had, in the former proposals, given him up all the provinces as far as the river Halys; but now he added the several territories situated between the Hellespont and the Euphrates, that is, all he already possessed. Alexander made the following answer: "Tell your sovereign, that thanks, between persons "who make war against each other, are superfluous; and "that, in case I have behaved with clemency towards his "family, it was for my own sake, and not for his, in conse- "quence of my own inclination, and not to please him. To "insult the unhappy, is a thing to me unknown. I do not "attack either prisoners or women, and turn my rage against "such only as are armed for the fight. Did Darius sue for "peace in a sincere view, I then would debate on what is to "be done; but since he still continues, by letters and by mo- "ney, to spirit up my soldiers to betray me, and my friends "to murder me, I therefore am determined to pursue him with "the utmost vigour; and that not as an enemy, but a prisoner "and an assassin. It indeed becomes him, to offer to yield "up to me what I am already possessed of! Would he be "satisfied with ranking himself as second to me, without "pretending to be my equal, I might possibly then hear him. "Tell him, that the world will not permit two suns, nor "two sovereigns. Let him therefore chuse, either to sur- "render to-day, or fight me to-morrow, and not flatter him- "self with the hopes of obtaining better success than he has "hitherto had." Darius' proposals are certainly not reasonable; but then, is Alexander's answer much more so? In the former we behold a prince, who is not yet sensible of his own weakness, or, at least, who cannot prevail with himself to own it; and in the latter, we see a monarch quite intoxicat- ed with his good fortune, and carrying his pride to such an

excess of folly, as is not to be paralleled: “the world will not permit two suns, nor two sovereigns.” If this be greatness, and not pride, I do not know what can ever deserve the latter name. The ambassadors having got leave to depart, returned back, and told Darius, that he must now prepare for battle. The latter pitched his camp near a village called Gaugamela, and the river Bumela, in a plain at a considerable distance from Arbela. He had before levelled the spot which he pitched upon for the field of battle, in order that his chariots and cavalry might have full room to move in; recollecting, that his fighting in the straits of Cilicia had lost him the battle fought there. At the same time, he had prepared crows-feet * to annoy the enemy’s horse.

Alexander, upon hearing this news, continued four days in the place he then was, to rest his army, and surrounded his camp with trenches and palisades; for he was determined to leave all his baggage, and the useless soldiers in it, and march the remainder against the enemy, with no other equipage than the arms they carried. Accordingly, he set out about nine in the evening, in order to fight Darius at day-break; who, upon this advice, had drawn up his army in order of battle. Alexander also marched in battle-array; for both armies were within two or three leagues of each other. When he was arrived at the mountains, where he could discover the enemy’s whole army, he halted: and, having assembled his general officers, as well Macedonians as foreigners, he debated whether they should engage immediately, or pitch their camp in that place. The latter opinion being followed, because it was judged proper for them to view the field of battle, and the manner in which the enemy was drawn up, the army encamped in the same order in which it had marched; during which Alexander, at the head of his infantry, lightly armed, and his royal regiments, marched round the plain in which the battle was to be fought.

Being returned, he assembled his general officers a second time, and told them, that there was no occasion for his making a speech, because their courage and great actions were alone sufficient to excite them to glory: that he desired them only to represent to the soldiers, that they were not to fight, on this occasion, for Phoenicia or Egypt, but for all Asia, which would be possessed by him who should conquer; and

* Crows-feet is an instrument composed of iron spikes. Several of these are laid in the fields through which the cavalry is to march, in order that they may run into the horses feet.

that, after having gone through so many provinces, and left behind them so great a number of rivers and mountains, they could secure their retreat no otherwise than by gaining a complete victory. After this speech, he ordered them to take some repose.

It is said, that Parmenio advised him to attack the enemy in the night-time, alledging that they might easily be defeated, if fallen upon by surprise; and in the dark; but the king answered, so loud that all present might hear him, that it did not become Alexander to steal a victory, and therefore he was resolved to fight and conquer in broad day-light. This was a haughty, but, at the same time, a prudent answer; for it was running great hazard, to fall upon so numerous an army in the night-time, and in an unknown country. Darius, fearing he should be attacked at unawares, because he had not entrenched himself, obliged his soldiers to continue the whole night under arms, which proved of the highest prejudice to him in the engagement.

Alexander, who in the crisis of affairs used always to consult soothsayers, observing very exactly whatever they enjoined in order to obtain the favour of the gods, finding himself upon the point of fighting a battle, the success of which was to give empire to the conqueror, sent for Aristander, in whom he reposed the greatest confidence. He then shut himself up with the soothsayer, to make some secret sacrifices; and afterwards offered up victims to Fear *, which he doubtless did to prevent his army from being seized with dread at the sight of the formidable army of Darius. The soothsayer, dressed in his vestments, holding vervain, with his head veiled, first repeated the prayers which the king was to address to Jupiter, to Minerva, and to Victory. The whole being ended, Alexander went to bed, to repose himself the remaining part of the night. As he revolved in his mind, not without some emotion, the consequence of the battle which was upon the point of being fought, he could not sleep immediately. But his body being oppressed, in a manner, by the anxiety of his mind, he slept soundly the whole night, contrary to his usual custom; so that when his generals were assembled at day-break before his tent, to receive his orders, they were greatly surprised to find he was not awake; upon which they themselves commanded the soldiers to take some refreshment. Parmenio having at last awakened him, and

* We must read in Plutarch Φόβω, instead of Φοίβω

seeming surprised to find him in so calm and sweet a sleep, just as he was going to fight a battle, in which his whole fortune lay at stake: "How could it be possible," said Alexander, "for us not to be calm, since the enemy is coming to 'deliver himself into our hands?'" Immediately he took up his arms, mounted his horse, and rode up and down the ranks, exhorting the troops to behave gallantly, and, if possible, to surpass their ancient fame, and the glory they had hitherto acquired. Soldiers, on the day of battle, imagine they see the fate of the engagement painted in the face of their general. As for Alexander, he had never appeared so calm, so gay, nor so resolute. The serenity and security which they observed in him, were in a manner so many assurances of the victory.

There was a great difference between the two armies with respect to numbers, but much more so with regard to courage. That of Darius consisted at * least of six hundred thousand foot, and forty thousand horse; and the other of no more than forty thousand foot, and seven or eight thousand horse: but the latter was all fire and strength; whereas, on the side of the Persians, it was a prodigious assemblage of men, not of soldiers †; an empty phantom rather than a real army.

Both sides were disposed in very near the same array. The forces were drawn up in two lines, the cavalry on the two wings, and the infantry in the middle; the one and the other being under the particular conduct of the chiefs of each of the different nations that composed them; and commanded, in general, by the principal crown-officers. The front of the battle, under Darius, was covered with two hundred chariots, armed with scythes, and with fifteen elephants; that king taking his post in the centre of the first line. Besides the guards, which were the flower of his forces, he also had fortified himself with the Grecian infantry, whom he had drawn up near his person; believing this body only capable of opposing the Macedonian phalanx. As his army spread over a much greater space of ground than that of the enemy, he intended to surround and to charge them at one and the same time, both in front and flank.

But Alexander had guarded against this, by giving orders to the commanders of the second line, that in case they should be charged behind, to face about to that side; or else to draw

* According to several historians, it amounted to upwards of a million of men.

† *Nomina verius quam auxilia.* — *Q. Curt.*

up their troops in form of a gibbet, and cover the wings, in case the enemy should charge them in flank. He had posted, in the front of his first line, the greatest part of his bowmen, slingers, hurlers of javelins, in order that these might make head against the chariots armed with scythes; and frighten the horses, by discharging at them a shower of arrows, javelins, and stones. Those who led on the wings, were ordered to extend them as wide as possible; but in such a manner as not to weaken the main body. As for the baggage and the captives, among whom were Darius' mother and children, they were left in the camp under a small guard. Parmenio commanded, as he had always done, the left wing, and Alexander the right.

When the two armies came in view, Alexander, who had been shown the several places where the crows-feet were hid, extended more and more towards the right to avoid them; and the Persians advanced forward in proportion. Darins, being afraid lest the Macedonians should draw him from the spot of ground he had levelled, and carry him into another that was rough and uneven, commanded the cavalry in his left wing, which spread much farther than that of the enemy's right, to march right forward, and wheel about upon the Macedonians in flank, to prevent them from extending their troops farther. Then Alexander dispatched against them the body of horse in his service commanded by Menidas; but, as these were not able to make head against the enemy, because of their prodigious numbers, he reinforced them with the Pæonians, whom Aretas commanded, and with the foreign cavalry *. Besides the advantage of numbers, they had that also of their coats of mail, which secured themselves and their horses much more. Alexander's cavalry was prodigiously annoyed. However, they marched to the charge with great bravery, and at last put them to flight.

Upon this the Persians opposed the chariots armed with scythes against the Macedonian phalanx, in order to break it, but with little success. The noise which the soldiers, who were slightly armed, made by striking their swords against their bucklers, and the arrows which flew on all sides, frightened the horses, and made a great number of them turn back against their own troops. Others, laying hold of the horses' bridles, pulled the riders down, and cut them to pieces. Part of the chariots drove between the battalions, which opened

* Some relate, that the Barbarians gave way at first, but soon returned to the charge.

to make way for them, as they had been ordered to do, by which means they did little or no execution.

Alexander, seeing Darius set his whole army in motion in order to charge him, employed a stratagem to encourage his soldiers. When the battle was at the hottest, and the Macedonians were in the greatest danger, Aristander, the soothsayer, clothed in his white robes, holding a branch of laurel in his hand, advances among the combatants as he had been instructed by the king; and, crying that he saw an eagle hovering over Alexander's head, a sure omen of victory, he showed, with his finger, the pretended bird to the soldiers; who, relying upon the sincerity of the soothsayer, fancied they also saw it; and thereupon renewed the attack with greater cheerfulness and ardour than ever. Then the king perceiving that Aretas, after having charged the cavalry, and put them into disorder, upon their advancing to surround his right wing, had begun to break the foremost ranks of the main body of the Barbarian army; he marched after Aretas, with the flower of his troops, when he quite broke the enemy's left wing, which had already begun to give way: and without pursuing the forces which he had thrown into disorder, he wheeled to the left, in order to fall upon the body in which Darius had posted himself. The presence of the two kings inspired both sides with new vigour. Darius was mounted on a chariot, and Alexander on horseback; both surrounded with their bravest officers and soldiers, whose only endeavour was to save the lives of their respective princes, at the hazard of their own. The battle was obstinate and bloody. Alexander having wounded Darius' equerry with a javelin, the Persians, as well as the Macedonians, imagined that the king was killed; upon which the former breaking aloud into the most dismal sounds, the whole army were seized with the greatest consternation. The relations of Darius, who were at his left hand, fled away with the guards, and so abandoned the chariot; but those who were at his right, took him into the centre of their body. Historians relate, that this prince having drawn his scimitar, reflected whether he ought not to lay violent hands upon himself, rather than fly in an ignominious manner: But perceiving from his chariot that his soldiers still fought, he was ashamed to forsake them; and, as he was divided between hope and despair, the Persians retired insensibly, and thinned their ranks; when it could no longer be called a battle, but a slaughter. Then Darius, turning about his chariot, fled with the rest; and the conqueror was now wholly employed in pursuing him.

Whilst all this was doing in the right wing of the Macedonians, where the victory was not doubtful, the left wing, commanded by Parmenio, was in great danger. A detachment of the Persian, Indian, and Parthian horse, which were the best in all the Persian army, having broke through the infantry on the left, advanced to the very baggage. The moment the captives saw them arrive in the camp, they armed themselves with every thing that came first to hand, and, reinforcing their cavalry, rushed upon the Macedonians, who were now charged both before and behind. They, at the same time, told Sysigambis that Darius had won the battle, for this they believed; that the whole baggage was plundered, and that she was now going to recover her liberty. But this princess, who was a woman of great wisdom, though this news affected her in the strongest manner, could not easily give credit to it; and being unwilling to exasperate, by too hasty a joy, a conqueror who had treated her with so much humanity, she did not discover the least emotion; did not once change countenance, nor let drop a single word; but in her usual posture, calmly waited till the event should denounce her fate.

Parmenio, upon the first report of this attack, had dispatched a messenger to Alexander, to acquaint him with the danger to which the camp was exposed, and to receive his orders. "Above all things," said the prince, "let him not weaken his main body; let him not mind the baggage, but apply himself wholly to the engagement; for victory will not only restore us our own possessions, but also give those of the enemy into our hands." The general officers, who commanded the infantry which formed the centre of the second line, seeing the enemy were going to make themselves masters of the camp and baggage, made a half-turn to the right, in obedience to the orders which had been given, and fell upon the Persians behind, many of whom were cut to pieces, and the rest obliged to retire; but as these were horse, the Macedonian foot could not follow them.

Soon after, Parmenio himself was exposed to much greater peril. Mazaeus, having rushed upon him with all his cavalry, charged the Macedonians in flank, and began to surround them. Immediately Parmenio sent Alexander advice of the danger he was in; declaring, that in case he were not immediately succoured, it would be impossible for him to keep his soldiers together. The prince was actually pursuing Darius, and, fancying he was almost come up with him, rode with the utmost speed. He flattered himself, that he should absolutely put an

end to the war, in case he could but seize his person. But upon this news, he turned about, in order to succour his left wing ; shuddering with rage, to see his prey and victory torn in this manner from him, and complaining against fortune, for having favoured Darius more in his flight, than himself in the pursuit of that monarch.

Alexander, in his march, met the enemy's horse who had plundered the baggage ; all which were returning in good order, and retiring back, not as soldiers who had been defeated, but almost as if they had gained the victory. And now the battle became more obstinate than before ; for the Barbarians marching close in columns, not in order of battle, but that of a march, it was very difficult to break through them ; and they did not amuse themselves with throwing javelins, nor with wheeling about, according to their usual custom ; but man engaging against man, each did all that lay in his power to unhorse his enemy. Alexander lost threescore of his guards in this attack. Hephaestion, Coenus, and Menidas, were wounded in it ; however, he triumphed on this occasion, and all the Barbarians were cut to pieces, except such as forced their way through his squadrons.

During this, news had been brought Mazæus that Darius was defeated : upon which, being greatly alarmed and dejected by the ill success of that monarch, though the advantage was entirely on his side, he ceased to charge the enemy, who were now in disorder, so briskly as before. Parmenio could not conceive how it came to pass, that the battle, which before was carried on so warmly, should slacken on a sudden : However, like an able commander, who seizes every advantage, and who employs his utmost endeavours to inspire his soldiers with fresh vigour, he observed to them, that the terror which spread throughout the whole army, was the forerunner of their defeat ; and fired them with the notion how glorious it would be for them to put the last hand to the victory. Upon his exhortations, they recovered their former hopes and bravery ; when, transformed into other men, they gave their horses the rein, and charged the enemy with so much fury as threw them into the greatest disorder, and obliged them to fly. Alexander came up that instant ; and, overjoyed to find the scale turned in his favour, and the enemy entirely defeated, he renewed, in concert with Parmenio, the pursuit of Darius. He rode as far as Arbela, where he fancied he should come up with that monarch and all his baggage ; but Darius had only just passed by it, and left his treasure a prey to the enemy, with his bow and shield.

Such was the success of this famous battle, which gave empire to the conqueror. According to Arrian, the Persians lost three hundred thousand men, besides those who were taken prisoners; which, at least, is a proof that the loss was very great on their side. That of Alexander was very inconsiderable, he not losing, according to the last-mentioned author, twelve hundred men, most of whom were horse. ^s This engagement was fought in the month of * October, about the same time, two years before, that the battle of Issus was fought. As Gaugamela, in Assyria, the spot where the two armies engaged, was a small place of very little note, this was called the battle of Arbela, that city being nearest to the field of battle.

SECTION IX.

ALEXANDER TAKES ARBELA, BABYLON, SUSA, PERSEPOLIS;
AND FINDS IMMENSE RICHES IN THOSE CITIES.

ALEXANDER's first care, after his obtaining the victory, was to offer magnificent sacrifices to the gods, by way of thanksgiving. He afterwards rewarded such as had signalized themselves remarkably in battle; bestowed riches upon them with a very liberal hand, and gave to each of them houses, employments, and governments. But, being desirous of expressing more particularly his gratitude to the Greeks, for having appointed him generalissimo against the Persians, he gave orders for abolishing the several tyrannical institutions that had started up in Greece; that the cities should be restored to their liberties, and all their rights and privileges. He wrote particularly to the Plataeans, declaring that it was his desire their city should be rebuilt, to reward the zeal and bravery by which their ancestors had distinguished themselves, in defending the common liberties of Greece. ^u He also sent part of the spoils to the people of Crotona in Italy; to honour, though so many years after, the good-will and courage of Phayllus the champion, a native of their country, who (whilst war was carrying on between the Medes, and when all the rest of the Greeks that were settled in Italy had abandoned the true Grecians, imagining they were entirely undone) fitted out a

^s A. M. 3674. Ant. J. C. 330.

* The month called by the Greeks Boedromion, answers partly to our month of October.

^t Diod. l. xvii. p. 538.—540. Arrian. l. iii. p. 127.—133. Plut. in Alex. p. 685.—688. Quint. Curt. l. v. c. 1.—7. Justin. l. ix. c. 14.

^u Herodotus relates this history in very few words, l. vii. c. 47.

galley at his own expence, and sailed to Salamis, to partake of the danger to which his countrymen were at that time exposed. So great a friend and encourager, says Plutarch, was Alexander, of every kind of virtue ; considering himself, says the same author, obliged in a manner to perpetuate the remembrance of all great actions ; to give immortality to merit, and propose them to posterity as so many models for their imitation.

Darius, after his defeat, having but very few attendants, had rode towards the river Lycus. After crossing it, several advised him to break down the bridges, because the enemy pursued him. But he made this generous answer, * “ That life was not so dear to him, as to make him desire to pre-serve it by the destruction of so many thousands of his sub-jects and faithful allies, who by that means would be deli-vered up to the mercy of the enemy ; that they had as much right to pass over this bridge as their sovereign, and conse-quently that it ought to be as open to them.” After riding a great number of leagues full speed, he arrived at midnight at Arbela. From thence he fled towards Media, over the Armenian mountains, followed by a great number of the nobility, and a few of his guards. The reason of his going that way was, his supposing that Alexander would proceed towards Babylon and Susa, there to enjoy the fruits of his victory ; besides, a numerous army could not pursue him by this road ; whereas in the other, horses and chariots might advance with great ease ; not to mention that the soil was very fruitful.

A few days after Arbela surrendered to Alexander, who found in it a great quantity of furniture belonging to the crown, rich clothes, and other precious moveables, with four thousand talents, about seven hundred and seventy-five thousand pounds, and all the riches of the army, which Darius had left there at his setting out against Alexander, as was before observed. But he was soon obliged to leave that place, because of the diseases that spread in his camp, occasioned by the infection of the dead bodies which covered all the field of battle. This prince advanced therefore over the plains towards Babylon, and, after four days march, arrived at Mem-nis, where, in a cave, is seen the celebrated fountain which throws out so vast a quantity of bitumen, that, we are told, it was used as cement in building the walls of Babylon.

But what Alexander admired most, was a great gulf, whence streamed perpetually rivulets of fire, as from an inexhaustible

* Non ita se saluti sue velle consultum, ut tot millia sociorum hosti objiciat ; debere et aliis fugae viam patere, quæ patuerit sibi.---Justin.

spring ; and a flood of naphtha, which overflowing, from the prodigious quantities of it, formed a great lake pretty near the gulf. This naphtha is exactly like bitumen, but has one quality more, viz. its catching fire so very suddenly, that, before it touches a flame, it takes fire merely from the light that surrounds the flame, and sets the air between both on fire. The Barbarians, being desirous of showing the king the strength and subtilty of this combustible substance, scattered several drops of it up and down after his arrival in Babylon, in that street which went up to the house he had chosen for his residence. After this, going to the other end of the street, they brought torches near the places where those drops were fallen, for it was night ; and the drops which were nighest the torches taking fire on a sudden, the flame ran in an instant to the other end ; by which means the whole street seemed in one general conflagration.

When Alexander was got near Babylon, Mazæus, who had retired thither after the battle of Arbela, surrendered himself, with his children, who were grown up, and gave the city into his hands. The king was very well pleased with his arrival ; for he would have met with great difficulties, in besieging a city of such importance, and so well provided with every thing. Besides his being a person of great quality, and very brave, he had also acquired great honour in the last battle ; and others might have been prompted, from the example he set them, to imitate him. Alexander entered the city at the head of his whole army, as if he had been marching to a battle. The walls of Babylon were lined with people, notwithstanding the greatest part of the citizens were gone out before, from the impatient desire they had to see their new sovereign, whose renown had far outstripped his march. Bagophanes, governor of the fortress, and guardian of the treasure, unwilling to discover less zeal than Mazæus, strewed the streets with flowers, and raised on both sides of the way silver altars, which smoked not only with frankincense, but the most fragrant perfumes of every kind. Last of all came the presents which were to be made the king, viz. herds of cattle, and a great number of horses ; as also lions and panthers, which were carried in cages. After these the magi walked, singing hymns after the manner of their country ; then the Chaldeans, accompanied by the Babylonish soothsayers and musicians. It was customary for the latter to sing the praises of their king to their instruments ; and the Chaldeans to observe the motion of the planets, and the vicissitude of seasons.

The rear was brought up by the Babylonish cavalry, which, both men and horses, were so sumptuous, that imagination can scarce reach their magnificence. The king caused the people to walk after his infantry, and himself, surrounded with his guards, and seated on a chariot, entered the city; and from thence rode to the palace, as in a kind of triumph. The next day he took a view of all Darius' money and moveables. Of the monies he found in Babylon, he gave, by way of extraordinary recompence, to each Macedonian horseman six minæ, about fifteen pounds; to each mercenary horseman two minæ, about five pounds; to every Macedonian foot soldier two minæ; and to every one of the rest two months of their ordinary pay. He gave orders, pursuant to the advice of the magi, with whom he had several conferences, for the re-building the temples which Xerxes had demolished; and, among others, that of Belus, who was in greater veneration at Babylon than any other deity. He gave the government of the province to Mazaeus, and the command of the forces he left there to Apollodorus of Amphipolis.

Alexander, in the midst of the hurry and tumult of war, still preserved a love for the sciences. He used often to converse with the Chaldeans, who had always applied themselves to the study of astronomy from its origin, and gained great fame by their knowledge in it. * They presented him with astronomical observations taken by their predecessors during the space of one thousand nine hundred and three years, which consequently went as far backward as the age of Nimrod. These were sent by Callisthenes, who accompanied Alexander, to Aristotle.

The king resided longer in Babylon, than he had done in any other city, which was of great prejudice to the discipline of his forces. The people, even from a religious motive, abandoned themselves to pleasures, to voluptuousness, and the most infamous excesses; nor did ladies, though of the highest quality, observe any decorum, or show the least reserve in their immoral actions, but gloried therein, so far from endeavouring to conceal them, or blushing at their enormity. It must be confessed, that this army of soldiers, which had triumphed over Asia, after having thus enervated themselves, and rioted, as it were, in the sloth and luxury of the city of Babylon, for thirty-four days together, would have been scarce able to complete their exploits, had they been opposed by an enemy. But as they were reinforced from time to time, these

* Porphy. apud Simplic. in Lib. ii. de Cœlo.

irregularities were not so visible; for Amyntas brought six thousand foot and five hundred Macedonian horse, which were sent by Antipater; and six hundred Thracian horses, with three thousand five hundred foot of the same nation; besides four thousand mercenaries from Peloponnesus, with near four hundred horses.

The above-mentioned Amyntas had also brought the king fifty Macedonian youths, sons to noblemen of the highest quality in the country, to serve as his guards. The youths in question waited upon him at table, brought him his horses when in the field, attended upon him in parties of hunting, and kept guard at the door of his apartment by turns: And these were the first steps to the highest employments both in the army and the state.

After Alexander had left Babylon, he entered the province of Sitacena, the soil of which is very fruitful, and productive of every thing valuable, which made him continue the longer in it. But lest indolence should enervate the courage of his soldiers, he proposed prizes for such of them as should exert the greatest bravery; and appointed, as judges of the actions of those who should dispute this honour, persons, who themselves had been eye-witnesses of the proofs of bravery which each soldier had given in the former battles; for on these only the prizes were to be bestowed. To each of the eight men who were pronounced most valiant, he gave a regiment consisting of a thousand men; whence those officers were called Chiliarchi. This was the first time that regiments were composed of so great a number of soldiers, consisting before but of five hundred, and had not yet been the reward of valour. The soldiers ran in crowds to view this illustrious sight, not only as eye-witnesses of the actions of all, but as judges over the judges themselves; because they might perceive, very easily, whether rewards were bestowed on merit, or merely by favour; a circumstance in which soldiers can never be imposed upon. The prizes seem to have been distributed with the utmost equity and justice.

He likewise made several very advantageous changes in military discipline, as established by his predecessors; for he formed one single body of his whole cavalry, without showing any regard to the difference of nations, and appointed such officers to command them as they themselves thought fit to nominate: whereas before, the horsemen of every nation used to fight under their own particular standard, and were commanded by a colonel of that country. The trumpet's sound

used to be the signal for the march ; but as it very frequently could not be well heard, because of the great noise that is made in decamping, he gave orders that a standard should be set up over his tent, which might be seen by his whole army. He also appointed fire to be the signal in the night-time, and smoke in the day.

Alexander marched afterwards towards Susa, where he arrived twenty days after leaving Babylon. As he came near it, Abutites, governor of the province, sent his son to meet him, with a promise to surrender the city into his hands ; whether he was prompted to this from his own inclination, or did it in obedience to the orders of Darius, to amuse Alexander with the hopes of plunder, the king gave this young nobleman a very gracious reception, who attended him as far as the river Choaspes, the waters of which are so famous, upon account of their exquisite taste. * The kings of Persia never drank of any other ; and whithersoever they went, a quantity of it, after having been put over the fire, was always carried after them in silver vases. It was here Abutites came to wait upon him, bringing presents worthy of a king ; among which were dromedaries of incredible swiftness, and twelve elephants which Darius had sent for from India. Being come into the city, he took immense sums out of the treasury, with fifty thousand * talents of silver in ore and ingots, besides moveables, and a thousand other things of infinite value. This wealth was the produce of the exactions imposed for several centuries upon the common people, from whose sweat and poverty immense revenues were raised. The Persian monarchs fancied they had amassed them for their children and posterity ; but, in one hour, they fell into the hands of a foreign king, who was able to make a right use of them ; for Alexander seemed to be merely the guardian or trustee of the immense riches which he found hoarded up in Persia ; and applied them to no other use, than the rewarding of merit and courage.

Among other things, there was found † five thousand quintals of Hermione ‡ purple, the finest in the world, which had been treasuring up there during the space of one hundred and

x Herod. lib. i. c. 188.

* About seven millions five hundred thousand pounds.

† The reader will have an idea of the prodigious value of this when he is told, that this purple was sold at the rate of an hundred livres a pound. The quintal is an hundred weight of Paris.

‡ Hermione was a city of Argolis, where the best purple was dyed.

ninety years ; notwithstanding which, its beauty and lustre was no ways diminished.

Here likewise was found part of the rarities which Xerxes had brought from Greece ; and, among others, the brazen statues of Harmodius and Aristogiton, which Alexander sent afterwards to Athens, where they were standing in * Arrian's time.

The king, being resolved to march into Persia, appointed Archelaus governor of the city of Susa, with a garrison of three thousand men ; Mazarus, one of the Lords of his court, was made governor of the citadel, with a thousand Macedonian soldiers, who could not follow him by reason of their great age. He gave the government of Susiana to Abutites.

He left Darius' mother and children in Susa, and having received from Macedonia a great quantity of purple stuffs and rich habits, made after the fashion of the country, he presented them to Sysigambis, together with the artificers who had wrought them ; for he paid her every kind of honour, and loved her as tenderly as if she had been his mother. He likewise commanded the messengers to tell her, that in case she fancied those stuffs, she might make her grandchildren learn the art of weaving them by way of amusement ; and to give them as presents to whomsoever they should think proper. At these words, the tears which fell from her eyes showed but too evidently how greatly she was displeased with these gifts ; the working in wool being considered by the Persian women as the highest ignominy. Those who carried these presents, having told the king that Sysigambis was very much dissatisfied, he thought himself obliged to make an apology for what he had done, and administer some consolation to her. Accordingly, he paid her a visit, when he spoke thus : “ Mother, the “ stuff in which you see me clothed, was not only a gift of “ my sisters, but wrought by their fingers. Hence I beg you “ to believe, that the custom of my country misled me ; and “ do not consider that as an insult, which was owing entirely “ to ignorance. I believe I have not, as yet, done any thing “ which I knew interfered with your manners and customs. “ I was told, that among the Persians, it is a sort of crime “ for a son to seat himself in his mother's presence, without “ first obtaining her leave. You are sensible how cautious “ I have always been in this particular ; and that I never sat “ down, till you had first laid your commands upon me to do

* What Arrian ascribes here to Alexander in regard to the statues of Harmodius and Aristogiton, is attributed by other historians to other princes.

“ so. And every time that you was going to fall prostrate
 “ before me, I only ask you, whether I would suffer it? As
 “ the highest testimony of the veneration I have for you, I
 “ always called you by the tender name of mother, though
 “ this belongs properly to Olympias only, to whom I owe my
 “ birth.”

What I have just now related, may suggest two reflections, both which, in my opinion, are very natural, and at the same time of the utmost importance.

First, we see to how great a height the Persians, so vain and haughty in other respects, carried the veneration they showed their parents. The reader, doubtless, remembers, that Cyrus the Great, in the midst of his conquests, and the most exalted pitch to which fortune had raised him, would not accept of the advantageous offer made him by Cyaxares, his uncle, viz. of giving him his daughter in marriage, and Media for her dowry, till he had first advised with his father and mother, and obtained their consent. History informs us here, that among the Persians * a son never dared to seat himself before his mother, till he had first obtained her leave; and that to do otherwise was considered as a crime. Alas! how widely do our manners differ from so excellent an institution!

Secondly, I discover in the same relation, several valuable footsteps of that happy simplicity which prevailed in ancient times, when it was the custom for ladies, though of the greatest distinction, to employ themselves in useful, and sometimes laborious works. Every one knows what is told us in scripture to this purpose concerning Rebecca, Rachel, and several others. We read in Homer, of princesses drawing themselves water from springs; and washing, with their own hands, the linen of their respective families. † Here the sisters of Alexander, that is, the daughters of a powerful prince, are employed in making clothes for their brother. The celebrated Lucretia used to spin in the midst of her female attendants. Augustus, who was sovereign of the world, wore, for several years together, no other clothes but what his wife and sister made him. It was a custom in the northern parts of the world, not many years since, for the princess who then sat upon the throne, to prepare several of the dishes at every meal. In a word, needle-work, the care of domestic affairs,

* Scio apud vos, filium in conspectu matris nefas esse considere, nisi cum illa permisit.---Q. Curt.

† Mater, hanc vestem, quam indutus sum, sororum non solum donum, sed etiam opus vides.---Q. Curt.

a serious and retired life, is the proper function of women; and for this they were designed by Providence. The depravity of the age has indeed affixed to these customs, which are very near as old as the creation, an idea of meanness and contempt: But then, what has it substituted in the room of the harsh and vigorous exercises which a just education enabled the sex to undertake, to that laborious and useful life which was spent at home? A soft indolence, a stupid idleness, frivolous conversations, vain amusements, a strong passion for public shows, and a frantic love of gaming. Let us compare these two characters, and then pronounce which of them may justly boast its being founded on good sense, solid judgement, and a taste for truth and nature. It must, nevertheless, be confessed, in honour of the fair sex and of our nation, that several ladies among us, and those of the highest quality, make it not only a duty, but a pleasure, to employ themselves in needle-works, not of a trifling, but of the most useful kind, and to make part of their furniture with their own hands. I also might add, that great numbers of these adorn their minds with agreeable, and, at the same time, serious and useful studies.

Alexander, having taken his leave of Sysigambis, who now was extremely well satisfied, arrived on the banks of a river, called by the inhabitants Pasi-Tigris *. Having crossed it with nine thousand foot, and three thousand horse, consisting of Agrians, as well as of Grecian mercenaries, and a reinforcement of three thousand Thracians, he entered the country of the Uxii. This region lies near Susa, and extends to the frontiers of Persia; a narrow pass only lying between it and Susiana. Madathes commanded this province. † This man was not a time-server, nor a follower of fortune; but faithful to his sovereign, he resolved to hold out to the last extremity; and for this purpose, had withdrawn into his own city, which stood in the midst of craggy rocks, and was surrounded with precipices. Having been forced from thence, he retired into the citadel, whence the besieged sent thirty deputies to Alexander, to sue for quarter; which they obtained at last by the intercession of Sysigambis. The king not only pardoned Madathes, who was a near relation of that princess, but likewise set all the captives, and those who had surrendered themselves, at liberty; permitted them to enjoy their several rights and privileges; would not suffer the city to be plundered, but let

* This river differs from the Tigris.

† Haud sane temporum homo: quippe ultima pro fide experiri decreverat.—Q. Curt.

them plough their lands without paying any tax or tribute. Could Sysigambis have possibly obtained more from her own son on this occasion, had he been the victor?

The Uxii being subdued, Alexander gave part of his army to Parmenio, and commanded him to march it through the plain; whilst himself, at the head of his light-armed troops, crossed the mountains, which extend as far as Persia. The fifth day he arrived at the pass of Susa. Ariobarzanes, with four thousand foot and seven hundred horse, had taken possession of those rocks, which are craggy on all sides, and posted the Barbarians at the summit, out of the reach of arrows. He also had built a wall in those passes, and encamped his forces under it. As soon as Alexander advanced, in order to attack him, the Barbarians rolled, from the top of the mountains, stones of a prodigious size, which falling from rock to rock, rushed forward with the greater violence, and at once crushed to pieces whole bands of soldiers. The king, being very much terrified at this sight, commanded a retreat to be sounded; and it was with the utmost grief he saw himself not only stopped at this pass, but deprived of all hopes of ever being able to force it.

Whilst he was revolving these gloomy thoughts, a Grecian prisoner surrendered himself to Alexander, with a promise to conduct him to the top of the mountain by another way. The king accepted of the offer, when, leaving the superintendence of the camp and of the army to Craterus, he commanded him to cause a great number of fires to be lighted, in order that the Barbarians might thereby be more strongly induced to believe that Alexander was there in person. After this, taking some chosen troops with him, he set out, going through all the by-ways, as his guide directed. But, besides that these paths were very craggy, and the rocks so slippery that their feet could scarce stand upon them, the soldiers were also very much distressed by the snows which the winds had brought together, and which were so high, that the men fell into them, as into so many ditches; and when their comrades endeavoured to draw them out, they themselves would likewise sink into them; not to mention, that their fears were greatly increased by the horrors of the night, by their being in an unknown country, and conducted by a guide whose fidelity was doubtful. After having gone through a great number of difficulties and dangers, they at last got to the top of the mountain. Then going down, they discovered the enemy's corps-de-garde, and appeared behind them, sword in hand, at a time when they

least expected it. Such as made the least defence, who were but few, were cut to pieces ; by which means, the cries of the dying on one side, and on the other the fright of those who were flying to their main body, spread so great a terror, that they fled, without striking a blow. At this noise, Craterus advanced, as Alexander had commanded at his going away, and seized the pass, which till then had resisted his attacks ; and, at the same time, Philotas advanced forwards by another way, with Amyntas, Cœnus, and Polysperchon, and broke quite through the Barbarians, who now were attacked on every side. The greatest part of them were cut to pieces, and those who fled fell into precipices. Ariobarzanes, with part of the cavalry, escaped by flying over the mountains.

Alexander, from an effect of the good fortune which constantly attended him in all his undertakings, having extricated himself happily out of the danger to which he was so lately exposed, marched immediately towards Persia. Being on the road, he received letters from Tiridates, governor of Persepolis, which informed him, that the inhabitants of that city, upon the report of his advancing towards him, were determined to plunder Darius' treasures, with which he was intrusted, and therefore that it was necessary for him to make all the haste imaginable to seize them himself ; that he had only the * Araxes to cross, after which the road was smooth and easy. Alexander, upon this news, leaving his infantry behind, marched the whole night at the head of his cavalry, who were very much harassed by the length and swiftness of this march, and passed the Araxes on a bridge, which, by his order, had been built some days before.

But, as he drew near the city, he perceived a large body of men, who exhibited a memorable example of the greatest misery. These were about four thousand Greeks, very far advanced in years, who, having been made prisoners of war, had suffered all the torments which the Persian tyranny could inflict. The hands of some had been cut off, the feet of others ; and others again had lost their noses and ears : After which, having impressed, by fire, barbarous characters on their faces, they had the inhumanity to keep them as so many laughingstocks, with which they sported perpetually. They appeared like so many shadows, rather than like men ; speech being almost the only thing by which they were known to be such. Alexander could not refrain from tears at this sight ; and, as

* This is not the same river with that in Armenia.

they unanimously besought him to commiserate their condition, he bid them, with the utmost tenderness, not to despond, and assured them, that they should again see their wives and country. This proposal, which one might suppose should naturally have filled them with joy, perplexed them very much, various opinions arising on that occasion. "How will it be possible," said some of them, "for us to appear publicly before all "Greece, in the dreadful condition to which we are reduced ; "a condition still more shameful than dissatisfactory ? The "best way to bear misery is to conceal it ; and no country is "so sweet to the wretched as solitude, and an oblivion of "their past calamities. Besides, how will it be possible for "us to undertake so long a journey ? Driven to a great dis- "tance from Europe, banished to the most remote parts of "the East, worn out with age, and most of our limbs maimed, "can we pretend to undergo fatigues which have even wea- "ried a triumphant army ? The only thing that now remains "for us, is to hide our misery, and to end our days among "those who are already so accustomed to our misfortunes." Others, in whom the love of their country extinguished all other sentiments, represented, "that the gods offered them "what they should not even have dared to wish, viz. their "country, their wives, their children, and all those things for "whose sake men are fond of life, and despise death : That "they had long enough borne the sad yoke of slavery ; and "that nothing happier could present itself, than their being "indulged the bliss of going at last to breathe their native air, "to resume their ancient manners, laws, and sacrifices, and to "die in presence of their wives and children."

However, the former opinion prevailed ; and accordingly they besought the king to permit them to continue in a country where they had spent so many years. He granted their request, and presented each of them ^{*}three thousand drachms; five men's suits of clothes, and the same number for women ; two couple of oxen to plough their lands, and corn to sow them. He commanded the governor of the province not to suffer them to be molested in any manner, and ordered that they should be free from taxes and tributes of every kind. Such behaviour as this was truly royal. It was, indeed, impossible for Alexander to restore them the limbs of which the Persians had so cruelly deprived them ; but then he restored them to liberty, tranquillity, and abundance. Thrice happy

^{*} About one hundred and fifty pounds.

those princes, who are affected with the pleasure which arises from the doing of good actions, and who melt with pity for the unfortunate !

Alexander, having called together, the next day, the generals of his army, represented to them, “ that no city in the world had ever been more fatal to the Greeks than Persepolis, the ancient residence of the Persian monarchs, and the capital of their empire : For that it was from thence all those mighty armies poured, which had overflowed Greece ; and whence Darius, and afterwards Xerxes, had carried the firebrand of the most accursed war, which had laid waste all Europe ; and therefore it was incumbent on them to revenge the manes of their ancestors.” It was already abandoned by the Persians, who all fled separately as fear drove them. Alexander entered it with his phalanx, when the victorious soldiers soon met with riches sufficient to satiate their avarice, and immediately cut to pieces all those who still remained in the city. However, the king soon put an end to the massacre, and published an order, by which his soldiers were forbid to violate the chastity of the women. Alexander had before possessed himself, either by force or capitulation, of a great number of incredibly rich cities ; but all this was a trifle compared to the treasures he found here. The Barbarians had laid up at Persepolis, as in a storehouse, all the wealth of Persia. Gold and silver were never seen here but in heaps ; not to mention the clothes and furniture of inestimable value ; for this was the seat of luxury. There were found in the treasury one hundred and twenty thousand talents *, which were designed to defray the expence of the war. To this prodigious sum he added † six thousand talents, taken from Pasagardar. This was a city which Cyrus had built, wherein the kings of Persia used to be crowned.

During Alexander's stay in Persepolis, a little before he set out upon his march against Darius, he entertained his friends at a banquet, at which the guests drank to excess. Among the women, who were admitted to it masked, was Thais the courtezan, a native of Attica, and at that time mistress to Ptolemy, who afterwards was king of Egypt. About the end of the feast, during which she had studiously endeavoured to praise the king in the most artful and delicate manner (a stratagem too often practised by women of that character), she

* About eighteen millions Sterling.

† About nine hundred thousand pounds.

said with a gay tone of voice, “ That it would be matter of “ inexpressible joy to her, were she permitted, masked as she “ then was, and in order to end this festival nobly, to burn “ the magnificent palace of Xerxes, who had burned Athens ; “ and set it on fire with her own hand, in order that it might “ be said in all parts of the world, that the women, who had “ followed Alexander in his expedition to Asia, had taken “ much better vengeance of the Persians, for the many cala-“ mities they had brought upon the Grecians, than all the “ generals who had fought for them both by sea and land.” All the guests applauded the discourse; when immediately the king rose from table, his head being crowned with flowers, and taking a torch in his hand, he advanced forward to execute this mighty exploit. The whole company follow him, breaking into loud acclamations; and afterwards singing and dancing, they surround the palace. All the rest of the Macedonians, at this noise, ran in crowds, with lighted tapers, and set fire to every part of it. However, Alexander was sorry, not long after, for what he had done, and thereupon gave orders for extinguishing the fire; but it was too late.

As he was naturally very bountiful, his great success increased this beneficent disposition; and he accompanied the presents he made with such testimonies of humanity and kindness, and so obliging a carriage, as very much enhanced their merit. He exerted this temper in a particular manner towards the fifty Macedonian young lords, who served under him as guards. Olympias his mother, thinking him too profuse, wrote to him as follows: “ I do not blame you,” said she, “ for being beneficent towards your friends, for that is acting like a king; but then a medium ought to be observed in your magnificence. You equal them all with kings, and by heap-“ ing riches on them, you give them an opportunity of making a great number of friends, of all whom you deprive your-“ self.” As she often wrote the same advice to him, he always kept her letters very secret, and did not show them to any person; but happening to open one of them, and beginning to read it, Hephaestion drew near to him, and read it over his shoulder, which the king observing, did not offer to hinder him; but taking only his ring from his finger, he put the seal of it to the lips of his favourite, as an admonition to him not to divulge what he had read.

He used to send magnificent presents to his mother; but then he would never let her have any concern in the affairs of the government. She used frequently to make very severe

complaints upon that account, but he always submitted to her ill humour with great mildness and patience. Antipater having one day wrote a long letter against her, the king, after reading it, replied, “Antipater does not know, that one single “tear shed by a mother, will obliterate ten thousand such letters at this.” A behaviour like this, and such an answer, show, at one and the same time, that Alexander was both a kind son and an able politician; and that he was perfectly sensible how dangerous it would have been, had he invested a woman of Olympias’ character with the supreme authority.

SECTION X.

DARIUS LEAVES ECBATANA. HIS DEATH. ALEXANDER SENDS HIS CORPSE TO SYSIGAMBIS.

ALEXANDER^x, after he had taken Persepolis and Pasagarda, was resolved to pursue Darius, who was arrived by this time at Ecbatana, the capital of Media. There remained still with this fugitive prince thirty thousand foot, among whom were four thousand Greeks, who were faithful to him to the last. Besides these he had four thousand slingers, and upwards of three thousand cavalry, most of them Bactrians, commanded by Bessus, governor of Bactria. Darius marched his forces a little out of the common road, having ordered his baggage to go before them: then assembling his principal officers, he spoke to them as follows: “Dear companions, among so many thousand men who composed my army, you only have not abandoned me during the whole course of my ill fortune; “and in a little time, nothing but your fidelity and constancy “will be able to make me fancy myself a king. Deserters “and traitors now govern in my cities; not that they are “thought worthy of the honour bestowed on them, but re-“wards are given them only in the view of tempting you, and “to stagger your perseverance. You still chose to follow my “fortune rather than that of the conqueror, for which you “certainly have merited a recompence from the gods; and I “do not doubt but they will prove beneficent towards you, “in case that power is denied me. With such soldiers and “officers I would brave, without the least dread, the enemy, “how formidable soever he may be. What! would any one

^x Diod. l. xvii. p. 540....546. Arrian. l. iii. p. 133....137. Plutarch in Alex. p. 689. Q. Curt. l. v. c. 8....14. Justin, l. xi. c. 15.

“ have me surrender myself up to the mercy of the conqueror, “ and expect from him, as a reward of my baseness and mean- “ ness of spirit, the government of some province which he “ may condescend to leave me? No—it never shall be in the “ power of any man, either to take away, or fix upon my head, “ the diadem I wear; the same hour shall put a period to my “ reign and life. If you have all the same courage and reso- “ lution, which I can no ways doubt, I assure myself that you “ shall retain your liberty, and not be exposed to the pride and “ insults of the Macedonians. You have in your hands the “ means either to revenge or terminate all your evils.” Having ended this speech, the whole body of soldiers replied with shouts, that they were ready to follow him whithersoever he should go, and would shed the last drop of their blood in his defence.

Such was the resolution of the soldiery; but Nabarzanes, one of the greatest lords of Persia, and general of the horse, had conspired with Bessus, general of the Bactrians, to commit the blackest of all crimes, and that was, to seize upon the person of the king, and lay him in chains; which they might easily do, as each of them had a great number of soldiers under his command. Their design was, if Alexander should pursue them, to secure themselves by giving up Darius alive into his hands; and, in case they escaped, to murder that prince, and afterwards usurp his crown, and begin a new war. These traitors soon won over the troops, by representing to them that they were going to their destruction; that they would soon be crushed under the ruins of an empire, which was just ready to fall; at the same time, that Bactriana was open to them, and offered them immense riches. Though these practices were carried on very secretly, they came however to the ear of Darius, who could not believe them. Patron, who commanded the Greeks, entreated him, but in vain, to pitch his tent among them, and to trust the guard of his person to men on whose fidelity he might depend. Darius could not prevail with himself to put so great an affront upon the Persians, and therefore made this answer: “ That it would be “ a less affliction to him to be deceived by, than to condemn “ them: That he would suffer the worst of evils amidst those “ of his own nation, rather than seek for security among stran- “ gers, how faithful and affectionate soever he might believe “ them: and that he could not but die too late, in case the “ Persian soldiers thought him unworthy of life.” It was not long before Darius experienced the truth of this counsel; for

the traitors seized him, bound him in chains of gold, by way of honour, as he was a king, and then laying him in a covered chariot, they set out towards Bactriana.

Alexander, being arrived at Ecbatana, was informed that Darius had left that city five days before. He then commanded Parmenio to lay up all the treasures of Persia in the castle of Ecbatana, under a strong guard which he left there. According to ^y Strabo, these treasures amounted to one hundred and eighty thousand talents, about twenty-seven millions Sterling; and according to ^z Justin, to ten talents more, about fifteen hundred thousand pounds Sterling. He ordered him to march afterwards towards Hyrcania, by the country of the Cadusians, with the Thracians, the foreigners, and the rest of the cavalry, the royal companies excepted. He sent orders to Clitus, who stayed behind in Susa, where he fell sick, that as soon as he was arrived at Ecbatana, he should take the forces which were left in that city, and come to him in Parthia.

Alexander, with the rest of his army, pursued Darius, and arrived the eleventh day at * Rhaga, which is a long day's journey from the Caspian Straits; but Darius had already passed through them. Alexander, now despairing to overtake him, what dispatch soever he might make, staid there five days to rest his forces. He then marched against the Parthians, and that day pitched his camp near the Caspian Straits, and passed them the next. News was soon brought him, that Darius had been seized by the traitors; that Bessus had caused him to be drawn in a chariot, and had sent the unhappy monarch before, in order to be the surer of his person; that the whole army obeyed that wretch, Artabazus and the Greeks excepted, who not having a soul base enough to consent to so abominable a deed, and being too weak to prevent it, had therefore left the high road, and marched towards the mountains.

This was a fresh motive for him to hasten his march. The Barbarians, at his arrival, were seized with dread, though the match would not have been equal, had Bessus been as resolute for fighting, as for putting in execution the detestable act above mentioned; for his troops exceeded the enemy both in number and strength, and were all cool and ready for the combat; whereas Alexander's troops were quite fatigued with the length of their march. But the name and reputation of Alexander, a motive all-powerful in war, filled them with

^y Strab. l. xv. p. 741.

^z Justin. l. xii. c. 1.

* This is the city mentioned in Tobit iii. 7.

such prodigious terror, that they all fled. Bessus and his accomplices being come up with Darius, they requested him to mount his horse, and fly from the enemy: but he replied, that the gods were ready to revenge the evils he had suffered: and beseeching Alexander to do him justice, he refused to follow a band of traitors. At these words they fell into such a fury, that they all threw darts at him, and left him covered with wounds. After having perpetrated this horrid crime they separated, in order to leave different footsteps of their flight, and thereby elude the pursuit of the enemy, in case he should follow them; or at least oblige him to divide his forces. Nabarzanes took the way of Hyrcania, and Bessus that of Bactriana, both being followed by a very few horsemen; and, as the Barbarians were by this means destitute of leaders, they dispersed themselves up and down, as fear or hope directed their steps.

After searching about in different places, Darius was at last found in a solitude, his body run through with spears, lying in a chariot, and drawing near his end. However, he had strength enough before he died to call for drink, which a Macedonian, Polystratus by name, brought him. He had a Persian prisoner, whom he employed as his interpreter. Darius, after drinking the liquor that had been given him, turned to the Macedonian, and said: “ That in the deplorable state to which he was reduced, he however should have the comfort to speak to one who could understand him, and that his last words would not be lost. He therefore charged him to tell Alexander, “ that he died in his debt, though he had never obliged him: “ That he gave him a multitude of thanks for the great humanity he had exercised towards his mother, his wife, and his children, whose lives he had not only spared, but restored them to their former splendour: That he besought the gods to give victory to his arms, and make him monarch of the universe: That he thought he need not entreat him to revenge the execrable murder committed on his person, as this was the common cause of kings.”

After this, taking Polystratus by the hand, “ Give him,” said he, “ thy hand, as I give thee mine; and carry him, in my name, the only pledge I am able to give of my gratitude and affection.” Saying these words, he breathed his last. Alexander coming up a moment after, and seeing Darius’ body, he wept bitterly; and, by the strongest testimonies of affection that could be given him, proved how intimately he was affected with the unhappiness of a prince who

deserved a better fate. He immediately pulled off his military cloak, and threw it on Darius' body; then causing it to be embalmed, and his coffin to be adorned with a royal magnificence, he sent it to Sysigambis, in order that it might be interred with the honours usually paid to the deceased Persian monarchs, and be entombed with his ancestors.

^a Thus died Darius, the third year of the 112th Olympiad, at about fifty years of age, six of which he had reigned. He was a gentle and pacific prince; his reign having been unsullied with injustice or cruelty, which was owing either to his natural lenity, or to his not having had an opportunity of acting otherwise, from the perpetual war he had carried on against Alexander all the time he sat upon the throne. In him the Persian empire ended, after having existed two hundred and nine years, computing from the beginning of the reign of Cyrus the Great, the founder of it, under thirteen kings, viz. Cyrus, Cambyses, Smerdis Magus, Darius, son of Hystaspes, Xerxes I. Artaxerxes Longimanus, Xerxes II. Sogdianus, Darius Nothus, Artaxerxes Mnemon, Artaxerxes Ochus, Arses, and Darius Codomanus.

SECT ION XI.

VICES WHICH FIRST CAUSED THE DECLENSION, AND AT LAST THE RUIN OF THE PERSIAN EMPIRE.

THE death of Darius Codomanus may very justly be considered as the era, but not as the sole cause, of the destruction of the Persian monarchy. When we take a general view of the history of the kings above mentioned, and consider with some attention their different characters and methods of governing, whether in peace or war, we easily perceive that this declension was prepared at a great distance, and carried on to its end by visible steps which denoted a total ruin.

We may declare at first sight, that the declension of the Persian empire, and its fall, are owing to its origin and primitive institution. It had been formed by the union of two nations, who differed very much in manners and inclinations. The Persians were a sober, laborious, modest people; but the Medes were wholly devoted to pride, luxury, softness, and voluptuousness. The example of frugality and simplicity which Cyrus had set them, and their being obliged to be always un-

^a A. M. 3674. Ant. J. C. 380.

der arms to gain so many victories, and support themselves in the midst of so many enemies, prevented those vices from spreading for some time; but after those nations had subjected all things, the fondness which the Medes had naturally for pleasures and magnificence, soon lessened the temperance of the Persians, and became, in a little time, the prevailing taste of the two nations.

Several other causes conspired to this. Babylon, when conquered, intoxicated her victors with her poisoned cup, and enchanted them with the charms of pleasure. She furnished them with such ministers and instruments as were adapted to promote luxury, and to foment and cherish delights with art and delicacy; and the wealth of the richest provinces in the world, being at the entire disposal of new sovereigns, they thereby were enabled to satiate their desires.

Even Cyrus himself, as I observed elsewhere, contributed to this, without perceiving the consequence of it; and prepared men's minds by the splendid banquet he gave, after having ended his conquests; and when he showed himself in the midst of his troops, who had shared in his victories, with such a pomp and ostentation as were most capable of dazzling the eye. He began by inspiring them with an admiration for pomp and show, which they had hitherto despised. He suggested to them, that magnificence and riches were worthy of crowning the most glorious exploits, and the end and fruit of them: and by thus inspiring his subjects with a strong desire for things they saw so highly esteemed by a most accomplished prince, his example authorised them to abandon themselves to that gust without reserve.

He also spread this evil, by his obliging judges, officers, and governors of provinces, to appear in splendour before the people, the better to represent the majesty of the prince. On one side these magistrates and commanders easily mistook these ornaments and trappings of their employments for the most essential parts of them, endeavouring to distinguish themselves by nothing but this glittering outside: and, on the other side, men of the greatest wealth in the provinces proposed them as so many patterns for their imitation, and were soon followed by persons of moderate fortune, whom those in the lowest stations of life endeavoured to equal.

So many causes of degeneracy uniting together and being authorised publicly, soon destroyed the ancient virtue of the Persians. They did not sink, like the Romans, by imperceptible decays, which had been long foreseen, and often opposed.

Scarce was Cyrus dead, but there rose up as it were another nation, and kings of a quite different genius and character. Men no longer discoursed of that manly, that severe education, which was bestowed on the Persian youth; of those public schools of sobriety, patience, and emulation for virtue, nor of those laborious and warlike exercises; of all these there did not remain the smallest traces: their young men, being brought up in splendour and effeminacy, which they now saw were had in honour, immediately began to despise the happy simplicity of their forefathers, and formed, in the space of one generation, an entire new set of people, whose manners, inclinations, and maxims, were directly opposite to those of ancient times. They grew haughty, vain, effeminate, inhuman, and perfidious in treaties; and acquired this peculiar character, that they, of all people, were the most abandoned to splendour, luxury, feasting, and even to drunkenness: so that we may affirm, that the empire of the Persians was, almost at its birth, what other empires grew up to through length of time only, and began where others end. It bore the principle of its destruction in its own bosom, and this internal vice increased every reign.

After the unsuccessful expeditions of Darius and Xerxes against Scythia and Greece, the princes their successors became insensible to the ambition of making conquests, and gave themselves up a prey to idleness and effeminacy: they grew careless of military discipline, and substituted in the place of regular soldiers, inured to the toils of war, a confused multitude of men, who were taken by force out of their respective countries. The reader may have observed, on more than one occasion, that the whole strength, and almost the only resource of the Persian army, lay in the Greeks in their service; that they properly depended on them only, and always took great care to oppose them to the best troops of the enemy: they were the only soldiers in Darius' army who performed their duty, and continued faithful to him to the last; and we have seen that Memnon the Rhodian was the sole great general who fought against Alexander.

Instead of choosing for the command of their forces, officers of skill and experience, they used to appoint persons of the greatest quality of every nation, who frequently had no other merit than their exalted birth, their riches and credit; and who were distinguished by nothing but the sumptuousness of their feasts and entertainments, by the magnificence of their equipages, and by the crowd with which they were ever sur-

rounded, of guards, domestics, eunuchs, and women ; such an assemblage, formed merely for vain show and ostentation, rather than for warlike expeditions, incumbered an army, already but too numerous, with useless soldiers, made it slow in marches and movements by its too heavy baggage, and rendered it incapable of subsisting long in a country, and of completing great enterprises in sight of an enemy.

The Persian monarchs, shutting themselves up in their palaces, in order to abandon themselves to pleasures, and appearing seldom abroad, placed their whole confidence, and by that means all their authority, in eunuchs, to women, to slaves, and to flattering courtiers, whose sole thoughts and endeavours were to banish true merit, which was offensive to them ; to give the rewards appointed for services to their own creatures ; and to intrust the greatest employments of the state to persons devoted to their interested and ambitious views, rather than to such whose abilities rendered them capable of serving their country.

Another character of these princes, which is but too frequent in that high sphere, contributed very much to the ruin of the empire. They were accustomed from their infancy to have their ears soothed with false praises, and the most extravagant compliments, and to have a blind submission paid to their will. They were educated in so exalted an idea of their own grandeur, as persuaded them that the rest of men were formed merely to serve them, and administer to their pleasures. They were not taught their duties, nor the maxims of a wise and good government ; the principles by which men judge of solid merit, and are capable of choosing persons able to govern under them. They did not know that they were raised to sovereign power merely to protect their subjects, and make them happy. They were not made sensible of the exquisite pleasure that monarch feels, who is the delight of his subjects, and the public source of the felicity of so vast an empire, as Cyrus the Great had been, who was so dear to his people, that every individual family considered him as their father, and bewailed his death as a public calamity. So far from this, a monarch's grandeur was declared to consist in making himself feared, and in his being able to gratify all his passions with impunity.

So ill-judged an education must necessarily form either weak or vicious princes. They were not able to sustain the weight of so mighty an empire, nor to grasp the several parts of so extensive and painful an administration. Idleness, and

a love for pleasure, made them careless, and averse to business of every kind; and they sacrificed matters of the highest importance to their vain amusements. Some of them were born with such happy dispositions, that they would have become good princes, had they not been enervated by the charms of a voluptuous life: and abandoned themselves to the allurements of a too despotic power, and an over great prosperity. By flattery, they were rendered incapable of listening, in their councils, to any expression delivered with freedom, or of suffering the least opposition to their wills.

It is no wonder they were not beloved by their subjects, since their whole study was to aggrandize themselves, and to sacrifice all considerations to that alone. Darius, in his misfortunes, was abandoned by the generals of his armies, by the governors of his provinces, by his officers, domestics, and subjects; and did not find any where a sincere affection, nor a real attachment to his person and interest. The dazzling splendour of the Persian monarchy concealed a real weakness; and this unwieldy power, heightened by so much pomp and pride, was abhorred by the people; so that this colossus, at the very first blow, fell to the ground.

SECTION XII.

LACEDÆMONIA REVOLTS FROM THE MACEDONIANS. ANTIPATER DEFEATS AGIS. ALEXANDER MARCHES AGAINST BESSUS.

WHILST things passed in Asia as we have seen ^b, some tumults broke out in Greece and Macedonia. Memnon, whom Alexander had sent into Thrace, having revolted there, and thereby drawn the forces of Antipater on that side; the Lacedæmonians thought this a proper opportunity to throw off the Macedonian yoke, and engaged almost all Peloponnesus in their design. Upon this news, Antipater, after having settled to the best of his power the affairs of Thrace, returned with the utmost expedition into Greece, whence he immediately dispatched couriers, in order to give Alexander an account of these several transactions. As soon as Antipater was come up with the enemy, he resolved to venture a battle. The Lacedæmonian army consisted of no more than twenty thousand foot, and two thousand horse, under the command

^b A. M. 3675. Ant. J. C. 329. Diod. l. xvi. p. 527. Q. Curt. l. vi. c. 1.

of Agis their king: whereas that of Antipater was twice that number. Agis, in order to make the superiority of numbers of no effect, had made choice of a narrow spot of ground. The battle began with great vigour, each party endeavouring to signalize themselves in an extraordinary manner, for the honour of their respective countries; the one fired with the remembrance of their pristine glory, and the other animated by their present greatness, fought with equal courage; the Lacedæmonians for liberty, and the Macedonians for empire. So long as the armies continued on the spot where the battle began, Agis had the advantage; but Antipater, by pretending to fly, drew the enemy into the plains; after which, extending his whole army, he gained a superiority, and made a proper use of his advantage. Agis was distinguished by his suit of armour, his noble mien, and still more so by his valour. The battle was hottest round his person, and he himself performed the most astonishing acts of bravery. At last, after having been wounded in several parts of his body, his soldiers, laying him upon his shield, carried him off. However, this did not damp their courage, for having seized an advantageous post, where they kept close in their ranks, they resisted with great vigour the attacks of the enemy. After having withstood them a long time, the Lacedæmonians began to give ground, being scarce able to hold their arms, which were all covered with sweat; they afterwards retired very fast, and at last ran quite away. The king, seeing himself closely pursued, still made some efforts, notwithstanding the weak condition to which he was reduced, in order to oppose the enemy. Intrepid and invincible to the last, oppressed by numbers, he died sword in hand.

In this engagement, upwards of three thousand Lacedæmonians lost their lives, and a thousand Macedonians at most; but very few of the latter returned home unwounded. This victory not only ruined the power of Sparta and its allies, but also the hopes of those who only waited the issue of this war to declare themselves. Antipater immediately sent the news of this success to Alexander; but, like an experienced courtier, he drew up the account of it in the most modest and circumspect terms; in such as were best adapted to diminish the lustre of a victory which might expose him to envy. He was sensible, that Alexander's delicacy, with regard to honour, was very great, that he looked upon the glory which another person obtained as a diminution of his own. And,

indeed he could not forbear, * when this news was brought him, to let drop some words which discovered his jealousy. Antipater did not dare to dispose of any thing by his own private authority, and only gave the Lacedæmonians leave to send an embassy to the king, in order that they themselves might tell him the ill success they had met with. Alexander pardoned them, some of those who had occasioned the revolt excepted, and these he punished.

‘ Darius’ death did not hinder Alexander from pursuing Bessus, who had withdrawn into Bactriana, where he had assumed the title of King, by the name of Artaxerxes. But, finding at last that it would be impossible for him to come up with him, he returned into Parthia; and resting his troops some days in Hecatompylos, commanded provisions of all sorts to be brought thither.

During his stay there, a report prevailed throughout the whole army, that the king, content with the conquests he had atchieved, was preparing to return into Macedonia. That very instant the soldiers, as if a signal had been made for their setting out, ran like madmen to their tents, began to pack up their baggage, load the waggons with the utmost dispatch, and fill the whole camp with noise and tumult. Alexander was soon informed of this, when, terrified at the disorder, he summoned the officers to his tent, where, with tears in his eyes, he complained, that in the midst of so glorious a career, he was stopped on a sudden, and forced to return back into his own country, rather like one who had been overcome, than as a conqueror. The officers comforted him, by representing, that this sudden motion was a mere sally, and a transient gust of passion, which would not be attended with any ill consequences, and assured him, that the soldiers, to a man, would obey him, provided he would address himself to them in tender expressions. He promised to do it. The circumstance which had given occasion to this false report, was his having disbanded some Grecian soldiers, after rewarding them in a very bountiful manner; so that the Macedonians imagined they also were to fight no more.

Alexander having summoned the army, made the following speech. “ I am not surprised, O soldiers! if, after the mighty things we have hitherto performed, you should be satiated with glory, and have no other views than ease and repose.

c. Q. Curt. l. vi. c. 2.—4.

“ Alexander hostes vinci voluerat; Antipatrum viciisse ne tacitus quidem indigebatur, suæ demptum gloriæ existimans quicquid cessisset alienæ.—Q. Curt.

“ I will not now enumerate the various nations we have conquered. We have subdued more provinces than others have cities. Could I persuade myself, that our conquests were well secured, over nations who were so soon overcome, I would think as you do, for I will not dissemble my thoughts, and would make all the haste imaginable to revisit my household-gods, my mother, my sisters, and my subjects, and enjoy in the midst of my country the glory I have acquired in concert with you. But this glory will all vanish very soon, if we do not put the last hand to the work. Do you imagine, that so many nations, accustomed to other sovereigns, and who have no manner of similitude to us, either in their religion, manners, or language, were entirely subdued the moment they were conquered ; and that they will not take up arms, in case we return back with so much precipitation ? What will become of the rest who still remain unconquered ? How ! shall we leave our victory imperfect, merely for want of courage ? But that which touches me much more, shall we suffer the detestable crime of Bessus to go unpunished ? Can you bear to see the sceptre of Darius in the sanguinary hands of that monster, who, after having loaded him with chains, as a captive, at last assassinated his sovereign, in order to deprive us of the glory of saving him ? As for myself, I shall not be easy till I see that infamous wretch hanging on a gibbet, there to pay, to all kings and nations of the earth, the just punishment due to his execrable crime. I do not know whether I am mistaken ; but methinks I read his sentence of death in your countenances ; and that the anger which sparkles in your eys, declares you will soon imbrue your hands in the traitor’s blood.”

The soldiers would not suffer Alexander to proceed ; but clapping their hands, they all cried aloud, that they were ready to follow wherever he would lead them. All the speeches of this prince generally produced this effect. In how desponding a condition soever they might be, one single word from him revived their courage in an instant, and inspired them with that martial alacrity and ardour which appeared always in his face. The king taking advantage of this favourable disposition of the whole army, crossed Parthia, and in three days arrived on the frontiers of Hyrcania, which submitted to his arms. He afterwards subdued the Mardi, the Arii, the Drangæ, the Archiosii, and several other nations, into which his army marched with greater speed than people

generally travel. He frequently would pursue an enemy for whole days and nights together, almost without suffering his troops to take any rest. By this prodigious rapidity, he came unawares upon nations, who thought him at a great distance, and subdued them before they had time to put themselves in a posture of defence. Under this image Daniel the prophet shadowed Alexander many ages before his birth, by representing him as a panther, a leopard, and a goat, who rushed forward with so much swiftness, that his feet seemed not to touch the ground.

^d Nabarzanes, one of Bessus' accomplices, who had written before to Alexander, came and surrendered himself, upon promise of a pardon, when he heard that he was arrived at Zadracarta, the capital of Hyrcania; and, among other presents, brought him Bagoas the eunuch, who afterwards gained as great an ascendant over Alexander, as before over Darius.

At the same time arrived Thalestris, queen of the Amazons. A violent desire of seeing Alexander had prompted that princess to leave her dominions, and travel through a great number of countries to gratify her curiosity. Being come pretty near his camp, she sent word that a queen was come to visit him; and that she had a prodigious inclination to cultivate his acquaintance, and accordingly was arrived within a little distance from that place. Alexander having returned her a favourable answer, she commanded her train to stop, and herself came forward with three hundred women; and the moment she perceived the king, she leaped from her horse, having two lances in her right hand. The dress the Amazons used to wear did not quite cover the body; for their bosom being uncovered on the left side, every other part of the body was hid; their gowns being tucked up with a knot, and so descended no farther than their knee. They preserved their right breast to suckle their female offspring, but used to burn their left, that they might be the better enabled to bend the bow and throw the dart, whence they were called ^{*} Amazons. Thalestris [†] looked upon the king without discovering the least sign of admiration, and surveying him attentively, did not think his stature answerable to his fame; for the Barba-

^d Q. Curt. l. vi. c. 5.

* This is a Greek word, signifying, without breasts.

[†] Interrito vultu regem Thalestris intuebatur, habitum ejus haudquaquam rerum famae parem oculis perlustrans. Quippe omnibus barbaris in corporum majestate veneratio est; magnorumque operum non alios capaces putant, quam quos eximia specie donare natura dignata est.—Q. Curt. l. vi. c. 5.

rians are very much struck with a majestic air, and think those only capable of mighty achievements on whom nature has bestowed bodily advantages. She did not scruple to tell him, that the chief motive of her journey was to have posterity by him ; adding, that she was worthy of giving heirs to his empire. Alexander, upon this request, was obliged to make some stay in this place ; after which Thalestris returned to her kingdom, and the king into the province inhabited by the Parthians. This story, and whatever is related of the Amazons, is looked upon by some very judicious authors as entirely fabulous.

^e Alexander devoted himself afterwards wholly to his passions, changing into pride and debauch, the moderation and continence for which he had hitherto been so greatly admired ; virtues so very necessary in an exalted station of life, and in the midst of a series of prosperities. He now no longer was the same man. Though he was invincible with regard to the dangers and toils of war, he was far otherwise with respect to the charms of ease. The instant he enjoyed a little repose, he abandoned himself to sensuality ; and he, whom the arms of the Persians could not conquer, fell a victim to their vices. Nothing was now to be seen but games, parties of pleasure, women, and excessive feasting, in which he used to revel whole days and nights. Not satisfied with the buffoons, and the performers on instrumental music, whom he had brought with him out of Greece, he obliged the captive women, whom he carried along with him, to sing songs after the manner of their country. He happened, among these women, to perceive one who appeared in deeper affliction than the rest, and who, by a modest, and at the same time a noble confusion, discovered a greater reluctance than the others to appear in public. She was a perfect beauty, which was very much heightened by her bashfulness, whilst she threw her eyes to the ground, and did all in her power to conceal her face. The king soon imagined by her air and mein that she was not of vulgar birth ; and inquiring himself into it, the lady answered, that she was granddaughter to Ochus, who not long before had swayed the Persian sceptre, and daughter of his son ; that she had married Hystaspes, who was related to Darius, and general of a great army. Alexander, being touched with compassion, when he heard the unhappy fate of a princess of the blood-royal, and the sad condition to which she was reduced, not only gave her

liberty, but returned all her possessions ; and caused her husband to be sought for, in order that she might be restored to him.

This prince was naturally of so tender and humane a disposition, as made him sensible of the affliction of persons in the lowest condition. ^f A poor Macedonian was one day leading, before him, a mule, laden with gold for the king's use ; the beast being so tired that he was not able either to go on or sustain the load, the mule-driver took it up and carried it, but with great difficulty, a considerable way. Alexander, seeing him just sinking under his burden, and going to throw it on the ground, in order to ease himself, cried out, “ Friend, do “ not be weary yet ; try and carry it quite through to thy “ tent, for it is all thy own.”

Alexander, in a very difficult march through barren places, at the head of a small body of horse, when he pursued Darius, met some Macedonians who were carrying water in goat-skins upon mules. These Macedonians perceiving their prince was almost parched with thirst, occasioned by the raging heat, the sun being then in the meridian, immediately filled a helmet with water, and were running to present him with it. Alexander asking to whom they were carrying all that water, they replied, “ We were going to carry it to our children ; but do “ not let your Majesty be uneasy, for if your life is but saved, “ we shall get children enough, in case we should lose these.” At these words, Alexander takes the helmet, and looking quite round him, he saw all his horsemen hanging down their heads, and with eyes fixed earnestly on the liquor he held, swallow it as it were with their glances ; upon which he returned it, with thanks, to those who offered it him, and did not drink so much as a single drop, but cried, “ There is not enough “ for my whole company ; and should I drink alone, it would “ make the rest be thirstier, and they would quite die away.” The officers, who were on horseback round him, struck in the most sensible manner with his wonderful temperance and magnanimity, entreated him with shouts, to carry them wherever he thought fit, and not spare them in any manner ; that now they were not in the least tired, nor felt the least thirst ; and that as long as they should be commanded by such a king, they could not think themselves mortal men.

Such sentiments as these, which arise from a generous and tender disposition, reflect a greater honour on a prince than

^f Plut. in Alex. p. 687.

^g Ibid.

the greatest victories and conquests. Had Alexander always cherished them, he would justly have merited the title of Great; but a too glorious and uninterrupted series of prosperity, which is too heavy for mortals to sustain, insensibly effaced them from his mind, and made him forget that he was man; for now, contemning the customs of his own country as no longer worthy the sovereign of the universe, he laid aside the dress, the manners, and way of life of the Macedonian monarchs; looking upon them as too plain and simple, and derogatory to his grandeur. He even went so far as to imitate the pomp of the Persian kings, in that very circumstance in which they seemed to equal themselves to the gods; I mean, by requiring those who had conquered nations to fall prostrate at his feet, and pay him a kind of homage which became only slaves. He had turned his palace into a seraglio, filling it with three hundred and sixty concubines, the same number that Darius kept, and with bands of eunuchs, of all mankind the most infamous. Not satisfied with wearing a Persian robe himself, he also obliged his generals, his friends, and all the grandees of his court, to put on the same dress, which gave them the greatest mortification; not one of them, however, daring to speak against this innovation, or contradict the prince in any manner.

The veteran soldiers, who had fought under Philip, not having the least idea of sensuality, inveighed publicly against this prodigious luxury, and the numerous vices which the army had learned in Susa and Ecbatana. The soldiers would frequently express themselves in the following terms: "That they had lost more by victory than they had gained; that as the Macedonians had thus assumed the manners and customs of foreigners, they might properly be said to be conquered: that therefore the only benefit they should reap from their long absence, would be, to return back to their own country in the habit of Barbarians; that Alexander was ashamed of, and despised them; that he chose to resemble the vanquished rather than the victorious; and that he, who before had been king of Macedonia, was now become one of Darius' lieutenants."

The king was not ignorant of the discontent which reigned both in his court and army, and endeavoured to recover the esteem and friendship of both by his beneficence: * but slavery, though purchased at ever so high a rate, must neces-

* Sed, ut opinor, liberis pretium servitutis ingratum est.—Q. Curt.

sarily be odious to free-born men. He therefore thought that the safest remedy would be to employ them, and for that purpose led them against Bessus. But as the army was encumbered with booty and an useless train of baggage, that it could scarce move, he first caused all his own baggage to be carried into a great square, and afterwards that of his army, such things excepted as were absolutely necessary; then ordered the whole to be carried from thence in carts to a large plain. Every one was in a great pain to know the meaning of all this; but after he had sent away the horses, he himself set fire to his own things, and commanded every one to follow his example. Upon this the Macedonians lighted up the fire with their own hands, and burned the rich spoils they had purchased with their blood, and often forced out of the midst of the flames. Such a sacrifice must certainly have been made with the utmost reluctance; but the example the king set them silenced all their complaints, and they seemed less affected at the loss of their baggage, than at the neglect of their military discipline. A short speech the king made, soothed all their uneasiness; and, being now more able to exert themselves hereafter, they set out with joy, and marched towards Bactriana. In this march they met with difficulties which would have quite damped any one but Alexander; but nothing could daunt his soul, or check his progress; for he put the strongest confidence in his good fortune, which indeed never forsook that hero, but extricated him from a thousand perils, wherein one would have naturally supposed both himself and his army must have perished.

^h Being arrived among the Drangae, a danger to which he had not been accustomed, gave him very great uneasiness; and this was the report of a conspiracy that was formed against his person. One Dymnus, a man of no great figure at court, was the contriver of this treason; and the motive of it was, some private disgust which he had received. He had communicated his execrable design to a young man, Nicomachus by name, who revealed it to Cebalinus, his brother. The latter immediately whispered it to Philotas, earnestly entreating him to acquaint the king with it, because every moment was of the utmost consequence, and that the conspirators were to execute the horrid deed in three days. Philotas, after applauding his fidelity, waited immediately upon the king, and discoursed upon a great variety of subjects, but without taking

^h Diod. l. xvii. p. 550, 551. Q. Curt. l. vi. c. 7, 11. et l. vii. c. 1. 2. Arrian. l. iii. p. 141, 142. Plut. in Alex. p. 692, 693.

the least notice of the plot. In the evening Cebalinus meeting him as he was coming out, and asking whether he had done as requested, he answered, that he had not found an opportunity of mentioning it to his Majesty, and went away. The next day this young man went up to him as he was going into the palace, and conjured him not to forget what he had told him the day before. Philotas replied, that he would be sure not to forget it; and however did not perform his promise. This made Cebalinus suspect him; and fearing, that in case the conspiracy should be discovered by any other person, his silence would be interpreted as criminal, he therefore got another person to disclose it to Alexander. The prince having heard the whole from Cebalinus himself, and told how many times he had conjured Philotas to acquaint him with it, first commanded Dymnus to be brought before him. The latter, guessing upon what account he was sent for by the king, ran himself through with his sword; but the guards having prevented this wretch from completing the deed, he was carried to the palace. The king asked him, Why he thought Philotas more worthy than he was of the kingdom of Macedon? But he was quite speechless; so that, after fetching a deep sigh, he turned his head aside, and breathed his last.

The king afterwards sent for Philotas, and speaking to him, having first commanded every one to withdraw, he asked whether Cebalinus had really urged him several times to tell him of a plot which was carrying on against him. Philotas, without discovering the least confusion in his countenance, confessed ingenuously that he had; but made his apology, by saying, that the person who had whispered this, did not appear to him worthy of the least credit. He confessed, however, that Dymnus' death plainly showed he had acted very imprudently, in concealing so long a design of so black a nature. Upon which, acknowledging his fault, he fell at the king's feet; which he embraced, and besought him to consider his past life, rather than the fault he had now committed, which did not proceed from any bad design, but from the fear he was under of alarming, very unseasonably, the king, should he communicate a design which he really supposed was without foundation. It is no easy matter to say, whether Alexander believed what Philotas said, or only dissembled his anger. But however this be, he gave him his hand, in token of reconciliation; and told him, that he was persuaded he had despised, rather than concealed the affair.

Philotas was both envied and hated by a great number of

courtiers; and indeed it was hardly possible it should be otherwise, because none of them was more familiar with the king, or more esteemed by him. Instead of softening or moderating the lustre of the distinguished favour he enjoyed, by an air of sweetness and humanity; he seemed, on the contrary, to endeavour nothing so much as to excite the envy of others, by affecting a silly pride, which generally displayed itself in his dress, his retinue, his equipage, and his table; and still more so by the haughty airs he assumed, which made him universally hated. Parmenio, his father, disgusted at his lofty behaviour, said one day to him, “* My son, make thyself less.” The strongest sense is couched under these words: and it is evident, that the man who uttered them, was perfectly acquainted with the genius of courts. He used often to give Philotas advice to this effect; but too exalted a prosperity is apt to make men both deaf and blind; and they cannot persuade themselves, that favour, which is established on so seemingly solid a foundation, can ever change; the contrary of which Philotas found to his sorrow.

ⁱ His former conduct with regard to Alexander, had given the latter just reason to complain of him; for he used to take the liberty to speak disrespectfully of the king, and applaud himself in the most haughty terms. Opening one day his heart to a woman, Antigonia by name, with whom he was in love, he began to boast, in a very insolent manner, his father’s services and his own: “What would Philip,” said he, “have been, had it not been for Parmenio? And what would Alexander be, were it not for Philotas? What would become of his pretended divinity, and his father Ammon, should we undertake to expose this fiction?” All these things were repeated to Alexander, and Antigonia herself made oath that such words had been spoken. The king had nevertheless taken no notice of all this, nor so much as once let drop the least word which showed his resentment upon that occasion, whenever he was most intoxicated with liquor; he had not so much as hinted it to his friends, not even to Hephaestion, from whom he scarce concealed any thing. But the crime Philotas was now accused of, recalled to his memory the disgust he had formerly entertained.

Immediately after the conversation he had with Philotas, he held a council composed of his chief confidents. Craterus,

ⁱ Plut. in Fortun. Alex. c. 2. p. 339.

* Ω παι, χείρων μοι γίγ.

for whom Alexander had a great esteem, and who envied Philotas the more on that very account, looked upon this as a very happy occasion for supplanting his rival. Concealing, therefore, his hatred under a specious pretence of zeal, he suggested to the king, “ The apprehensions he might justly be under, both from Philotas himself, because mercy is not apt to work any change in a heart, which could be corrupt enough to entertain so detestable a crime; and from Parmenio his father, who, said he, will never be able to bear the thoughts of his owing his son’s life to the king’s clemency. Some beneficial acts are so great, that they become a burden to those on whom they are conferred, for which reason they do all in their power to erase them from their memory. And further, who can assure us, that both father and son are not engaged in the conspiracy? When a prince’s life is in danger, every thing is of importance; and all things, even to the slightest suspicions, are so many proofs. Can we conceive it possible, that a favourite, on whom his sovereign has bestowed the most shining marks of his benefice, should be calm and undisturbed, upon his being told an affair of such mighty importance? But we are told, that this design was communicated by young people, who deserved very little credit. Wherefore then did he keep them in suspense two days, as if he really believed what they told him, and still promised them that he would reveal the whole affair to the king? Who does not see, that he did this merely to prevent their having access by another way to his Majesty? Sir,” continued he, “ it is necessary, for your own sake and that of the state, for us to put Philotas to the torture; in order to force from his own mouth an account of this plot, and the several persons who are his accomplices in it.” This being the opinion of all the members of the council, the king came into it. He then dismissed the assembly, having first enjoined them secrecy; and the better to conceal his resolution, gave orders for the army’s marching the next day, and even invited Philotas to supper with him.

In the beginning of the night, various parties of guards having been posted in the several places necessary, some entered the tent of Philotas, who was then in a deep sleep; when, starting from his slumbers, as they were putting manacles on his hands, he cried, “ Alas! my sovereign, the in-veteracy of my enemies has got the better of your goodness.” After this, they covered his face, and brought him

to the palace without uttering a single word. The next morning, the Macedonians, according to an order published for that purpose, came thither under arms, being about six thousand. It was a very ancient custom for the army, in war-time, to take cognizance of capital crimes; and, in times of peace, for the people to do so; so that the prince had no power on these occasions, unless a sanction were given to it by one of those bodies; and the king was forced to have recourse to persuasion *, before he employed his authority.

First the body of Dymnus was brought out; very few then present knowing either what he had done, or how he came by his death. Afterwards the king came into the assembly; an air of sorrow appearing in his countenance, as well as in his whole court, every one waited with impatience the issue of this gloomy scene. Alexander continued a long time with his eyes cast on the ground; but at last, having recovered his spirits, he made the following speech: “I narrowly escaped, “O soldiers, being torn from you by the treachery of a “small number of wretches; but by the providence and “mercy of the gods, I now again appear before you alive; “and I protest to you, that nothing encourages me more to “proceed against the traitors, than the sight of this assembly, “whose lives are much dearer to me than my own; for I de-“sire to live for your sakes only; and the greatest happiness “I should find in living, not to say the only one, would be “the pleasure I shall receive in having it once in my power “to reward the services of so many brave men, to whom I “owe all things.” Here he was interrupted by the cries and groans of the soldiers, who all burst into tears; “Alas! how “will you behave when I shall name the persons who formed “so execrable an attempt? I myself cannot think of it with-“out shuddering. They, on whom I have been most lavish “of my kindnesses; on whom I had bestowed the greatest “marks of friendship; in whom I had put my whole confi-“dence, and in whose breasts I lodged my greatest secrets— “Parmenio and Philotas.” At these names, all the soldiers gazed one upon the other, not daring to believe their eyes or ears, nor any thing they saw or heard. Then Nicomachus, Metron, and Cebalinus, were sent for, who made the several depositions of what they knew. But as not one of them charged Philotas with engaging in the plot, the whole assembly be-

* Nihil potestas regum valebat, nisi prius valuisse auctoritas.—Q. Curt.

ing seized with a trouble and confusion, easier conceived than expressed, continued in a sad and gloomy silence.

Philotas was then brought in, his hands tied behind him, and his head covered with a coarse worn-out piece of cloth. How shocking a sight was this ! Lost to himself, he did not dare to look up, or open his lips ; but the tears streaming from his eyes, he fainted away in the arms of the man who held him. As the standers-by wiped off the tears in which his face was bathed, recovering his spirits and his voice by insensible degrees, he seemed desirous of speaking. The king then told him, that he should be judged by the Macedonians, and withdrew. Philotas might have justified himself very easily ; for not one of the witnesses, and those who had been put on the rack, had accused him of being an accomplice in the plot. Dymnus, who first formed it, had not named him to any of the conspirators ; and had Philotas been concerned in it, and the ringleader, as was pretended, Dymnus would certainly have named him, at the head of all the rest, in order to engage them the more strongly. Had Philotas been conscious to himself of guilt in this particular, as he was sensible that Cebalinus, who knew the whole, sought earnestly to acquaint the king of it, is it any ways probable, that he could have lain quiet two days together, without once endeavouring either to dispatch Cebalinus, or to put his dark design in execution ? which he might very easily have done. Philotas set these proofs, and a great many more, in the strongest light ; and he did not omit to mention the reasons which had made him despise the information that had been given him, as groundless and imaginary. Then directing, on a sudden, himself to Alexander, as if he had been present, “ O king,” says he, “ wheresoever you may be,” for it was thought Alexander heard all that passed from behind a curtain, “ If I have committed a fault in not acquainting you with what I heard, I confessed it to you, and you pardoned me. You gave me your royal hand as a pledge of this, and you did me the honour to admit me to your table. If you believed me, I am innocent ; if you pardoned me, I am cleared : I refer all this to your own judgement. What new crime have I committed since ? I was in a deep sleep when my enemies waked me, and loaded me with chains. Is it natural for a man, who is conscious that he is guilty of the most horrid of all crimes, to be thus easy and undisturbed ? The innocence of my own conscience, and the promise your Majesty made me, gave my soul this calm. Do not let the envy of my enemies prevail over your clemency and justice.”

The result of this assembly was, that Philotas should be put on the rack. The persons who presided on that occasion were his most inveterate enemies, and they made him suffer every kind of torture. Philotas, at first, discovered the utmost resolution and strength of mind ; the torments he suffered not being able to force from him a single word, nor even so much as a sigh. But at last, conquered by pain, he confessed himself to be guilty, named several accomplices, and even accused his own father. The next day, the answers of Philotas were read in a full assembly, he himself being present. Upon the whole, he was unanimously sentenced to die ; immediately after which he was stoned, according to the custom of Macedonia, with some others of the conspirators.

They also judged at the same time, and put to death, Lyncestes Alexander, who had been found guilty of conspiring the death of the king, and kept three years in prison.

The condemnation of Philotas brought on that of Parmenio: whether it were that Alexander really believed him guilty, or was afraid of the father now he had put the son to death, Polydamus, one of the lords of the court, was appointed to see the execution performed. He had been one of Parmenio's most intimate friends, if we may give that name to courtiers, who affect only their own fortunes. This was the very reason of his being nominated, because no one could suspect that he was sent with any such orders against Parmenio. He therefore set out for Media, where that general commanded the army, and was intrusted with the king's treasures, which amounted to an hundred and fourscore thousand talents, about twenty-seven millions Sterling. Alexander had given him several letters for Cleander, the king's lieutenant in the province, and for the principal officers. Two were for Parmenio ; one of them from Alexander, and the other sealed with Philotas' seal, as if he had been alive, to prevent the father from harbouring the least suspicion. Polydamus was but eleven days in his journey, and alighted in the night-time at Cleander's. After having taken all the precautions necessary, they went together, with a great number of attendants, to meet Parmenio, who at this time was walking in a park of his own. The moment Polydamus spied him, though at a great distance, he ran to embrace him with an air of the utmost joy ; and after compliments, intermixed with the strongest indications of friendship, had passed on both sides, he gave him Alexander's letter. In the opening it, he asked him

what the king was doing ; to which Polydamus replied, that he would know by his Majesty's letter. Parmenio, after perusing it, said as follows : " The king is preparing to march against the Arachosii. How glorious a prince is this, who will not suffer himself to take a moment's rest ! However, he ought to be a little tender of himself, now he has acquired so much glory." He afterwards opened the letter which was written in Philotas' name ; and, by his countenance, seemed pleased with the contents of it. At that very instant Cleander thrust a dagger into his side, then made another thrust in his throat, and the rest gave him several wounds, even after he was dead.

Thus this great man ended his life : a man illustrious both in peace and war ; who had performed many glorious actions without the king, whereas the king had never atchieved any thing conspicuous but in concert with Parmenio. He was a person of great abilities and execution ; was very dear to the grandees, and much more so to the officers and soldiers, who reposed the highest confidence in him ; and looked upon themselves as assured of victory when he was at their head, so firmly they relied on his capacity and good fortune. He was then threescore and ten years of age ; and had always served his sovereign with inviolable fidelity and zeal, for which he was very ill rewarded ; his son and himself having been put to death merely on a slight suspicion, uninforced with any real proof, which nevertheless obliterated in a moment all the great services both had done their country.

^k Alexander was sensible, that such cruel executions might alienate the affections of the troops, of which he had a proof, by the letters they sent into Macedonia; which were intercepted by his order; concluding therefore that it would be proper for him to separate from the rest of the army, such soldiers as had most distinguished themselves by their murmurs and complaints, lest their seditious discourses should spread the same spirit of discontent, he formed a separate body of these, the command of which he gave to Leonidas ; this kind of ignominy being the only punishment he inflicted on them. But they were so strangely affected with it, that they endeavoured to wipe out the disgrace it brought upon them, by a bravery, a fidelity, and an obedience, which they observed ever afterwards.

^k Arrian. l. iii. p. 143, 148. Q. Curt. l. vii. c. 3.—5. Diod. l. xvii. p. 552, 554. A. M. 3675. Ant. J. C. 326.

To prevent the ill consequences that might arise from this secret discontent, Alexander set out upon his march, and continued to pursue Bessus ; on which occasion he exposed himself to great hardships and dangers. After having passed through Drangania, Arachosia, and the country of the Ariamaspi, where all things submitted to his arms, he arrived at a mountain called Paropamisus, a part of Caucasus, where his army underwent inexpressible fatigues, through weariness, thirst, cold, and the snows, which killed a great number of his soldiers. Bessus laid waste all the country that lay between him and mount Caucasus, in order that the want of provisions and forage might deprive Alexander of an opportunity of pursuing him. He indeed suffered very much, but nothing could check his vigour. After making his army repose for some time at Drapsaca, he advanced towards Aornos and Bactra, the two strongest cities of Bactriana, and took them both. At Alexander's approach, about seven or eight thousand Bactrians, who till then had adhered very firmly to Bessus, abandoned him to a man, and retired each to his respective home. Bessus, at the head of the small number of forces who continued faithful to him, passed the river Oxus, burned all the boats he himself made use of, to prevent Alexander from crossing it, and withdrew to Nautacus, a city of Sogdiana, fully determined to raise a new army there. Alexander, however, did not give him time to do this ; and not meeting with trees or timber sufficient for the building of boats and rafts, or floats of timber, he supplied the want of these by distributing to his soldiers a great number of skins stuffed with straw, and such like dry and light materials ; which laying under them in the water, they crossed the river in this manner ; those who went over first drawing up in battle-array, whilst their commanders were coming after them. In this manner his whole army passed over in six days.

Whilst these things were doing, Spitamenes, who was Bessus' chief confident, formed a conspiracy against him, in concert with two more of his principal officers. Having seized his person, they put him in chains, forced his diadem from his head, tore to pieces the royal robe of Darius he had put on, and set him on horseback, in order to give him up to Alexander.

That prince arrived at a little city inhabited by the Branchidæ. These were the descendants of a family who had dwelt in Miletus, and Xerxes, at his return from Greece, had formerly sent into Upper Asia, where he had settled them in a

very flourishing condition, in return for their having delivered up to him the treasure of the temple called Didymaon, with which they had been intrusted. These received the king with the highest demonstrations of joy, and surrendered both themselves and their city to him. Alexander sent for such Milesians as were in his army, who preserved an hereditary hatred against the Branchidæ, because of the treachery of their ancestors. He then left them the choice either of revenging the injury they had formerly done them, or of pardoning them in consideration of their common extraction. The Milesians being so much divided in opinion, that they could not agree among themselves, Alexander undertook the decision himself. Accordingly, the next day he commanded his phalanx to surround the city; and a signal being given, they were ordered to plunder that abode of traitors, and put every one of them to the sword, which inhuman order was executed with the same barbarity as it had been given. All the citizens, at the very time they were going to pay homage to Alexander, were murdered in the streets and in their houses; no manner of regard being had to their cries and tears, nor the least distinction made of age or sex. They even pulled up the very foundations of the walls, in order that not the least traces of that city might remain. But of what crimes were these ill-fated citizens guilty? Were they responsible for those their fathers had committed upwards of one hundred and fifty years before? I do not know whether history furnishes another example of so brutal and frantic a cruelty.

A little after, Bessus was brought to Alexander, not only bound, but stark-naked. Spitamenes held him by a chain, which went round his neck; and it was difficult to say, whether that object was more agreeable to the Barbarians or Macedonians. In presenting him to the king, he said these words: "I have at last revenged both you and Darius, my kings and masters. I bring you a wretch who assassinated his sovereign, and who is now treated in the same manner as himself gave the first example of. Alas! why cannot Darius himself see this spectacle!" Alexander, after having greatly applauded Spitamenes, turned about to Bessus, and spake thus: "Thou surely must have been inspired with the rage and fury of a tyger, otherwise thou wouldest not have dared to load a king, from whom thou hadst received so many instances of favour, with chains, and afterwards murder him! Be gone from my sight, thou monster of cruelty and perfidiousness." The king said no more, but sending for Oxatres, Darius' bro-

ther, he gave Bessus to him, in order that he might suffer all the ignominy he deserved; suspending however his execution, that he might be judged in the general assembly of the Persians.

SECTION XIII.

ALEXANDER BUILDS A CITY NEAR THE IAXARTHES. DEFEATS THE SCYTHIANS. TAKES THE CITY OF PETRA.

ALEXANDER¹, insatiable of victory and conquests, still marched forward in search of new nations, whom he might subdue. After recruiting his cavalry, which had suffered very much by their long and dangerous marches, he advanced to the * Iaxarthes.

Not far from this river, the Barbarians rushed suddenly from their mountains, came and attacked Alexander's forces, and having carried off a great number of prisoners, they retired to their lurking holes, in which were twenty thousand who fought with bows and slings. The king went and besieged them in person, and being one of the foremost in the attack, he was shot with an arrow in the bone of his leg, and the iron point stuck in the wound. The Macedonians, who were greatly alarmed and afflicted, carried him off immediately, yet not so secretly but the Barbarians knew of it; for they saw, from the top of the mountain, every thing that was doing below. The next day they sent ambassadors to the king, who ordered them to be immediately brought in, when taking off the bandage which covered his wound, he showed them his leg, but did not tell them how much he had been hurt. These assured him, that as soon as they heard of his being wounded, they were as much afflicted as the Macedonians could possibly be; and that had it been possible for them to find the person who had shot that arrow, they would have delivered him up to Alexander; that none but impious wretches would wage war against the gods: in a word, that being vanquished by his unparalleled bravery, they surrendered themselves to him, with the nations who followed them. The king having engaged his faith to them, and taking back his prisoners, accepted of their homage.

¹ Arrian. I. iii. p. 148, 149. et I. iv. p. 150.—160. Q. Curt. I. vii. c. 6.—11.

* Quintus Curtius and Arrian call it the Tanais, but they are mistaken. The Tanais lies much more westward, and empties itself, not in the Caspian sea, but in the Pontus Euxinus, and is now called the Don.

After this he set out upon his march, and getting into a litter, a great dispute arose between the horse and foot who should carry it, each of those bodies pretending that this honour belonged to them only ; and there was no other way of reconciling them, but by giving orders that they should carry it in their turns.

From hence he got, the fourth day, to Maracanda, a very considerable city, and capital of Sogdiana, which he took ; and after leaving a considerable garrison there, he burned and laid waste all the plains.

There came an embassy to him from the * Abian Scythians, who from the death of Cyrus had lived free and independent : These submitted to Alexander. They were considered as the most equitable of all the Barbarians ; never making war but to defend themselves ; and the liberty established among them, and which they no ways abused, removed all distinction, and equalled the meanest among them with the greatest. A love of poverty and justice was their peculiar characteristic, and enabled them to live happy together without wanting either kings or laws. Alexander received them kindly, and sent one of his chief courtiers to take a view of their country, and even of the Scythians, who inhabit beyond the Cimmerian Bosphorus.

He had marked out a spot of ground proper for building a city on the river Iaxarthes, in order to curb the nations he had already conquered, and those he intended to subdue. But this design was retarded by the rebellion of the Sogdians, which was soon after followed by that of the Bactrians. Alexander dispatched Spitamenes, who had delivered up Bessus into his hands, believing him a very fit person to bring them back to their allegiance ; but he himself had been chiefly instrumental in this insurrection. The king, greatly surprised at this treachery, was determined to take vengeance of him in the most signal manner. He then marched to Cyropolis, and besieged it. This was the last city of the Persian empire, and had been built by Cyrus, after whose name it was called. At the same time he sent Craterus, with two more of his general officers, to besiege the city of the Memaceni, to whom fifty troopers were sent, to desire them to sue for Alexander's clemency. These met with a very kind reception at first, but in the night-time they were all cut to pieces. Alexander had resolved to spare Cyropolis, purely for the sake of Cyrus ; for, of all the monarchs who had reigned over these

* Abii Scythæ.

nations, there was none he admired more than this king and Semiramis, because they had surpassed all the rest in courage and glorious actions. He therefore offered very advantageous conditions to the besieged, but they were so blindly obstinate as to reject them, and that even with pride and insolence ; upon which he stormed their city, abandoning the plunder of it to his soldiers, and razed it to the very foundations. From hence he went to the other city which Craterus was besieging. No place ever made a more vigorous defence ; for Alexander lost his best soldiers before it, and was himself exposed to very great danger ; a stone striking him with so much violence on the head, that it deprived him of his senses. The whole army indeed thought him dead, which threw them into tears ; but this prince, whom no danger or disappointment could depress, pushed on the siege with greater vigour than before, the instant he recovered, without staying till his wound was healed, anger adding fresh fuel to his natural ardour. Having therefore caused the wall to be sapped, he made a large breach in it, and entered the city, which he burned to the ground, and put all the inhabitants to the sword. Several other cities met with the same fate. This was a third rebellion of the Sogdians, who would not be quiet, though Alexander had pardoned them twice before. They lost above an hundred and twenty thousand men in these different sieges. The king afterwards sent Menedemus with three thousand foot and eight hundred horse to Maracanda, whence Spitamenes had driven the Macedonian garrison, and shut himself up there.

With regard to himself, he returned back and encamped on the Iaxarthes, where he surrounded with walls the whole spot of ground which his army had covered, and built a city on it, containing * sixty furlongs in circumference, which he also called Alexandria ; having before built several of that name. He caused the workmen to make such dispatch, that in less than twenty days the ramparts were raised, and the houses built ; and indeed there was a great emulation among the soldiers, who should get his work done soonest, every one of them having had his portion allotted him : And to people his new city, he ransomed all the prisoners he could meet with, settled several Macedonians there, who were worn out in the service, and permitted many natives of the country, at their own request, to inhabit it.

But the king of those Scythians who live on the other side

* Three leagues.

of the Iaxarthes, seeing that this city, built on a river, was a kind of yoke to them, they sent a great body of soldiers to demolish it, and to drive the Macedonians to a greater distance. Alexander, who had no design of attacking the Scythians, finding them make several incursions, even in his sight, in a very insolent manner, was very much perplexed; especially when advice was brought him at the same time, that the body of troops he had ordered to Maracanda, had been all, a very few excepted, cut to pieces. Such a number of obstacles would have discouraged any one but an Alexander: for the Sogdians had taken up arms, and the Bactrians also; his army was harassed by the Scythians; he himself was brought so low, that he was not able to stand upright, to mount on horseback, to speak to his forces, or give a single order. To increase this affliction, he found his army no ways inclined to attempt the passage of the river in sight of the enemy, who were drawn up in battle-array. The king continued in the utmost perplexity all night long; however, his courage surmounted all things. Being told, that the auspices were not propitious, he forced the soothsayers to substitute favourable ones in their stead. The day beginning to break, he put on his coat of mail, and showed himself to the soldiers, who had not seen him since the last wound he had received. These held their king in such high veneration, that only his presence immediately removed all their fears, so that they shed tears of joy, and went unanimously and paid him their respects; entreating him to lead them against the enemy, against whom they before had refused to march. They worked so hard at the rafts or floats, that in three days time they had made twelve thousand; and also prepared a great number of skins for that purpose.

As every thing was ready for the march, several Scythian ambassadors arrived, to the number of twenty, according to the custom of their country, who all rode through the camp, desiring to speak with the king. Alexander having sent for them into his tent, desired them to sit down. They gazed attentively upon him a long time, without speaking a single word, being very probably surprised, as they formed a judgement of men from their air and stature, to find that his did not answer the high idea they entertained of him from his fame. The oldest of the ambassadors made this speech, which, as Quintus Curtius relates it, is pretty long; however, as it is very curious, I shall present my readers with the greatest part of it.

“ Had the gods given thee a body proportionable to thy ambition, the whole universe would have been too little for thee. With one hand thou wouldest touch the east, and with the other the west ; and not satisfied with this, thou wouldest follow the sun, and know where he hides himself. Such as thou art, thou yet aspirest after what it will be impossible for thee to attain. Thou crossest over from Europe into Asia ; and when thou shalt have subdued all the race of men, then thou wilt make war against rivers, forests, and wild beasts. Dost thou not know, that tall trees are many years a-growing, but may be tore up in an hour’s time ; that the lion serves sometimes for food to the smallest birds ; that iron, though so very hard, is consumed by rust ; in a word, that there is nothing so strong which may not be destroyed by the weakest thing ?

“ What have we to do with thee ? We never set foot in thy country. May not those who inhabit woods, be allowed to live without knowing who thou art, and whence thou comest ! We will neither command over, nor submit to any man. And that thou mayest be sensible what kind of people the Scythians are, know, that we received from heaven, as a rich present, a yoke of oxen, a ploughshare, a dart, a javelin, and a cup. These we make use of, both with our friends, and against our enemies. To our friends we give corn, which we procure by the labour of our oxen ; with them we offer wine to the gods in our cup ; and with regard to our enemies, we combat them at a distance with our arrows, and near at hand with our javelins. * It is with these we formerly conquered the most warlike nations, subdued the most powerful kings, laid waste all Asia, and opened ourselves a way into the heart of Egypt.

“ But thou, who boastest thy coming to extirpate robbers, thou thyself art the greatest robber upon earth. Thou hast plundered all nations thou overcamest. Thou hast possessed thyself of Lydia, invaded Syria, Persia, and Bactriana ; thou art forming a design to march as far as India, and thou now comest hither to seize upon our herds of cattle. The great possessions thou hast, only make thee covet more eagerly what thou hast not. Dost thou not see how long

* This is to be understood of the famous irruption of the Scythians, who advanced as far as Egypt, and possessed themselves of Upper Asia for twenty-eight years. See the second volume of this work, in the history of the Assyrians. I have not followed Q. Curtius literally in this place, his sense being pretty much embarrassed.

“ the Bactrians have checked thy progress ? Whilst thou art
“ subduing these, the Sogdians revolt, and victory is to thee
“ only the occasion of war.

“ Pass but the Iaxarthes, and thou wilt behold the great
“ extent of our plains. It will be in vain for thee to pursue
“ the Scythians ; and I defy thee ever to overtake them.
“ Our poverty will be more active than thy army, laden with
“ the spoils of so many nations ; and, when thou shalt fancy
“ us at a great distance, thou wilt see us rush suddenly on
“ thy camp ; for we pursue, and fly from our enemies, with
“ equal speed. I am informed that the Greeks speak jest-
“ ingly of the Scythian solitudes, and that they are even be-
“ come a proverb ; but we are fonder of our deserts, than of
“ thy great cities and fruitful plains. Let me observe to thee,
“ that fortune is slippery ; hold her fast, therefore, for fear
“ she should escape thee. Put a curb to thy felicity, if thou
“ desirest to continue in possession of it.

“ If thou art a god, thou oughtest to do good to mortals,
“ and not deprive them of their possessions : if thou art a
“ mere man, reflect always on what thou art. They whom
“ thou shalt not molest will be thy true friends, the strongest
“ friendships being contracted between equals ; and they are
“ esteemed equals, who have not tried their strength against
“ each other : but do not imagine that those whom thou con-
“ querest can love thee ; for there is no such thing as friend-
“ ship between a master and his slave, and a forced peace is
“ soon followed by a war.

“ To conclude, * do not fancy that the Scythians will take
“ an oath in their concluding an alliance. The only oath
“ among them, is to keep their word without swearing. Such
“ cautions as these do indeed become Greeks, who sign their
“ treaties, and call upon the gods to witness them ; but, with
“ regard to us, our religion consists in being sincere, and in
“ keeping the promises we have made. That man who is
“ not ashamed to break his word with men, is not ashamed of
“ deceiving the gods ; and of what use could friends be to
“ thee whom thou couldst not trust ! Consider that we will
“ guard both Europe and Asia for thee. We extend as far as
“ Thrace, and we are told that this country is contiguous to
“ Macedonia. The river Iaxarthes only divides us from Bac-

* *Jurando gratium Scythas fancire ne credideris : colendo fidem jurant. Gra-
corum ista cautio est, qui acta consignant, et deos invocant ; non religionem in ipsa
fide novimus. Qui non reverentur homines, fallunt deos.*—Q. Curt.

“ triana. Thus we are thy neighbours on both sides. Consider, therefore, whether thou wilt have us for friends, or “ enemies.”

The Barbarian spoke thus: to whom the king made a very short answer; “ That he would take advantage both of his own good fortune, and of their counsel; of his good fortune, by still continuing to rely upon it; and of their counsel, by not attempting any thing rashly.” Having dismissed the ambassadors, his army embarked on the rafts, which by this time were got ready. In the front, he placed such as carried bucklers, and made them kneel down, the better to secure themselves from the arrows of the enemy. Behind these were those who worked the machines for discharging arrows and stones, covered on all sides with soldiers armed cap-a-pee. The rest who followed the engines, had their shields fixed together over their heads, in form of a tortoise, by which they defended the sailors, who wore corslets. The like order and disposition was observed in the other rafts or floats which carried the horse.

The army found great difficulty in crossing. Every thing conspired to intimidate them; the clamour and confusion, that are inseparable from such an enterprise; the rapidity of the stream, which carried away every thing with it; and the sight of a numerous army drawn up in battle-array, on the opposite shore. However, the presence of Alexander, who was ever the foremost in encountering dangers, made them neglect their own safety, and be concerned for his only. As soon as the Macedonians began to draw near the shore, they who carried shields rose up together, when throwing their javelins with a strong arm, every weapon did execution. When they perceived that the enemy, overpowered with that shower of shafts, began to retire, and draw their horses back, they leaped on the shore with incredible swiftness, and animating one another, began the charge with vigour. In this disorder, the troopers, whose horses were ready bridled, rushed upon the enemy, and quite broke them. The king could not be heard, by reason of the faintness of his voice; but the example he set spoke for him.

And now nothing was heard in the Macedonian army but shouts of joy and victory, whilst they continued to attack the Barbarians with the utmost fury. The latter, not being able to stand so fierce an onset, fled as fast as their horses could carry them; for these were the cavalry only. Though the king was very weak, he nevertheless pursued them briskly a

long way, till being at last quite spent, he was obliged to stop. After commanding his troops to pursue them as long as they could see, he withdrew to the camp in order to repose himself, and to wait the return of his forces. The Macedonians had already gone beyond the boundaries or limits of Bacchus, which were marked out by great stones ranged pretty close one to the other, and by great trees, the trunks of which were covered with ivy. However, the heat of the pursuit carried them still farther, and they did not return back into the camp till after midnight; having killed a great number of the enemy, and taken many more prisoners, with eighteen hundred horses, all which they drove before them. On Alexander's side there were but sixty troopers slain, and about an hundred foot, with a thousand wounded. Alexander sent back to the Scythians all their prisoners without ransom, to show, that not animosity, but a thirst of glory, had prompted him to make war against so valiant a nation.

The report of this victory, and much more the clemency with which the king treated the vanquished, greatly increased his reputation. The Scythians had always been considered as invincible; but after their defeat, it was owned that every nation in the world ought to yield to the Macedonians. The Sacæ, who were a powerful nation, sent an embassy to Alexander, by which they submitted themselves to him, and requested his friendship. The Scythians themselves made an apology by their ambassadors; throwing the whole blame of what had happened on some few people, and declaring that they were ready to obey all the commands of the victorious prince.

Alexander, being so happily freed from the care and trouble of this important war, bent his whole thoughts on Maracanda, in which the traitor Spitamenes had fortified himself. At the first news of Alexander's approach, he had fled away and withdrawn into Bactriana. The king pursued him thither, but despairing to come up with him, he returned back and sacked Sogdiana, which is watered by the river Polytimetus.

Among the Sogdians that were taken prisoners, there were thirty young men, who were well shaped and very comely, and the greatest lords of the country. These being told that they were led to execution by Alexander's command, began to sing songs of joy, to leap and dance, discovering all the indications of an immoderate joy. The king, surprised to see them go to death with so much gaiety, had them brought before him; when he asked them, how they came to break into

such transports of joy, when they saw death before their eyes? They answered, that they should have been afflicted, had any other person but himself put them to death; but as they would be restored to their ancestors by the command of so great a monarch, who had vanquished all nations, they blessed this death; a death so glorious, that the bravest men would wish to die the same. Alexander, admiring their magnanimity, asked whether they would desire to be pardoned, upon condition that they should no longer be his enemies! They answered, he might be assured they had never been his enemies; but that, as he had attacked them, they had defended themselves; and that, had they been applied to in a gentle manner, and not attacked by force and violence, they would have vied with him in politeness and generosity. The king asked them farther, what pledges they would give him of their faith and sincerity? "No other," answered they, "but the same life we receive from your goodness, and which we shall always be ready to give back, whenever you shall require it." And, indeed, they were as good as their word. Four of them, whom he took into his body-guard, endeavoured to rival the Macedonians in zeal and fidelity.

The king, after having left a small number of forces in Sogdiana, marched to Bactria, where, having assembled all his generals, he commanded Bessus to be brought before them; when, after reproaching him for his treachery, and causing his nose and ears to be cut off, he sent him to Ecbatana, there to suffer whatever punishment Darius' mother should think proper to inflict upon him. Plutarch has left us an account of this execution. Four trees were bent by main force, one towards the other; and to each of these trees one of the limbs of this traitor's body was fastened. Afterwards, these trees being let return to their natural position, they flew back with so much violence, that each tore away the limb that was fixed to it, and so quartered him. The same punishment is at this day inflicted on persons convicted of high treason, who are torn to pieces by four horses.

Alexander received at this time, both from Macedonia and Greece, a large number of recruits, amounting to upwards of sixteen thousand men. By this considerable reinforcement he was enabled to subdue all those who had rebelled; and to curb them for the future, he built several fortresses in Margiana.

^u All things were now restored to a profound tranquillity.

There remained but one strong hold, called Petra Oxiana, or the rock of Oxus, which was defended by Arimazes, a native of Sogdiana, with thirty thousand soldiers under his command, and ammunition and provisions for two years. This rock, which was very high and craggy on all sides, was accessible only by a single path that was cut in it. The king, after viewing its works, was a long time in suspense whether he should besiege it ; but, as it was his character to aim at the marvellous in all things, and to attempt impossibilities, he resolved to try if he could overcome, on this occasion, nature itself, which seemed to have fortified this rock in such a manner as had rendered it absolutely impregnable. However, before he formed the siege, he summoned those Barbarians, but in mild terms, to submit to him. Arimazes received this offer in a very haughty manner ; and after using several insulting expressions, asked, “ whether Alexander, who was able “ to do all things, could fly also ; and whether nature had, on “ a sudden, given him wings ? ”

Alexander was highly exasperated at this answer. He therefore gave orders for selecting from among the mountaineers who were in his army, three hundred of the most active and dextrous. These being brought to him, he addressed them thus : “ It was in your company, brave young men, “ that I stormed such places as were thought impregnable ; “ that I made my way over mountains covered with eternal “ snows ; crossed rivers, and broke through the passes of “ Cilicia. This rock, which you see, has but one outlet, “ which alone is defended by the Barbarians, who neglect “ every other part. There is no watch or centinel, except on “ that side which faces our camp. If you search very nar- “ rowly, you certainly will meet with some path that leads to “ the top of the rock. Nothing has been made so inaccessible “ by nature, as not to be surmounted by valour ; and it was “ only by our attempting, what no one before had hopes of “ effecting, that we possessed ourselves of Asia. Get up to “ the summit, and when you shall have made yourselves mas- “ ters of it, set up a white standard there as a signal ; and be “ assured, that I then will certainly disengage you from the “ enemy, and draw them upon myself, by making a diversion.” At the same time that the king gave out this order, he made them the most noble promises ; but the pleasing him was considered by them as the greatest of all rewards. Fired therefore with the noblest ardour, and fancying they had already reached the summit, they set out, after having provided themselves

with wedges to drive into the stones, cramp-irons, and thick ropes.

The king went round the mountain with them, and commanded them to begin their march about the second watch of the night *, by that part which should seem to them of easiest access; beseeching the gods to guide their steps. They then took provisions for two days: and being armed with swords and javelins only, they began to ascend the mountain, walking sometimes on foot; afterwards, when it was necessary for them to climb, some forced their wedges into the stones which projected forwards, and by that means raised themselves; others thrust their cramp-irons into the stones that were frozen, to keep themselves from falling in so slippery a way; in fine, others driving in their wedges with great strength, made them serve as so many scaling ladders. They spent the whole day in this manner, hanging against the rock, and exposed to numerous dangers and difficulties, being obliged to struggle at the same time with snow, cold, and wind. Nevertheless, the hardest task was yet to come; and the farther they advanced, the higher the rock seemed to rise. But that which terrified them most, was the sad spectacle of some of their comrades falling down precipices, whose unhappy fate was a warning to them what they themselves might expect. Notwithstanding this, they still advanced forward, and exerted themselves so vigorously, that, in spite of all these difficulties, they at last got to the top of the rock. They then were inexpressibly weary, and many of them had even lost the use of some of their limbs. Night and drowsiness came upon them at the same time, so that, dispersing themselves in such distant parts of the rock as were free from snows, they lay down in them, and slept till day-break. At last, waking from a deep sleep, and looking on all sides to discover the place where so many people could lie hid, they saw smoke below them, which showed them the haunt of the enemy. They then put up the signal, as had been agreed; and their whole company drawing up, thirty-two were found wanting, who had lost their lives in the ascent.

In the mean time, the king, equally fired with a desire of storming the fortress, and struck with the visible dangers to which those men were exposed, continued on foot the whole day, gazing upon the rock, and he himself did not retire to rest till dark night. The next morning, by peep of day, he was the first who perceived the signal. Nevertheless, he was

* About ten o'clock.

still in doubt whether he might trust his eyes, because of the false splendour which breaks out at day-break ; but the light increasing, he was sure of what he saw. Sending therefore for Cophes, who before, by his command, had sounded the Barbarians, he dispatched him a second time with an exhortation to think better of the matter ; and in case they should still depend upon the strength of the place, he then was ordered to show them the band of men behind their backs, who were got to the summit of the rock. Cophes employed all the arguments possible, to engage Arimazes to capitulate, representing to him, that he would gain the king's favour, in case he did not interrupt the great designs he meditated, by obliging him to make some stay before that rock. Arimazes sent a haughtier and more insolent answer than before, and commanded him to retire. Then Cophes, taking him by the hand, desired he would come out of the cave with him, which the Barbarian doing, he shewed him the Macedonians posted over his head, and said in an insulting tone of voice, " You see " that Alexander's soldiers have wings." In the mean time, the trumpets were heard to sound in every part of the Macedonian camp, and the whole army shouted aloud, and cried, " Victory !" These things, though of little consequence in themselves, did nevertheless, as often happens, throw the Barbarians into so great a consternation, that without once reflecting how few were got to the summit, they thought themselves lost. Upon this Cophes was recalled, and thirty of the chiefs among the Barbarians were sent back with him, who agreed to surrender up the place, upon condition that their lives might be spared. The king, notwithstanding the strong opposition he might meet with, was however so exasperated at the haughtiness of Arimazes, that he refused to grant them any terms of capitulation. A blind and rash confidence in his own good fortune, which had never failed him, made him insensible to every danger. Arimazes, on the other side, blinded by fear, and concluding himself absolutely lost, came down with his relations, and the principal nobility of the country, into Alexander's camp. But this prince, who was not master of his anger, forgetting what the faith of treaty and humanity required on this occasion, caused them all to be scourged with rods, and afterwards to be fixed to crosses, at the foot of the same rock. The multitudes of people who surrendered, with all the booty, were given to the inhabitants of the cities which had been newly founded in those parts ; and Artabazus was left governor of the rock, and the whole province round it.

SECTION XIV.

DEATH OF CLITUS. EXPEDITIONS OF ALEXANDER. HE COMMANDS WORSHIP TO BE PAID TO HIMSELF.

ALEXANDER^o, having subdued the Massagetae and the Dahæ, entered Bazaria. In this province are a great number of large parks stocked with deer; here the king took the diversion of hunting, in which he was exposed to very great peril; for a lion of an enormous size advanced directly to him, but he killed him with a single thrust. Although Alexander came off victorious on this occasion, yet the Macedonians, alarmed at the danger he had run, and the whole army in his person, gave orders, pursuant to the custom of their country, that the king should go no more a-hunting on foot, without being attended by some of his courtiers and officers. They were sensible that a king is not born for his own sake, but for that of his subjects; that he ought to be careful of his own person for their sakes, and reserve his courage for other dangers; and that the being famous for killing beasts, a reputation unworthy of a great prince, ought not to be purchased so dear.

From hence he advanced to Maracanda, where he quelled some tumults which had broke out in that country. Artabazus requesting to be discharged from the government of that province, by reason of his great age, he appointed Clitus his successor. He was an old officer, who had fought under Philip, and signalized himself on many occasions. At the battle of the Granicus, as Alexander was fighting bare-headed, and Rosaces had his arm raised, in order to strike him behind, he covered the king with his shield, and cut off the Barbarian's hand. Hellanice, his sister, had nursed Alexander; and he loved her with as much tenderness as if she had been his own mother. As the king, from these several considerations, had a very great respect for Clitus, he intrusted him with the government of one of the most important provinces of his empire, and ordered him to set out the next day.

Before his departure, Clitus was invited in the evening to an entertainment, in which the king *, after drinking immo-

^o Q. Curt. I. viii. p. 1.—8. Arrian. I. iv. p. 161.—171. Plut. in Alex. p. 693.—696. Justin. I. vii. c. 6, 7.

* In quo Rex, cum multo incaluisset mero, immodicus æstimator sui, celebrare quæ gesserat cœpit; gravis etiam cœrum auribus, qui sentiebant vera memorari.—Q. Curt.

derately, began to celebrate his own exploits ; and was so excessively lavish of self-commendation, that he even shocked those very persons who knew that he spoke truth. However, the oldest men in the company held their peace, till, beginning to depreciate the warlike acts of Philip, he boasted,

“ That the famous victory of Chæronæa was won by his
 “ means ; and that the glory of so immortal a battle had been
 “ torn from him by the malice and jealousy of his father :
 “ That in the insurrection * which broke out between the
 “ Macedonians and mercenary Greeks, Philip, fainting away
 “ after the wounds he had received in that tumult, had laid
 “ himself on the ground, and could not think of a better me-
 “ thod to save himself, than by lying along as dead ; and
 “ on this occasion he had covered him with his shield, and
 “ killed with his own hands those who attempted to fall upon
 “ him ; but that his father could never prevail upon himself to
 “ confess this circumstance ingenuously, being vexed that he
 “ owed his life to his own son : That in a war against the Illy-
 “ riens, he was the only person who had done any thing, Philip
 “ having had no manner of share in it, and hearing of the
 “ defeat of the enemy, no otherwise than by the letters he sent
 “ him : That the persons worthy of praise, were not such as
 “ initiated † themselves in the mysteries of the Samothracians,
 “ when they ought to have laid waste all Asia with fire and
 “ sword, but those who had atchieved such mighty exploits
 “ as surpassed all belief.”

These and the like discourses were very pleasing to the young men, but were very shocking to those advanced in years ; especially for Philip's sake, under whom they had fought many years. Clitus, who also was intoxicated, turning about to those who sat below him at table, quoted to them a passage from ‡ Euripides, but in such a manner that the king could only hear his voice, and not the words distinctly. The sense of this passage was, “ That the Greeks had done
 “ very wrong in ordaining, that in the inscriptions engraved
 “ on trophies, the names of kings only should be mentioned ;
 “ because ||, by these means, brave men were robbed of the

* This sedition is not mentioned in any other place.

† It was usual for generals, before they set out on their expeditions, to cause themselves to be initiated in these mysteries, and offer sacrifices to the gods who presided in them. Possibly Philip, by observing this ceremony, had delayed some enterprise.

‡ In his Andromache.

|| *Alieno enim sanguine partam gloriam intercipi.*—Q. Curt.

“ glory they had purchased with their blood.” The king, suspecting Clitus had let drop some disobliging expressions, asked those who sat nearest him, what he had said? As no one answered, Clitus, raising his voice by degrees, began to relate the actions of Philip, and his wars in Greece, preferring them to whatever was doing at that time; which created a great dispute between the young and old men. Though the king was prodigiously vexed in his mind, he nevertheless stifled his resentment, and seemed to listen very patiently to all Clitus spoke to his prejudice. It is probable he would have quite suppressed his passion, had Clitus stopped there; but the latter growing more and more insolent, as if determined to exasperate and insult the king, went such lengths as to defend Parmenio publicly; and to assert, that the destroying of Thebes was but trifling in comparison to the victory which Philip had gained over the Athenians; and that the old Macedonians, though sometimes unsuccessful, were greatly superior to those who were so rash as to despise them.

Alexander telling him, that in giving cowardice the name of ill success, he was pleading his own cause; Clitus rises up, with his eyes sparkling with wine and anger, “ It is nevertheless ‘ this hand,’ said he to him, extending it at the same time, ‘ that saved your life at the battle of the Granicus. It is the ‘ blood and wounds of these very Macedonians, who are accused of cowardice, that raised you to this grandeur. But ‘ the tragical end of Parnienio shows what reward they and ‘ myself may expect for all our services.’ ” The last reproach stung Alexander; however, he still restrained his passion, and only commanded him to leave the table. “ He is in the ‘ right,’ says Clitus, as he rose up, ‘ not to bear freeborn ‘ men at his table, who can only tell him truth. He will do ‘ well to pass his life among Barbarians and slaves, who will ‘ be proud to pay their adoration to his Persian girdle, and his ‘ white robe.’ ” But now the king, no longer able to suppress his rage, snatched a javelin from one of his guards, and would have killed Clitus on the spot, had not the courtiers withheld his arm, and Clitus been forced, but with great difficulty, out of the hall. However, he returned into it that moment by another door, singing with an air of insolence, verses reflecting highly on the prince, who seeing the general near him, struck him with his javelin, and laid him dead at his feet, crying out at the same time, “ Go now to Philip, to Parmenio, and to ‘ Attalus.”

The king’s anger being in a manner extinguished on a sud-

den in the blood of Clitus, his crime displayed itself to him in its blackest and most dreadful light. He had murdered a man who indeed had abused his patience, but then he had always served him with the utmost zeal and fidelity, and saved his life, though he was ashamed to own it. He had that instant performed the vile office of an executioner, in punishing, by an horrid murder, the uttering of some indiscreet words, which might be imputed to the fumes of wine. With what face could he appear before the sister of Clitus, his nurse, and offer her a hand imbrued in her brother's blood? Upon this he threw himself on his friend's body, forced out the javelin, and would have dispatched himself with it, had not the guards who rushed in upon him, laid hold of his hands, and forcibly carried him into his own apartment.

He passed that night and the next day in tears. After that groans and lamentations had quite wasted his spirits, he continued speechless, stretched on the ground, and only venting deep sighs. But his friends, fearing his silence would be fatal, forced themselves into his chamber. The king took very little notice of the words that were employed to comfort him, but Aristander the soothsayer, putting him in mind of a dream, in which he imagined he saw Clitus, clothed in a black robe and seated at table; and declaring, that all which had then happened was appointed by the eternal decree of fate, Alexander appeared a little easier in his mind. He next was addressed by two philosophers, Calisthenes and Anaxarchus. The former went up to him with an air of humanity and tenderness, and endeavoured to suppress his grief, by agreeably insinuating himself, and endeavoured to make him recal his reason, by reflections of a solid nature, drawn from the very essence of philosophy, and by carefully shunning all such expressions as might renew his affliction, and fret a wound, which, as it was still bleeding, required to be touched with the gentlest hand. But Anaxarchus did not observe this decorum; for the moment he entered, he cried aloud, "How! " is this Alexander, on whom the eyes of the whole world are "fixed? Behold him here extended on the floor, shedding "floods of tears like the meanest slave! Does not he know "that he himself is a supreme law to his subjects; that "he conquered merely to raise himself to the exalted dig- "nity of lord and sovereign, and not to subject himself to a "vain opinion?" The king was determined to starve himself; so that it was with the utmost difficulty that his friends prevailed with him to take a little sustenance. The Macedo-

nians declared by a decree, that Clitus had been very justly killed; to which decree, Anaxarchus the philosopher had given occasion, by asserting, that the will of princes is the supreme law of the state. Alas! how weak are all such reflections against the cries of a justly alarmed conscience, which can never be quieted, either by flattery or false arguments!

It must be confessed, that Clitus had committed an inexcusable fault. It was indeed his duty, not to join in discourses calculated to suil the glory of Philip his benefactor; but to show his dislike of what was said, by a mournful but modest silence. He possibly might have been allowed to speak in favour of the late monarch, provided he had expressed himself with prudence and moderation. Had such a reservedness been unsuccessful, he might justly have merited pity, and would not have been criminal. But by breaking into injurious and shocking reproaches, he quite forgot the veneration due to the sacred character of kings; with regard to whom, how unjustly soever they may act, not only every contemptuous insulting expression is forbidden, but every disrespectful and unguarded word; they being the representatives of God himself.

It must nevertheless be confessed, that the circumstance of the banquet extenuates very much, or throws, in some measure, a veil over Clitus' fault. When a prince invites a subject to a feast; when he makes him the companion of debauch, and in person excites him to quaff immoderately; a king, on such an occasion, seems to forget his dignity, and to permit his subjects to forget it also; he gives a sanction, as it were, to the liberties, familiarities, and sudden flights which wine commonly inspires. And should he be displeased with a subject for equalling himself with him, he ought to blame himself for having first raised a subject so high. A fault committed under these circumstances is always a fault; but then it never ought to be expiated by the blood of the offender.

A certain author* compares anger, when united with power, to thunder; and, indeed, what havock does it not then make? But how dreadful must it be, when joined with drunkenness! We see this in Alexander. How unhappy was that prince, not to have endeavoured to subdue those two vices in his youth; and † to have been confirmed in them, from the example of one

* Fulmen est, ubi cum potestate habitat iracundia.—*Publ. Syr.*

† Nec minus error eorum nocet inoribus, si quidem, Leonides Alexandri paedagogus, ut a Babylonio Diogene traditur, quibusdam eum vitiis imbiuit, quae robustum quoque et jam maximum regem ab illa institutione puerili sunt prosecuta.—*Quintil. l. i. c. 1.*

of his tutors ! For it is asserted, that both were the consequences of his education. But what can be meaner or more unworthy a king, than drinking to excess ? What can be more fatal or bloody, than the transports of anger ? * Alexander, who had overcome so many nations, was himself conquered by these two vices, which throw a shade over the glory of his brightest actions. The reason of this, says Seneca, is, he endeavoured more to vanquish others than to subdue himself; not knowing that to triumph over our passions is of all conquests the most glorious.

Alexander, after continuing ten days in Maracanda, in order to recover his spirits, marched into Xenippa, a province bordering upon Scythia, whither some rebels were retired, all of whom he subjected, and gave them a free pardon. From thence he set forward with his army towards the rock Choriensis, of which Sysimethres was governor. All access to it seemed absolutely impracticable; nevertheless, he at last got near it, after having passed through numberless difficulties; and by the mediation of Oxartes, a prince of that country who had adhered to Alexander, he prevailed with Sysimethres to surrender. The king after this left him the government of that place, and promised him very great advantages in case he continued faithful.

Alexander had resolved to attack the Dahæ, because Spitanenes, the chief of the rebels, was among them; but the felicity which always attended him, spared him that labour. The wife of this Barbarian, being no longer able to bear the vagabond wretched life her husband had forced her to lead, and having often entreated him, but in vain, to surrender himself to the conqueror, she herself murdered him in the night; and quite covered with his blood, went and carried his head to the king. Alexander was shocked at so horrid a spectacle, and ordered her to be driven ignominiously from the camp.

Alexander, after having drawn his army out of the garrisons, where they had wintered three months, marched towards a country called Gabaza. In his way he met with a dreadful storm. Flashes of lightning coming thick one upon the other, dazzled the eyes of the soldiers, and entirely discouraged them. It thundered almost incessantly, and the thunder-bolts fell every moment at the feet of the soldiers; so that they did not

* Victor tot regum atque populorum, iræ succubuit. Id enim egerat, ut omnia potius haberet in potestate, quam affectus—Imperare sibi, maximum imperium est, —Senec. epist. exiii.

dare either to stand still or advance forward. On a sudden, a violent shower of rain, mixed with hail, came pouring down like a flood; and so extreme was the cold in this country, that it froze the rain as soon as it fell. The sufferings of the army on this occasion were insupportable. The king, who was the only person invincible to these calamities, rode up and down among the soldiers; comforted and animated them; and pointing at smoke which issued from some distant huts, entreated them to march to them with all the speed possible. Having given orders for the felling of a great number of trees, and laying them in heaps up and down, he had fires made in different places, and by this means saved the army: but upwards of a thousand men lost their lives. The king made up to the officers and soldiers the several losses they had sustained during this fatal storm.

When they were recovered so well as to be able to march, he went into the country of the Sacæ, which he soon overrun and laid waste. Soon after this, Oxartes received him in his palace, and invited him to a sumptuous banquet, in which he displayed all the magnificence of the Barbarians. He had a daughter, called Roxana, a young lady, whose exquisite beauty was heightened by all the charms of wit and good sense. Alexander found her charms irresistible, and made her his wife; covering his passion with the specious pretence of uniting the two nations in such bands as should improve their mutual harmony, by blending their interests, and throwing down all distinctions between the conquerors and the conquered. This marriage displeased the Macedonians very much, and exasperated his chief courtiers, to see him make one of his slaves his father-in-law: but as, * after his murdering Clitus, no one dared to speak to him with freedom, they applauded what he did with their eyes and countenances, which can adapt themselves wonderfully to flattery and servile complacency.

In fine, having resolved to march into India, and embark from thence on the ocean, he commanded, in order that nothing might be left behind to check his designs, that thirty thousand young men should be brought him, all completely armed, out of the several provinces, to serve him at the same time as hostages and soldiers. In the mean while, he sent Craterus against some of the rebels, whom he easily defeated.

* *Sed, post Clyti cædem, libertate sublata, vultu, qui maxime servit, assentie-
wantur.—Q. Curt.*

Polysperchon likewise subdued a country called Bubacene ; so that all things being in perfect tranquillity, Alexander bent his whole thoughts to the carrying on the war with India. This country was considered as the richest in the world, not only in gold, but in pearls and precious stones, with which the inhabitants adorn themselves, but with more luxury than gracefulness. It was related, that the swords of the soldiers were of gold and ivory ; and the king, now the greatest monarch in the world, being determined not to yield to any person whatsoever in any circumstance, caused the swords of his soldiers to be set off with silver plates, put golden bridles to the horses, had the coats of mail brightened with gold and silver, and prepared to march for this enterprise, at the head of one hundred and twenty thousand men, all equipped with the magnificence above described.

All things being ready for their setting out, he thought proper to reveal the design he had so long meditated, viz. to have divine honours paid him ; and was solely intent on the means for putting that design in execution. He was resolved, not only to be called, but to be believed, the son of Jupiter ; as if it had been possible for him to command as absolutely over the mind as over the tongue, and that the Macedonians would coudescend to fall prostrate, and adore him after the Persian manner.

To * soothe and cherish these ridiculous pretensions, there were not wanting flatterers, those common pests of courts, who are more dangerous to princes than the arms of their enemies. The Macedonians, indeed, would not stoop to this base adulatation ; all of them, to a man, refusing to vary, in any manner, from the customs of their country. The whole evil was owing to some Greeks whose depraved manners were a scandal to their profession of teaching virtue and the sciences. These, though the mean refuse of Greece, were nevertheless in greater credit with the king, than either the princes of his blood, or the generals of his army : it was such creatures as these that placed him in the skies ; and published, wherever they came, that Hercules, Bacchus, Castor and Pollux, would resign their seats to this new deity.

He therefore appointed a festival, and made an incredibly pompous banquet, to which he invited the greatest lords of his court, both Macedonians and Greeks, and most of the

* Non deerat talia concupiscenti perniciosa adulatio, perpetuum malum regum, quorum opus saepius assentatio, quam hostis, evertit.—Q. Curt.

highest quality among the Persians. With these he sat down at table for some time, after which he withdrew. Upon this Cleon, one of his flatterers, began to speak, and expatiated very much on the praises of the king, as had before been agreed upon. He made a long detail of the high obligations they had to him, all which, he observed, they might acknowledge and repay at a very easy expence, merely with two grains of incense, which they should offer him as to a god, without the least scruple, since they believed him such. To this purpose he cited the example of the Persians. He took notice, that Hercules himself, and Bacchus, were not ranked among the deities, till after they had surmounted the envy of their contemporaries. That in case the rest should not care to pay this justice to Alexander's merit, he himself was resolved to show them the way, and to worship him if he should come into the hall. But that all of them must do their duty, especially those that professed wisdom, who ought to serve to the rest as an example of the veneration due to so great a monarch.

It appeared plainly that this speech was directed to Callisthenes. ^p He was related to Aristotle, who had presented him to Alexander his pupil, that he might attend upon that monarch in the war of Persia. He was considered, upon account of his wisdom and gravity, as the fittest person to give him such wholesome counsel, as the most capable of preserving him from those excesses into which his youth and fiery temper might hurry him: but he was accused of not possessing the gentle, insinuating behaviour of courts; and of ^{*} not knowing a certain medium between grovelling complacency and inflexible obstinacy. Aristotle had attempted, but to no purpose, to soften the severity of his temper; and foreseeing the ill consequences with which his disagreeable liberty of speaking his mind might be attended, he used often to repeat the following verse of Homer [†] to him;

“ My son, thy freedom will abridge thy days.”

And his prediction was but too true.

This philosopher, seeing that every one, on this occasion, continued in a deep silence, and that the eyes of the whole

^p Diod. Laert. in Aristot. l. v. p. 303.

^{*} Inter abruptam contumaciam et deforme obsequium pergere iter ambitione ac periculis vacuum.—Tacit. Annal. l. iv. c. 20.

[†] Ωκυμογος δη μοι τίκος τραστος δε αγορέων.—Il. 18. v. 95.

assembly were fixed on him, made a speech, which appears to me just enough. However, it often happens, when a subject is bound in duty to oppose the inclinations of his sovereign, that the most cautious and most respectful zeal is considered as insolence and rebellion. "Had the king," said he, "been present when thou madest thy speech, none among us would then have attempted to answer thee, for he himself would have interrupted thee, and not have suffered thee to prompt him to assume the custom of Barbarians, in casting an odium on his person and glory, by so servile an adulation. But since he is absent, I will answer thee in his name. I consider Alexander as worthy of all the honours that can be paid a mortal; but there is a difference between the worship of the gods and that of men. The former includes temples, altars, prayers, and sacrifices; the latter is confined to praises only, and awful respect. We salute the latter, and look upon it as glorious to pay them submission, obedience, and fidelity; but we adore the former; we institute festivals to their honour, and sing hymns and spiritual songs to their glory. The worship of the gods does itself vary, according to their rank; and the homage we pay to Castor and Pollux is not like that with which we adore Mercury and Jupiter. We must not therefore confound all things, either by bringing down the gods to the condition of mortals, or by raising a mortal to the state of a god. Alexander would be justly offended, should we pay to another person the homage due to his sacred person only; ought we not to dread the indignation of the gods as much, should we bestow upon mortals the honours due to them alone? I am sensible that our monarch is vastly superior to the rest; he is the greatest of kings, and the most glorious of all conquerors; but then he is a man, not a god. To obtain this title, he must first be divested of his mortal frame; but this is greatly our interest to wish may not happen, but as late as possible. The Greeks did not worship Hercules till after his death; and that not till the oracle had expressly commanded it. The Persians are cited as an example for imitation; but how low is it that the vanquished have given law to the victor! Can we forget that Alexander crossed the Hellespont, not to subject Greece to Asia, but Asia to Greece?"

The deep silence which all the company observed whilst Callisthenes spoke, was an indication, in some measure, of their thoughts. The king, who stood behind the tapestry all the time, heard whatever had passed. He thereupon ordered

Cleon to be told, That without insisting any further, he would only require the Persians to fall prostrate, according to their usual custom ; a little after which he came in, pretending he had been busied in some affair of importance. Immediately the Persians fell prostrate to adore him. Polysperchon, who stood near him, observing that one of them bowed so low that his chin touched the ground, bid him, in a rallying tone of voice, “ strike harder.” The king, offended at this joke, threw Polysperchon into prison, and broke up the assembly. However, he afterwards pardoned him, but Callisthenes was not so fortunate.

To rid himself of him, he laid to his charge a crime of which he was no ways guilty. Hermolaus, one of the young officers who attended upon the king in all places, had, upon account of some private pique, formed a conspiracy against him ; but it was very happily discovered, the instant it was to be put in execution. The criminals were seized, put to the torture, and executed. Not one among them had accused Callisthenes ; but having been very intimate with Hermolaus, that alone was sufficient. Accordingly he was thrown into a dungeon loaded with irons, and the most grievous torments were inflicted on him, in order to extort a confession of guilt. But he insisted upon his innocence to the last, and expired in the midst of his tortures.

Nothing has reflected so much dishonour on Alexander’s memory, as this unjust and cruel death of Callisthenes. He truly merited the name of Philosopher, from the solidity of his understanding, the extent of his knowledge, the austerity of his life, the regularity of his conduct, and above all, from the hatred he so evidently manifested for dissimulation and flattery of every kind. He was not born for courts, the frequenters of which must have a supple, pliable, flexible turn of mind ; sometimes it must be of a knavish and treacherous, at least of an hypocritical flattering cast. He very seldom was seen at the king’s table, though frequently invited to it ; and whenever he prevailed so far upon himself as to go thither, his melancholy silent air was a manifest indication, that he disapproved of every thing that was said and done at it. With this humour, which was a little too severe, he would have been an inestimable treasure, had he been possessed by a prince who hated falsehood ; for among the many thousands who surrounded Alexander, and paid court to him, Callisthenes only had courage enough to tell him the truth. But where do we meet with princes who know the value of such a virtue, and the use

which ought to be made of it? Truth seldom pierces those clouds which are raised by the authority of the great, and the flattery of their courtiers. And indeed Alexander, by this dreadful example, deprived all virtuous men of the opportunity of exhorting him to those things which were for his true interest. From that instant no one spoke with freedom in the council; even those who had the greatest love for the public, and a personal affection for Alexander, thought themselves not obliged to undeceive him. After this, nothing was listened to but flattery, which gained such an ascendant over that prince, as entirely depraved him, and justly punished him, for having sacrificed to the wild ambition of having adoration paid him, the most virtuous man about his person.

I observe, after Seneca, that the death of Callisthenes is an eternal reproach to Alexander *, and so horrid a crime, that no quality, how beautiful soever, no military exploit, though of the most conspicuous kind, can ever efface its infamy. It is said in favour of Alexander, that he killed an infinite number of Persians; that he dethroned and slew the most powerful king of the earth; conquered innumerable provinces and nations; penetrated as far as the ocean, and extended the bounds of his empire from the most remote part of Thrace to the extremities of the east: in answer to each of these particulars, "Yes," says Seneca, "but he murdered Callisthenes;" a crime of so heinous a nature, that it entirely obliterates the glory of all his other actions.

SECTION XV.

ALEXANDER SETS OUT FOR INDIA. BESIEGES AND TAKES SEVERAL CITIES. DEFEATS PORUS, WHOM HE RESTORES TO HIS THRONE.

ALEXANDER ^q, to stop the murmurs and discontents which arose among his soldiers, set out for India. He himself wanted action and motion, for he always, when unemployed, lost

^q Q. Curt. I. viii. c. 9.

* Hoc est Alexandri crimen æternum, quod nulla virtus, nulla bellorum felicitas redimet. Nam quotiens quis dixerit, occidit Persarum multa millia; opponetur, et Callisthenem. Quotiens dictum erit, occidit Darium, penes quem tunc magnum regnum erat; opponetur, et Callisthenem. Quotiens dictum erit, omnia oceano tenus vicit, ipsum quoque tentavit novis classibus, et imperium ex angulo Thraciae usque ad orientis terminos protulit; dicetur, sed Callisthenem occidit. Omnia licet antiqua ducum regumque, exempla transierit, ex his quæ fecit, nihil tam magnum erit, quam scelus Callisthenis.—Senec. Nat. Quæst. I. vi. c. 23.

part of the glory he had acquired in war. An excess of vanity and folly prompted him to undertake this expedition ; a project quite useless in itself, and attended with very dangerous consequences. He had read in the ancient fables of Greece, that Bacchus and Hercules, both sons of Jupiter, as himself was, had marched so far. He was determined not to be surpassed by them : and there were not wanting flatterers, who applauded this wild, chimerical design.

These are the things that constitute the glory and merit of such pretended heroes ; and it is this which many people, dazzled by a false splendour, still admire in Alexander ; a ridiculous desire of rambling up and down the world ; of disturbing the tranquillity of nations, who were not bound to him by any obligations ; of treating all those as enemies, who should refuse to acknowledge him for their sovereign ; of ransacking and extirpating such as should presume to defend their liberties, their possessions, and their lives, against an unjust invader, who came from the extremity of the earth to attack them without the least shadow of reason. Add to this glaring injustice, the rash and stupid project he had formed, of subduing, with infinite labour and the utmost hazard, many more nations than it was possible for him to keep in subjection ; and the sad necessity to which he was reduced, of being perpetually obliged to conquer them anew, and punish them for their rebellion. This is a sketch of what the conquest of India will exhibit to us, after I shall have given some little account of the situation and manners of that country, and some of its rarities.

Ptolemy divides India into two parts; India on this, and India on the other side of the Ganges. Alexander did not go beyond the former, nor even so far as the Ganges. This first part is situated between two great rivers, Indus, whence this country received its name, and the Ganges. Ptolemy says, the limits of it are, to the west, Paropamisus, Arachosia, and Gedrosia, which either form a part, or are upon the confines of the kingdom of Persia ; to the north, mount Imaus, which is part of Great Tartary ; to the east, the Ganges ; to the south, the Ocean, or Indian Sea.

^r All the Indians are free, and, like the Lacedæmonians, have no slaves among them. The only difference is, the latter make use of foreign slaves, whereas there are none in India. They do not erect any monuments in honour of the dead; but are of opinion that the reputation of illustrious men is their mausolæum.

^r Arrian. de India, p. 324.—328.

They may be divided into seven classes. The first and most honourable, though the smallest, is that of the Brahmans, who are, as it were, the guardians of religion. I shall have occasion to mention them in the sequel.

The second and greatest is that of the husbandmen. These are had in great veneration. Their only employment is to plough the fields, and they are never taken from this employment to carry arms and serve in the field in war-time: it is an inviolable law, never to molest them on their lands.

The third is that of herdsmen and shepherds, who keep herds and flocks, and never come into the cities. They rove up and down the mountains, and often exercise themselves in hunting.

The fourth is that of traders and artificers, among whom pilots and seamen are included. These three last orders pay a tribute to the king, and none are exempted from it but those that make arms, who, instead of paying any thing, receive a stipend from the public.

The fifth is that of soldiers, whose only employment is war: they are furnished with all sorts of necessaries; and, in time of peace, are abundantly supplied with all things. Their life, at all times, is free and disengaged from cares of every kind.

The sixth order is that of overseers, *Ἐπίτοκοι*, who superintend the actions of others, and examine every transaction, either in cities or the country, and report the whole to the prince. The virtues and qualities required in these magistrates are, exactness, sincerity, probity, and the love of their country. None of these magistrates, says the historian, have ever been accused of telling an untruth. Thrice happy nation, were this really fact! However, this observation proves at least that truth and justice were had in great honour in this country, and that knavery and insincerity were detested in it.

Lastly, the seventh class consists of persons employed in the public councils, and who share the cares of the government with the sovereign. From this class are taken magistrates, intendants, governors of provinces, generals, and all military officers, whether for land or sea; comptrollers of the treasury, receivers, and all who are intrusted with the public monies.

These different orders of the state never blend by marriage; and an artificer, for instance, is not allowed to take a wife from among the class of husbandmen; and so of the rest. None of these can follow two professions at the same time,

nor quit one class for another. It is natural to conclude, that this regulation must have contributed very much to the improvement of all arts and trades; as every one added his own industry and reflections to those of his ancestors, which were delivered down to him by an uninterrupted tradition.

Many observations might be made on these Indian customs, which I am obliged to omit, for the sake of proceeding in my history. I only entreat the reader to observe, that in every wise government, every well-governed state, the tilling of lands, and the grazing of cattle, two perpetual and certain sources of riches and abundance, have always been one of the chief objects of the care of those who preside in the administration; and that the neglect of either, is erring against one of the most important maxims in policy.

I also admire very much that custom of appointing overseers, whether they are known for such or not, who go upon the spot, in order to inspect the conduct of governors, intendants, and judges; the only method to prevent the rapine and outrages to which unlimited authority, and the distance from a court, frequently give occasion; the only method, at the same time, for a sovereign to know the state of his kingdom, without which it is impossible for him to govern happily the people whom Providence has intrusted to his care. This care regards him personally; and those who act under him can no more dispense with the discharge of it, than they can usurp his diadem.

It is remarkable, that in India, from the month of June to those of September and October, excessive rains fall very often, whereby the crossing of rivers is rendered much more difficult, and frequent inundations happen. Hence we may judge, how greatly, during all this season, the armies of Alexander must have suffered, as they were at that time in the field.

Before I leave what relates in general to India, I shall say a few words concerning elephants, with which that country abounds more than any other. The elephant exceeds all terrestrial animals in size. Some are thirteen or fifteen feet high. The female goes a whole year with her young. It lives sometimes to the age of an hundred or an hundred and twenty years; nay much longer, if some ancient writers may be credited. Its nose, called its trunk, "Proboscis," is long and hollow like a large trumpet, and serves the elephant instead of a hand *, which it moves with incredible agility and

* Manus data elephantis, quia propter magnitudinem corporis difficiles aditus habebant ad pastum.—Cic. de Nat. Deor. iii. n. 123.

strength, and thereby is of prodigious service to it. The elephant*, notwithstanding its prodigious size, is so tractable and industrious, that one would be almost apt to conclude it were informed with something like human reason. It is susceptible of affection, fondness, and gratitude, so far as to pine away with sorrow when it has lost its master, and even sometimes to destroy itself when it happens to have abused or murdered him in the transport of its fury. There is no kind of thing which it cannot be taught. Arrian, whose authority is not to be questioned, relates, that he had seen an elephant dance with two cymbals fixed to his legs, which he struck one after the other in cadence with his trunk; and that the rest danced round him, keeping time with surprising exactness.

He describes very particularly the manner in which they are taken. The Indians inclose a large spot of ground, with a trench about twenty feet wide, and fifteen feet high, to which there is access but in one part, and this is a bridge, and is covered with turf, in order that these animals, who are very subtile, may not suspect what is intended. Of the earth that is dug out of the trench, a kind of wall is raised, on the other side of which a little kind of chamber is made, where people conceal themselves in order to watch these animals, and its entrance is very small. In this inclosure two or three tame female elephants are set. The instant the wild elephants see or smell them, they run and whirl about so much, that at last they enter the inclosure, upon which the bridge is immediately broken down; and the people upon the watch fly to the neighbouring villages for help. After they have been broke for a few days by hunger and thirst, people enter the inclosure upon tame elephants, and with these they attack them. As the wild ones are by this time very much weakened, it is impossible for them to make a long resistance. After throwing them on the ground, men got upon their backs, having first made a deep wound round their necks, about which they throw a rope, in order to put them to great pain, in case they attempt to stir. Being tamed in this manner, they suffer themselves to be led quietly to the houses with the rest, where they are fed with grass and green corn, and tamed insensibly by blows and hunger, till such time as they obey readily their master's voice, and perfectly understand his language.

Every one knows the use that was formerly made of these

* *Elephantō belluarum nulla providentior. At figura quæ vastior.*—*De Nat. Dier. l. i. n. 97.*

animals in battle; however, they frequently made greater havoc in the army to which they belonged, than in that of the enemy. Their teeth, or rather tusks, furnish us with ivory. But it is time to return to Alexander.

^s This prince having entered India ^{*}, all the petty kings of these countries came to meet him, and make their submissions. They declared that he was the third son of Jupiter [†] who had arrived in their country: that they had known Bacchus and Hercules no otherwise than by fame; but as for Alexander, they had the happiness to see him, and to enjoy his presence. The king received them with the utmost humanity, commanding them to accompany him, and serve him as guides. As no more of them came in to pay their homage, he detached Hephaestion and Perdiccas with part of his forces, commanding them to subdue all who should refuse to submit. But finding he was obliged to cross several rivers, he caused boats to be built in such a form, that they could be taken to pieces; the several parts of them to be carried upon waggons, and afterwards put together again. Then, having commanded Craterus to follow him with his phalanx, he himself marched before, with his cavalry and light-armed troops; and, after a slight engagement, he defeated those who had dared to make head against him, and pursued them to the next city, into which they fled. Craterus being come up, the king, in order to terrify, on a sudden, those nations who had not yet felt the power of the Macedonian arms, commanded his soldiers to burn down the fortifications of that place, which he besieged in a regular way, and to put all the inhabitants of it to the sword. But as he was going round the walls on horseback, he was wounded by an arrow. Notwithstanding this accident, he took the city, after which he made dreadful havoc of all the soldiers and inhabitants, and did not so much as spare the houses.

After subduing this nation, which was of great consequence, he marched towards the city of Nysa, and encamped pretty near its walls, behind a forest that hid it. In the mean time, it grew so very cold in the night, that they had never yet felt so excessive a chill; but, very happily for them, a remedy was

^s Quint. Curt. l. viii. c. 9.—14. Arrian. l. iv. p. 182.—195. l. v. p. 195.—221. Plut. in Alex. p. 697.—699. Diod. l. xvii. p. 557.—559. Justin. l. 12. c. 7, 8.

^{*} Quintus Curtius supposes, that several countries on the other side of the Indus, but adjacent to that river belonged to India, and made part of it.

[†] Could these Greek names of gods be known to the Indians?

near at hand. They felled a great number of trees, and lighted up several fires, which proved very comfortable to the whole army. The besieged having attempted a sally with ill success, a faction arose in the city; some being of opinion, that it would be best for them to surrender, whilst others were for holding out the siege. This coming to the king's ear, he only blocked up the city, and did not do the inhabitants any further injury; till at last, tired out with the length of the siege, they surrendered at discretion, and accordingly were kindly treated by the conqueror. They declared that their city had been built by Bacchus. The whole army, for six days together, celebrated games and made rejoicings on this mountain, in honour of the god who was there worshipped.

^t He marched from thence to a country called Dædala, which had been abandoned by the inhabitants, who had fled for shelter to inaccessible mountains, as also those of Acadera, into which he afterwards entered. This obliged him to change his method of war, and to disperse his forces in different places, by which means the enemy were all defeated at once; no resistance was made any where; and those who were so courageous as to wait the coming up of the Macedonians, were all cut to pieces. Ptolemy took several little cities the instant he sat down before them: Alexander carried the large ones, and, after uniting all his forces, passed the river * Choaspes, and left Cœnus to besiege a rich and populous city, called Bazica by the inhabitants.

He afterwards marched towards Magosa, whose king, called Assacanus, was lately dead, and Cleophes, his mother, ruled the province and city. There were thirty thousand foot in it, and both nature and art seemed to have united their endeavours in raising its fortifications; for towards the east it is surrounded with a very rapid river, the banks of which are steep, and difficult of access; and on the west are high and craggy rocks, at the foot whereof are caves, which, through length of time, had increased into a kind of abysses; and where these fail, a trench, of an astonishing height, is raised with incredible labour.

Whilst Alexander was going round the city, to view its fortifications, he was shot by an arrow in the calf of his leg; but he only pulled out the weapon, and, without so much as binding up the wound, mounted his horse, and continued to

^t A. M. 3677. Ant. J. C. 327.

* This is not the Choaspes which runs by Susa.

view the outward fortifications of the city. But as he rode with his leg downward, and the congealing of the blood put him to great pain, it is related that he cried, * “ Every one “ swears that I am the son of Jupiter, but my wound makes “ me sensible that I am man.” However, he did not leave the place till he had seen every thing, and given all the necessary orders. Some of the soldiers, therefore, demolished such houses as stood without the city, and with the rubbish of them they filled up the gulfs above mentioned. Others threw great trunks of trees and huge stones into them; and all laboured with so much vigour, that in nine days the works were completed, and the towers were raised upon them.

The king, without waiting till his wound was healed, visited the works, and after applauding the soldiers for their great dispatch, he caused the engines to be brought forward, whence a great number of darts were discharged against those who defended the walls. But that which most terrified the Barbarians, was those towers of a vast height which seemed to them to move of themselves. This made them imagine, that they were made to advance by the gods; and that those battering rams which beat down walls, and the javelins thrown by engines, the like of which they had never seen, could not be the effect of human strength; so that, persuaded that it would be impossible for them to defend the city, they withdrew into the citadel; but not finding themselves more secure there, they sent ambassadors to propose a surrender. The queen afterwards came and met Alexander, attended by a great number of ladies, who all brought him wine in cups by way of sacrifice. The king gave her a very gracious reception, and restored her to her kingdom.

From hence Polysperchon was sent with an army to besiege the city of Ora, which he soon took. Most of its inhabitants had withdrawn to the rock called Aornos. There was a tradition, that Hercules having besieged this rock, an earthquake had forced him to quit the siege. There are not, this rock, as on many others, gentle declivities of easy access, but it rises like a bank; and being very wide at bottom, grows narrower all the way to the top, which terminates in a point. The river Indus, whose source is not far from this place, flows at the bottom, its sides being perpendicular and high; and on the other side were vast morasses, which it was ne-

* *Omnis jurant me Jovis esse filium, sed vulnus hoc hominem esse meum.*
Senec. Epist. lxx.

sary to fill up, before the rock could be taken. Very happily for the Macedonians, they were near a forest. This the king had cut down, commanding his soldiers to carry off nothing but the trunks, the branches of which were lopped, in order that they might be carried with the less difficulty: and he himself threw the first trunk into the morass. The army seeing this, shouted for joy, and every soldier labouring with incredible diligence, the work was finished in seven days; immediately after which, the attack began. The officers were of opinion, that it would not be proper for the king to expose himself on this occasion, the danger being evidently too great. However, the trumpet had no sooner sounded, but this prince, who was not master of his courage, commanded his guards to follow, himself first climbing the rock. At this sight it appeared no longer inaccessible, and every one flew after him. Never were soldiers exposed to greater danger; but they were all resolved to conquer or die. Several fell from the rock into the river, whose whirlpools swallowed them up. The Barbarians rolled great stones on the foremost, who being scarce able to keep upon their feet, the rock was so slippery, fell down the precipices, and were dashed to pieces. No sight could possibly be more dismal than this; the king, greatly afflicted at the loss of so many brave soldiers, caused a retreat to be sounded. Nevertheless, though he had lost all hopes of taking the place, and was determined to raise the siege, he acted as if he intended to continue it, and accordingly gave orders for bringing forward the towers, and other engines; the besieged, by way of insult, made great rejoicings, and continued the festivity for two days and two nights, making the rock, and the whole neighbourhood, echo with the sound of their drums and cymbals. But the third night they were not heard, and the Macedonians were surprised to see every part of the rock illuminated with torches. The king was informed, that the Indians had lighted them to assist their light, and to guide them the more easily in those precipices during the obscurity of the night. Immediately the whole army, by Alexander's order, shouted aloud, which terrified the Indians so much, that several of them, fancying they saw the enemy, flung themselves from the top of the rock, and perished miserably. The king, having so happily and unexpectedly possessed himself of the rock in an almost miraculous manner, thanked the gods, and offered sacrifices in their honour.

From thence he marched, and took Ecbolimus; and after

sixteen days march, arrived at the river Indus, where he found that Hephaestion had got all things ready for his passage, pursuant to the orders given him. The king of the country, called Omphis, whose father died some time before, had sent to Alexander, to know whether he would give him leave to wear the crown. Notwithstanding the Macedonian told him he might, he nevertheless delayed putting it on till his arrival. He then went to meet him with his whole army; and when Alexander was advanced pretty near, he pushed forward his horse, came up singly to him, and the king did the same. The Indian then told him, by an interpreter, “That he was “come to meet him at the head of his army, in order to de-“liver up all his forces into his hands: That he surrendered “his person and his kingdom to a monarch, who, he was “sensible, fought only with the view of acquiring glory, and “dreaded nothing so much as treachery.” The king, greatly satisfied with the frankness of the Barbarian, gave him his hand, and restored him his kingdoms. He then made Alexander a present of fifty-six elephants, and a great number of other animals of a prodigious size. Alexander asking him, which were most necessary to him, husbandmen or soldiers? he replied, that as he was at war with two kings, the latter were of greater service to him. These two monarchs were Abisares and Porus, the latter of whom was most powerful, and the dominions of both were situated on the other side of the Hydaspes. Omphis assumed the diadem, and took the name of Taxilus, by which the kings of that country were called. He made magnificent presents to Alexander, who did not suffer himself to be exceeded in generosity.

The next day, ambassadors from Abisares waiting upon the king, surrendered up to him, pursuant to the power given them, all the dominions of their sovereign; and, after each party had promised fidelity on both sides, they returned back.

Alexander, expecting that Porus, astonished with the report of his glory, would not fail to submit to him, sent a message to that prince, as if he had been his vassal, requiring him to pay tribute, and meet him upon the frontiers of his dominions. Porus answered with great coldness, that he would do so, but it should be sword in hand. At the same time a reinforcement of thirty elephants, which were of great service, were sent to Alexander. He gave the superintendence of all his elephants to Taxilus, and advanced as far as the borders of the Hydaspes. Porus was encamped on the other side of

it, in order to dispute the passage with him ; and had posted at the head of his army eighty five elephants of a prodigious size, and behind them three hundred chariots, guarded by thirty thousand foot ; not having, at most, above seven thousand horse. This prince was mounted on an elephant of a much larger size than any of the rest, and he himself exceeded the usual stature of men : so that, clothed in his armour glittering with gold and silver, he appeared at the same time terrible and majestic. The greatness of his courage equalled that of his stature, and he was as wise and prudent as it was possible for the monarch of so barbarous a people to be.

The Macedonians dreaded not only the enemy, but the river they were obliged to pass. It was four furlongs wide, about four hundred fathoms, and so deep in every part that it looked like a sea, and was no where fordable. It was vastly impetuous, notwithstanding its great breadth ; for it rolled with as much violence as if it had been confined to a narrow channel ; and its raging foaming waves, which broke in many places, discovered that it was full of stones and rocks. However, nothing was so dreadful as the appearance of the shore, which was quite covered with men, horses, and elephants. These hideous animals stood like so many towers, and the Indians exasperated them, in order that the horrid cry they made might fill the enemy with greater terror. However, this could not intimidate an army of men, whose courage was proof against all attacks, and who were animated by an uninterrupted series of prosperities ; but then they did not think it would be possible for them, as their barks were so crazy, to surmount the rapidity of the stream, or land with safety.

This river was full of little islands, to which the Indians and Macedonians used to swim, with their arms over their heads ; and slight skirmishes were every day fought in the sight of the two kings, who were well pleased to make these small excursions of their respective forces, and to form a judgment from such skirmishes of the success of a general battle. There were two young officers in Alexander's army, Egesimachus and Nicanor, men of equal intrepidity, and who, having been ever successful, despised dangers of every kind. They took with them the bravest youths in the whole army : and, with no other weapons than their javelins, swam to an island in which several of the enemy were landed ; where, with scarce any other assistance but their intrepidity, they made a great slaughter. After this bold stroke, they might have retired with glory, were it possible for rashness, when

successful, to keep within bounds. But as they waited with contempt, and an insulting air, for those who came to succour their companions, they were surrounded by a band of soldiers, who had swam unperceived to the island, and overwhelmed with the darts that were shot from afar. Those who endeavoured to save themselves by swimming, were either carried away by the waves, or swallowed up by the whirlpools. The courage of Porus, who saw all this from the shore, was surprisingly increased by this success.

Alexander was in great perplexity; and finding he could not pass the Hydaspes by force of arms, he therefore resolved to have recourse to artifice. Accordingly he caused his cavalry to attempt several times to pass it in the night, and to shout as if they really intended to ford the river, all things being prepared for that purpose. Immediately Porus hurried thither with his elephants, but Alexander continued in battle-array on the bank. This stratagem having been attempted several times, and Porus finding the whole was but mere noise and empty menaces, he took no further notice of these motions, but only sent scouts to every part of the shore. Alexander, being now no longer apprehensive of having the whole army of the enemy fall upon him, in his attempting to cross the river in the night, began to resolve seriously to pass it.

There was in this river, at a considerable distance from Alexander's camp, an island of a greater extent than any of the rest. This being covered with trees, was very proper for him to cover and conceal his design, and therefore he resolved to attempt the passage that way. However, the better to conceal the knowledge of it from the enemy, and deceive them on this occasion, he left Craterus in his camp with a great part of the army, with orders for them to make a great noise at a certain time which should be appointed, in order to alarm the Indians, and make them believe that he was preparing to cross the river; but that he would not attempt this, till such time as Porus should have raised his camp, and marched away his elephants, either to withdraw or advance towards those Macedonians who should attempt the passage. Between the camp and the island he had posted Meleager and Gorgias with the foreign horse and foot, with orders for them to pass over in bodies, the instant they should see him engaged in battle.

After giving these orders, he took the rest of his army, as well cavalry as infantry; and, wheeling off from the shore, in order to avoid being perceived, he advanced in the night-

time towards the island into which he was resolved to go; and the better to deceive the enemy, Alexander caused his tent to be pitched in the camp where he had left Craterus, which was opposite to that of Porus. His life-guards were drawn up round, in all the pomp and splendour with which the majesty of a great king is usually surrounded. He also caused a royal robe to be put upon Attalus, who was of the same age with himself, and so much resembled the king, both in stature and features, especially at so great a distance as the breadth of the river, that the enemy might suppose Alexander himself was on the bank, and was attempting a passage in that place. He however was by this time got to the island above mentioned; and immediately landed upon it from boats, with the rest of his troops, whilst the enemy was employed in opposing Craterus. But now a furious storm arose, which seemed as if it would retard the execution of his project, yet proved of advantage to it; for so fortunate was this prince, that obstacles changed into advantages and succours in his favour: the storm was succeeded by a very violent shower, with impetuous winds, flashes of lightning and thunder, insomuch that there was no hearing or seeing of any thing. Any man but Alexander would have abandoned his design; but he, on the contrary, was animated by danger, not to mention that the noise, the confusion, and the darkness assisted his passage. He thereupon made the signal for the embarkation of his troops, and went off himself in the first boat. It is reported, that it was on this occasion he cried out, “O Athenians! could you think I would expose myself to such dangers, to merit your applause?” And indeed, nothing could contribute more to eternize his name, than the having his actions recorded by such great historians as Thucydides and Xenophon^u; and so anxious was he about the character which would be given him after his death, that he wished it were possible for him to return again into the world, only so long as was necessary to know what kind of impression the perusal of his history made on the minds of men:

Scarce any person appeared to oppose their descent, because Porus was wholly taken up with Craterus, and imagined he had nothing to do but to oppose his passage. Immediately this general, pursuant to his orders, made a prodigious clamour, and seemed to attempt the passage of the river. Upon this all the boats came to shore, one excepted, which the

^u Lucian. de Conscrib. Hist. p. 694.

waves dashed to pieces against a rock. The moment Alexander was landed, he drew up in order of battle his little army, consisting of six thousand foot and five thousand horse.

He himself headed the latter; and, having commanded the foot to make all imaginable dispatch after him, he marched before. It was his firm opinion, that in case the Indians should oppose him with their whole force, his cavalry would give him infinite advantage over them; and that, be this as it would, he might easily continue fighting until his foot should come up; or, that in case the enemy, alarmed at the news of his passing, should fly, it would then be in his power to pursue, and make a great slaughter of them.

Porus, upon hearing that Alexander had passed the river, had sent against him a detachment, commanded by one of his sons, of two thousand horse, and one hundred and twenty chariots. Alexander at first imagined them to be the enemy's van-guard, and that the whole army was behind them: but, being informed it was but a detachment, he charged them with such vigour, that Porus' son was killed upon the spot, with four hundred horses, and all the chariots were taken. Each of these chariots carried six men; two were armed with bucklers, two bowmen sat on each side, and two guided the chariot, who nevertheless fought always when the battle grew warm, having a great number of darts which they discharged at the enemy. But all these did little execution that day, because the rain, which fell in great abundance, had moistened the earth to such a degree, that the horses could scarce stand upon their legs; and the chariots being very heavy, most of them sunk very deep into the mud.

Porus, upon receiving advice of the death of his son, the defeat of the detachment, and of Alexander's approach, was in doubt whether it would be proper for him to continue in his post, because Craterus, with the rest of the Macedonian army, made a feint as if they intended to pass the river. However, he resolved at last to go and meet Alexander, whom he justly supposed to be at the head of the choicest troops of his army. Accordingly, leaving only a few elephants in his camp, to amuse those who were posted on the opposite shore, he set out with thirty thousand foot, four thousand horses, three thousand chariots, and two hundred elephants. Being come into a firm sandy soil, in which his horses and chariots might wheel about with ease, he drew up his army in battle-array, with an intent to wait the coming up of the enemy. He posted in front, and on the first line, all the elephants at

an hundred feet distance one from the other, in order that they might serve as a bulwark to his foot, who were behind. It was his opinion, that the enemy's cavalry would not dare to engage in these intervals, because of the fear those horses would have of the elephants; and much less the infantry, when they should see that of the enemy posted behind the elephants, and in danger of being trodden to pieces by those animals. He had posted some of his foot on the same line with the elephants, in order to cover their right and left; and his infantry was covered by his two wings of horse, before which the chariots were posted. Such was the order and disposition of Porus' army.

Alexander being come in sight of the enemy, waited the coming up of his foot, which marched with the utmost diligence, and arrived a little after: and in order that they might have time to take breath, and not be led, as they were very much fatigued, against the enemy, he caused his horse to make a great many evolutions, in order to gain time. But now every thing being ready, and the infantry having sufficiently recovered their vigour, Alexander gave the signal of battle. He did not think proper to begin by attacking the enemy's main body, where the infantry and the elephants were posted, for the very reason which had made Porus draw them up in that manner: but his cavalry being stronger, he drew out the greatest part of them; and marching against the left wing, sent Coenus with his own regiment of horse, and that of Demetrius, to charge them at the same time; ordering him to attack the cavalry on the left, behind, during which he himself would charge them both in front and flank. Seleucus, Antigonus, and Tauron, who commanded the foot, were ordered not to stir from their posts, till Alexander's cavalry had put that of the enemy, as well as their foot, into disorder.

Being come within arrow-shot, he detached a thousand bowmen on horseback, with orders for them to make their discharge on the horse of Porus' left wing, in order to throw it into disorder, whilst he himself should charge this body in flank, before it had time to rally. The Indians, having joined again their squadrons, and drawn them up into a narrower compass, advanced against Alexander. At that instant Coenus charged them in the rear, according to the orders given him; insomuch that the Indians were obliged to face about on all sides, to defend themselves from the thousand bowmen, and against Alexander and Coenus. Alexander, to make the best

advantage of the confusion into which this sudden attack had thrown them, charged with great vigour those that made head against him, who being no longer able to stand so violent an attack, were soon broke, and retired behind the elephants, as to an impregnable rampart. The leaders of the elephants made them advance against the enemy's horse; but, that very instant, the Macedonian phalanx, moving on a sudden, surrounded those animals, and charged with their pikes the elephants themselves and their leaders. This battle was very different from all those which Alexander had hitherto fought; for the elephants rushing upon the battalions, broke with inexpressible fury, the thickest of them; when the Indian horse, seeing the Macedonian foot stopped by the elephants, returned to the charge; however, that of Alexander being stronger, and having greater experience in war, broke this body a second time, and obliged it to retire towards the elephants; upon which the Macedonian horse, being all united in one body, spread terror and confusion wherever they attacked. The elephants being all covered with wounds, and the greatest part having lost their leaders, they did not observe their usual order; but, distracted as it were with pain, no longer distinguished friends from foes, and running about from place to place, they overthrew every thing that came in their way. The Macedonians, who had purposely left a greater interval between their battalions, either made way for them wherever they came forward, or charged with darts those that fear and the tumult obliged to retire. Alexander, after having surrounded the enemy with his horse, made a signal to his foot to march up with all imaginable speed, in order to make a last effort, and to fall upon them with his whole force, all which they executed very successfully. In this manner the greatest part of the Indian cavalry were cut to pieces; and a body of their foot, which sustained no less loss, seeing themselves charged on all sides, at last fled. Craterus, who had continued in the camp with the rest of his army, seeing Alexander engaged with Porus, crossed the river, and charging the routed soldiers with his troops, who were cool and vigorous, by that means killed as many enemies in the retreat as had fallen in the battle.

The Indians lost on this occasion twenty thousand foot and three thousand horse; not to mention the chariots which were all broke to pieces, and the elephants that were either killed or taken. Porus' two sons fell in this battle, with Spitacis, governor of the province; all the colonels of horse and foot,

and those who guided the elephants and chariots. As for Alexander, he lost but fourscore of the six thousand soldiers who were at the first charge, ten bowmen of the horse, twenty of his horse-guards, and two hundred common soldiers.

Porus, after having performed all the duty both of a soldier and a general in the battle, and fought with incredible bravery, seeing all his horse defeated, and the greatest part of his foot, did not behave like the great Darius, who, in a like disaster, was the first that fled: on the contrary, he continued in the field, as long as one battalion or squadron stood their ground; but at last, having received a wound in the shoulder, he retired upon his elephant; and was easily distinguished from the rest by the greatness of his stature, and his unparalleled bravery. Alexander, finding who he was by these glorious marks, and being desirous of saving this king, sent Taxilus after him, because he was of the same nation. The latter advancing to him as near as he might, without running any danger of being wounded, called out to him to stop, in order to hear the message he had brought him from Alexander. Porus turning back, and seeing it was Taxilus, his old enemy, "How!" says he, "is it not Taxilus that calls, that traitor to his country and kingdom?" Immediately after which, he would have transfixed him with his dart, had he not instantly retired. Notwithstanding this, Alexander was still desirous to save so brave a prince, and thereupon dispatched other officers, among whom was Meroe, one of his intimate friends, who besought him in the strongest terms, to wait upon a conqueror, altogether worthy of him. After much intreaty, Porus consented, and accordingly set forward. Alexander, who had been told of his coming, advanced forwards in order to receive him with some of his train. Being come pretty near, Alexander stopped, purposely to take a view of his stature and noble mein, he being about five cubits in height *. Porus did not seem dejected at his misfortune, but came up with a resolute countenance, like a valiant warrior, whose courage in defending his dominions ought to acquire him the esteem of the brave prince who had taken him prisoner. Alexander spoke first, and, with an august and gracious air, asked him how he desired to be treated? "Like a king," replied Porus. "But," continued Alexander, "do you ask nothing more?" "No," replied Porus; "all things are

* Seven feet and a half.

“ included in that single word.” Alexander, struck with this greatness of soul, the magnanimity of which seemed heightened by distress, did not only restore him his kingdom, but annexed other provinces to it, and treated him with the highest testimonies of honour, esteem, and friendship. Porus was faithful to him till his death. It is hard to say, whether the victor or the vanquished best deserved praise on this occasion.

Alexander built a city on the spot where the battle had been fought, and another in that place where he had crossed the river. He called the one Nicæa, from his victory; and the other Bucephalon, in honour of his horse who died there, not of his wounds, but of old age. After having paid the last duties to such of his soldiers as had lost their lives in battle, he solemnised games, and offered up sacrifices of thanks, in the place where he had passed the Hydaspes.

This prince did not know to whom he was indebted for his victories. We are astonished at the rapidity of Alexander's conquests; the ease with which he surmounts the greatest obstacles, and forces almost impregnable cities; the uninterrupted and unheard-of felicity that extricates him out of those dangers into which his rashness plunges him, and in which, one would have concluded, he must a hundred times have perished. But to unravel these mysterious kinds of events, several of which are repugnant to the usual course of things, we must go back to a superior cause, unknown to the profane historians and to Alexander himself. This monarch was, like Cyrus, the minister and instrument of the sovereign Disposer of empires, who raises and destroys them at pleasure. He had received the same orders to overthrow the Persian and eastern empires, as Cyrus to destroy that of Babylon. The same power conducted their enterprises, assured them of success, protected and preserved them from all dangers, till they had executed their commission, and completed their ministry. We may apply to Alexander the words which God spake to Cyrus in Isaiah, “ Cyrus, whose right hand I “ have holden, to subdue nations before him; and I will cause “ the loins of kings to open before him the two-leaved gates, “ and the gates shall not be shut: I will go before thee, and “ make the crooked paths straight: I will break in pieces the “ gates of brass, and cut in sunder the bars of iron. And I “ will give thee treasures of darkness, and hidden treasures of

u Chap. xlvi. 1.—5.

“ secret places.—I girded thee, though thou hast not known “ me.” This is the true and only cause of the incredible success with which this conqueror was attended ; of his unparalleled bravery ; the affection his soldiers had for him, the foreknowledge of his felicity, and his assurance of success, which astonished his most intrepid captains.

SECTION XVI.

ALEXANDER ADVANCES INTO INDIA. HE IS EXPOSED TO GREAT DANGER AT THE SIEGE OF OXYDRACÆ.

ALEXANDER ^x, after his famous victory over Porus, advanced into India, where he subdued a great many nations and cities. He looked upon himself as a conqueror by profession as well as by his dignity, and engaged every day in new exploits with so much ardour and vivacity, that he seemed to fancy himself invested with a personal commission, and that there was an immediate obligation upon him to storm all cities, to lay waste all provinces, to extirpate all nations, which should refuse his yoke ; and that he should have considered himself as guilty of a crime, had he forbore visiting every corner of the earth, and carrying terror and desolation wherever he went. He passed the Accesines, and afterwards the Hydraotes, two considerable rivers. Advice was then brought him, that a great number of free Indians had made a confederacy to defend their liberties ; and, among the rest, the Caytheans, who were the most valiant and most skilful of those nations in the art of war ; and that they were encamped near a strong city, called Sangala. Alexander set out against these Indians, defeated them in a pitched battle, took the city, and razed it to the very foundations.

One day, as he was riding at the head of his army, some philosophers, called Brachmans in the language of that country, were conversing together as they were walking in a meadow. The instant they perceived him, they all stamped against the ground with their feet. Alexander, surprised at this extraordinary gesture, demanded the cause of it. They answered, pointing to the ground with their fingers, “ That “ no man possessed any more of that element than he could “ enjoy ; that the only difference between him and other

^x A. M. 3678. Ant. J. C. 326. Q. Curt. l. ix. c. 1. ^y Arrian. l. vii. p. 265, 276. Id. in Indic. p. 324. Strab. l. xv. p. 715.—717. Plut. in Alex. p. 701. Q. Curt. l. viii. c. 9.

“ men, was, that he was more restless and ambitious than “ they, and over-ran all seas and lands, merely to harm others “ and himself; and yet—he would die at last, and possess “ no greater part of the earth than was necessary for his in-“ terment.” The king was not displeased with this answer: but he was hurried on by a torrent of glory, and his actions were the very reverse of what he approved.

These Brachmans, says Arrian, are in great veneration in their country. They do not pay any tribute to the prince, but assist him with their counsel, and perform the same offices as the Magi do to the kings of Persia. They assist at the public sacrifices; and if a person desires to sacrifice in private, one of these must be present, otherwise the Indians are persuaded they would not be agreeable to the gods. They apply themselves particularly to consulting the stars; none but themselves pretend to divination; and they foretell, chiefly, the change of weather and of the seasons. If a Brachman has failed thrice in his predictions, he is silenced for ever.

Their sentiments, according to Strabo, are not very different from those of the Greeks. They believe that the world had a beginning; that it will end; that its form is circular; that it was created by God, who presides over, and fills it with his majesty; and that water is the principle of all things. With regard to the immortality of the soul, and the punishment of the wicked in hell, they follow the doctrine of Plato; intermixing it, like that philosopher, with some fictions, in order to express or describe those punishments.

Several among them go always naked, whence the Greeks gave them the name of Gymnosophsists. Many incredible particulars are related, concerning the austerity of their lives and their prodigious patience. Their only meat and drink is roots and water. As they admit the metempsychosis, and believe that the souls of men transmigrate into those of beasts, they abstain from the flesh of animals. It is thought, that Pythagoras borrowed this doctrine from the Brachmans. They continue whole days standing with their faces towards the sun, and that in the season when this planet darts its rays with the greatest violence. Persuaded that it is beneath the dignity of a man to wait calmly for death, when he finds himself oppressed by age or sickness, they hold it glorious to prevent their last hour, and burn themselves alive; and, indeed, they pay no honours to those who die merely of old age; and imagine they would pollute their funeral pile, and the fire that is to burn them to ashes, should they go into it

otherwise than full of life and vigour. Other Brachmans, more judicious and humane than the former, live in cities, and associate with their own species; and so far from considering self-murder as a virtuous or brave action, they look upon it as a weakness in man not to wait patiently the stroke of death, and as a crime to dare to anticipate the will of the gods.

Cicero admires, in his Tusculan questions, the invincible patience, not only of the Indian sages, but also of the * women of that country, who used to contest for the honour of dying with their common husband. This privilege was reserved for that wife whom the husband had loved most affectionately: and was given in her favour by the sentence of persons appointed for that purpose, who never gave a judgement till such time as they made a strict examination, and heard the allegations on all sides. The wife on whom the preference was bestowed, ran to meet death, and ascended the funeral pile with incredible joy and patience; whilst the surviving wives withdrew in the deepest transports of affliction, and with their eyes bathed in tears.

The description which ^z Porphyrius has left us of these philosophers, resembles in many particulars that given above. According to this author, the Brachmans live on herbs, roots, and fruits. They abstain from animals of every kind, and if they touch any, they thereby render themselves unclean. They spend the greatest part of the day and night in singing hymns in honour of their gods. They fast and pray perpetually. The greatest part of them live alone, and in the deepest solitude, and neither marry nor profess any thing. They wish for nothing so earnestly as death; and considering this life as a burden, they wait impatiently for the moment when the soul will leave the body.

These philosophers exist still in India, where they are called Bramins; and retain, in many points, the tradition and tenets of the ancient Brachmans.

Alexander, passing near a city wherein several of these Brachmans dwelt, was very desirous to converse with them, and, if possible, to prevail with some of them to follow him. Being informed that these philosophers never made visits, but

^z Lib. de Abstin. Animal.

* *Mulieres in India, cum est cujusque earum vir mortuus, in certamen judiciumque veniunt, quam plurimum ille dilexerit: plures enim singulis solent esse nuptæ. Quæ est victrix, ea læta prosequentibus suis, una cum viro in rogum imponitur: illa victa, mœsta discedit.*—Tusc. Quæst. l. v. n. 78.

that those who had an inclination to see them must go to their houses, he concluded, that it would be beneath his dignity to go to them; and not just, to force these sages to any thing contrary to their laws and usages. Onesicritus, who was a great philosopher, and had been a disciple of Diogenes the Cynic, was deputed to them. He met, not far from the city, with fifteen Brachmans, who from morning till evening stood always naked, in the same posture in which they at first had placed themselves, and afterwards returned to the city at night. He addressed himself first to Calanus, and told him the occasion of his coming. The latter, gazing upon Onesicritus' clothes and shoes, could not forbear laughing; after which he told him, “That anciently the earth had been “covered with barley and wheat, as it was at that time with “dust; that besides water, the rivers used to flow with milk, “honey, oil, and wine: That man's guilt had occasioned a “change of this happy condition; and that Jupiter, to punish “their ingratitude, had sentenced them to a long painful la-“bour: That their repentance afterwards moving him to “compassion, he had restored them their former abundance; “however, that by the course of things, they seemed to be “returning to their ancient confusion.” This relation shows evidently, that these philosophers had some notion of the felicity of the first man, and of the evil to which he had been sentenced for his sins.

After this first conversation, Onesicritus spoke to Mandanis, the chief, and as it were the superior of the band. This Brachman said, “That he thought Alexander worthy of ad-“miration, in seeking thus for wisdom in the midst of the “cares of his government; * that he was the first who had “ever united in himself the two characters of conqueror and “philosopher; that it were to be wished, that the latter cha-“racter were the attribute of those who could inspire the “wisdom which they themselves possessed, and command it “by their authority.” He added, That he could not conceive the motive which had prompted Alexander to undertake so long and laborious a journey, nor what he came in search of, in so remote a country.

Onesicritus was very urgent with both of them to quit their austere way of life, and follow the fortune of Alexander, saying, that they would find in him a generous master and benefactor, who would heap upon them honours and riches

* Μόνος γάρ οἶδος ἀντὸν ἐν ὑπλοῖς φιλοσοφεύεται.

of all kinds. Then Mandanis, assuming a haughty, philosophical tone, answered, “ That he did not want Alexander, “ and was the son of Jupiter as well as himself; that he was “ exempted from want, desire, or fear; that so long as he “ should live, the earth would furnish him all things necessary “ for his subsistence; and that death would rid him of a trou-
blesome companion; meaning his body, and set him at full “ liberty.” Calanus appeared more tractable; and notwithstanding the opposition, and even the prohibition of his superior, who reproached him for his abject spirit, in stooping so low as to serve another master besides God, he followed Onesicritus, and went to Alexander’s court, who received him with great demonstrations of joy.

We find by history, that this people used often to employ parables and similitudes for conveying their thoughts. One day, as he was discoursing with Alexander upon the maxims of wise policy and a prudent administration, he exhibited to that prince a sensible image, and a natural emblem of his empire. He laid upon the ground a great ox-hide, which was very dry and shrunk up, and then set his foot upon one end of it. The hide being pressed so, gave way, and all the other ends flew up; going thus quite round the hide, and pressing the several ends of it, he made him observe, that whilst he lowered it on one side, all the rest rose up, till treading at last upon the middle, the hide fell equally on all sides. By this image he hinted to him, that it would be proper for him to reside in the centre of his dominions, and not undertake such long journeys. We shall soon show the reader the manner in which this philosopher ended his days.

^a Alexander being determined to continue the war as long as he should meet with new nations, and to look upon them as enemies whilst they should live independent on him, was meditating about passing the Hyphasis. He was told, that after passing that river, he must travel eleven days through deserts, and that then he would arrive at the Ganges, the greatest river in all India. That farther in the country lived the Gangaridæ and the Prasii, whose king was preparing to oppose his entering his dominions, at the head of twenty thousand horse, and two hundred thousand foot, reinforced by two thousand chariots; and, which struck the greatest terror, with three thousand elephants. A report of this being

a Q. Curt. l. ix. c. 1.—9. Arrian. l. v. p. 221.—234. et l. vi. p. 255.—259. Plut. in Alex. p. 699, 701. Diod. l. xvii. p. 559.—570. Justin. l. xii. c. 9, 10.

spread through the army, surprised all the soldiers, and raised a general murmur. The Macedonians, who after having travelled through so many countries, and being grown grey in the field, were incessantly directing their eyes and wishes towards their dear native country, made loud complaints, that Alexander should every day heap war upon war, and danger upon danger. They had undergone, but just before, inexpressible fatigues, having been exposed to rain, accompanied with storms and thunder, for above two months. Some bewailed their calamities in such terms as raised compassion; others insolently cried aloud, that they would march no farther.

Alexander, being informed of this tumult, and that secret assemblies were formed in his camp, to prevent the ill consequences of them, sent for the officers into his tent, and commanding them to call the soldiers together, he made the following speech: "I am not ignorant, O soldiers! that the Indians have published several things, purposely to terrify us; but such discourses and artifices are not unusual to you. Thus the Persians described the straits of Cilicia, the vast plains of Mesopotamia, the rivers Tigris and Euphrates, as so many insurmountable difficulties, and yet your bravery conquered them. Do you repent that you have followed me thus far? As your glorious deeds have subdued for you a multitude of provinces, as you have extended your conquests beyond the Iaxarthes and mount Caucasus; as you see the rivers of India flow through the midst of your empire; why are you afraid of crossing the Hyphasis, and of setting up your trophies on the banks of it, as on those of the Hydaspes? What! can the elephants, whose number is so falsely augmented, terrify you to such a degree? But has not experience taught you, that they are more destructive to their own masters than to the enemy? Endeavours are used to intimidate you by the dreadful idea of innumerable armies; but are they more numerous than those of Darius? It is sure too late for you to count the legions of the enemy, after your victories have made Asia a desert. It was when you crossed the Hellespont that you ought to have reflected on the small number of your forces: but now the Scythians form part of our army; the Bactrians, the Sogdians, and the Dahæ are with us, and fight for our glory. I, however, do not depend on these Barbarians. It is on you only that I rely; your victorious arms only are present to my imagination, and your courage alone assures me success. So long as I shall be surrounded with you in fight, I shall not

“ have any occasion to count the number of my troops, nor
“ that of the enemy, provided you go on to battle with the
“ same marks of joy and confidence you have hitherto dis-
“ covered. Not only our glory, but even our safety, is at
“ stake. Should we now retreat, it will be supposed that we
“ fly before our enemies, and from that moment we shall
“ appear as mean as the enemy will be judged formidable;
“ for you are sensible, that in war reputation is every thing.
“ It is in my power to make use of authority, and yet I em-
“ ploy entreaties only. Do not abandon, I conjure you, I do
“ not say your king and master, but your pupil and com-
“ panion in battles. Do not break to pieces in my hand that
“ glorious palm, which will soon, unless envy rob me of so
“ great a glory, equal me to Hercules and to Bacchus.” As
the soldiers stood with their eyes cast on the ground, and did
not once open their lips—“ What!” continued he, “ do I
“ then speak to the deaf? Will no one listen to me, nor con-
“ descend to answer? Alas! I am abandoned, I am betrayed,
“ I am delivered up to the enemy. But—I will advance still
“ farther though I go alone. The Scythians and Bactrians,
“ more faithful than you, will follow me whithersoever I lead
“ them. Return then to your country, and boast, ye deserters
“ of your king, that you have abandoned him. As for my-
“ self, I will here either meet with the victory you despair of,
“ or with a glorious death, which henceforwards ought to be
“ the sole object of my wishes.”

Notwithstanding this lively, pathetic speech, the soldiers still kept a profound silence. They waited in expectation of hearing their commanders and chief officers remonstrate to the king that their affection was as strong as ever; but that as their bodies were covered with wounds, and worn out with toils, it would be impossible for them to continue the war. However, not one of them presumed to address him in their favour. The examples of Clitus, and that of Callisthenes, were still recent. The officers who were then with him, had an hundred times ventured their lives in battle for their prince; but they had not the courage to hazard the losing of their fortunes by telling him the truth. Whilst, therefore, the soldiers as well as officers continued dumb, without once daring to lift up their eyes, there rose on a sudden a murmur, which increasing by insensible degrees, broke into such deep groans and floods of tears, that the king himself, whose anger was now changed into compassion, could not forbear weeping.

At last, while the whole assembly were in tears, and in deep silence, Cœnus took courage, and drew near to the throne, discovering by his air and action, that he desired to speak. And when the soldiers saw him take off his helmet, that being the custom when any person spoke to the king, they besought him to plead the cause of the army; and accordingly he spoke as follows: "No, Sir, we are not changed with regard to "our affection for you: God forbid that so great a calamity "should ever befall us. We shall always retain the same "zeal, the same affection and fidelity. We are ready to fol- "low you at the hazard of our lives, and to march whither- "soever you shall think fit to lead us. But, if your soldiers "may be allowed to lay before you their sentiments, sincerely, "and without disguise, they beseech you to condescend so "far as to give ear to their respectful complaints, which no- "thing but the most extreme necessity could have extorted "from them. The greatness, Sir, of your exploits has con- "quered, not only your enemies, but even your soldiers "themselves. We have done all that it was possible for "men to do. We have crossed seas and lands. We shall "soon have marched to the end of the world; and you are "meditating the conquest of another, by going in search of "new Indies, unknown to the Indians themselves. Such a "thought may be worthy of your valour, but it surpasses ours, "and our strength still more. Behold those ghastly faces, "and those bodies covered over with wounds and scars. You "are sensible how numerous we were at your first setting out, "and you see what now remains of us. The few, who have "escaped so many toils and dangers, are neither brave nor "strong enough to follow you. All of them long to revisit "their relations and country, and to enjoy in peace the fruit "of their labours and your victories. Forgive them a desire "natural to all men. It will be glorious, Sir, for you to have "fixed such boundaries to your fortune, as only your modera- "tion could prescribe you; and to have vanquished yourself, "after having conquered all your enemies."

Cœnus had no sooner spoke, but there were heard, on all sides, cries and confused voices intermixed with tears, calling upon the king as "their lord and father." Afterwards, all the rest of the officers, especially those who assumed a greater authority because of their age, and for that reason could be better excused the freedom they took, made the same humble request: but still the king would not comply with it. It must cost a monarch many pangs, before he can prevail with him-

self to comply with things repugnant to his inclination. Alexander therefore shut himself up two days in his tent, without once speaking to any one, not even to his most familiar friends, in order to see whether some change might not be wrought in the army, as frequently happens on such occasions. But, finding it would be impossible to change the resolution of the soldiers, he commanded them to prepare for their return. This news filled the whole army with inexpressible joy; and Alexander never appeared greater, or more glorious, than on this day, in which he designed, for the sake of his subjects, to sacrifice some part of his glory and grandeur. The whole camp echoed with praises and blessings of Alexander, for having suffered himself to be overcome by his own army, who was invincible to the rest of the world. No triumph is comparable to those acclamations and applauses that come from the heart, and which are the lively and sincere overflowings of it; and it is a great pity that princes are not more affected with them.

Alexander had not spent above three or four months, at most, in conquering all the country between the Indus and the Hyphasus, called to this day Pengab, that is, the Five Waters, from the five rivers which compose it. Before his setting out, he raised twelve altars, to serve as so many trophies and thanksgivings for the victories he had obtained.

These instances of gratitude, in regard to the gods, were attended with the most incredible marks of vanity. The altars which he erected in their honour were seventy-five feet high. He caused a camp to be marked out, three times as large again as his own, and surrounded it with a fossé fifty feet in depth by ten broad. He ordered the foot to prepare, and leave each in his tent two beds, seven feet and a half in length; and the cavalry to make mangers for the horses of twice the usual dimensions. Every thing else was in proportion. Alexander's view in these orders, which flowed from an extravagance of vanity, was to leave posterity monuments of his heroic, and more than human grandeur, and to have it believed that himself and his followers were superior to all other mortals.

He afterwards crossed the Hydraotes, and left Porus all the lands he had conquered, as far as the Hyphasus. He also reconciled this monarch with Taxilus, and settled a peace between them by means of an alliance, equally advantageous to both. ^d From thence he went and encamped on the banks

^d Arr. in Ind. p. 319. Strab. l. xv. p. 692.

of the Acesines; but great rains having made this river overflow its banks, and the adjacent countries being under water, he was obliged to remove his camp higher up. Here a fit of sickness carried off Cœnus, whose loss was bewailed by the king and the whole army. There was not a greater officer among the Macedonians, and he had distinguished himself in a very peculiar manner in every battle in which he engaged. He was one of those singularly good men, zealous for the public, all whose actions are free from self-interested or ambitious views; and who bear so great a love to their king, as to dare to tell him the truth, be the consequence what it will. But now Alexander was preparing for his departure.

His fleet consisted of eight hundred vessels, as well galleys as boats, to carry the troops and provisions. Every thing being ready, the whole army embarked, about the setting of the Pleiades or seven stars, according to Aristobulus, that is, about the end of October. The fifth day, the fleet arrived where the Hydaspes and Acesines mix their streams. Here the ships were very much shattered, because these rivers unite with such prodigious rapidity, that as great storms arise in this part as in the open sea. At last he came into the country of the Oxydracæ and the Malli, the most valiant people in those parts. These were perpetually at war one with another; but, having united for their mutual safety, they had drawn together ten thousand horse, and eighty thousand foot, all vigorous young men, with nine hundred chariots. However, Alexander defeated them in several engagements, dispossessed them of strong holds, and at last marched against the city of the Oxydracæ, whither the greatest part were retired. Immediately he causes the scaling-ladders to be set up; and, as they were not nimble enough for Alexander, he forces one of the scaling-ladders from the soldier; runs up the first, covered with his shield, and gets to the top of the wall, followed only by Peueestes and Limneus. The soldiers, believing him to be in danger, mounted swiftly to succour him; but the ladders breaking, the king was left alone. Alexander, seeing himself the butt, against which all the darts were levelled, both from the towers and from the rampart, was so rash, rather than valiant, as to leap into the city, which was crowded with the enemy, having nothing to expect, but to be either taken or killed before it would be possible for him to rise, and without once having an opportunity to defend himself, or revenge his death. But, happily for him, he poised his body in such a manner, that he fell upon his feet; and finding him-

self standing, sword in hand, he repulsed such as were nearest him, and even killed the general of the enemy, who advanced to run him through. Happily for him a second time, not far from thence there stood a great tree, against the trunk of which he leaned, his shield receiving all the darts that were shot at him from a distance; for no one dared to approach him, so great was the dread which the boldness of the enterprise, and the fire that shot from his eyes, had struck into the enemy. At last, an Indian let fly an arrow three feet long, that being the length of their arrows, which piercing his coat of mail, entered a considerable way into his body, a little above the right side. So great a quantity of blood issued from the wound, that he dropped his arms, and lay as dead. Behold then this mighty conqueror ^c, this vanquisher of nations, upon the point of losing his life, not at the head of his armies, but in a corner of an obscure city, into which his rashness had thrown him. The Indian, who had wounded Alexander, ran, in the greatest transports of joy, to strip him; however, Alexander no sooner felt the hand of his enemy upon him, but, fired with the thirst of revenge, he recalled his spirits; and, laying hold of the Indian, as he had no arms, he plunged his dagger into his side. Some of his chief officers, as Peucestes, Leonatus, and Timæus, who had got to the top of the wall with some soldiers, come up that instant, and attempting impossibilities, for the sake of saving their sovereign's life, they form themselves as a bulwark round his body, and sustain the whole effort of the enemy. It was then that a mighty battle was fought round him. In the mean time, the soldiers, who had climbed up with the officers above mentioned, having broke the bolts of a little gate standing between two towers, they by that means let in the Macedonians. Soon after, the town was taken, and all the inhabitants were put to the sword, without distinction of age or sex.

The first care they took was to carry Alexander into his tent. Being got into it, the * surgeons cut off, so very dexterously, the wood of the shaft which had been shot into his body, that they did not move the steel point; and, after undressing him, they found it was a † bearded arrow; and that it could not be pulled out without danger, unless the wound were widened. The king bore the operation with incredible

^c Plut. de Fortun. Alex. p. 344.

* In these ages, they and physicians were the same thing.

† So arrows are called that have beards at their points like fish-hooks.—Animad-
vertunt hamos inesse telo.

resolution, so that there was no occasion for people to hold him. The incision being made, and the arrow drawn out, so great an effusion of blood ensued, that the king fainted away. Every one thought him dead ; but the blood being stopped, he recovered by degrees, and knew the persons about him. All that day, and the whole night after, the army continued under arms round his tent ; and would not stir from their posts, till certain news was brought of his being better, and that he began to take a little rest.

At the end of the seven days he had employed for his recovery, before his wound was closed, as he knew that the report of his death increased among the Barbarians, he caused two vessels to be joined together, and had his tent pitched in the middle, in sight of every one ; purposely to show himself to those who imagined him dead, and to ruin, by this means, all their projects, and the hopes with which they flattered themselves. He afterwards went down the river, going before at some distance from the rest of the fleet, for fear lest the noise of the oars should keep him from sleep, which he very much wanted. When he was a little better, and able to go out, the soldiers, who were upon guard, brought him his litter, but he refused it, and, calling for his horse, mounted him. At this sight, all the shore and the neighbouring forests echoed with the acclamations of the army, who imagined they saw him rise, in a manner, from the grave. Being come near his tent, he alighted, and walked a little way, surrounded with a great number of soldiers, some of whom kissed his hands, whilst others clasped his knees ; others again were contented with only touching his clothes, and with seeing him ; but all in general burst into tears, and calling for a thousand blessings from heaven, wished him long life, and an uninterrupted series of prosperity.

At this instant deputies came from the Malli, with the chiefs of the Oxydraceæ, being one hundred and sixty, besides the governors of the cities and of the province, who brought him presents, and paid him homage, pleading in excuse for not having done it before, their strong love of liberty. They declared, that they were ready to receive for their governor, whomsoever he pleased to nominate ; that they would pay him tribute, and give him hostages. He demanded a thousand of the chief persons of their nation, whom he also might make use of in war, till he had subjected all the country. They put into his hands such of their countrymen as were handsomest and best shaped, with five hundred chariots,

though not demanded by him ; at which the king was so much pleased, that he gave them back their hostages, and appointed Philip their governor.

Alexander, who was overjoyed at this embassy, and found his strength increase daily, tasted with so much the greater pleasure the fruits both of his victory and health, as he had like to have lost them for ever. His chief courtiers and most intimate friends thought it a proper juncture, during this calm and serenity of his mind, for them to unbosom themselves, and expose their fears to him : it was Craterus who spoke on this occasion. “ We begin, royal Sir, to breathe and live, now “ we find you in the condition to which the goodness of the “ gods has restored you. But how great were our fears and “ our griefs ! How severely did we reproach ourselves, for “ having abandoned, in such an extremity, our king, our fa-“ ther ! It was not in our power to follow him ; but this did “ not extenuate our guilt, and we look upon ourselves as cri-“ minals, in not having attempted impossibilities for your sake. “ But, Sir, never plunge us in such deep affliction hereafter. “ Does a wretched paltry town deserve to be bought at so “ dear a price as the loss of your life ? Leave those petty “ exploits and enterprises to us, and preserve your person for “ such occasions only as are worthy of you. We still shud-“ der with horror, when we reflect on what we so lately were “ spectators of. We have seen the moment, when the most “ abject hands upon earth were going to seize the greatest “ prince in the universe, and despoil him of his royal robes. “ Permit us, Sir, to say, you are not your own master, but “ that you owe yourself to us : we have a right over your “ life, since ours depends on it ; and we dare take the freedom “ to conjure you, as being your subjects and your children, to “ be more careful of so precious a life, if not for your own “ sake, at least for ours, and for the felicity of the uni-“ verse.”

The king was strongly touched with these testimonies of their affection, and having embraced them severally with inexpressible tenderness, he answered as follows : “ I cannot “ enough thank all present, who are the flower of my citizens “ and friends, not only for your having this day preferred “ my safety to your own, but also for the strong proofs you “ have given me of your zeal and affection, from the begin-“ ning of this war : and if any thing is capable of making me “ wish for a longer life, it is the pleasure of enjoying, for “ years to come, such valuable friends as you. But give me

“ leave to observe, that in some cases we differ very much in
“ opinion. You wish to enjoy me long ; and even, if it were
“ possible, for ever ; but, as to myself, I compute the length
“ of my existence, not by years, but by glory. I might have
“ confined my ambition within the narrow limits of Mace-
“ donia ; and contented with the kingdoms my ancestors left
“ me, have waited in the midst of pleasures and indolence, an
“ inglorious old age. I own that if my victories, not my
“ years, are computed, I shall seem to have lived long ; but
“ can you imagine, that after having made Europe and Asia
“ but one empire, after having conquered the two noblest
“ parts of the world, in the tenth year of my reign and the
“ thirtieth of my age, that it will become me to stop in the
“ midst of so exalted a career, and discontinue the pursuit of
“ glory, to which I have entirely devoted myself? Know,
“ that this glory ennobles all things, and gives a true and solid
“ grandeur to whatever appears insignificant. In what place
“ soever I may fight, I shall fancy myself upon the stage of
“ the world, and in presence of all mankind. I confess that
“ I have atchieved mighty things hitherto ; but the country
“ we are now in, reproaches me that a woman has done still
“ greater. It is Semiramis I mean. How many nations did
“ she conquer ! How many cities were built by her ! What
“ magnificent and stupendous works did she finish ! How
“ shameful is it, that I should not yet have attained to so ex-
“ alted a pitch of glory ! Do but second my ardour, and I
“ shall soon surpass her. Defend me only from secret cabals
“ and domestic treasons, by which most princes lose their
“ lives ; I take the rest upon myself, and will be answerable
“ to you for all the events of the war.”

This speech gives us a perfect idea of Alexander's character. He had no notion of true glory. He did not know either the principle, the rule, or end of it. He certainly placed it where it was not. He was strongly prejudiced in vulgar error, and cherished it. He fancied himself born merely for glory ; and that none could be acquired but by unbounded, unjust, and irregular conduct. In his impetuous sallies after a mistaken glory, he followed neither reason, virtue, nor humanity ; and as if his ambitious caprice ought to have been a rule and standard to all other men, he was surprised that neither his officers nor soldiers would enter into his views ; and they lent themselves very unwillingly to support his ridiculous enterprises.

Alexander, after having ended his speech, dismissed the assembly, and continued encamped for several days in this place. He afterwards went upon the river, and his army marched after him upon the banks. He then came among the Sabracæ, a powerful nation of Indians. These had levied sixty thousand foot and six thousand horse, and reinforced them with five hundred chariots ; however, the arrival of Alexander spread a terror through the whole country, and accordingly they sent ambassadors to make their submission. After having built another city, which he also called Alexandria, he arrived in the territories of Musicanus, a very rich prince, and afterwards in those of the king of Samus. At the siege of one of this king's towns, Ptolemy was dangerously wounded ; for the Indians had poisoned all their arrows and swords, so that the wounds they made were mortal. Alexander, who had the highest love and esteem for Ptolemy, was very much afflicted, and caused him to be brought in his bed near him, that he himself might have an eye to his cure. He was his near relation, and, according to some writers, a natural son of Philip. Ptolemy was one of the bravest men in the army, was highly esteemed in war, and had greater talents for peace. He was averse to luxury, vastly generous, easy of access, and did not imitate the pomp, which wealth and prosperity had made the rest of the Macedonian noblemen assume : in a word, it is hard to say, whether he were more esteemed by his sovereign or his country. We are told, there appeared to him, in a dream, a dragon, which presented him with an herb, as an effectual remedy ; and that upon his waking, he ordered it to be sent for ; when laying it upon the wound, it was healed in a few days, to the universal joy of the army.

^d The king, continuing his voyage, arrived at Patala, about the beginning of the dog-days, that is, about the end of July ; so that the fleet was nine months at least from its setting out till its arrival at that place. There the river Indus divides into two large arms, and forms an island, but much larger, like the Delta of the Nile ; and hence the city above mentioned received its name, Patala, according to Arrian^e, signifying, in the Indian tongue, the same as Delta in the Greek. Alexander caused a citadel to be built in Patala, as also an harbour and an arsenal for the shipping. This being done, he embarked on the right arm of the river, in order to sail as far as

^d Strab. l. xv. p. 692.

^e Arrian. in Indic. p. 314.

the ocean, exposing in this manner so many brave men to the mercy of a river with which they were wholly unacquainted. The only consolation they had in this rash enterprise, was Alexander's uninterrupted success. When he had sailed twenty leagues *, the pilots told him that they began to perceive the sea-air, and therefore believed that the ocean could not be far off. Upon this news, leaping for joy, he besought the sailors to row with all their strength, and told the soldiers, "That they at last were come to the end of their toils, which they had so earnestly desired ; that now nothing could oppose their valour, nor add to their glory ; that without fighting any more, or spilling of blood, they were masters of the universe ; that their exploits had the same boundaries with nature ; and that they would be spectators of things known only to the immortal gods."

Being come nearer the sea, a circumstance, new and unheard of by the Macedonians, threw them into the utmost confusion, and exposed the fleet to the greatest danger ; and this was the ebbing and flowing of the ocean. Forming a judgement of this vast sea from that of the Mediterranean, the only one they knew, and whose ebbings are imperceptible, they were very much astonished when they saw it rise to a great height, and overflow the country ; and considered it as a mark of the anger of the gods, to punish their rashness. They were no less surprised and terrified, some hours after, when they saw the ebbing of the sea, which now withdrew as it had before advanced, leaving those lands uncovered it had so lately overflowed. The fleet was very much shattered, and the ships being now upon dry land, the fields were covered with clothes, with broken oars and planks, as after a great storm.

At last Alexander, after having sailed full nine months in rivers, arrived at the ocean, where, gazing with the utmost eagerness upon that vast expanse of waters, he imagined that this sight, worthy so great a conqueror as himself, greatly overpaid all the toils he had overgone, and the many thousand men he had lost, to arrive at it. He then offered sacrifices to the gods, and particularly to Neptune ; threw into the sea the bulls he had slaughtered, and a great number of golden cups ; and besought the gods not to suffer any mortal after him to exceed the bounds of his expedition. Finding that he had extended his conquests to the extremities of the earth on that

* Four hundred furlongs.

side, he imagined he had completed his mighty design ; and, highly delighted with himself, he returned to rejoin the rest of his fleet and army, which waited for him at Patala, and in the neighbourhood of it.

SECTION XVII.

ALEXANDER IS GRIEVOUSLY DISTRESSED BY FAMINE. ^{III} HE MARRIES STATIRA, THE DAUGHTER OF DARIUS.

ALEXANDER ^f, being returned to Patala, prepared all things for the departure of his fleet. He appointed Nearchus admiral of it, who was the only officer that had courage to accept of this commission, which was a very hazardous one, because they were to sail over a sea entirely unknown to them. The king was very much pleased at his accepting of it; and, after testifying his acknowledgement upon that account in the most obliging terms, he commanded him to take the best ships in the fleet, and to go and sound the sea-coast extending from the Indus to the bottom of the Persian gulf; and, after having given these orders, he set out by land for Babylon.

^g Nearchus did not leave the Indus at the same time with Alexander. It was not yet the season proper for sailing. It was summer, when the southern sea-winds rise; and the season of the north winds, which blow in winter, was not yet come. He therefore did not set sail till about the end of September, which was too soon; and accordingly, he was incommoded by winds some days after his departure, and obliged to shelter himself for twenty-four days.

We are obliged for these particulars to Arrian, who has given us an exact journal of his voyage, copied from that of Nearchus the admiral.

Alexander, after having left Patala, marched through the country of the Oritæ; the capital whereof was called Ora, or Rambacis. Here he was in such want of provision, that he lost a great number of soldiers; and brought back from India scarce the fourth part of his army, which had consisted of an hundred and twenty thousand foot, and fifteen thousand horse. Sickness, bad food, and the excessive heats, had swept them away in multitudes; but famine made a still greater havock among the troops in this barren country, which was neither ploughed nor sowed; its inhabitants being savages, who fared

^f Arrian. in Indic. p. 334.

^g Ibid. p. 335.

very hard, and led a most uncomfortable life. After they had eaten all the palm-tree roots that could be met with, they were obliged to feed upon the beasts of burden, and next upon their war-horses; and when they had no beasts left to carry their baggage, they were forced to burn those rich spoils, for the sake of which the Macedonians had run to the extremities of the earth. The plague, a disease which generally accompanies famine, completed the calamity of the soldiers, and destroyed great numbers of them.

After marching threescore days, Alexander arrived on the confines of Gedrosia, where he found plenty of all things; for the soil was not only very fruitful, but the kings and great men, who lay nearest the country, sent him all kinds of provisions. He continued some time here, in order to refresh his army. The governors of India having sent, by his order, a great number of horses, and all kinds of beasts of burden, from the several kingdoms subject to him, he remounted his troops, equipped those who had lost every thing, and soon after presented all of them with arms, as beautiful as those they had before, which it was very easy for him to do, as they were upon the confines of Persia, at that time in peace, and in a very flourishing condition.

He arrived in Carmania, now called Kerman, and went through it, not with the air and equipage of a warrior and a conqueror, but in a kind of masquerade, and Bacchanalian festivity; committing the most riotous and extravagant actions. He was drawn by eight horses, himself being seated on a magnificent chariot, above which a scaffold was raised in the form of a square stage, where he passed the days and nights in feasts and carousing. This chariot was preceded and followed by an infinite number of others, some of which, in the shape of tents, were covered with rich carpets, and purple coverlets; and others, shaped like cradles, were overshadowed with branches of trees. On the sides of the roads, and at the doors of houses, a great number of casks ready broached were placed, whence the soldiers drew wine in large flaggons, cups, and goblets, prepared for that purpose.

The whole country echoed with the sound of instruments, and the howling of the Bacchanals, who, with their hair dishevelled, and like so many frantic creatures, ran up and down, abandoning themselves to every kind of licentiousness. All this he did in imitation of the triumph of Bacchus, who, as we are told, crossed all Asia in this equipage, after he had conquered India. This riotous dissolute march lasted seven

days, during all which time the army was never sober. It was very happy, says Quintus Curtius, for them, that the conquered nations did not think of attacking them in this condition; for a thousand resolute men, well armed, might with great ease have defeated these conquerors of the world, whilst thus plunged in wine and excess.

^h Nearchus still keeping along the sea-coast, from the mouth of the Indus, came at last into the Persian gulf, and arrived at the island of Harmusia, now called Ormus: He there was informed, that Alexander was not above five days journey from him. Having left the fleet in a secure place, he went to meet Alexander, accompanied only by four persons. The king was very anxious about his fleet. When news was brought him that Nearchus was arrived almost alone, he imagined that it had been entirely destroyed, and that Nearchus had been so very happy as to escape from the general defeat. His arrival confirmed him still more in his opinion, when he beheld a company of pale lean creatures, whose countenances were so much changed, that it was scarce possible to know them again. Taking Nearchus aside, he told him, that he was overjoyed at his return, but at the same time was inconsolable for the loss of his fleet. "Your fleet, royal Sir," cried he immediately, "thanks to the gods, is not lost;" upon which he related the condition in which he had left it. Alexander could not refrain from tears, and confessed, that this happy news gave him greater pleasure than the conquest of all Asia. He heard, with uncommon delight, the account Nearchus gave of his voyage, and the discoveries he had made; and bid him return back, and go quite up the Euphrates as far as Babylon, pursuant to the first orders he had given him.

In Carmania, many complaints were made to Alexander, concerning governors and other officers, who had grievously oppressed the people of various provinces during his absence; for, fully persuaded he would never return, they had exercised every species of rapine, tyranny, cruelty, and oppression. But Alexander, strongly affected with their grievances, and pierced to the very soul with their just complaints, put to death as many as were found guilty of mal-administration, and with them six hundred soldiers, who had been the instruments of their exactions and other crimes. He even afterwards treated with the same severity, all such of his officers as were convicted of the like guilt, so that his government

was beloved by all the conquered nations. He was of opinion, that a prince owes these examples of severity to his equity, which ought to check every kind of irregularity; to his glory, to prove he does not connive or share in the injustice committed in his name; to the consolation of his subjects, whom he supplies with a vengeance themselves ought never to exercise; in fine, to the safety of his dominions, which, by so equitable an administration, is secured from many dangers, and very often from insurrections. It is a great unhappiness to a kingdom, when every part of it resounds with exactions, vexations, oppressions, and corruption, and not so much as a single man is punished, as a terror to the rest; and that the whole weight of the public authority falls only upon the people, and never on those who ruin them.

The great pleasure Alexander took in the account which Nearchus gave him of his successful voyage, made that prince have a great inclination to go upon the ocean. He proposed no less than to sail from the Persian gulf, round Arabia and Africa, and to return into the Mediterranean by the straits of Gibraltar, called at that time Hercules' Pillars; a voyage which had been several times attempted, and once performed by order of a king of Egypt called Necho, as I have observed elsewhere. It was afterwards his design, when he should have humbled the pride of Carthage, against which he was greatly exasperated, to cross into Spain, called by the Greeks Iberia, from the river Iberus: he next was to go over the Alps, and coast along Italy, where he would have but a short passage into Epirus, and from thence into Macedonia. For this purpose, he sent orders to the viceroys of Mesopotamia and Syria, to build, in several parts of the Euphrates, and particularly at Thapsacus, ships sufficient for that enterprise; and he caused to be felled, on mount Libanus, a great number of trees, which were to be carried into the above-mentioned city. But this project, as well as a great many more which he meditated, were all defeated by his early death.

Continuing his march, he went to Passagardæ, a city of Persia. Orsines was governor of the country, and the greatest nobleman in it. He was descended from Cyrus; and, besides the wealth he inherited from his ancestors, he himself had amassed great treasures, having, for many years, ruled a large country. He had done the king a signal piece of service. The person who governed the provinces during Alexander's expedition into India, happened to die; when Orsines, observing that, for want of a governor, all things were running to

confusion, took the administration upon himself, composed matters very happily, and preserved them in the utmost tranquillity, till Alexander's arrival. He went to meet him, with presents of all kinds for himself, as well as his officers. These consisted of a great number of fine managed horses, chariots enriched with gold and silver, precious moveables, jewels, gold vases of prodigious weight, purple robes, and four thousand talents of silver in specie *. However, this generous magnificence proved fatal to him; for he presented such gifts to the principal grandees of the court, as infinitely exceeded their expectations, but gave nothing to the eunuch Bagoas, the king's favourite; and this not through forgetfulness, but out of contempt. Some persons telling him how much the king loved Bagoas, he answered, "I honour the king's 'friends, but not an infamous eunuch." These words being told Bagoas, he employed all his credit to ruin a prince descended from the noblest blood in the east, and irreproachable in his conduct. He even bribed some of Orsines' attendants, giving them instructions how to impeach him at a proper season; and in the mean time, whenever he was alone with the king, he filled his mind with suspicions and distrust, letting drop ambiguous expressions of that nobleman, as if by chance; and dissembling very artfully the motives of his discontent. Nevertheless, the king suspended his judgement for the present, but discovered less esteem than before for Orsines, who knew nothing of what was plotting against him, so secretly the affair was carried on; and the eunuch, in his private discourses with Alexander, was perpetually charging him either with exactions or treason.

The great danger to which princes are exposed, is the suffering themselves to be prejudiced and over-reached in this manner by their favourites; a danger so common, that St Bernard, writing to Pope Eugenius, assures him ⁱ, that if he were exempted from this weakness, he may boast himself to be the only man in the world that is so. What is here spoken of princes, is applicable to all who represent them. Great men generally listen with pleasure to the slanderer; and for this reason, because he generally puts on the mask of affection and zeal, which soothes their pride. Slander always makes some impression on the most equitable minds; and leaves behind it such dark and gloomy traces, as raise suspicions, jea-

ⁱ De Consider. l. ii. c. 14.

* About L. 600,000.

lousies, and distrusts. The artful slanderer is bold and indefatigable, because he is sure to escape unpunished ; and is sensible that he runs but very little danger in greatly prejudicing others. With regard to the great, they seldom inquire into secret calumnies, either from indolence, giddiness, or shame to appear suspicious, fearful, or diffident ; in a word, from their unwillingness to own that they were imposed upon, and had abandoned themselves to a rash credulity. In this manner, the most unsullied virtue, and the most irreproachable fidelity, are frequently brought to inevitable ruin.

Of this we have a sad example on the present occasion. Bagoas, after having taken his measures at a distance, at last gave birth to his dark design. Alexander having caused the monument of Cyrus to be opened, in order to perform funeral honours to the ashes of that great prince, found nothing in it, but an old rotten shield, two Scythian bows, and a scimitar ; whereas he hoped to find it full of gold and silver, as the Persians had reported. The king laid a golden crown on his urn, and covered it with his cloak ; vastly surprised that so powerful and renowned a prince had not been buried with greater pomp than a private man. Bagoas thinking this a proper time for him to speak, “Are we to wonder,” says he, “to find the tombs of kings so empty, since the houses of the governors of provinces are filled with the gold of which they have deprived them? I, indeed, had never seen this monument ; but I have heard Darius say, that immense treasures were buried in it. Hence flowed the unbounded liberality and profusion of Orsines, who, by bestowing what he could not keep without ruining himself, thought to make a merit of this in your sight.” This charge was without the least foundation ; and yet the Magi, who guarded the sepulchre, were put to the torture, but all to no purpose ; and nothing was discovered relating to the pretended theft. Their silence on this occasion ought naturally to have cleared Orsines ; but the artful, insinuating discourses of Bagoas, had made a deep impression on Alexander’s mind, and by that means given calumny an easy access to it. The accusers whom Bagoas had suborned, having made choice of a favourable moment, came and impeached Orsines, and charged him with the commission of several odious crimes, and amongst the rest, with stealing the treasures of the monument. At this charge the matter appeared no longer doubtful, and the indications were thought sufficient ; so that this prince was loaded with chains before

he so much as suspected that any accusation had been brought against him; and was put to death, without being so much as heard, or confronted with his accusers. Too unhappy fate of kings, who do not hear and examine things in person! and who still continue infatuated, notwithstanding the numberless examples they read in history, of princes who have been betrayed in like manner.

I have already said, that there had followed the king an Indian called Calanus, reputed the wisest man of his country, who, though he professed the practice of the most severe philosophy, had however been persuaded, in his extreme old age, to attend upon the court. ^k This man having lived eighty-three years, without having ever been afflicted with sickness; and having a very severe fit of the cholic upon his arrival at Passagarda, he resolved to put himself to death. Resolutely determined not to let the perfect health he had always enjoyed be impaired by lingering pains; and being also assured of falling into the hands of physicians, and of being tortured with loads of medicine, he besought the king to order the erecting of a funeral pile for him, and desired, that after he had ascended it, fire might be set to it. Alexander imagined Calanus might be easily dissuaded from so dreadful a design; but finding, in spite of all the arguments he could use, that Calanus was still inflexible, he at last was obliged to acquiesce with it. Calanus then rode on horse-back to the foot of the funeral pile; offered up his prayers to the gods; caused libations to be performed upon himself, and the rest of the ceremonies to be observed which are practised at funerals; cut off a tuft of his hair, in imitation of victims; embraced such of his friends as were present; entreated them to be merry that day, to feast and carouse with Alexander; assuring them at the same time, that he would soon see that prince in Babylon. After saying these words, he ascended, with the utmost cheerfulness, the funeral pile, laid himself down upon it, and covered his face: and, when the flame catched him, he did not make the least motion; but with a patience and constancy that surprised the whole army, continued in the posture in which he at first had laid himself; and completed his sacrifice, by dying pursuant to the custom practised by the sages of his country.

^l The historian informs us, that people differed very much

^k Arrian. I. vii. p. 276. Diod. I. vii. p. 573, 574. Plut. in Alex. p. 703.

^l Diodore.

in opinion with respect to this action. Some condemned it, as suiting only a frantic, senseless wretch; others imagined he was prompted to it out of vain glory, merely for the sake of being gazed at, and to pass for a miracle in constancy, and these were not mistaken: in fine, others applauded this false heroism, which had enabled him to triumph in this manner over sorrow and death.

Alexander, being returned into his tent, after this dreadful ceremony, invited several of his friends and general officers to supper; and in compliance with Calanus' request, and to do him honour, he proposed a crown, as a reward for him who should quaff most. He who conquered on this occasion was Promachus, who swallowed four measures of wine, that is, eighteen or twenty pints: After receiving the prize, which was a crown worth a * talent, he survived his victory but three days. Of these guests, forty-one died of their intemperance: a scene worthy of closing that which Calanus had a little before exhibited!

^m From Passagarda, Alexander came to Persepolis; and, surveying the remains of the conflagration, was exasperated against himself, for his folly in setting it on fire. From hence he advanced towards Susa. Nearchus, in compliance with his orders, had begun to sail up the Euphrates with his fleet; but upon advice that Alexander was going to Susa, he came down again to the mouth of the Pasi-tigris, and sailed up this river to a bridge, where Alexander was to pass it. Then the naval and land armies joined. The king offered to his gods sacrifices, by way of thanks for his happy return, and great rejoicings were made in the camp. Nearchus received the honours due to him for the care he had taken of the fleet, and for having conducted it so far safe, through numberless dangers.

Alexander found in Susa all the captives of quality he had left there. He married Statira, Darius' eldest daughter, and gave the youngest to his dear Hephaestion. And in order that, by making these marriages more common, his own might not be censured, he persuaded the greatest noblemen in his court, and his principal favourites, to imitate him. Accordingly they chose from amongst the noblest families of Persia, about eighty young maidens, whom they married. His design was, by these alliances, to cement so strongly the union

^m Arrian. de Indic. p. 357, 358.

* A thousand crowns.

of the two nations, that they should henceforward form but one, under his empire. The nuptials were solemnized after the Persian manner. He likewise feasted all the rest of the Macedonians who had married before in that country. It is related that there were nine thousand guests at this feast, and that he gave each of them a golden cup for the libations.

Not satisfied with this bounty, he would also pay his soldiers debts. But finding that several would not declare the sum they owed, for fear of its being an artifice merely to discover those among them who were too lavish of their money, he appointed in his camp, offices, where all debts were paid without asking the name either of debtor or creditor. His liberality was very great on this occasion, and gave prodigious satisfaction; we are told that it amounted to near ten thousand talents *; but his indulgence, in permitting every person to conceal his name, was a still more agreeable circumstance. He reproached his soldiers for their seeming to suspect the truth of his promise, and said to them, † “That a king ought “never to forfeit his word with his subjects; nor his subjects “suspect that he could be guilty of so shameful a prevarication.” A truly royal maxim, as it forms the security of a people, and the most solid glory of a prince; which at the same time may be renounced for ever by the violation of a single promise, which, in affairs of government, is the most fatal of all errors.

And now there arrived at Susa thirty thousand Persian young men, most of the same age, and called Epigones, that is, successors; as coming to relieve the old soldiers in their duty and long fatigues. Such only had been made choice of as were the strongest and best shaped in all Persia, and had been sent to the governors of such cities as were either founded or conquered by Alexander. These had instructed them in military discipline, and in all things relating to the science of war. They were all very neatly dressed, and armed after the Macedonian manner. These came and encamped before the city, where, drawing up in battle-array, they were reviewed, and performed their exercises before the king, who was extremely well pleased, and very bountiful to them afterwards, at which the Macedonians took great umbrage. And indeed, Alexander observing these were harassed and tired out with the length of the war, and often vented murmurs and com-

* About fifteen hundred thousand pounds.

† Οὐ γὰρ χεῦται ὅτε οὐ τὸν βασιλέα ἀλλό τι οὐ ἀληθεύειν πρὸς τὸν ὑπηκόον;
Οὐτε τῶν ἀρχομένων τινά ἀλλό τι οὐ ἀληθεύειν δοκεῖν τὸν βασιλέα. —Arrian.

plaints in the assemblies ; he for that reason was desirous of training up these new forces, purposely to check the licentiousness of the veterans. It is dangerous to disgust a whole nation, and to favour foreigners too openly.

ⁿ In the mean time Harpalus, whom Alexander, during his expedition into India, had appointed governor of Babylon, quitted his service. Flattering himself with the hopes that this prince would never return from his wars in that country, he had given a loose to all kinds of licentiousness, and consumed in his infamous revels part of the wealth with which he had been intrusted. As soon as he was informed that Alexander, in his return from India, punished very severely such of his lieutenants as had abused their power, he meditated how he might best secure himself ; and for this purpose amassed five thousand talents, that is, about seven hundred and fifty thousand pounds, assembled six thousand soldiers, withdrew into Attica, and landed at Athens. ^o Immediately all such orators as made a trade of eloquence, ran to him in crowds, all ready to be corrupted by bribes, as they were before by hopes of them. Harpalus did not fail to distribute a small part of his wealth among these orators, to win them over to his interest, but he offered Phocion seven hundred ^{*} talents, and even put his person under his protection, well knowing the prodigious authority he had over the people.

The fame of his probity, and particularly of his disinterestedness, had gained him this credit. Philip's deputies had offered him great sums of money in that prince's name, and entreating him to accept them, if not for himself, at least for his children, who were so poor, that it would be impossible for them to support the glory of his name : " If they resemble " me," replied Phocion, [†] " the little spot of ground, with the " produce of which I have hitherto lived, and which has raised " me to the glory you mention, will be sufficient to maintain " them ; if it will not, I do not intend to leave them wealth, " merely to foment and heighten their luxury." ^P Alexander having likewise sent him an hundred [‡] talents, Phocion asked those who brought them, upon what design Alexander sent him

ⁿ Plut. in Demosth. p. 857, 858.

^o Ibid. in Phoc. p. 751.

^p Plut. in Phoc. p. 749.

^{*} Seven hundred thousand crowns.

[†] Si mei similes erunt, idem hic, inquit, agellus illos alet, qui me ad hanc dignitatem perduxit : sin dissimiles sunt futuri, nolo meis impensis illorum ali augerique luxuriam.—Cor. Nep. in Phoc. c. I.

[‡] An hundred thousand crowns.

so great a sum, and did not remit any to the rest of the Athenians? "It is," replied they, "because Alexander looks upon you as the only just and virtuous man." Says Phocion, "Let him suffer me still to enjoy that character, and be really what I am taken for."

The reader will suppose, that he did not give a more favourable reception to the persons sent by Harpalus. And indeed he spoke to them in very harsh terms, declaring, that he should immediately take such measures as would be very disagreeable to the person on whose errand they came, in case he did not leave off bribing the city; so that Harpalus lost all hopes from that quarter.

Demosthenes did not at first show more favour to Harpalus. He advised the Athenians to drive him out from their city, and not to involve it in a war, upon a very unjust occasion, and at the same time without the least necessity.

Some days after, Harpalus, as an inventory was taking of his goods, having observed that Demosthenes took a particular pleasure in viewing one of the king's cups of solid gold, and that he admired the fashion and the beauty of the workmanship, desired him to take it in his hand, and tell him the weight of it. Demosthenes taking the cup, was surprised at its heaviness, and accordingly asked how much it weighed? Harpalus answered with a smile, twenty * talents, I believe; and that very evening sent him that sum with the cup; for so great was Harpalus' penetration, that he could discover by the air, and certain glances, the foible of a man struck with the charms of gold. Demosthenes could not resist its power; but overcome by this present, and being † no longer master of himself, he joined on a sudden with Harpalus' party; and the very next morning, wrapping his neck well in woollen cloths, he went to the assembly. The people then ordered him to rise and make a speech, but he refused, making signs that he had lost his voice; upon which some wags cried aloud, that their orator had been seized in the night, not with a ‡ squinancy, but an argyancy; thereby intimating, that Harpalus' money had suppressed his voice.

* Twenty thousand crowns.

† The expression in the Greek is full of beauty and spirit. Plutarch compares the gold which had been accepted by Demosthenes, to a garrison of the enemy, which a governor had received into his city, and thereby dispossessed himself of the command of it: *πλήγησις ὑπὸ τῆς δωροθέλειας, ωσπερ παραδίδειγμενος φρουράν.*

‡ It is impossible to translate the agreeable play of these Greek words: οὐχ ἄπο συνάλλα χρις ἴφεαζον ἀλλ' ἀπ' ἀργυρεωγχες εἰληφθαι γυντος τὸν δημαγῶγον.

The people, being told next day of the gift which had been sent to Demosthenes, were highly exasperated, and refused to hear his justification. Harpalus was thereupon expelled the city; and in order to discover the persons who had taken bribes, the magistrates commanded a strict search to be made in all houses, that of Caricles excepted, who having married but a little before, was exempted from this inquiry, out of respect to his bride. The politeness shown on this occasion does honour to Athens, and is not always exercised elsewhere.

Demosthenes, to prove his innocence, proposed a decree, by which the senate of the Areopagus was empowered to take cognizance of this matter. He was the first they tried, and fined, upon being convicted, fifty * talents, for the payment of which he was thrown into prison; however he found means to escape, and left his country. Demosthenes did not behave with resolution and magnanimity in his banishment, residing generally at Ægina or Trezena; and every time he cast his eyes on Attica, his face would be covered with tears; and he suffered such words to drop from him, as were unworthy a brave man; words which by no means correspond with his resolute and generous behaviour during his administration. Cicero was reproached with the same weakness in his exile, which shows that great men are not such at all times, and on all occasions.

¶ It were to be wished, for the honour of eloquence, that what Pausanias relates in justification of Demosthenes were true; and it was very probable it was so. According to this author, Harpalus, after flying from Athens, was seized by Philoxenus the Macedonian; and being racked to extort from him the names of such Athenians as had been bribed by him, he did not once mention Demosthenes, whose name, had he been guilty, he would not have suppressed before Philoxenus, as that orator was his enemy.

Upon the first report of Harpalus' flying to Athens, Alexander, fully determined to go in person to punish Harpalus and the Athenians, had commanded a fleet to be equipped. But after news was brought that the people in their assembly had ordered him to depart their city, he laid aside all thoughts of returning into Europe.

Alexander, having still a curiosity to see the ocean, came down from Susa, upon the river Eulæus; and after having

q Pausan. l. ii. p. 148.

* Fifty thousand crowns.

coasted the Persian gulf to the mouth of the Tigris, he went up that river towards the army, which was encamped on the banks of it, near the city of Opis, under the command of Hephaestion.

Upon his arrival there, he published a declaration in the camp, by which all the Macedonians, who, by reason of their age, wounds, or any other infirmity, were unable to support any longer the fatigues of the service, were permitted to return into Greece; declaring, that his design was to discharge them, to be bountiful to them, and send them back to their native country in a safe and honourable manner. His intention was, in making this declaration, to oblige, and at the same time give them the strongest proof how greatly they were in his esteem. However, the very contrary happened: for being already disgusted upon some other accounts, especially by the visible preference which Alexander gave to foreigners, they imagined, that his resolution was to make Asia the seat of his empire, and to disengage himself from the Macedonians; and that the only motive of his doing this was, that they might make room for the new troops he had levied in the conquered countries. This alone was sufficient to exasperate them to fury. Upon which, without observing the least order or discipline, or regarding the remonstrances of their officers, they went to the king with an air of insolence which they had never assumed till then, and with seditious cries unanimously demanded to be discharged: saying further, that since he despised the soldiers who had gained him all his victories, he and his father Ammon might carry on the war against whomsoever, and in what manner they pleased; but as for themselves, they were fully determined not to serve him any longer.

The king, no ways surprised, and without once hesitating, jumps from his tribunal; causes the principal mutineers, whom he himself pointed out to his guards, to be immediately seized, and orders thirteen to be punished. This bold and vigorous action, which thunderstruck the Macedonians, suppressed their courage in an instant. Quite amazed and confounded, and scarce daring to look at one another, they stood with downcast eyes, and were so dispirited, and trembled so prodigiously, that they were unable either to speak, or even to think. Seeing them in this condition, he re-ascended his tribunal, where, after repeating to them, with a severe countenance, and a menacing tone of voice, the numerous favours which Philip his father had bestowed upon them, and all the marks of kindness and friendship by which he himself had distinguished

them, he concluded with these words : “ You all desire a discharge ; I grant it you. Go now, and publish to the whole world, that you have left your prince to the mercy of the nations he had conquered, who were more affectionate to him than you.” After speaking thus, he returned suddenly into his tent ; cashiered his old guard ; appoints another in its place, all composed of Persian soldiers ; shuts himself up for some days, and would not see any person all the time.

Had the Macedonians been sentenced to die, it could not have surprised them more than when news was brought them, that the king had confided the guard of his person to the Persians. They could suppress their grief no longer, so that nothing was heard but cries, groans, and lamentations. Soon after, they all run together to the king’s tent, throw down their arms, confessing their guilt, acknowledging their fault with tears and sighs ; declare that the loss of life will not be so grievous as the loss of honour ; and protest that they will not leave the place till the king hath pardoned them. At last, Alexander could no longer resist the tender proofs they gave of their sorrow and repentance ; so that when he himself, at his coming out of his tent, saw them in this dejected condition, he could not refrain from tears ; and, after some gentle reproaches, which were softened by an air of humanity and kindness, he declared so loud as to be heard by them all, that he restored them to his friendship. This was restoring them to life, as was manifest from their shouts.

He afterwards discharged such Macedonians as were no longer able to carry arms, and sent them back to their native country with rich presents. He commanded, that at the exhibiting of the public games, they should be allowed the chief places in the theatre, and there sit with crowns on their heads ; and gave orders, that the children of those who had lost their lives in his service, should receive, during their minority, the same pay which had been given their fathers. Such support and honours granted to veterans, must necessarily ennoble, in a very conspicuous manner, the military profession ! It is not possible for a government to enrich every soldier in particular ; but it may animate and console him by marks of distinction, which inspire a stronger ardour for war, more constancy in the service, and nobler sentiments and motives.

Alexander appointed Craterus commander of these soldiers, to whom he gave the government of Macedonia, Thessaly, and Thrace, which Antipater had enjoyed ; and the latter was commanded to bring the recruits instead of Craterus. The

king had long since been quite tired with the complaints of his mother and Antipater, who could not agree. She charged Antipater with aspiring at sovereign power, and the latter complained of her violent and untractable disposition; and had often declared in his letters, that she did not behave in a manner suitable to her dignity. It was with some reluctance Antipater resigned his government.

From Opis, Alexander arrived at Ecbatana in Media, where, after having dispatched the most urgent affairs of the kingdom, he again solemnized games and festivals. There had come to him from Greece, three thousand dancers, makers of machinery, and other persons skilled in diversions of this kind. It happened very unluckily, during the celebration of these festivals, that Hephaestion died of a disease which he brought upon himself. Alexander abandoning himself to immoderate drinking, his whole court followed his example, and sometimes spent whole days and nights in these excesses. In one of them Hephaestion lost his life. He was the most intimate friend the king had, the confidant of all his secrets, and, to say all in a word, a second self. Craterus only seemed to dispute this honour with him. A few words, which one day escaped that prince, shows the difference he made between these two courtiers. "Craterus," says he, "loves the king, but He-
"phaestion loves Alexander." This expression signifies, if I mistake not, that Hephaestion had devoted himself, in a tender and affectionate manner, to the person of Alexander; but that Craterus loved him as a king, that is, was concerned for his reputation, and sometimes was less obsequious to his will, than he was zealous for his glory and interest. An excellent character, but very uncommon.

Hephaestion was as much beloved by all the courtiers, as by Alexander himself. Modest, even-tempered, beneficent; free from pride, avarice, and jealousy; he never abused his credit, nor preferred himself to those officers whose merit made them necessary to his sovereign. He was universally regretted; but his death threw Alexander into excessive sorrow, to which he abandoned himself in such a manner, as was unworthy so great a king. He seemed to receive no consolation, but in the extraordinary funeral honours he paid to his friend at his arrival in Babylon, whither he commanded Perdiccas to carry his corpse.

In order to remove, by business and employment, the me-

lancholy ideas which the death of his favourite perpetually awakened in his mind, Alexander marched his army against the Cossæi, a warlike nation inhabiting the mountains of Media, whom not one of the Persian monarchs had ever been able to conquer. However, the king reduced them in forty days, afterwards passed the Tigris, and marched towards Babylon.

SECTION XVIII.

ALEXANDER ENTERS BABYLON. HIS DEATH. HIS CORPSE CONVEYED TO THE TEMPLE OF JUPITER-AMMON.

ALEXANDER being arrived within a league and a half of Babylon^s, the Chaldeans, who pretended to know futurity by the stars, deputed to him some of their old men, to acquaint him, that he would be in danger of his life, in case he entered that city; and were very urgent with him to go no farther. The Babylonish astrologers were held in such great reputation, that this advice made a prodigious impression on his mind, and filled him with confusion and dread. Upon this, after sending several of the grandees of his court to Babylon, he himself went another way; and having marched about ten leagues, he stopped for some time in the place where he had encamped his army. The Greek philosophers, being told the foundation of his fear and scruples, waited upon him; when setting in the strongest light the principles of Anaxagoras, whose tenets they followed, they demonstrated to him, in the strongest manner, the vanity of astrology; and made him have so great a contempt for divination in general, and for that of the Chaldeans in particular, that he immediately marched towards Babylon with his whole army. ^t He knew that there were arrived in that city, ambassadors from all parts of the world, who waited for his coming; the whole earth echoing so much with the terror of his name, that the several nations came, with inexpressible ardour, to pay homage to Alexander, as to him who was to be their sovereign. This view, which agreeably soothed the strongest of all his passions, contributed very much to stifle every other reflection, and to make him careless of all advice that might be given him; so that he set forward with all possible diligence towards that

^s Arrian. l. vii. p. 294.—309. Q. Curt. l. x. c. 4.—7. Plut. in Alex. p. 705.—707. ^t Diod. l. xvii. p. 577.—583. Justin. l. xii. c. 13.—16.

great city, there to hold the states-general, in a manner, of the world. After making a most magnificent entry, he gave audience to all the ambassadors, with the grandeur and dignity suitable to a great monarch, and, at the same time, with the affability and politeness of a prince who is desirous of winning the affection of all. He loaded those of Epidaurus with great presents for the deity who presides over their city, as well as over health, but reproached him at the same time. "Aesculapius," says he, "has showed me but very little indulgence, in not preserving the life of a friend, who was as dear to me as myself." In private, he discovered a great friendship for such of the deputies of Greece as came to congratulate him on his victories, and his happy return: and he restored them all the statues, and other curiosities, which Xerxes had carried out of Greece, that were found in Susa, Babylon, Passagarda, and other places. We are told, that among these were the statues of Harmodius and Aristogiton, and that they were brought back to Athens.

The ambassadors from Corinth having offered him, in the name of their city, the freedom of it, he laughed at an offer which seemed altogether unworthy of one who had attained so exalted a pitch of grandeur and power. However, when Alexander was told that Corinth had granted this privilege to Hercules only, he accepted it with joy; and piqued himself upon treading in his steps, and resembling him in all things. But, cries Seneca *, in what did this frantic young man, with whom successful temerity passed for virtue, resemble Hercules? The latter, free from all self-interested views, travelled through the world, merely to serve the several nations he visited, and to purge the earth of such robbers as infested it: whereas Alexander, who is justly entitled the plunderer of nations, made his glory consist in carrying desolation into all places, and in rendering himself the terror of mankind.

At the same time he wrote a letter, which was to have been read publicly in the assembly of the Olympic games, whereby the several cities of Greece were commanded to permit all exiles to return into their native country, those excepted who had committed sacrilege, or any other crime deserving death; and ordered Antipater to employ an armed

* Quid illi simile habebat vesanus adolescens, cui pro virtute erat felix temeritas? Hercules nihil sibi vicit. Orbem terrarum transvit, non concupiscono, sed vindicando---malorum hostis, bonorum vindex, terrarum marisque pacator. At hic a pueritia latro gentiumque vastator---summum bonum duxit, terrori esse cunctis mortalibus.---Senec. de Benef. l. i. c. 18.

force against such cities as should refuse to obey. This letter was read in the assembly. But as for the Athenians and *Ætolians*, they did not think themselves obliged to put orders in execution which seemed to interfere with their liberty.

Alexander, after having dispatched these affairs, finding himself now at leisure, began to think of Hephaestion's burial. This he solemnized with a magnificence, the like of which had never been seen. As he himself undertook the management of this funeral, he commanded all the neighbouring cities to contribute their utmost in exalting the pomp of it. He likewise ordered all the nations of Asia to extinguish what the Persians call the Sacred Fire, till the ceremony of the interment should be ended; which was considered as an ill omen, it being never practised in Persia, except at the death of its monarchs. All the officers and courtiers, to please Alexander, caused images to be carved of that favourite, of gold, ivory, and other precious materials.

At the same time the king having procured a great number of architects, and skilful workmen, first caused near six furlongs of the wall of Babylon to be beat down; and, having got together a great number of bricks, and levelled the spot designed for the funeral pile, he had a most magnificent monumental structure erected over it.

This edifice was divided into thirty parts, in each whereof was raised an uniform building, the roof of which was covered with great planks of palm-tree wood. The whole formed a perfect square, the circumference of which was adorned with extraordinary magnificence. Each side was a furlong, or an hundred fathoms, in length. At the foot of it, and in the first row, were set two hundred and forty-four prows of ships gilded, on the buttresses *, or supporters whereof, the statues of two archers, four cubits high, with one knee on the ground, were fixed; and two other statues, in an upright posture, completely armed, bigger than the life, being five cubits in height. The spaces between the prows were spread and adorned with purple cloth. Over these prows was a colonnade of large flambeaux, the shafts of which were fifteen cubits high, embellished with crowns of gold at the part where they are held. The flame of those flambeaux ending at top, terminated towards eagles, which, with their heads turned downwards,

* In Greek *Ἐπωτίδες*, or ears. These are two pieces of timber, which project to the right and the left of the prow.

and extended wings, served as capitals. Dragons fixed near, or upon the base, turned their heads upwards towards the eagles. Over this colonnade stood a third, in the base of which was represented, in relievo, a party of hunting animals of every kind. On the superior order, that is, the fourth, the combat of the Centaurs was represented in gold. Finally, on the fifth, golden figures, representing lions and bulls, were placed alternately. The whole edifice terminated with military trophies, after the Macedonian and Barbarian fashion, as so many symbols of the victory of the former, and defeat of the latter. On the entablatures and roof were represented Syrens, the hollow bodies of which were filled, but in an imperceptible manner, with musicians, who sang mournful airs and dirges in honour of the deceased. This edifice was upwards of one hundred and thirty cubits high, that is, above one hundred and ninety-five feet.

The beauty and the design of this structure, the singularity and magnificence of the decorations, and the several ornaments of it, surpassed the most wonderful productions of fancy, and were all in an exquisite taste. Alexander had appointed to superintend the building of this edifice, Stasicrates, a great architect, and admirably well skilled in mechanics, in all whose inventions and designs there appeared, not only prodigious magnificence and surprising boldness, but such a greatness as was scarce conceivable.

^u It was this artist who, discoursing some time before with Alexander, had told him, that of all the mountains he knew, none would so well admit of being cut into the shape of a man, as Mount Athos in Thrace; that, if he therefore pleased but to give orders, he would make this mountain the most durable of all statues, and that which would lie most open to the view of the universe. In its left hand it should hold a city, consisting of ten thousand inhabitants; and from its right should pour a great river, whose waters would discharge themselves into the sea. One would have thought that this project would have pleased Alexander, who sought for the great and marvellous in all things; nevertheless, he rejected it, and wisely answered, that it was enough there was one prince whose folly Mount Athos would eternize. This was meant of Xerxes, who having endeavoured to cut through

^u Plut. de Fortun. Alex. Serm. i. p. 335.

the isthmus of that mountain, wrote a * letter to it in the most proud and senseless terms. "With regard to myself," says Alexander, "Mount Caucasus, the river Tanais†, the Caspian sea, all which I passed in triumph, shall be my monument."

The expence of the splendid monument which this prince erected in honour of Hephæstion, with that of the funeral, amounted to upwards of twelve thousand talents, that is, more than one million eight hundred thousand pounds. But what man was ever so ridiculously and extravagantly profuse? All this gold, all this silver, was no other than the blood of nations, and the substance of provinces, which were thus sacrificed to a vain ostentation.

To crown the affection which Alexander had for his deceased friend, something was still wanting to the honours he paid him, to raise them above human nature; and this was what he proposed, and for that purpose had sent to the temple of Ammon a trusty person named Philip, to inquire the will of the god. It doubtless was the echo of that of Alexander; and the answer was, that sacrifices might be offered to Hephæstion, as a demigod. These were not spared in any manner; Alexander himself first setting the example, when he made a great feast, to which upwards of ten thousand persons were invited. At the same time he wrote to Cleomenes, governor of Egypt, commanding him to build a temple to Hephæstion in Alexandria, and another in the isle of Pharos. In this letter, which is still extant, to excite his diligence, and hasten the work, he grants the governor, who was despised universally for his injustice and rapine, a general pardon for all his crimes, past, present, and future; provided that, at his return, the temple and city should be completed. And now nothing was seen but new altars, temples, and festivals; no oaths were administered but in the name of the new deity; to question his divinity was a capital crime. An old officer, a friend of Hephæstion, having bewailed him as dead, in passing before his tomb, had like to have been put to death for it; nor would he have been pardoned, had not Alexander been assured, that the officer wept, merely from some remains of tenderness, and not as doubting Hephæstion's divinity. I

* Proud Athos, who liftest thy head to heaven, be not so bold as to oppose to my workmen, such rocks and stones as they cannot cut; otherwise, I will cut thee quite to pieces, and throw thee into the sea.—Plutarch. *de ira cohib.* p. 555.

† The Iaxarthes is here meant.

cannot say whether Alexander prevailed so far, as to make any one give credit to Hephaestion's divinity; but he himself appeared, or at least endeavoured to appear, firmly persuaded of it; and gloried, not only that he had a god for his father, but that he himself could make gods. How ridiculous is all this!

During almost a year which Alexander continued in Babylon, he revolved a great many projects in his mind; such as, to go round Africa by sea, to make a complete discovery of all the nations lying round the Caspian sea, and inhabiting its coasts; to conquer Arabia, to make war with Carthage, and to subdue the rest of Europe. The very thoughts of sitting still fatigued him, and the great vivacity of his imagination and ambition would never suffer him to be at rest; nay, could he have conquered the whole world, he would have sought a new one, to satiate the avidity of his desires.

The embellishing of Babylon also employed his thoughts very much. Finding it surpassed in extent, in conveniency, and in whatever can be wished, either for the necessities or pleasures of life, all the other cities of the East, he resolved to make it the seat of his empire; and for that purpose, was desirous of adding to it all the conveniences and ornaments possible.

This city, as well as the country round about it, had suffered prodigiously by the breaking of the bank or dyke of the Euphrates, at the head of the canal called Pallacopa. The river running out of its usual channel by this breach, overflowed the whole country; and forcing its way perpetually, the breach grew at last so wide, that it would have cost almost as much to repair the bank, as the raising of it had done at first. So little water was left in the channel of the Euphrates about Babylon, that there was scarce depth enough for small boats, which consequently was of great prejudice to the city.

Alexander undertook to remedy this, for which purpose he embarked upon the Euphrates, in order to take a view of the place. It was on this occasion that he reproached, in a ludicrous, insulting tone of voice, the Magi and Chaldeans who accompanied him, for the vanity of their predictions; since, notwithstanding the ill omens they had endeavoured to terrify him with, as if he had been a credulous woman, he, however, had entered Babylon, and was returned from it very safe. Attentive to nothing but the subject of his voyage, he went and reviewed the breach, and gave the proper orders for repairing and restoring it to its former condition.

This design of Alexander merited the greatest applause. Such works are truly worthy great princes, and give immortal honour to their name, as not being the effect of a ridiculous vanity, but entirely calculated for the public good. By the execution of this project, he would have recovered a whole province which lay under water; and have made the river more navigable, and consequently of greater service to the Babylonians, by turning it all again into its channel as before.

This work, after having been carried on for the length of thirty furlongs, a league and a half, was stopped by difficulties owing to the nature of the soil; and the death of this prince, which happened soon after, put an end to this project, and several others he had formed. A supreme cause, unknown to men, prevented its execution. The real obstacle to the success of it, was the curse which God had pronounced against this city; an anathema which no human power could divert or retard. ^x “I will cut off from Babylon the name and remnant,” had the Lord of hosts sworn above three hundred years before: “I will also make it a possession for the bittern, “and pools of water: and I will sweep it with the besom of “destruction.—^y It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it “be dwelt in from generation to generation. Neither shall “the shepherds make their fold there.” Heaven and earth would sooner have passed away, than Alexander’s design been put in execution. No river was now to flow by Babylon; the places round it were to be overflowed and changed to uninhabitable fens; it was to be rendered inaccessible by prodigious quantities of mud and dirt; and the city, as well as the country about it, were to be covered with stagnated waters, which would make all access to it impracticable. ^{*} Thus it now lies; and all things were to conspire to reduce it to this dejected state, in order that the prophecy might be completely fulfilled; ^z “for the Lord of hosts hath purposed, and who “shall disannul it? and his hand is stretched out, and who “shall turn it back?” Nothing shews more evidently the strength and weight of this invincible curse, than the efforts of the most powerful prince that ever reigned; a prince the most obstinate that ever was, with regard to the carrying on his projects; a prince, of whose enterprises none had ever miscarried; and who failed in this only, though it did not seem so difficult as the rest.

^x Isa. xiv. 22, 23.

^y Ibid. xiii. 20.

^z Ibid. xiv. 27.

• See what is said on this subject in the history of Cyrus.

Another design which Alexander meditated, and had most at heart, was the repairing the temple of Belus. Xerxes had demolished it in his return from Greece, and it had lain in ruins ever since. Now Alexander was resolved, not only to rebuild it, but even to raise a much more magnificent temple. Accordingly, he had caused all the rubbish to be removed ; and finding that the Magi, to whose care he had left this, went on but slowly, he made his soldiers work. Notwithstanding ten thousand of them were daily employed at it, for two months successively, the work was not finished at the death of this prince, so prodigious were its ruins. ^a When it came to the turn of the Jewish soldiers, who were in his army, to work as the rest had done, they could not be prevailed upon to give their assistance ; but excused themselves with saying, that as idolatry was forbid by the tenets of their religion, they therefore were not allowed to assist in building a temple designed for idolatrous worship ; and accordingly not one lent a hand on this occasion. They were punished for disobedience, but all to no purpose ; so that, at last, Alexander, admiring their perseverance, discharged, and sent them home. This delicate resolution of the Jews is a lesson to many Christians, as it teaches them, that they are not allowed to join or assist in the commission of an action that is contrary to the law of God.

One cannot forbear admiring the conduct of Providence on this occasion. God had broke to pieces, by the hand of his servant Cyrus, the idol ^{*} Belus, the god who rivalled the Lord of Israel : he afterwards caused Xerxes to demolish his temple. These first blows which the Lord struck at Babylon, were so many omens of its total ruin ; and it was as impossible for Alexander to complete the rebuilding of this temple, as for Julian, some centuries after, to restore that of Jerusalem.

Although Alexander employed himself in the works above mentioned, during his stay in Babylon, he spent the greatest part of his time in such pleasures as that city afforded ; and one would conclude, that the chief aim, both of his occupations and diversions, was to stupify himself, and to drive from his mind the melancholy and afflicting ideas of an impending death, with which he was threatened by all the predictions of the Magi and other soothsayers : for though, in certain mo-

^a Josephus contra Appian. I. i. c. 8.

^{*} God gives him this name in Isaiah.

ments, he seemed not to regard the various notices which had been given him ; he was however seriously affected with them inwardly ; and these gloomy reflections were for ever returning to his mind. They terrified him at last to such a degree, that whenever the most insignificant thing happened, if ever so little extraordinary and unusual, his imagination swelled it immediately to a prodigy, and interpreted it into an unhappy omen. The palace was now filled with sacrifices, with persons whose office was to perform expiations and purifications, and with others who pretended to prophesy. It was certainly a spectacle worthy a philosophic eye, to see a prince, at whose nod the world trembled, abandoned to the strongest terrors ; so true is it, says Plutarch, that if the contempt of the gods, and the incredulity which prompts us neither to fear nor believe any thing, be a great misfortune, the superstitious man, whose soul is a prey to the most abject fears, the most ridiculous follies, is equally unhappy. It is plain that God, by a just judgement, took a pleasure in degrading, before all ages and nations, and in sinking lower than the condition of the vulgar, the man who had affected to set himself above human nature, and to equal himself to the Deity. This prince had sought in all his actions, that vain glory of conquests which men most admire ; and to which they affix, more than to any thing else, the idea of grandeur : and God delivers him up to a ridiculous superstition, which virtuous men of good sense and understanding despise most, and than which nothing can be more weak or grovelling.

Alexander was therefore for ever solemnizing new festivals, and perpetually at new banquets, in which he quaffed with his usual intemperance. After having spent a whole night in carousing, a second was proposed to him. He met accordingly, and there were twenty guests at table. He drank to the health of every person in company, and then pledged them severally. After this, calling for Hercules' cup, which held six bottles, it was filled, when he poured it all down, drinking to a Macedonian of the company, Proteas by name, and afterwards pledged him again in the same furious bumper. He had no sooner swallowed it, but he fell upon the floor. "Here then," cries Seneca *, describing the fatal effects of drunkenness, "is this hero ; invincible to all the toils

* *Alexandrum tot itinera, tot prælia, tot hiemes, per quas, victa temporum locorumque difficultate, transierat tot flumina ex ignoto cadentia, tot maria totum dimiserunt ; intemperantia bibendi, et ille Hercalaneus ac fatalis scyphus condidit.* ---
Senec. epist. 83.

“ of prodigious marches, to the dangers of sieges and combats, “ to the most violent extremes of heat and cold ; here he lies, “ conquered by his intemperance; and struck to the earth by “ the fatal cup of Hercules.”

In this condition he was seized with a violent fever, and carried half dead to his palace. The fever continued, though with some good intervals, in which he gave the necessary orders for the sailing of the fleet, and the marching of his land-forces, being persuaded he should soon recover. But at last, finding himself past all hopes, and his voice beginning to fail, he drew his ring from his finger, and gave it to Perdiccas, with orders to convey his corpse to the temple of Ammon.

Notwithstanding * his great weakness, he however struggled with death, and, raising himself upon his elbow, presented his soldiers, to whom he could not refuse this last testimony of friendship, his dying hand to kiss. After this, his principal courtiers asking to whom he left the empire, he answered, “ To the most worthy ;” adding, that he foresaw the decision of this would give occasion to strange funeral games after his decease. And Perdiccas inquiring further at what time they should pay him divine honours, he replied, “ When you are “ happy.” These were his last words, and soon after he expired. He was thirty-two years and eight months old, of which he had reigned twelve. He died in the middle of the spring, the first year of the 114th Olympiad.

^b No one, says Plutarch and Arrian, suspected then that Alexander had been poisoned ; and yet it is at this time that such reports generally prevail. But the state of his body proved that he did not die that way ; for all his chief officers disagreeing among themselves, the corpse, though it lay quite neglected for several days in Babylon, which stands in a hot climate, did not shew the least symptoms of putrefaction. The true poison which brought him to his end was wine, which has killed many thousands besides Alexander. It was nevertheless believed afterwards, that this prince had been poisoned by the treachery of Antipater’s sons : that Cassander, the eldest of them, brought the † poison from Greece ; that Iolas, his

b A. M. 3613. Ant. J. C. 328.

* Quanquam violentia morbi dilabebatur, in cubitum tamen erectus, dextram omnibus, qui eam contingere vellent, porrexit. Quis autem illam osculari non curaret, qua jam fato oppressa, maximi exercitus complexui, humanite quam spiritu vividiore, sufficit ?—Val. Max. I. v. c. 1.

† It is pretended that this poison was an extremely cold water, which distils drop by drop from a rock in Arcadia, called Nonacris. Very little of it falls, and it is so vastly sharp, that it corrodes whatever vessel receives it, those excepted which are

younger brother, threw the fatal draught into Alexander's cup, of which he was the bearer; and that he cunningly chose the time of the great feast mentioned before, in order that the prodigious quantity of wine he then drank might conceal the true cause of his death. The state of Antipater's affairs, at that time, gave some grounds for this suspicion. He was persuaded that he had been recalled with no other view than to ruin him, because of his mal-administration during his vice-royalty; and it was not altogether improbable that he commanded his sons to commit a crime which would save his own life, by taking away that of his sovereign. An undoubted circumstance is, that he could never wash out this stain; and that as long as he lived, the Macedonians detested him as a traitor who had poisoned their king. Aristotle was also suspected, but with no great foundation.

Whether Alexander lost his life by poison, or by excessive drinking, it is surprising to see the prediction of the Magi and soothsayers, with regard to his dying in Babylon, so exactly fulfilled. It is certain and indisputable, that God has reserved to himself only the knowledge of futurity; and if the soothsayers and oracles have sometimes foretold things which really came to pass, they could do it no other way than by their impious correspondence with devils, who, by their penetration and natural sagacity, find out several methods whereby they dive to a certain degree into futurity, with regard to approaching events; and are enabled to make predictions, which, though they appear above the reach of human understandings, are yet not above that of malicious spirits of darkness. The knowledge * those evil spirits have of all the circumstances which precede and prepare an event; the part they frequently bear in it, by inspiring such of the wicked as are given up to them with the thoughts and desire of doing certain actions, and committing certain crimes; an inspiration to which they are sure those wicked persons will consent: by these things, devils are enabled to foresee and foretel certain particulars. They, indeed, often mistake in their conjectures, but † God

made of a mule's hoof. We are told, that it was brought for this horrid purpose from Greece to Babylon, in a vessel of the latter sort.

* Daemonis perversis, (solent), malefacta suadere, de quorum moribus certi sunt quod sint eis talia suadentibus consensuri. Suadent autem miris et invisibilibus modis.---S. Aug. de Divinat. Daemon. p. 509.

† Facil eest et non incongruum, ut omnipotens et Justus, ad eorum pœnam quibus ista prædicuntur—occulto apparatu ministeriorum suorum etiam spiritibus talibus aliquid divinationis impertiat.---S. Aug. de Div. Quæst. ad Simplic. l. ii. Quæst. 3.

also sometimes permits them to succeed in them, in order to punish the impiety of those, who, in contradiction to his commands, inquire their fate of such lying spirits.

The moment that Alexander's death was known, the whole palace echoed with cries and groans. The vanquished bewailed him with as many tears as the victors. The grief for his death occasioning the remembrance of his many good qualities, all his faults were forgotten. The Persians declared him to have been the most just, the kindest sovereign that ever reigned over them; the Macedonians, the best, the most valiant prince in the universe; and all exclaimed against the gods, for having enviously bereaved mankind of him, in the flower of his age, and the height of his fortune. The Macedonians imagined they saw Alexander, with a firm and intrepid air, still lead them on to battle, besiege cities, climb walls, and reward such as had distinguished themselves. They then reproached themselves for having refused him divine honours; and confessed they had been ungrateful and impious, for be-reaving him of a name he so justly merited.

After paying him this homage of veneration and tears, they turned their whole thoughts and reflections on themselves, and on the sad condition to which they were reduced by Alexander's death. They considered, that they were on the farther side, with respect to Macedonia, of the Euphrates, without a leader to head them; and surrounded with enemies, who abhorred their new yoke. As the king died without nominating his successor, a dreadful futurity presented itself to their imagination; and exhibited nothing but divisions, civil wars, and a fatal necessity of still shedding their blood, and of opening their former wounds, not to conquer Asia, but only to give a king to it; and to raise to the throne perhaps some mean officer or wicked wretch.

This great mourning was not confined merely to Babylon, but spread over all the provinces; and the news of it soon reached Darius' mother. One of her daughters was with her, who being still inconsolable for the death of Hephaestion, her husband, the sight of the public calamity recalled all her private woes. But Sysigambis bewailed the several misfortunes of her family; and this new affliction awakened the remembrance of all its former sufferings. One would have thought that Darius was but just dead, and that this unfortunate mother solemnized the funeral of two sons at the same time. She wept the living no less than the dead: "Who "now," would she say, "will take care of my daughters?

“ Where shall we find another Alexander?” She would fancy she saw them again reduced to a state of captivity, and that they had lost their kingdom a second time; but with this difference, that now Alexander was gone, they had no refuge left. At last she sunk under her grief. This princess, who had borne with patience the death of her father, her husband, fourscore of her brothers, who were murdered in one day by Ochus, and to say all in one word, that of Darius her son, and the ruin of her family; though she had, I say, submitted patiently to all these losses, she however had not strength of mind sufficient to support herself after the death of Alexander. She would not take any sustenance, and starved herself to death to avoid her surviving this last calamity.

After Alexander’s death, great contentions arose among the Macedonians, about appointing him a successor, of which I shall give an account in its proper place. After seven days spent in confusion and disputes, it was agreed that Aridæus, bastard brother to Alexander, should be declared king; and that in case Roxana, who was eight months gone with child, should be delivered of a son, he should share the throne in conjunction with Aridæus, and that Perdiccas should have the care of both; for Aridæus was a weak man, and wanted a guardian as much as a child.

The Egyptians and Chaldeans having embalmed the king’s corpse after their manner, Aridæus was appointed to convey it to the temple of Jupiter-Ammon. Two whole years were employed in preparing for this magnificent funeral, which made Olympias bewail the fate of her son, who having had the ambition to rank himself among the gods, was so long deprived of burial, a privilege allowed to the meanest of mortals.

SECTION XIX.

THE JUDGEMENT WE ARE TO FORM OF ALEXANDER.

THE reader would not be satisfied, if, after having given a detail of Alexander’s actions, I should not take notice of the judgement we are to form of them; especially as authors have entirely differed in their opinions with regard to the merits of this prince. Some have applauded him with a kind of ecstasy, as the model of a perfect hero, which opinion seems

to have prevailed ; others, on the contrary, have represented him in such colours, as at least sully, if not quite eclipse, the splendour of his victories.

This diversity of sentiments denotes that of Alexander's qualities ; and it must be confessed, that good and evil, virtues and vices, were never more equally blended, than in * the prince whose history we have written. But this is not all ; for Alexander appears very different, according to the times or seasons in which we consider him, as Livy has very justly observed. In the inquiry he makes concerning the fate of Alexander's arms, supposing he had turned them towards Italy, he † discovers in him a kind of double Alexander ; the one wise, temperate, judicious, brave, intrepid, but at the same time prudent and circumspect : the other immersed in all the wantonness of an haughty prosperity ; vain, proud, arrogant, fiery ; softened by delights, abandoned to intemperance and excesses ; in a word, resembling Darius rather than Alexander ; and having made the Macedonians degenerate into all the vices of the Persians, by the new turn of mind, and the new manners, he assumed after his conquests.

I shall have an eye to this plan, in the account I am now to give of Alexander's character, and shall consider it under two aspects, and, in a manner, two æras ; first, from his youth till the battle of Issus, and the siege of Tyre, which followed soon after ; and, secondly, from that victory till his death. The former will exhibit to us great qualities with few defects, according to the idea the heathens had of these ; the second will represent to us enormous vices ; and, notwithstanding the splendour of so many victories, very little true and solid merit, even with regard to warlike actions, a few battles excepted, in which he sustained his reputation.

PART FIRST.

WE are first to acknowledge and admire, in Alexander, a happy disposition, cultivated and improved by an excellent education. He had a great, noble, and generous soul. ^d He

^d Plut. in Alex. p. 687.

* Luxuria, industria ; comitate, arrogantia ; malis bonisque artibus mixtus.— Tacit.

† Et loquimur de Alexandro nondum merso secundis rebus, quarum nemo intollerantior fuit. Qui si ex habitu novæ fortunæ, novique, ut ita dicam, ingenii, quod sibi victor induerat, spectetur. Dario magis similis quam Alexandro in Italiam venisset, et exercitum Macedoniarum oblitum, degenerantemque jam in Persarum mores adduxisset.—Liv. l. ix. n. 18.

delighted in bestowing and doing service, qualities he had acquired in his infant years. A young lad, whose business it was to gather up and throw the balls when he played at tennis, to whom he had given nothing, taught him a good lesson on that subject. As he always threw the balls to the other players, the king, with an angry air, cried to him, "And am I then to have no ball?" "No, Sir," replied the lad, "you do not ask me for it." This witty and ready answer gave great satisfaction to the prince, who fell a-laughing, and afterwards was very liberal to him. After this, there was no occasion to excite him to acts of generosity; for he would be quite angry with such as refused them at his hands. Finding Phocion continue inflexible on this head, he told him by letter, "that he would no longer be his friend, in case he refused to accept of his favours."

Alexander, as if he had been sensible of the mighty things to which he was born, endeavoured to shine on all occasions, and appear more conspicuous than any other person. No one was ever fired with so strong a love for glory; and it is well known, that ambition, which is considered by Christians as a great vice, was looked upon by the heathens as a great virtue. It was that which made Alexander support with courage all the toils and fatigues necessary for those who would distinguish themselves in the exercises both of body and mind. He was accustomed very early to a sober, hard, plain way of life, uncorrupted with luxury or delicacy of any kind; a way of life highly advantageous to young soldiers.

I do not know whether any prince in the world had a nobler education than Alexander. He was very conversant in eloquence, poetry, polite learning, the whole circle of arts, and the most abstracted and most sublime sciences. How happy was he in meeting with so great a preceptor! None but an Aristotle was fit for an Alexander. I am overjoyed to find the disciple pay so illustrious a testimony in respect to his master, by declaring he was more indebted to him, in one sense, than to his father. A man who thinks and speaks in this manner, must be fully sensible of the great advantages of a good education.

The effects of this were soon seen. Is it possible for us to admire too much the great solidity and judgement which this young prince discovered in his conversation with the Persian ambassadors? his early wisdom, whilst, in his youth, he acted as regent during his father's absence, and pacified the feuds which had broke out in Macedonia? his courage and

bravery at the battle of Chæronea, in which he so gloriously distinguished himself?

It is a pain for me to see him wanting in respect to his father at a banquet, and employing severe, insulting expressions on that occasion. It is true, indeed, that the affront which Philip put upon Olympias, his mother, in divorcing her, transported him in a manner out of himself; but still no pretence, no injustice or violence, can either justify or excuse such usage to a father and a king.

^e He afterwards discovered more moderation, when on occasion of the insolent and seditious discourses held by his soldiers in an insurrection, he said, “That nothing was more royal, than for a man to hear with calmness himself ill spoken of, at the time he is doing good.” It has been observed, that the great prince of ^f Condé did not think any thing more worthy of admiration in this conqueror, than the noble haughtiness with which he spoke to the rebellious soldiers, who refused to follow him: “Go,” says he, “ungrateful, base wretches, and proclaim in your country, that you have abandoned your king among nations who will obey him better than you.” “Alexander,” says that prince, “abandoned by his own troops among Barbarians, who were not yet completely conquered, believes himself so worthy of commanding over others, that he did not think men could refuse to obey him. Whether he were in Europe or in Asia, among Greeks or Persians, it was the same to him. He fancied, that wherever he found men, he found subjects.” Alexander’s patience and moderation, which I took notice of at first, are no less wonderful.

The first years of his reign are perhaps the most glorious of his life. That at twenty years of age, he was able to appease the intestine feuds which raged in the kingdom; that he either crushed or subjected foreign enemies, and those of the most formidable kind; that he disarmed Greece, most of the nations whereof had united against him; and that in less than three years, he should have enabled himself to execute securely those plans his father had so wisely projected; all this supposes a presence of mind, a strength of soul, a courage, an intrepidity, and, what is more than all, a consummate prudence; qualities which form the character of the true hero.

This character he supported in a wonderful manner, dur-

^e Plut. in Alex. p. 688.

^f St Evremond.

ing the whole course of his expedition against Darius, till the time mentioned by us. ^g Plutarch very justly admires the bare plan of it, as the most heroic act that ever was. He formed it the very instant he ascended the throne, looking upon this design, in some measure, as a part of what he inherited from his father. When scarce twenty years old, surrounded with dangers both within and without his kingdom, finding his treasury drained and incumbered with debts, to the amount of two hundred talents ^{*}, which his father had contracted; having an army which was greatly inferior in number to that of the Persians: in this condition, Alexander already turns his eyes towards Babylon and Susa, and proposes no less a conquest than that of so vast an empire.

Was this the effect of the pride and rashness of youth? asks Plutarch. Certainly not, replies that author. No man ever formed a warlike enterprise with so great preparations, and such mighty succours, by which I understand, continues Plutarch, magnanimity, prudence, temperance, and courage; preparations and aids, with which philosophy supplied him, and which he thoroughly studied; so that we may affirm, that he was as much indebted for his conquest to the lessons of Aristotle his master, as to the instructions of Philip his father.

We may add, that, according to all the maxims of war, Alexander's enterprise must naturally be successful. Such an army as his, though not a very great one, consisting of Macedonians and Greeks, that is, of the best troops at that time in the world; and trained up to war during a long course of years, inured to toils and dangers, formed by a happy experience to all the exercises of sieges and battles, animated by the remembrance of their past victories, by the hopes of an immense booty, and more so by their hereditary and irreconcileable hatred to the Persians; such an army, I say, headed by Alexander, was almost sure of conquering an army, composed, indeed, of infinite numbers of men, but of few soldiers.

The swiftness of the execution was answerable to the wisdom of the project. After having gained the affection of all his generals and officers by an unparalleled liberty, and all his soldiers by an air of goodness, affability, and even familiarity, which, so far from debasing the majesty of a prince, adds to the respect which is paid him such a zeal and tender-

^g Plut. de Fortun. Alex. Orat. i p. 327.

* About thirty thousand pounds Sterling.

ness as is proof against all this ; after this, I say, the next thing to be done, was to astonish his enemies by bold enterprises ; to terrify them by examples of severity ; and, lastly, to win them by acts of humanity and clemency. He succeeded wonderfully in these. The passage of the Granicus, followed by a famous victory, the two celebrated sieges of Miletus and Halicarnassus, showed Asia a young conqueror, to whom no part of military knowledge was unknown. The razing of the last city to the very foundations, spread an universal terror ; but the allowing all those the enjoyment of their liberties and ancient laws, who submitted cheerfully, made the world believe, that the conqueror had no other view than to make nations happy, and to procure them an easy and lasting peace.

His impatience to bathe himself, when covered with sweat, in the river Cydnus, might be looked upon as a gay juvenile action, unworthy of his dignity ; but we must not judge of it from the manners of the present age. The ancients, all whose exercises were relative to those of war, accustomed themselves early to bathing and swimming. It is well known, that in Rome, the sons of the nobility, after having heated themselves in the Campus Martius, with running, wrestling, and hurling the javelin, used to plunge into the Tiber, which runs by that city. By these exercises they enabled themselves to pass rivers and lakes in an enemy's country ; for these are never crossed, but after painful marches, and after having been long exposed to the sun-beams, which, with the weight of the soldiers' arms, must necessarily make them sweat. Hence we may apologize for Alexander's bathing himself in a river, which had like to have been so fatal to him, especially as he might not know that the waters of it were so excessively cold.

The two battles of Issus and Arbela, with the siege of Tyre, one of the most famous of antiquity, entirely proved that Alexander possessed all the qualities which form the great soldier ; as, skill in making choice of a field of battle ; such a presence of mind in the heat of action, as is necessary for the giving out proper orders ; a courage and bravery, which the most evident dangers only animated ; an impetuous activity, tempered and guided by such a prudent reservedness, as will not suffer the hero to be carried away by an indiscreet ardour ; lastly, such a resolution and constancy, as is neither disconcerted by unforeseen obstacles, nor discouraged by difficulties, though seemingly insurmountable, and which know no other bounds or issue but victory.

Historians have observed a great *difference between Alexander and his father, in their manner of making war. Stratagem, and even knavery, were the prevailing arts of Philip, who always acted secretly, and in the dark ; but his son pursued his schemes with more candour, and without disguise. The one endeavoured to deceive his enemies by cunning; the other to subdue them by force of arms. The former discovered more art, the latter had a greater soul. ^h Philip did not look upon any methods, which conduce to conquest, as ignominious; but Alexander could never prevail with himself to employ treachery. He, indeed, endeavoured to draw over the ablest of all Darius' generals; but then he employed honourable means. When he marched near Memnon's lands, he commanded his soldiers, upon the severest penalties, not to make the least havock in them. His design, by this conduct, was either to gain over to his side, or to make the Persians suspect his fidelity. ⁱ Memnon also delighted in behaving with generosity towards Alexander; and hearing a soldier speak ill of that prince, "I did not take thee into my pay," says that general, striking him with his javelin, "to speak ⁱⁿ ^{of} ^{juriously} of that prince, but to fight against him."

The circumstance which raises Alexander above most conquerors, and, as it were above himself, is, the use he made of victory after the battle of Issus. This is the most beautiful incident in his life; is the point of sight in which it is his interest to be considered, and it is impossible for him not to appear truly great in this view. By the victory of Issus, he had possessed himself, not only of Darius' person, but also of his empire. Not only Sysigambis, that king's mother, was his captive, but also his wife and daughters, princesses whose beauty was not to be paralleled in all Asia. ^k Alexander was in the bloom of his life, a conqueror, free, and not yet engaged in the bands of marriage, as an author observes of the first Scipio Africanus, on a like occasion: nevertheless, his camp was, to these princesses, a sacred asylum, or rather a temple, in which their chastity was secured, as under the guard of virtue itself, and so highly revered, that Darius, in his expiring moments, hearing the kind treatment they had met with,

* Vincendi ratio utriusque diversa. His aperte, ille artibus bella tractabat. Decep-
tis ille gaudere hostibus, hic palam fusis. Prudentior ille consilio, hic animo magni-
ficentior.—Nulla apud Philippum turpis ratio vincendi.—Justin. l. ix. c. 8.

^h Pausan. l. vii. p. 415. ⁱ Plut. in Apoph. p. 174.

^k Et juvenis, et celebs, et victor.—Val. Max. l. iv. c. 3.

could not forbear lifting up his dying hands towards heaven, and to wish success to so wise and generous a conqueror, who governed his passions so absolutely.

In the enumeration of Alexander's good qualities, I must not omit one rarely found among the great, and which nevertheless does honour to human nature, and makes life happy: this is, his being endowed with a soul capable of a tender friendship; his openness, truth, perseverance, and humility, in so exalted a fortune, which generally considers itself only, makes its grandeur consist in humbling all things around it, and is better pleased with servile wretches, than with free sincere friends.

Alexander endeared himself to his officers and soldiers; treated them with the greatest familiarity; admitted them to his table, his exercises, and conversations; was deeply troubled for them when involved in any calamity, grieved for them when sick, rejoiced at their recovery, and shared in whatever befel them. We have examples of this in Hephaestion, in Ptolemy, in Craterus, and many others. A prince of real merit does no ways debase his dignity by such a familiarity and condescension; but, on the contrary, is more beloved and respected upon that very account. Every man of a tall stature does not scruple to put himself upon a level with the rest of mankind, well knowing that he shall overtop them all. It is the interest of truly diminutive persons only, not to vie in stature with the tall, nor to appear in a crowd.

Alexander was dear to others, because they were sensible he was beforehand with them in affection. This circumstance made the soldiers strongly desirous to please him, and fired them with intrepidity; hence they were always ready to execute all his orders, though attended with the greatest difficulties and dangers: this made them submit patiently to the severest hardships, and threw them into the deepest affliction, whenever they happened to give him any room for discontent.

In this picture which has been given of Alexander, what was wanting to complete his glory? Military virtue has been exhibited in its utmost splendour: goodness, clemency, moderation, and wisdom, have crowned it, and added such a lustre as greatly enhances its value. Let us suppose, that Alexander, to secure his glory and his victories, stops short in his career: that he himself checks his ambition, and raises Darius to the throne, with the same hand that had dispossessed him of it; makes Asia Minor, inhabited chiefly by Greeks, free and independent of Persia; that he declares himself pro-

tector of all the cities and states of Greece, in no other view than to secure their liberties, and the enjoyment of their respective laws and customs ; that he afterwards returns to Macedon, and there, contented with the lawful bounds of his empire, makes all his glory and delight consist in rendering his people happy, in procuring it abundance of all things, in seeing the laws put in execution, and making justice flourish ; in causing virtue to be had in honour, and endearing himself to his subjects ; in fine, that now become, by the terror of his arms, and much more so by the fame of his virtues, the admiration of the whole world, he sees himself, in some measure, the arbiter of all nations, and exercises over the minds of men, such an empire as is infinitely more lasting and honourable than that which is founded on fear only ; supposing all this to have happened, Alexander would have been as great, as glorious, as good a prince as ever blessed mankind.

To the forming so great a character, a greatness of soul, and a most refined taste for true glory, are required, such as is seldom met with in history. Men generally do not * consider, that the glory which attends the most shining conquests, is greatly inferior to the reputation of a prince, who has despised and trampled upon ambition, and known how to give bounds to universal power. But Alexander was far from possessing these happy qualities. His uninterrupted felicity, that never experienced adverse fortune, intoxicated and changed him to such a degree, that he no longer appeared the same man ; and I do not remember that ever the poison of prosperity had a more sudden or more forcible effect than upon him.

PART SECOND.

FROM the siege of Tyre, which was soon after the battle of Issus, in which Alexander displayed all the courage and abilities of a great warrior, we see the virtues and noble qualities of this prince degenerate on a sudden, and make way for the greatest vices and most brutal passions. If we sometimes, through the excesses to which he abandons himself, perceive some bright rays of humanity, gentleness, and moderation,

* Scis ubi vera principis, ubi sempiterna sit gloria.—Arcus, et flatuas, aras etiam templaque demolitur et obscurat oblivio ? contra, contemptor ambitionis, et infinita potentiae domitor ac frenator animus ipsa vetustate florescit.—Plin. in Pan. Trajan.

these are the effects of a happy disposition, which not being quite extinguished by vice, is however governed by it.

Was ever enterprise more wild and extravagant, than that of crossing the sandy deserts of Lybia ; of exposing his army to the danger of perishing with thirst and fatigue ; of interrupting the course of his victories, and giving his enemy time to raise a new army, merely for the sake of marching so far, in order to get himself named the son of Jupiter Ammon ; and purchase, at so dear a rate, a title which could only render him contemptible ?

¹ How mean was it in Alexander, to omit always in his letters, after Darius' defeat, the Greek word *χαλεψ*, which signifies Health, except in those he wrote to Phocion and Antipater ! As if this title, because employed by other men, could have degraded a king, who is obliged by his office to procure, at least to wish, all his subjects the enjoyment of the felicity implied by that word.

Of all vices, none is so grovelling, none so unworthy, not only of a prince, but of a man of honour, as drunkenness ; its bare name is intolerable, and strikes us with horror. How infamous a pleasure is it, to spend whole days and nights in carousing ; to continue these excesses for weeks together ; to pride one's self in exceeding other men in intemperance, and to endanger one's life with no other view than to gain such a victory ! Not to mention the infamous enormities that attend these debauches, how greatly shocking is it to hear the frantic discourses of a son, who, being intoxicated with the fumes of wine, industriously strives to defame his father, to sully his glory, and, lost to all shame, prefer himself to him ! Drunkenness is only the occasion, not the cause, of these excesses. It betrays the sentiments of the heart, but does not place them there. Alexander, puffed up by his victories, greedy and insatiable of praise, intoxicated with the mighty idea he entertained of his own merit, jealous of, and despising all mankind, has the power, in his sober moments, to conceal his sentiments ; but no sooner is he intoxicated, than he shows himself to be what he really is.

What shall we say of his barbarously murdering an old friend, who, though indiscreet and rash, was yet his friend ? of the death of the most honest man in all his court, whose only crime was his refusing to pay him divine homage ? of the execution of two of his principal officers, who were con-

¹ Plut. in Phoc. p. 749.

demned, though nothing could be proved against them, and on the slightest suspicions?

I pass over a great many other vices, which Alexander, according to most historians, gave into, and which are not to be justified. To speak of him, therefore, only as a warrior and a conqueror, qualities in which he is generally considered, and which have gained him the esteem of all ages and nations, as we now have to do, is, to examine whether this esteem be so well grounded as is generally supposed.

I have already observed, that, to the battle of Issus and the siege of Tyre inclusively, it cannot be denied but that Alexander was a great warrior and an illustrious general. But yet I doubt very much, whether, during these first years of his exploits, he ought to be considered in a more conspicuous light than his father; whose actions, though not so dazzling, are however as much applauded by good judges, and those of the military profession. Philip, at his accession to the throne, found all things unsettled. He himself was obliged to lay the foundations of his own fortune, and was not supported by the least foreign assistance. He raised himself to the power and grandeur to which he afterwards attained. He was obliged to train up, not only his soldiers, but his officers; to instruct them in all the military exercises; to inure them to the fatigues of war; and to his care and abilities Macedonia owed the rise of the celebrated phalanx, that is, of the best troops the world had then ever seen, and to which Alexander owed all his conquests. How many obstacles stood in Philip's way, before he could possess himself of the power which Athens, Sparta, and Thebes, had successively exercised over Greece! The Greeks, who were the bravest and most sagacious people in the universe, would not acknowledge him for their chief, till he acquired that title by wading through seas of blood, and by gaining numberless conquests over them. Thus we see, that the way was prepared for Alexander's executing his great design; the plan whereof, and the most excellent instructions relative to it, had been laid down to him by his father. Now, will it not appear a much easier task, to subdue Asia with Grecian armies, than to subject the Greeks, who had so often triumphed over Asia?

But, without carrying further the parallel of Alexander with Philip, which all who do not consider heroes according to the number of provinces they have conquered, but by the intrinsic value of their actions, must give in favour of the latter: what judgement are we to form of Alexander, after his

triumph over Darius? and is it possible to propose him, during the latter part of his life, as a model worthy the imitation of those who aspire to the character of great soldiers and illustrious conquerors?

In this inquiry, I shall begin with that which is unanimously agreed, by all the writers on this subject, to be the foundation of the solid glory of a hero; I mean, the justice of the war in which he engages, without which he is not a conqueror and a hero, but an usurper and a robber. Alexander, in making Asia the seat of war, and turning his arms against Darius, had a plausible pretence for it; because the Persians had been in all ages, and were at that time, professed enemies to the Greeks, over whom he had been appointed generalissimo, and whose injuries he therefore might think himself justly entitled to revenge. But then, what right had Alexander over the great number of nations, who did not know even the name of Greece, and had never done him the least injury? The Scythian ambassador spoke very judiciously, when he addressed him in these words: "What have we to do with thee? We never once set our feet in thy country. Are not those who live in woods allowed to be ignorant of thee, and the place from whence thou comest? Thou boastest, that the only design of thy marching is to extirpate robbers: thou thyself art the greatest robber in the world." This is Alexander's exact character, in which there is nothing to be rejected.

A pirate spoke to him to the same effect, and in stronger terms. Alexander asked * him, What right he had to infest the seas? "The same that thou hast," replied the pirate with a generous liberty, "to infest the universe: but because I do this in a small ship, I am called a robber; and because thou actest the same part with a great fleet, thou art entitled Conqueror." This was a witty and just answer, says ^m St Austin, who has preserved this small fragment of Cicero.

If therefore it ought to be laid down as a maxim, and no reasonable man can doubt of its being so, that every war, undertaken merely from the view of ambition, is unjust; and that the prince who begins it is guilty of all the sad conse-

^m S. Aust. de Civ. Dei, l. iv. c. 4.

* Eleganter et veraciter Alexandro illi Magno comprehensus pirata respondit. Nam cum idem rex hominem interrogasset, quid ei videretur ut mare haberet infestum; ille, libera contumacia: quod tibi, inquit, ut orbe terrarum. Sed quia id ego exiguo navigio facio, latro voter; quia tu magna classe, imperator.—Refert Nonius Marc. iii. de Rep.

quences, and all the blood shed on that occasion; what idea ought we to form of Alexander's last conquests? Was ever ambition more extravagant, or rather more furious, than that of this prince? Come * from a little spot of ground, and forgetting the narrow limits of his paternal domains, after he has far extended his conquests, has subdued not only the Persians, but also the Bactrians and Indians, has added kingdom to kingdom; after all this, I say, he still finds himself pent up; and, determined to force, if possible, the barriers of nature, he endeavours to discover a new world, and does not scruple to sacrifice millions of men to his ambition or curiosity. It is related that † Alexander, upon Anaxarchus the philosopher's telling him that there was an infinite number of worlds, wept to think that it would be impossible for him to conquer them all, since he had not yet conquered one. Is it wrong in ‡ Seneca, to compare these pretended heroes, who have gained renown no otherwise than by the ruin of nations, to a conflagration and a flood, which lay waste and destroy all things; or to wild beasts, who live merely by blood and slaughter?

Alexander, || passionately fond of glory, of which he neither knew the nature nor just bounds, prided himself upon treading in the steps of Hercules, and even in carrying his victorious arms farther than him. What resemblance was there, says

* Agebat infelicem Alexandrum furor aliena devastandi, et ad ignota mittebat. Jam in unum regnum multa regna congettavit, (or congettavit): jam Graci Persaque eundem timent; jam etiam a Dario liberæ nationes jugum accipiunt. Hic tamen ultra Oceanum Solemque, indignatur ab Herculis Liberique vestigiis victoriam flectere: ipsi naturæ vim parat—et, ut ita dicam, mundi claustra perrumpit. Tanta est cecitas mentium, et tanta initiorum suorum oblivio. Ille modo ignobilis anguli non sine controversia Dominus, detecto sine terrarum, per suum redditurus orbem, tristis est.—Senec. Epist. 94. et 119.

† Alexandro pectus insatiable laudis, qui Anaxarcho—innumerabiles mundos esse referunt: Heu me, inquit, miserum, quod ne uno quidem adhuc potitus sum! Angusta homini possessio gloriæ fuit, quæ Deorum omnium domicilio sufficit.—Val. Max. l. viii. c. 14.

‡ Exitio gentium clari, non minores fuere pestes mortalium, quam inundatio—quam conflagratio.—Senec. Nat. Quæst. l. iii. in Præfat.

|| Homo gloriæ deditus, cuius nec naturam nec modum noverat, Herculis vestigia sequens, ac ne ibi quidem resistens ubi illa defecerant. Quid illi (Herculi) simile habebat vesanus adolescens, cui pro virtute erat felix temeritas? Hercules nihil sibi vicit: orbem terrarum transivit, non concupiscendo, sed vindicando. Quid vinceret malorum hostis, bonorum vindex, terrarum marisque pacator? At hic a pueritia latro, gentiumque vastator, tam hostium pernicies quam amicorum, qui sumnum bonum duceret terrori esse cunctis mortalibus: oblitus, non ferocissima tantum sed ignavissima quoque animalia timeri ob virus malum.—Senec. de Benef. l. i. c. 13.

the same Seneca, between that wise conqueror, and this frantic youth, who mistook his successful rashness for merit and virtue? Hercules, in his expeditions, made no conquests for himself. He over-ran the universe as the subduer of monsters, the enemy of the wicked, the avenger of the good, and the restorer of peace by land and sea. Alexander, on the contrary, an unjust robber from his youth, a cruel ravager of provinces, an infamous murderer of his friends, makes his happiness and glory consist in rendering himself formidable to all mortals, forgetting that not only the fiercest animals, but even the vilest, make themselves feared by their poisons.

But, leaving this first consideration, which represents conquerors to us as so many scourges sent by the wrath of heaven into the world to purify the sins of it, let us proceed to examine the last conquests, abstractly in themselves, of Alexander, in order to see what judgement we are to form of them.

It must be confessed, that the actions of this prince diffuse a splendour that dazzles and astonishes the imagination, which is ever fond of the great and marvellous. His enthusiastic courage raises and transports all who read his history, as it transported himself. But ought we to give the name of bravery and valour to a boldness that is equally blind, rash, and impetuous; a boldness void of all rule, that will never listen to the voice of reason, and has no other guide than a senseless ardour for false glory, and a wild desire of distinguishing itself, be the methods ever so unlawful? This character suits only a military robber, who has no attendants; whose life is only exposed; and who, for that reason, may be employed in some desperate action: but it is far otherwise with regard to a king, for he owes his life to all his army, and his whole kingdom. If we except some very rare occasions, on which a prince is obliged to venture his person, and share the danger with his troops, in order to preserve them; he ought to call to mind, that there is a great difference between a general and a private soldier. True valour is not desirous of displaying itself, is no ways auxious about its own reputation, but is solely intent in preserving the army. It steers equally between a fearful wisdom, that foresees and dreads all difficulties, and a brutal ardour, which industriously pursues and confronts dangers of every kind. In a word, to form an accomplished general, prudence must soften and direct the too fiery temper of valour; as this latter must animate and warm the coldness and slowness of prudence.

Do any of these characteristics suit Alexander? When we peruse history, and follow him to sieges and battles, we are perpetually alarmed for his safety, and that of his army; and conclude every moment that they are upon the point of being destroyed. Here we see a rapid flood, which is going to draw in, and swallow up this conqueror; there we behold a craggy rock, up which he climbs, and perceives round him soldiers, either transfixed by the enemy's darts, or thrown headlong by huge stones into precipices. We tremble, when we perceive in a battle the axe just ready to cleave his head; and much more, when we behold him alone in a fortress, whither his rashness had drawn him, exposed to all the javelins of the enemy. Alexander was ever persuaded that miracles would be wrought in his favour, than which nothing could be more unreasonable, as Plutarch observes; for miracles do not always happen; and the gods at last are weary of guiding and preserving rash mortals, who abuse the assistance they afford them.

^a Plutarch, in a * treatise where he makes the eulogium of Alexander, and exhibits him as an accomplished hero, gives a long detail of the several wounds he received in every part of his body; and pretends that the only design of fortune, in thus piercing him with wounds, was to make his courage more conspicuous. A renowned warrior, whose eulogium Plutarch has drawn in another part of his writings, did not judge in this manner. ^o Some persons applauding him for a wound he had received in battle, the general himself declared, that it was a fault which could be excused only in a young man, and justly deserved censure. It has been observed in Hannibal's praise, and I myself have taken notice of it elsewhere, that he was never wounded [†] in all his battles. I cannot say whether Cæsar ever was.

The last observation, which relates in general to all Alexander's expeditions in Asia, must necessarily lessen very much the merit of his victories, and the splendour of his reputation; and this is, the genius and character of the nations against whom he fought. Livy, in a digression, where he inquires what would have been the fate of Alexander's arms, in case he had turned them towards Italy; and where he shows that

ⁿ Plut. de Fortun. Alex. Orat. ii. p. 341.

^o Timotheus, Plut. in Pelop. p. 278.

* This treatise, if written by Plutarch, seems a juvenile performance, and has very much the air of a declamation.

[†] Mention is made but of one single wound.

Rome would certainly have checked his conquests, insists strongly on the reflection in question. He opposes to this prince, in the article of courage, a great number of illustrious Romans, who would have resisted him on all occasions; and in the article of prudence, that august senate, which Cyneas, to give a more noble idea of it to Pyrrhus his sovereign, said was composed of so many kings. "Had he marched *," says Livy, "against the Romans, he would soon have found, "that he was no longer combating against a Darius, who, "encumbered with gold and purple, the vain equipage of his "grandeur, and dragging after him a multitude of women "and eunuchs, came as a prey rather than as an enemy; and "whom Alexander conquered without shedding much blood, "and without wanting any other merit, than that of daring "to despise what was really contemptible. He would have "found Italy very different from India, through which he "marched in a riotous manner, his army quite stupified with "wine; particularly when he should have seen the forests of "Apulia, the mountains of Lucania, and the still recent foot- "steps of the defeat of Alexander, his uncle, king of Epirus, "who there lost his life." The historian adds, that he speaks of Alexander, not yet depraved and corrupted by prosperity, whose subtle poison worked as strongly upon him as upon any man that ever lived; and he concludes, that being thus transformed, he would have appeared very different in Italy from what he seemed hitherto.

These reflections of Livy show, that Alexander partly owed his victories to the weakness of his enemies; and that, had he met with nations as courageous, and as well inured to all the hardships of war as the Romans, and commanded by as able, experienced generals as those of Rome, then his victories would not have been either so rapid, or so uninterrupted. Nevertheless, with some, from hence we are to judge of the merits of a conqueror. Hannibal and Scipio are considered as two of the greatest generals that ever lived, and for this reason, both of them not only understood perfectly the military science, but their experience, their abilities, their resolu-

* Non jam cum Dario rem esse dixisset, quem mulierum ac spadonum agmen trahentem, inter purpuram atque aurum, oneratum fortunae suae apparatis, prædam verius quam hostem, nihil aliud quam bene ausus vana contemnere, incruentus devicit. Longe alius Italæ, quam India, per quam temulento agmine commissabundus incessit, visus illi habitus esset, saltus Apuliae ac montes Lucanos cernenti, et vestigia recentia domesticæ cladis, ubi avunculus ejus nuper, Epiri Rex, Alexander absemptus erat.—LIV. l. ix. n. 17.

tion and courage, were put to the trial, and set in the strongest light. Now, should we give to either of them an unequal antagonist, one whose reputation is not answerable to theirs, we shall no longer have the same idea of them ; and their victories, though supposed alike, appear no longer with the same lustre, nor deserve the same applause.

Mankind are but too apt to be dazzled by shining actions and a pompous exterior, and blindly abandon themselves to prejudices of every kind. It cannot be denied but that Alexander possessed very great qualities ; but if we throw into the other scale his errors and vices, the presumptuous idea he entertained of his merit *, the high contempt he had for other men, not excepting his own father ; his ardent thirst for praise and flattery ; his ridiculous notion of faucying himself the son of Jupiter ; of ascribing divinity to himself ; of requiring a free victorious people to pay him a servile homage, and prostrate themselves ignominiously before him ; his abandoning himself so shamefully to wine ; his violent anger, which rises to brutal ferocity ; the unjust and barbarous execution of his bravest and most faithful officers, and the murder of his most worthy friends in the midst of feasts and carousals : can any one, says Livy, believe, that all these imperfections do not greatly sully the reputation of a conqueror ? But Alexander's frantic ambition, which knows neither law nor limits ; the rash intrepidity with which he braves dangers, without the least reason or necessity ; the weakness and ignorance of the nations, totally unskilled in war, against whom he fought ;— do not these enervate the reasons for which he is thought to have merited the surname of Great, and the title of Hero ? This however I leave to the prudence and equity of my reader.

As to myself, I am surprised to find, that all orators who applaud a prince, never fail to compare him to Alexander. They fancy, that when he is once equalled to this king, it is impossible for panegyric to soar higher : they cannot image to themselves any thing more august ; and think they have omitted the stroke which finishes the glory of a hero, should they not exalt him by this comparison. In my opinion, this denotes a false taste, a wrong turn of thinking ; and, if I might

* Refere in tanto Rege piget superbam mutationem vestis, et desideratus humi jacentium adulaciones, etiam victis Macedonibus graves, nendum victoribus ; et fœda supplicia, et inter vinum et epulas cades amicorum, et vanitatem ementiendæ stirpis. Quid si vini amor in dies fieret acrior ? quid si trux ac præservida ira ? (nec quicquam dubium inter scriptores refero) nullane haec damna imperatoris virtutibus ducimus ?—Liv. l. ix. n. 18.

be allowed to say it, a want of judgement, which must naturally shock a reasonable mind. For, as Alexander was invested with supreme power, he ought to have fulfilled the several duties of the sovereignty. We do not find that he possessed the first, the most essential, and most excellent virtues of a great prince, who is to be the father, the guardian, and shepherd of his people; to govern them by good laws; to make their trade, both by sea and land, flourish; to encourage and protect arts and sciences; to establish peace and plenty, and not suffer his subjects to be in any manner aggrieved or injured; to maintain an agreeable harmony between all orders of the state, and make them conspire, in due proportion, to the public welfare; to employ himself in doing justice to all his subjects, to hear their disputes, and reconcile them; to consider himself as the father of his people, consequently as obliged to provide for all their necessities, and to procure them the several enjoyments of life. Now Alexander, who, almost a moment after he ascended the throne, left Macedonia, and never returned back into it, did not endeavour at any of these things, which however are the chief and most substantial duties of a great prince.

He seems possessed of such qualities only as are of the second rank, I mean those of war, and these are all extravagant; are carried to the rashest and most odious excess, and to the extremes of folly and fury; whilst his kingdom is left a prey to the rapine and exactions of Antipater; and all the conquered provinces abandoned to the insatiable avarice of the governors, who carried their oppression so far, that Alexander was forced to put them to death. Nor do his soldiers appear in a more advantageous light: for these, after having plundered the wealth of the east, and after the prince had given them the highest marks of his beneficence, grew so licentious, so debauched and abandoned to vices of every kind, that he was forced to pay their debts, amounting to fifteen hundred thousand pounds. What strange men were these! how depraved their school! how pernicious the fruit of their victories! Is it doing honour to a prince, is it adorning his panegyric, to compare him with such a model?

The Romans indeed seem to have held Alexander's memory in great veneration; but I very much question, whether, in the virtuous ages of the commonwealth, he would have been considered as so great a man. Cæsar P, seeing his statue

p Diod. l. xxxvii. p. 53. App. de Bell. Mithrid. p. 253. Dion. l. li. p. 454.
—Id. l. lxxvii. p. 873.

in a temple in Spain, during his government of it, after his prætorship, could not forbear groaning and sighing, when he compared the few glorious actions atchieved by him, to the mighty exploits of this conqueror. It was said that Pompey, in one of his triumphs, appeared dressed in that king's surtout. Augustus pardoned the Alexandrians, for the sake of their founder. Caligula, in a ceremony in which he assumed the character of a mighty conqueror, wore Alexander's coat of mail. But no one carried their veneration for this monarch so far as Caracalla. He used the same kind of arms and goblets as that prince; he had a Macedonian phalanx in his army; he persecuted the Peripatetics, and would have burned all the books of Aristotle, their founder, because he was suspected to have conspired with those who poisoned Alexander.

I believe that I may justly assert, that if an impartial person of good sense reads Plutarch's lives of illustrious men with attention, they will leave such a tacit and strong impression in his mind, as will make him consider Alexander one of the least valuable among them. But how strong would the contrast be found, had we the lives of Epaminondas, of Hannibal, and Scipio, the loss of which can never be too much regretted! How little would Alexander appear, set off with all his titles, and surrounded by all his conquests, even if considered in a military light, when compared to those heroes, who were truly great, and worthy their exalted reputation!

SECTION XX.

REFLECTIONS ON THE PERSIANS, GREEKS, AND MACEDONIANS,
BY M. BOSSUET, BISHOP OF MEAUX.

THE reader will not be displeased with my inserting here part of the admirable reflections * of the bishop of Meaux, on the character and government of the Persians, Greeks, and Macedonians, whose history we have heard.

The Greek nations, several of whom had at first lived under a monarchical form of government, having studied the arts of civil polity, imagined they were able to govern themselves, and most of their cities formed themselves into commonwealths. But the wise legislators, who arose in every country, as a Thales, a Pythagoras, a Pittacus, a Lycurgus, a

* Discourse on Universal History, Part iii. chap. 4.

Solon, and many others mentioned in history, prevented liberty from degenerating into licentiousness. Laws drawn up with great simplicity, and few in number, awed the people, held them in their duty, and made them all conspire to the general good of the country.

The idea of liberty which such a conduct inspired, was wonderful. For the liberty which the Greeks figured to themselves, was subject to the law, that is, to reason itself, acknowledged as such by the whole nation. They would not let men rise to power among them. Magistrates who were feared during their office, became afterwards private men, and had no authority but what their experience gave them. The law was considered as their sovereign; it was she appointed magistrates, prescribed the limits of their power, and punished their mal-administration. The advantage of this government was, the citizens bore so much the greater love to their country, as all shared in the government of it, and as every individual was capable of attaining its highest dignities.

The advantage which accrued to Greece from philosophy, with regard to the preservation of its form of government, is incredible. The greater freedom these nations enjoyed, the greater necessity there was to settle the laws relating to manners and those of society, agreeable to reason and good sense. From Pythagoras, Thales, Anaxagoras, Socrates, Archytas, Plato, Xenophon, Aristotle, and a multitude more, the Greeks received their noble precepts.

But why should we mention philosophers only? The writings of even the poets, which were in every body's hands, diverted them very much, but instructed them still more. The most renowned of conquerors considered Homer as a master, who taught him to govern wisely. This great poet instructed people, no less happily, in obedience, and the duties of a good citizen.

When the Greeks, thus educated, saw the delicacy of the Asiatics, their dress and beauty, emulating that of women, they held them in the utmost contempt. But their form of government, that had no other rule than their prince's will, which took place of all laws, not excepting the most sacred, inspired them with horror; and the Barbarians were the most hateful objects to Greece.

¶ The Greeks had imbibed this hatred in the most early

times, and it was become almost natural to them. A circumstance which made those nations delight so much in Homer's poems, was his celebrating the advantages and victories of Greece over Asia. On the side of Asia was Venus, that is to say, the pleasures, the idle loves, and effeminacy: on that of Greece was Juno, or, in other words, gravity with conjugal affection, Mercury with eloquence, and Jupiter with wise policy. With the Asiatics was Mars, an impetuous and brutal deity, that is to say, war carried on with fury: with the Greeks Pallas, or, in other words, the science of war and valour, conducted by reason. The Grecians, from this time, had ever imagined, that understanding and true bravery were natural as well as peculiar to them. They could not bear the thoughts of Asia's design to conquer them; and in bowing to this yoke, they would have thought they had subjected virtue to pleasure, the mind to the body, and true courage to force without reason, which consisted merely in numbers.

The Greeks were strongly inspired with these sentiments, when Darius, son of Hystaspes, and Xerxes, invaded them with armies so prodigiously numerous as exceeds all belief. The Persians found often, to their cost, the great advantage which discipline has over multitude and confusion; and how greatly superior courage, when conducted by art, is to a blind impetuosity.

Persia, after having been so often conquered by the Greeks, had nothing to do but to sow divisions among them; and the height to which conquest had raised the latter, facilitated this effect. As fear held them in the bands of union, victory and security dissolved them. Having always been used to fight and conquer, they no sooner believed that the power of the Persians could not distress them, but they turned their arms against each other.

Among the several republics of which Greece was composed, Athens and Lacedaemon were undoubtedly the chief. These two great commonwealths, whose manners and conduct were directly opposite, perplexed and incommoded one another, in the common design they had of subjecting all Greece; so that they were eternally at variance, and this more from a contrariety of interests, than an opposition of tempers and dispositions.

The Grecian cities would not subject themselves to either, for besides that every one of them desired to live free and in-

^r Plut. de Leg. l. iii.

dependent, they were not pleased with the government of either of those two commonwealths. We have shown, in the course of this history, that the Peloponnesian, and other wars, were either owing to, or supported by, the reciprocal jealousy of Lacedæmonia and Athens. But at the same time that this jealousy disturbed, it supported Greece in some measure ; and kept it from being dependent on either of those republics.

The Persians soon perceived this state and condition of Greece ; after which, the whole secret of their politics was to keep up these jealousies, and foment these divisions. Lacedæmonia, being the most ambitious, was the first that made them engage in the Grecian quarrels. The Persians took part in them, with a view of subjecting the whole nation ; and, industrious to make the Greeks weaken one another, they only waited for the favourable instant to crush them altogether. ^s And now the cities of Greece considered, in their wars, only the kings of Persia ; whom they called the great king, or the king, by way of eminence, as if they already thought themselves his subjects. However, when Greece was upon the brink of slavery, and ready to fall into the hands of the Barbarians, it was impossible for the genius, the ancient spirit of the country, not to rouse and take the alarm. Agesilaus, king of Lacedæmonia, made the Persians tremble in Asia Minor, and showed that they might be humbled. Their weakness was still more evident, by the glorious retreat of the ten thousand Greeks, who had followed the younger Cyrus.

It was then that all Greece saw, more plainly than ever, that it possessed an invincible body of soldiery, which was able to subdue all nations ; and that nothing but its feuds and divisions could subject it to an enemy who was too weak to resist it when united.

Philip of Macedon, a prince whose abilities were equal to his valour, took so great advantage of the divisions which reigned between the various cities and commonwealths, that though his kingdom was but small, yet, as it was united, and his power absolute, he at last, partly by artifice and partly by strength, rose to greater power than any of the Grecian states, and obliged them all to march under his standard against the common enemy. This was the state of Greece when Philip lost his life, and Alexander his son succeeded to his kingdom, and to the designs he had projected.

^s Plut. de Leg. l. iii. Isocrat. in Paneg.

The Macedonians, at his accession, were not only well disciplined and inured to toils, but triumphant ; and become, by so many successes, almost as much superior to the other Greeks in valour and discipline, as the rest of the Greeks were superior to the Persians, and to such nations as resembled them.

Darius, who reigned over Persia in Alexander's time, was a just, brave, and generous prince ; was beloved by his subjects, and wanted neither good sense nor vigour for the execution of his designs. But, if we compare them ; if we oppose the genius of Darius, to the penetrating sublime one of Alexander ; the valour of the former, to the mighty invincible courage, which obstacles animated, of the latter ; with that boundless desire of Alexander, of augmenting his glory, and his entire belief that all things ought to bow the neck to him, as being formed by Providence superior to the rest of mortals ; a belief with which he inspired, not only his generals, but the meanest of his soldiers, who thereby rose above difficulties, and even above themselves ; the reader will easily judge which of the monarchs was to be victorious.

If to these considerations we add the advantages which the Greeks and Macedonians had over their enemies, it must be confessed, that it was impossible for the Persian empire to subsist any longer, when invaded by so great a hero, and by such invincible armies. And thus we discover, at one and the same time, the circumstance which ruined the empire of the Persians, and raised that of Alexander.

To smooth his way to victory, the Persians happened to lose the only general who was able to make head against the Greeks, and this was Memnon of Rhodes. So long as Alexander fought against this illustrious warrior, he might glory in having vanquished an enemy worthy of himself. But in the very infancy of a diversion, which began already to divide Greece, Memnon died ; after which Alexander obliged all things to give way before him.

This prince made his entrance into Babylon, with a splendour and magnificence which had never been seen before ; and, after having revenged Greece, after subduing, with incredible swiftness, all the nations subject to Persia, to secure his new empire on every side, or rather to satiate his ambition, and render his name more famous than that of Bacchus, he marched into India, and there extended his conquests farther than that celebrated conqueror had done. But the monarch, whose impetuous career neither deserts, rivers, nor mountains

could stop, was obliged to yield to the murmurs of his soldiers, who called aloud for ease and repose.

Alexander returned to Babylon, dreaded and respected, not as a conqueror, but as a god. Nevertheless, the formidable empire he had acquired subsisted no longer than his life, which was but short. At thirty-three years of age, in the midst of the grandest designs that ever man formed, and flushed with the surest hopes of success, he died, before he had leisure to settle his affairs on a solid foundation ; leaving behind him a weak brother, and children very young, all incapable of supporting the weight of such a power.

But the circumstance which proved most fatal to his family and empire, was his having taught the generals who survived him to breathe nothing but ambition and war. He foresaw the prodigious lengths they would go after his death. To curb their ambitious views, and for fear of mistaking in his conjectures, he did not dare to name his successor, or the guardian of his children. He only foretold, that his friends would solemnize his obsequies with bloody battles ; and he expired in the flower of his age, full of the sad images of the confusion which would follow his death.

And indeed, Macedonia, the kingdom he inherited, which his ancestors had governed during so many ages, was invaded on all sides, as a succession that was become vacant ; and after being long exposed a prey, was at last possessed by another family. Thus this great conqueror, the most renowned the world ever saw, was the last king of his family. Had he lived peaceably in Macedon, the vast bounds of his empire would not have proved a temptation to his generals, and he would have left to his children the kingdom he inherited from his ancestors. But, rising to too exalted an height of power, he proved the destruction of his posterity ; and such was the glorious fruit of all his conquests.

BOOK SIXTEENTH.

THE HISTORY

OF

ALEXANDER'S SUCCESSORS.

PLA N.

This chapter contains the competition and wars that subsisted between the generals of Alexander, from the death of that prince to the battle of Ipsus in Phrygia, which decided their several fates. These events include the space of twenty-three years, which coincide with the first twenty-three years of the reign of Ptolemy the son of Lagus, from the year of the world 3681 to the year 3704.

SECTION I.

TROUBLES WHICH FOLLOWED THE DEATH OF ALEXANDER. PARTITION OF THE PROVINCES. ARIDÆUS IS DECLARED KING. PERDICCAS APPOINTED HIS GUARDIAN.

IN relating the death of Alexander the Great, I mentioned the many troubles and commotions that arose in the army on the first news of that event. All the troops in general, soldiers as well as officers, had their thoughts entirely taken up, at first, with the loss of a prince whom they loved as a father, and reverenced almost as a god, and abandoned themselves immoderately to grief and tears. A mournful silence reigned throughout the camp ; but this was soon succeeded by dismal sighs and cries, which speak the true language of the heart, and never flow from a vain ostentation of sorrow, which is too often paid to custom and decorum on such occasions *.

When the first impressions of grief had given place to reflection, they began to consider, with the utmost consterna-

* *Passim silentia et gemitus ; nihil compositum in ostentationem---altius mœr-bant.*---*Tacit.*

tion, the state in which the death of Alexander had left them. They found themselves at an infinite distance from their native country, and amidst a people lately subdued, so little accustomed to their new yoke, that they were hardly acquainted with their present masters, and had not as yet had sufficient time to forget their ancient laws, and that form of government under which they had always lived. What measures could be taken to keep a country of such vast extent in subjection? How could it be possible to suppress those seditions and revolts which would naturally break out on all sides in that decisive moment? What expedients could be formed to restrain those troops within the limits of their duty, who had so long been habituated to complaints and murmurs, and were commanded by chiefs whose views and pretensions were so different?

The only remedy for these various calamities seemed to consist in a speedy nomination of a successor to Alexander; and the troops, as well as the officers, and the whole Macedonian state, seemed at first to be very desirous of this expedient; and, indeed, their common interest and security, with the preservation of their new conquests, amidst the barbarous nations that surrounded them, made it necessary for them to consider this election as their first and most important care, and to turn their thoughts to the choice of a person qualified to fill so arduous a station, and sustain the weight of it in such a manner as to be capable of supporting the general order and tranquillity. But it had already been written, ^t "That the kingdom of Alexander should be divided and rent asunder after his death," and that it should not be transmitted, in the usual manner, "to his posterity." No efforts of human wisdom could establish a sole successor to that prince. In vain did they deliberate, consult, and decide ^u; nothing could be executed contrary to the pre-ordained event, and nothing short of it could possibly subsist. A superior and invincible power had already disposed of the kingdom, and divided it by an inevitable decree, as will be evident in the sequel. The circumstances of this partition had been denounced near three centuries before this time; the portions of it had already been assigned to different possessors, and nothing could frustrate that division, which was only to be deferred for a few years. Till the arrival of that period, men indeed might raise commotions, and concert a variety of

^t Dan. xi. 4.

^u Non erit, non stabit, non fiet.—Isa.

movements; but all their efforts would only tend to the accomplishment of what had been ordained by the sovereign Master of kingdoms, and of what had been foretold by his prophet.

Alexander had a son by Barsina, and had conferred the name of Hercules upon him. Roxana, another of his wives, was advanced in her pregnancy when that prince died. He had likewise a natural brother, called Aridaeus; but he would not upon his death-bed dispose of his dominions in favour of any heir; for which reason this vast empire, which no longer had a master to sway it, became a source of competition and wars, as Alexander had plainly foreseen, when he declared, that his friends would celebrate his funeral with bloody battles.

The division was augmented by the equality among the generals of the army, none of whom was so superior to his colleagues, either by birth or merit, as to induce them to offer him the empire, and submit to his authority. The cavalry were desirous that Aridaeus should succeed Alexander. This prince had discovered but little force of mind from the time he had been afflicted in his infancy with a violent indisposition, occasioned, as was pretended, by some particular drink, which had been given him by Olympias, and which had disordered his understanding. This ambitious princess, being apprehensive that the engaging qualities she discovered in Aridaeus, would be so many obstacles to the greatness of her son Alexander, thought it expedient to have recourse to the criminal precaution already mentioned. The infantry had declared against this prince, and were headed by Ptolemy, and other chiefs of great reputation, who began to think of their own particular establishment. For a sudden revolution was working in the minds of these officers, and caused them to contemn the rank of private persons, and all dependency and subordination, with a view of aspiring to sovereign power, which had never employed their thoughts till then, and to which they had never thought themselves qualified to pretend, before this conjuncture of affairs.

^u These disputes, which engaged the minds of all parties, delayed the interment of Alexander for the space of seven days; and, if we may credit some authors, the body continued uncorrupted all that time. It was afterwards delivered to the Egyptians and Chaldeans, who embalmed it after their manner; and Aridaeus, a different person from him I have already mentioned, was charged with the care of conveying it to Alexandria.

After a variety of troubles and agitations had intervened, the principal officers assembled at a conference; where it was unanimously concluded, that Aridæus should be king, or rather that he should be invested with the shadow of royalty. The infirmity of mind, which ought to have excluded him from the throne, was the very motive of their advancing him to it, and united all suffrages in his favour. It favoured the hopes and pretensions of all the chiefs, and covered their designs. It was also agreed in this assembly, that if Roxana, who was then in the fifth or sixth month of her pregnancy, should have a son, he should be associated with Aridæus in the throne. Perdiccas, to whom Alexander had left his ring, in the last moments of his life, had the person of the prince consigned to his care as a guardian, and was constituted regent of the kingdom.

The same assembly, whatever respect they might bear to the memory of Alexander, thought fit to annul some of his regulations, which had been destructive to the state, and had exhausted his treasury. He had given orders for six temples to be erected in particular cities which he had named, and had fixed the expences of each of these structures at five hundred talents, which amounted to five hundred thousand crowns. He had likewise ordered a pyramid to be raised over the tomb of his father Philip, which was to be finished with a grandeur and magnificence equal to that in Egypt, esteemed one of the seven wonders of the world. He had likewise planned out other expences of the like kind, which were prudently revoked by the assembly.

* Within a short time after these proceedings, Roxana was delivered of a son, who was named Alexander, and acknowledged king, jointly with Aridæus. But neither of these princes possessed any thing more than the name of royalty, as all authority was entirely lodged in the great lords and generals, who had divided the provinces among themselves.

In Europe, Thrace and the adjacent regions were consigned to Lysimachus; and Macedonia, Epirus, and Greece, were allotted to Antipater and Craterus.

In Africa, Egypt, and the other conquests of Alexander in Lybia, and Cyrenaica, were assigned to Ptolemy the son of Lagus, with that part of Arabia which borders on Egypt. The month of Thoth in the autumn is the epocha, from whence the years of the empire of the Lagides in Egypt begin

^x Diod. l. xviii. p. 587. 588. Justin. l. xiii. c. 4. Q. Curt. l. x. c. 10.

to be computed ; though Ptolemy did not assume the title of King, in conjunction with the other successors of Alexander, till about seventeen years after this event.

In the Lesser Asia, Lycia, Pamphylia, and the greater Phrygia, were given to Antigonus ; Caria to Cassander ; Lydia to Menander ; the Lesser Phrygia to Leonatus ; Armenia to Neoptolemus ; Cappadocia and Paphlagonia to Eumenes. These two provinces had never been subjected by the Macedonians, and Ariarthes king of Cappadocia continued to govern them as formerly ; Alexander having advanced with so much rapidity to his other conquests, as left him no inclination to amuse himself with the entire reduction of that province, and contented himself with a slight submission.

Syria and Phœnicia fell to Laomedon ; one of the two Mediae to Atropates, and the other to Perdiccas. Persia was assigned to Peucestes ; Babylonia to Archon ; Mesopotamia to Arcesilas ; Parthia and Hyrcania, to Phrataphernes ; Bactria and Sogdiana to Philip ; the other regions were divided among generals whose names are now but little known.

Seleucus, the son of Antiochus, was placed at the head of the cavalry of the allies, which was a post of great importance ; and Cassander, the son of Antipater, commanded the companies of guards.

The Upper Asia, which extends almost to India, and even India also, were left in the possession of those who had been appointed governors of those countries by Alexander.

y The same disposition generally prevailed in all the provinces I have already mentioned : and it is in this sense that most interpreters explain that passage in the Maccabees, which declares, that Alexander, having assembled the great men of his court who had been bred up with him, divided his kingdom among them in his life-time. And indeed it was very probable, that this prince, when he saw his death approaching, and had no inclination to nominate a successor himself, was contented with confirming each of his officers in the governments he had formerly assigned them, which is sufficient to authorise the declaration in the Maccabees, “ That he divided his kingdom amongst them whilst he was living.”

This partition was only the work of man, and its duration was but short. That Being, who reigns alone, and is the only King of ages, had decreed a different distribution. He assigned

y Maccab. L i. n. 6. et 7.

to each his portion, and marked out its boundaries and extent, and his disposition alone was to subsist.

The partition concluded upon in the assembly, was the source of various divisions and wars, as will be evident in the series of this history; each of these governors claiming the exercise of an independent and sovereign power in his particular province. ^z They, however, paid that veneration to the memory of Alexander, as not to assume the title of King, till all the race of that monarch, who had been placed upon the throne, were extinct.

Among the governors of the provinces I have mentioned, some distinguished themselves more than others by their reputation, merit, and cabals; and formed different parties, to which the others adhered, agreeably to their particular views, either of interest or ambition. For it is not to be imagined, that the resolutions, which are formed in conjunctures of this nature, are much influenced by a devotion to the public good.

^a Eumenes must, however, be excepted; for he undoubtedly was the most virtuous man among all the governors, and had no superior in true bravery. He was always firm in the interest of the two kings, from a principle of true probity. He was a native of Cardia, a city of Thrace, and his birth was but obscure. Philip, who had observed excellent qualities in him in his youth, kept him near his own person in the quality of secretary, and reposed great confidence in him. He was equally esteemed by Alexander, who treated him with extraordinary marks of his esteem. Barsina, the first lady for whom this prince had entertained a passion in Asia, and by whom he had a son named Hercules, had a sister of the same name with her own, and the king espoused her to Eumenes *. We shall see by the event, that this wise favourite conducted himself in such a manner, as justly entitled him to the favour of those two princes, even after their death; and all his sentiments and actions will make it evident that a man may be a plebeian by birth, and yet very noble by nature.

^b I have already intimated, that Sysigambis, who had patiently supported the death of her father, husband, and son, was incapable of surviving Alexander. ^c The death of this princess was soon followed by that of her two youngest daugh-

^z Justin. l. xv. c. 2.

^a Plut. in Eumen. p. 583. Cor. Nep. in Eumen. c. 1.

^b Q. Curt. l. x. c. 5.

^c Plut. in Alex.

* Arrian declares he had another wife, lib. vii. p. 278.

ters, Statira the widow of Alexander, and Drypetis the relict of Hephaestion. Roxana, who was apprehensive lest Statira should be pregnant by Alexander as well as herself, and that the birth of a prince would frustrate the measures which had been taken to secure the succession to the son she hoped to have, prevailed upon the two sisters to visit her, and secretly destroyed them in concert with Perdiccas, her only confidant in that impious proceeding.

It is now time to enter upon a detail of those actions that were performed by the successors of Alexander. I shall therefore begin with the defection of the Greeks in Upper Asia, and with the war which Antipater had to sustain against Greece; because these transactions are most detached, and in a manner distinct from the other events.

SECTION II.

REVOLT OF THE GREEKS IN UPPER ASIA. ANTIPATER GOES INTO GREECE. FLIGHT AND DEATH OF DEMOSTHENES.

THE Greeks^d, whom Alexander had established in the form of colonies, in the provinces of Upper Asia, continued with reluctance in those settlements, because they did not experience those delights and satisfactions with which they had flattered themselves, and had long cherished an ardent desire of returning into their own country. They, however, durst not discover their uneasiness whilst Alexander was living, but the moment they received intelligence of his death, they openly declared their intentions. They armed twenty thousand foot, all warlike and experienced soldiers, with three thousand horse; and having placed Philon at their head, they prepared for their departure, without taking counsel, or receiving orders from any but themselves, as if they had been subject to no authority, and no longer acknowledged any superior.

Perdiccas, who foresaw the consequences of such an enterprise, at a time when every thing was in motion, and when the troops, as well as their officers, breathed nothing but independency, sent Python to oppose them. The merit of this officer was acknowledged by all; and he willingly charged himself with this commission, in expectation of gaining over those Greeks, and of procuring himself some considerable

^d A. M. 3861. Ant. J. C. 323. Diod. l. xviii. p. 591, 592.

establishment in Upper Asia by their means. Perdiccas, being acquainted with his design, gave a very surprising order to the Macedonians whom he sent with that general, which was, to exterminate the revolters entirely. Pithon, on his arrival, brought over, by money, three thousand Greeks, who turned their backs in the battle, and were the occasion of his obtaining a complete victory. The vanquished troops surrendered, but made the preservation of their lives and liberties the condition of their submitting to the conqueror. This was exactly agreeable to Pithon's designs, but he was no longer master of its execution. The Macedonians, thinking it incumbent on them to accomplish the orders of Perdiccas, inhumanly slaughtered all the Greeks, without the least regard to the terms they had granted them. Pithon, being thus defeated in his views, returned with his Macedonians to Perdiccas.

^e This expedition was soon succeeded by the Grecian war. The news of Alexander's death being brought to Athens, had excited great rumours, and occasioned a joy that was almost universal. The people, who had long sustained with reluctance the yoke which the Macedonians had imposed on Greece, made liberty the subject of all their discourse: they breathed nothing but war, and abandoned themselves to all the extravagant emotions of a senseless and excessive joy. Phocion, who was a person of wisdom and moderation, and doubted the truth of the intelligence they had received, endeavoured to calm the turbulency of their minds, which rendered them incapable of counsel and sedate reflection. As the generality of the orators, notwithstanding all his remonstrances, believed the news of Alexander's death, Phocion rose up, and expressed himself in this manner: "If he be really dead to-day, he will likewise be so to-morrow and the next day, so that we will have time enough to deliberate in a calm manner, and with greater security."

Leosthenes, who was the first that published this account at Athens, was continually haranguing the people with excessive arrogance and vanity. Phocion, who was tired with his speeches, said to him, "Young man, your discourse resembles the cypress, which is tall and spreading, but bears no fruit." He gave great offence, by opposing the inclinations of the people in so strenuous a manner, and Hyperides rising up, asked him this question: "When would you advise the Athenians to make war?" "As soon," replied Phocion, "as I see

^e Plut. in Phoc. p. 751, 752.

“ the young men firmly resolved to observe a strict discipline ;
 “ the rich disposed to contribute, according to their abilities,
 “ to the expence of a war ; and when the orators no longer
 “ rob the public.”

All the remonstrances of Phocion were ineffectual ; a war was resolved upon, and a deputation agreed to be sent to all the states of Greece, to engage their accession to the league. This is the war in which all the Greeks, except the Thebans, united to maintain the liberty of their country, under the conduct of Leosthenes, against Antipater, and it was called the Lamian war, from the name of a city where the latter was defeated in the first battle.

^f Demosthenes, who was then an exile at Megara, but who amidst his misfortunes always retained an ardent zeal for the interest of his country, and the defence of the common liberty, joined himself with the Athenian ambassadors sent into Peloponnesus, and having seconded their remonstrances in a wonderful manner by the force of his eloquence, he engaged Sicyone, Argos, Corinth, and the other cities of Peloponnesus, to accede to the league.

The Athenians were struck with admiration at a zeal so noble and generous, and immediately passed a decree to recall him from banishment. A galley with three ranks of oars was dispatched to him at Ægina ; and, when he entered the port of Piræus, all the magistrates and priests advanced out of the city, and all the citizens crowded to meet that illustrious exile, and received him with the utmost demonstrations of affection and joy, blended at the same time with an air of sorrow and repentance, for the injury they had done him. Demosthenes was sensibly affected with the extraordinary honours that were rendered him ; and whilst he returned, as it were in triumph, to his country, amidst the acclamations of the people, he lifted up his hands towards heaven, to thank the gods for so illustrious a protection, and congratulated himself on beholding a day more glorious to him, than that had proved to Alcibiades on which he returned from his exile. For his citizens received him from the pure effect of desire and will ; whereas the reception of Alcibiades was involuntary, and his entrance a compulsion upon their inclinations.

^g The generality of those who were far advanced in years were extremely apprehensive of the event of a war, which

^f Plut. in Demost. p. 858. Justin. l. xxiii. c. 5.

^g Diod. l. xviii. p. 594.—599.

had been undertaken with too much precipitation, and without examining into the consequences with all the attention and sedateness that an enterprise of so much importance required. They were sensible also, that there was no necessity for declaring themselves so openly against the Macedonians, whose veteran troops were very formidable; and the example of Thebes, which was destroyed by the same temerity of conduct, added to their consternation. But the orators, who derived their advantages from the distraction of the public affairs, and to whom, according to the observation of Philip, war was peace, and peace war, would not allow the people time to deliberate maturely on the affairs proposed to their consideration, but drew them into their sentiments by a fallacious eloquence, which presented them with nothing but scenes of future conquests and triumphs.

Demosthenes and Phocion, who wanted neither zeal nor prudence, were of different sentiments on this occasion, which was no extraordinary circumstance with respect to them. It is not my province to determine which of them had reason on his side: but, in such a perplexing conjuncture as this, there is nothing surprising in a contrariety of opinions, though the result of good intentions on both sides. Phocion's scheme was perhaps the most prudent, and that of Demosthenes the most glorious.

However that were, a considerable army was raised, and a very numerous fleet fitted out. All the citizens who were under the age of forty, and capable of bearing arms, were drawn out. Three of the ten tribes that composed the republic were left for the defence of Attica, the rest marched out with the rest of the allies, under the command of Leosthenes.

Antipater was far from being indolent during these transactions in Greece, of which he had been apprised, and he had sent to Leonatus in Phrygia, and to Craterus in Cilicia, to solicit their assistance; but before the arrival of the expected succours, he marched at the head of only thirteen thousand Macedonians and six hundred horse; the frequent recruits which he sent Alexander having left him no more troops in all the country.

It is surprising that Antipater should attempt to give battle to the united forces of all Greece with such a handful of men; but he undoubtedly imagined, that the Greeks were no longer actuated by their ancient zeal and ardour for liberty, and that they ceased to consider it as such an inestimable advan-

tage as ought to inspire them with a resolution to venture their lives and fortunes for its preservation. He flattered himself that they had begun to familiarise themselves with subjection; and indeed this was the disposition of the Greeks at that time; in whom appeared no longer the descendants of those who had so gallantly sustained all the efforts of the East, and fought a million of men for the preservation of their freedom.

Antipater advanced towards Thessaly, and was followed by his fleet, which cruised along the sea-coast. It consisted of one hundred and ten triremes, or galleys of three benches of oars. The Thessalians declared at first in his favour; but having changed their sentiments, they joined the Athenians, and supplied them with a great body of horse.

As the army of the Athenians and their allies was much more numerous than that of the Macedonians, Antipater could not support the charge, and was defeated in the first battle. As he durst not hazard a second, and was in no condition to make a safe retreat into Macedonia, he shut himself up in Lamia, a small city in Thessaly, in order to wait for the succours that were to be transmitted to him from Asia, and he fortified himself in that place, which was soon besieged by the Athenians.

The assault was carried on with great bravery against the town, and the resistance was equally vigorous. Leosthenes, after several attempts, despairing to carry it by force, changed the siege into a blockade, in order to conquer the place by famine. He surrounded it with a wall of circumvallation, and a very deep ditch, and by these means cut off all supplies of provision. The city soon became sensible of the growing scarcity, and the besieged began to be seriously disposed to surrender; when Leosthenes, in a sally they made upon him, received a considerable wound, which rendered it necessary for him to be carried to his tent. Upon which the command of the army was consigned to Antiphilus, who was equally esteemed by the troops for his valour and ability.

Leonatus, in the mean time, was marching to the assistance of the Macedonians besieged in Lamia; and was commissioned, as well as Antigonus, by an agreement made between the generals, to establish Eumenes in Cappadocia by force of arms; but they took other measures, in consequence of some particular views. Leonatus, who reposed an entire

confidence in Eumenes, declared to him at parting, that the engagement to assist Antipater was a mere pretext, and that his real intention was to advance into Greece, in order to make himself master of Macedonia. He at the same time showed him letters from Cleopatra, the sister of Alexander, who invited him to come to Pella, and promised to espouse him. Leonatus being arrived within a little distance of Lamia, marched directly to the enemy, with twenty thousand foot and two thousand five hundred horse. Prosperity had introduced disorders in the Grecian army; several parties of soldiers drew off, and retired into their own country on various pretexts, which greatly diminished the number of the troops, who were now reduced to twenty-two thousand foot. The cavalry amounted to three thousand five hundred, two thousand of whom were Thessalians: and as they constituted the main strength of the army, so all hopes of success were founded in them; and accordingly, when the battle was fought, this body of horse had the greatest share of the victory that was obtained. They were commanded by Menon. Leonatus, covered with wounds, lost his life in the field of battle, and was conveyed into the camp by his troops. The Macedonian phalanx greatly dreaded the shock of the cavalry, and had therefore retreated to eminences inaccessible to the pursuit of the Thessalians. The Greeks having carried off their dead, erected a trophy, and retired.

¹ The whole conversation at Athens turned upon the glorious exploits of Leosthenes, who survived his honours but a short time. An universal joy spread through the city, festivals were celebrated, and sacrifices offered without intermission, to testify their gratitude to the gods for all the advantages they had obtained. The enemies of Phocion, thinking to mortify him in the most sensible manner, and reduce him to the incapacity of justifying his constant opposition to that war, asked him, if he would not have rejoiced to have performed so many glorious actions? "Undoubtedly I would," replied Phocion; "but I would not at the same time have neglected "to offer the advice I gave *." He did not think, that a judgement ought to be formed of any particular counsel from mere success, but rather from the nature and solidity of the counsel itself; and he did not retract his sentiments, because those of an opposite nature had been successful, which only

ⁱ Plut. in Phoc. p. 752.

* Non damnavit quod recte viderat, quia, quod alius male consulerat, bene cesserat: felicius hoc existimans, illud etiam sapientius.—Val. Max. I. ii. c. 8.

proved the latter more fortunate, but not more judicious. And as these agreeable advices came thick upon each other, Phocion, who was apprehensive of the sequel, cried out, “When shall we cease to conquer them?”

Antipater was obliged to surrender by capitulation, but history has not transmitted to us the conditions of the treaty. The event only makes it evident, that Leosthenes compelled him to surrender at discretion, and he himself died a few days after of the wounds he had received at the siege. Antipater, having quitted Lamia the day after the battle, for he seems to have been favourably treated, joined the remains of the army of Leonatus, and took upon him the command of those troops. He was extremely cautious of hazarding a second battle, and kept with his troops, like a judicious and experienced general, on eminences, inaccessible to the enemy’s cavalry. Antiphilus, the general of the Greeks, remained with his troops in Thessaly, and contented himself with observing the motions of Antipater.

Clitus, who commanded the Macedonian fleet, obtained, much about the same time, two victories, near the island of Echinades, over Eetion, the admiral of the Athenian navy.

^k Craterus, who had been long expected, arrived at last in Thessaly, and halted at the river Peneus. He resigned the command to Antipater, and was contented to serve under him. The troops he had brought thither amounted, in conjunction with those of Leonatus, to above forty thousand foot, three thousand archers or slingers, and five thousand horse. The army of the allies was much inferior to those troops in number, and consisted of no more than twenty-five thousand foot, and three thousand five hundred horse. Military discipline had been much neglected among them, after the victories they had obtained. A considerable battle was fought near Cranon, in which the Greeks were defeated; they, however, lost but few troops, and even that disadvantage was occasioned by the licentious conduct of the soldiers, and the small authority of the chiefs, who were incapable of enforcing obedience to their commands.

Antiphilus and Menon, the two generals of the Grecian army, assembled a council the next day, to deliberate whether they should wait the return of those troops who had retired into their own country, or propose terms of accommodation to the enemy. The council declared in favour of the latter;

^k Diod. l. xviii. p. 599—602.

upon which deputies were immediately dispatched to the enemy's camp in the name of all the allies. Antipater replied, that he would enter into a separate treaty with each of the cities, persuading himself that he should facilitate the accomplishment of his designs by this proceeding ; and he was not deceived in his opinion. His answer broke off the negotiation ; and the moment he presented himself before the cities of the allies, they disbanded their troops, and surrendered up their liberties in the most pusillanimous manner, each city being solely attentive to its separate advantage.

This circumstance is a sufficient confirmation of what I have formerly observed with relation to the present disposition of the people of Greece. They were no longer animated with the noble zeal of those ancient asserters of liberty, who devoted their whole attention to the good of the public, and the glory of the nation ; who considered the danger of their neighbours and allies as their own, and marched with the utmost expedition to their assistance upon the first signal of their distress. Whereas now, if a formidable enemy appeared at the gates of Athens, all the republics of Greece had neither activity nor vigour : Peloponnesus continued without motion, and Sparta was as little heard of as if she had never subsisted. Unhappy effects of the mutual jealousy which those people had conceived against each other, and of their disregard to the common liberty, in consequence of a fatal lethargy, into which they were sunk amidst the greatest dangers ! These are symptoms which prognosticate and prepare the way for approaching decline and ruin.

ⁱ Antipater improved this desertion to his own advantage, and marched immediately to Athens, which saw herself abandoned by all her allies, and consequently in no condition to defend herself against a potent and victorious enemy. Before he entered the city, Demosthenes, and all those of his party, who may be considered as the last true Greeks, and the defenders of expiring liberty, retired from that place ; and the people, in order to transfer unto those great men the reproach resulting from the declaration of war against Antipater, and likewise to obtain his good graces, condemned them to die by a decree which Demades prepared. The reader has not forgot, that these are the same people who had lately recalled Demosthenes by a decree so much for his honour, and had received him in triumph.

ⁱ Plut. in Phoc. p. 753, 754.

The same Demades procured a second decree for sending ambassadors to Antipater, who was then at Thebes, and that they should be invested with full powers to negotiate a treaty of peace with him. Phocion himself was at their head; and the conqueror declared, that he expected the Athenians should entirely submit the terms to his regulation, in the manner as he himself had acted, when he was besieged in the city of Lamia, and had conformed to the capitulation imposed upon him by Leosthenes, their general.

Phocion returned to acquaint the Athenians with his answer, and they were compelled to acquiesce in the conditions, rigid as they might appear. He then came back to Thebes with the rest of the ambassadors, with whom Xenocrates had been associated, in hopes that the appearance alone of so celebrated a philosopher would inspire Antipater with respect, and induce him to pay homage to his virtue. But surely they must have been little acquainted with the heart of man, and particularly with the violent and inhumane disposition of Antipater, to be capable of flattering themselves, that an enemy, with whom they had been engaged in an open war, would renounce his advantage through any inducement of respect for the virtue of a single man, or in consequence of an harangue uttered by a philosopher, who had declared against him. Antipater would not even condescend to cast his eyes upon him; and when he was preparing to enter upon the conference, for he was commissioned to be the speaker on this occasion, he interrupted him in a very abrupt manner: and perceiving that he continued in his discourse, commanded him to be silent. But he did not treat Phocion in the same manner; for after he had attended to his discourse, he replied, "That he was disposed to contract a friendship and alliance with the Athenians on the following conditions. They should deliver up Demosthenes and Hyperides to him; the government should be restored to its ancient plan, by which all employments in the state were to be conferred upon the rich; that they should receive a garrison into the port of Munychia; that they should defray all the expences of the war, and also a large sum, the amount of which should be settled." Thus, according to Diodorus, none but those whose yearly income exceeded two thousand drachms, were to be admitted into any share of the government for the future, or have any right to vote. Antipater intended to make himself absolute master of Athens by this regulation, being very sensible, that the rich men, who enjoyed

public employments, and had large revenues, would become his dependants much more effectually than a poor and despicable populace, who had nothing to lose, and would be only guided by their own caprice.

All the ambassadors but Xenocrates were well contented with these conditions, which they thought were very moderate, considering their present situation ; but that philosopher judged otherwise. "They are very moderate for slaves," said he, "but extremely severe for free men."

The Athenians were therefore compelled to receive into Munychia a Macedonian garrison, commanded by Menyllus, a man of probity, and by some of Phocion's particular friends. The troops took possession of the place during the festival of the Great Mysteries, and the very day on which it was usual to carry the god Iacchus in procession from the city to Eleusina. This was a melancholy conjuncture for the Athenians, and affected them with the most sensible affliction. "Alas !" said they, when they compared past times with those they then saw, "the gods, amidst our greatest adversities, would "formerly manifest themselves in our favour during this sa- "cred ceremonial, by mystic visions and audible voices, to "the great astonishment of our enemies, who were terrified "by them. But now, when we are even celebrating the "same solemnities, they cast an unpitying eye on the greatest "calamities that can happen to Greece : they behold the most "sacred of all days in the year, and that which is most agree- "able to us, polluted and distinguished by the most dreadful "of calamities, which will even transmit its name to this sa- "cred time through all succeeding generations."

The garrison, commanded by Menyllus, did not offer the least injury to any of the inhabitants, but there were more than twelve thousand of them excluded from employments in the state, by one of the stipulations in the treaty, in consequence of their poverty. Some of these unfortunate persons continued in Athens, and lingered out a wretched life, amidst the contemptuous treatment they had justly drawn upon themselves ; for the generality of them were seditious and mercenary in their dispositions, had neither virtue nor justice, but flattered themselves with a false idea of liberty, which they were incapable of using aright, and had no knowledge of either its bounds, duties, or end. The other poor citizens departed from the city, in order to avoid that opprobrious condition, and retired into Thrace, where Antipater assigned them a city and lands for their habitation.

^m Demetrius Phalereus was obliged to have recourse to flight, and retired to Nicanor; but Cassander, the son of Antipater, reposed much confidence in him, and made him governor of Munychia after the death of his father, as will appear immediately. This Demetrius had been not only the disciple, but the intimate friend of the celebrated Theophrastus; and, under the conduct of so learned a master, had perfected his natural genius for eloquence, and rendered himself expert in philosophy, politics, and history. ⁿ He was in great esteem at Athens, and began to enter upon the administration of affairs, when Harpalus arrived there, after he had declared against Alexander. He was obliged to quit that city at the time we have mentioned, and was soon after condemned there, though absent, under a vain pretext of irreligion.

^o The whole weight of Antipater's displeasure fell chiefly upon Demosthenes, Hyperides, and some other Athenians who had been their adherents: and when he was informed that they had eluded his vengeance by flight, he dispatched a body of men with orders to seize them, and placed one Archias at their head, who had formerly played in tragedies. This man having found at Ægina, the orator Hyperides, Aristonicus of Marathon, and Hymereus the brother of Demetrius Phalereus, who had all three taken sanctuary in the temple of Ajax; he dragged them from their asylum, and sent them to Antipater, who was then at Cleones, where he condemned them to die. Some authors have even declared, that he caused the tongue of Hyperides to be cut out.

The same Archias having received intelligence, that Demosthenes, who had retired into the island of Calauria, was become a suppliant in the temple of Neptune, he sailed thither in a small vessel, and landed with some Thracian soldiers: after which he spared no pains to persuade Demosthenes to accompany him to Antipater, assuring him that he should receive no injury. Demosthenes was too well acquainted with mankind to rely on his promises; and was sensible that venal souls, who have hired themselves into the service of iniquity, those infamous ministers in the execution of orders equally cruel and unjust, have as little regard to sincerity and truth as their masters. To prevent, therefore, his falling into the hands of a tyrant, who would have satiated his fury upon

^m Athen. l. xii. p. 542.

^o Plut. in Demosth. p. 859, 860,

ⁿ Diog. in Laert. in Demetr.

him, he swallowed poison, which he always carried about him, and which soon produced its effect. When he found his strength declining, he advanced a few steps, by the aid of some domestics who supported him, and fell down dead at the foot of the altar.

The Athenians, soon after this event, erected a statue of brass to his memory, as a testimonial of their gratitude and esteem, and made a decree, that the eldest branch of his family should be brought up in the Prytaneum, at the public expence, from generation to generation: and at the foot of the statue they engraved this inscription, which was couched in two elegiac verses: “Demosthenes, if thy power had been “equal to thy wisdom, the Macedonian Mars would never “have triumphed over Greece.” What regard is to be entertained for the judgement of a people, who were capable of being hurried into such opposite extremes, and who one day passed sentence of death on a citizen, and loaded him with honours and applause the next?

What I have already said of Demosthenes, on several occasions, makes it unnecessary to enlarge upon his character in this place. He was not only a great orator, but an accomplished statesman. His views were noble and exalted; his zeal was not to be intimidated by any conjectures, wherēin the honour and interest of his country were concerned; he firmly retained an irreconcileable aversion to all measures which had any resemblance to tyranny, and his love for liberty was such as may be imagined in a republican, as implacable an enemy to all servitude and dependency as ever lived. A wonderful sagacity of mind enabled him to penetrate into future events, and presented them to his view with as much perspicuity, though remote, as if they had been actually present. He seemed as much acquainted with all the designs of Philip, as if he had been admitted into a participation of his counsels; and if the Athenians had followed his counsels, that prince would not have attained that height of power, which proved destructive to Greece, as Demosthenes had frequently foretold.

^p He was perfectly acquainted with the disposition of Philip, and was very far from praising him, like the generality of orators. Two colleagues, with whom he was associated in an embassy to that prince, were continually praising the king of Macedonia, at their return, and saying, that he was a very

eloquent and amiable prince, and a most extraordinary drinker. "What strange commendations are these!" replied Demosthenes. "The first is the accomplishment of a rhetorician; the second of a woman; and the third of a sponge; but none of them the praise of a king."

With relation to eloquence, nothing can be added to what Quintilian has observed, in the parallel he has drawn between Demosthenes and Cicero. After he has shown, that the great and essential qualities of an orator are common to them both, he marks out the particular difference observable between them with respect to style and elocution. "The one *," says he, "is more precise, the other more luxuriant. The one "crowds all his forces into a smaller compass when he attacks "his adversary, the other chuses a larger field for the assault. "The one always endeavours in a manner to transfix him "with the vivacity of his style, the other frequently over- "whelms him with the weight of his discourse. Nothing can "be retrenched from the one, and nothing can be added to the "other. In Demosthenes we discover more labour and study, "in Cicero more nature and genius."

^q I have elsewhere observed another difference between these two great orators, which I beg leave to insert in this place. That which characterises Demosthenes more than any other circumstance, and in which he has never been imitated, is such an absolute oblivion of himself, and so scrupulous and constant a solicitude to suppress all ostentation of wit; in a word, such a perpetual care to confine the attention of the auditor to the cause, and not to the orator, that he never suffers any one turn of thought or expression to escape him from no other view than merely to please and shine. This reserve and moderation in so amiable a genius as Demosthenes, and in matters so susceptible of grace and eloquence, adds perfection to his merit, and renders him superior to all praises.

Cicero was sensible of all the estimation due to the eloquence of Demosthenes, and experienced all its force and beauty. But as he was persuaded, that an orator, when he is engaged in any points that are not strictly essential, ought to form his style by the taste of his audience; and did not

^q In the discourse on the eloquence of the bar.

* In eloquendo est aliqua diversitas. Densior ille, hic copiosior. Ille concludit astrictius, hic latius pugnat. Ille acuminis semper, hic frequenter et pondere. Ille nihil detrahi potest, huic nihil adjici. Curae plus in illo, in hac naturae.—Quintil. L. x. c. I.

believe, that the genius of his times was consistent with such a rigid exactness ; he therefore judged it necessary to accommodate himself in some measure to the ears and delicacy of his auditors, who required more grace and elegance in his discourse. For which reason he had some regard to the agreeable, but at the same time, never lost sight of any important point in the clause he pleaded. He even thought that this qualified him for promoting the interest of his country, and was not mistaken, as to please is one of the most certain means of persuading ; but at the same time he laboured for his own reputation, and never forgot himself.

The death of Demosthenes and Hyperides caused the Athenians to regret the reigns of Philip and Alexander, and recalled to their remembrance the magnanimity, generosity, and clemency, which those two princes retained, even amidst the emotions of their displeasure ; and how inclinable they had always been to pardon offences, and treat their enemies with humanity. Whereas Antipater, under the mask of a private man in a bad cloak, with all the appearances of a plain and frugal life, and without affecting any title of authority, discovered himself to be a rigid and imperious master.

Antipater was, however, prevailed upon, by the prayers of Phocion, to recall several persons from banishment, notwithstanding all the severity of his disposition ; and there is reason to believe, that Demetrius was one of this number ; at least, it is certain that he had a considerable share in the administration of the republic from that time. As for those whose recall to Athens Phocion was unable to obtain, he procured for them more commodious situations, that were not so remote as their former settlements ; and took his measures so effectually, that they were not banished, according to the first sentence, beyond the Ceraunian mountains and the promontory of Tenarus ; by which means they did not live sequestered from the pleasures of Greece, but obtained a settlement in Peloponnesus. Who can help admiring, on the one hand, the amiable and generous disposition of Phocion, who employed his credit with Antipater, in order to procure a set of unfortunate persons some alleviation of their calamities ; and, on the other hand, a kind of humanity in a prince, who was not very desirous of distinguishing himself by that quality, but was sensible, however, that it would be extremely rigid in him to add new mortifications to the inconveniences of banishment ?

Antipater in other respects exercised his government with great justice and moderation, over those who continued in Athens; he bestowed the principal posts and employments on such persons as he imagined were the most virtuous and honest men; and contented himself with removing from all authority, such as he thought were most likely to excite troubles. He was sensible, that this people could neither support a state of absolute servitude, nor the enjoyment of entire liberty; for which reason he thought it necessary to take from the one, whatever was too rigid; and from the other, all that it had of excessive and licentious.

The conqueror, after so glorious a campaign, set out for Macedonia, to celebrate the nuptials of his daughter Phila with Craterus, and the solemnity was performed with all imaginable grandeur. Phila was one of the most accomplished princesses of her age, and her beauty was the least part of her merit. The lustre of her charms was heightened by the sweetness and modesty that softened her aspect, by an air of complacency, and a natural disposition to oblige, which won the hearts of all who beheld her. These engaging qualities were rendered still more amiable by the brightness of a superior genius, and a prudence uncommon in her sex, which made her capable of the greatest affairs. It is even said, that, young as she then was, her father Antipater, who was one of the most able politicians of his age, never engaged in any affair of importance without consulting her. This princess never made use of the influence she had over her two husbands, (for after the death of Craterus, she espoused Demetrius the son of Antigonus), but to procure some favour for the officers, their daughters or sisters. If they were poor, she furnished them with portions for their marriage; and if they were so unhappy as to be calumniated, she herself was very active in their justification. So generous a liberality gave her an absolute power among the troops. All cabals were dissolved by her presence, and all revolts gave way, and were appeased by her conduct.

SECTION III.

PROCESSION OF ALEXANDER'S FUNERAL. PTOLEMY, CATERUS, ANTIPATER, AND ANTIGONUS, CONFEDERATE AGAINST EACH OTHER.

MUCH about this time ^r the * funeral obsequies of Alexander were performed. Aridaeus, having been deputed by all the governors and grandees of the kingdom, to take upon himself the care of that solemnity, had employed two years in preparing every thing that could possibly render it the most pompous and august funeral that had ever been seen. When all things were ready for the celebration of this mournful but superb ceremonial, orders were given for the procession to begin. This was preceded by a great number of pioneers and other workmen, whose office was to make all the ways practicable through which the procession was to pass.

As soon as these were levelled, that magnificent chariot, the invention and design of which raised as much admiration as the immense riches that glittered all over it, set out from Babylon. The body of the chariot rested upon two axle-trees, that were inserted into four wheels, made after the Persian manner; the naves and spokes of which were covered with gold, and the rounds plated over with iron. The extremities of the axle-trees were made of gold, representing the muscles of lions biting a dart. The chariot had four draught beans, or poles, to each of which were harnessed four set of mules, each set consisting of four of those animals; so that this chariot was drawn by sixty-four mules. The strongest of these creatures, and the largest, were chosen on this occasion. They were adorned with crowns of gold, and collars enriched with precious stones and golden bells.

On this chariot was erected a pavilion of entire gold, twelve feet wide, and eighteen in length, supported by columns of the Ionic order, embellished with the leaves of acanthus. The inside was adorned with a blaze of jewels, disposed in the form of shells. The circumference was beautified with a fringe of golden net-work; the threads that

^r A. M. 3633. Ant. J. C. 321. Diod. l. xviii. p. 608.—610.

* I could have wished it had been in my power to have explained several passages of this description in a more clear and intelligible manner than I have done; but that was not possible for me to effect, though I had recourse to persons of greater capacity than myself.

composed the texture were an inch in thickness, and to those were fastened large bells, whose sound was heard at a great distance.

The external decorations were disposed into four reliefs.

The first represented Alexander seated in a military chariot, with a splendid sceptre in his hand, and surrounded, on one side, with a troop of Macedonians in arms; and on the other, with an equal number of Persians armed in their manner. These were preceded by the king's equerries.

In the second were seen elephants completely harnessed, with a band of Indians seated on the fore part of their bodies; and on the hinder, another band of Macedonians, armed as in the day of battle.

The third exhibited to the view several squadrons of horse ranged in military array.

The fourth represented ships preparing for a battle.

At the entrance into the pavilion were golden lions, that seemed to guard the passage.

The four corners were adorned with statues of gold representing victories, with trophies of arms in their hands.

Under the pavilion was placed a throne of gold of a square form, adorned with the heads of animals*, whose necks were encompassed with golden circles a foot and a half in breadth; to these were hung crowns that glittered with the liveliest colours, and such as were carried in procession at the celebration of sacred solemnities.

At the foot of the throne was placed the coffin of Alexander, formed of beaten gold, and half filled with aromatic spices and perfumes, as well to exhale an agreeable odour, as for the preservation of the corpse. A pall of purple wrought with gold covered the coffin.

Between this and the throne the arms of that monarch were disposed in the manner he wore them while living.

The outside of the pavilion was likewise covered with purple flowered with gold. The top ended in a very large crown of the same metal, which seemed to be a composition of olive-branches. The rays of the sun which darted on this diadem, in conjunction with the motion of the chariot, caused it to emit a kind of rays like those of lightning.

It may easily be imagined, that, in so long a procession, the motion of a chariot, loaded like this, would be liable to great

* The Greek word *πρεπελαφος* imports a kind of hart, from whose chin a beard hangs down like that of goats.

inconveniences. In order, therefore, that the pavilion, with all its appendages, might, when the chariot moved in any uneven ways, constantly continue in the same situation, notwithstanding the inequality of the ground, and the shocks that would frequently be unavoidable, a cylinder was raised from the middle of each axle-tree, to support the pavilion ; by which expedient the whole machine was preserved steady.

The chariot was followed by the royal guards, all in arms, and magnificently arrayed.

The multitude of spectators of this solemnity is hardly credible ; but they were drawn together, as well by their veneration for the memory of Alexander, as by the magnificence of this funeral pomp, which had never been equalled in the world.

There was a current prediction, that the place where Alexander should be interred, would be rendered the most happy and flourishing part of the whole earth. The governors contested with each other, for the disposal of a body that was to be attended with such a glorious prerogative. The affection Perdiccas entertained for his country, made him desirous, that the corpse should be conveyed to Æge in Macedonia, where the remains of its kings were usually deposited. Other places were likewise proposed, but the preference was given to Egypt. Ptolemy, who had such extraordinary and recent obligations to the king of Macedonia, was determined to signalize his gratitude on this occasion. He accordingly set out with a numerous guard of his best troops, in order to meet the procession, and advanced as far as Syria. When he had joined the attendants on the funeral, he prevented them from interring the corpse in the temple of Jupiter-Ammon, as they had proposed. It was therefore deposited, first in the city of Memphis, and from thence was conveyed to Alexandria. Ptolemy raised a magnificent temple to the memory of this monarch, and rendered him all the honours which were usually paid to demi-gods and heroes by Pagan antiquity.

^s Freinshemius, in his supplement to Livy, relates, after Leo the African *, that the tomb of Alexander the Great was still to be seen in his time, and that it was reverenced by the Mohammedans, as the monument, not only of an illustrious king, but of a great prophet.

^s Lib. cxxxiii.

* This author lived in the 15th century.

^t Cappadocia and Paphlagonia, which border on the Pontic sea, were allotted to Eumenes, in consequence of the partition of the several governments of Alexander's empire; and it was expressly stipulated by the treaty, that Leonatus and Antigonus should march with a great body of troops to establish Eumenes in the government of those dominions, and dispossess king Ariarthes of the sovereignty. This general resolution of sending troops and experienced commanders into the several provinces of the empire, was formed with great judgement; and the intention of it was, that all those conquered territories should continue under the dominion of the Macedonians, and that the inhabitants, being no longer governed by their own sovereigns, should have no future inclination to recover their former liberty, nor be in a condition to set each other the example of throwing off the new yoke of the Greeks.

But neither Leonatus nor Antigonus were very solicitous to execute this article of the treaty; and, as they were entirely attentive to their own particular interest and aggrandizement, they took other measures. Eumenes, seeing himself thus abandoned by those who ought to have established him in his government, set out with all his equipage, which consisted of three hundred horse and two hundred of his domestics, well armed; with all his riches, which amounted to about five thousand talents of gold; and retired to Perdiccas, who gave him a favourable reception. As he was much esteemed by that commander, he was admitted into a participation of all his counsels. Eumenes was indeed a man of great solidity and resolution, and the most able of all the captains of Alexander.

Within a short time after this event, he was conducted into Cappadocia by a great army, which Perdiccas thought fit to command in person. Ariarthes had made the necessary preparations for a vigorous defence, and had raised twenty thousand foot and a great body of horse; but he was defeated and taken prisoner by Perdiccas, who destroyed his whole family, and invested Eumenes with the government of his dominions. He intended, by this instance of severity, to intimidate the people, and extinguish all seditions. And this conduct was very judicious, and absolutely necessary in the conjuncture of a new government, when the state is in a general ferment, and all things are usually disposed for com-

^t Plut. in Eumen. p. 534. Diod. l. xviii. p. 599.

imotions. Perdiccas, after this transaction, advanced with his troops to chastise Isaura and Laranda, cities of Pisidia, which had massacred their governors, and revolted from the Macedonians. The last of these cities was destroyed in a very surprising manner ; for the inhabitants, finding themselves in no condition to defend it, and despairing of any quarter from the conqueror, shut themselves up in their houses, with their wives, children, and parents, and all their gold and silver, set fire to their several habitations, and after they had fought with the fury of lions, threw themselves into the flames. The city was abandoned to plunder ; and the soldiers, after they had extinguished the fire, found a very great booty, for the place was filled with riches.

^u Perdiccas, after this expedition, marched into Cilicia, where he passed the winter season. During his residence in that country, he formed the resolution to divorce Nicea, the daughter of Antipater, whom he had espoused at a time when he thought that marriage subservient to his interest. But when the regency of the empire had given him a superior credit, and given birth to more exalted hopes, his thoughts took a different turn, and he was desirous of espousing Cleopatra, the sister of Alexander the Great. She had been married to Alexander king of Epirus ; and having lost her husband in the wars of Italy, she had continued in a state of widowhood, and was then at Sardis in Lydia. Perdiccas dispatched Eu-menes thither, to propose his marriage to that princess, and employ his endeavours to render it agreeable to her. This alliance with a lady who was the sister of Alexander by the same father and mother, and exceedingly beloved by the Macedonians, opened him a way to the empire through the favour of that people, which he might naturally expect from his marriage with Cleopatra.

Antigonus penetrated into his design, and evidently foresaw that his own destruction was to be the foundation of the intended success. He therefore passed into Greece with the greatest expedition, in order to find Antipater and Craterus, who were then engaged in a war with the Ætolians, and disclosed to them the whole plan that Perdiccas had formed. Upon this intelligence they immediately came to an accommodation with the Ætolians, and advanced towards the Hellespont to observe the motions of the new enemy ; and, in order to strengthen their own party, they engaged Ptolemy, governor of Egypt, in their interest.

Craterus, one of the greatest of Alexander's captains, had the largest share of the affection and esteem of the Macedonians. Alexander, a little before his death, had ordered him to conduct into Macedonia the ten thousand veteran troops he intended to send thither, on account of their age, wounds, or other infirmities, which rendered them incapable of the service. The king had likewise conferred upon him at the same time the government of Macedonia, in the room of Antipater, whom he recalled to Babylon. Those provinces having been consigned to Craterus and Antipater after the death of Alexander, they governed them in concert, and Craterus always conducted himself like a good and faithful associate; especially in the operation of this war, in which they were unavoidably engaged by the discovery of the designs Perdiccas was forming.

Perdiccas sent Eumenes back to his province, not only to regulate the state of affairs in that country, but more particularly to keep a watchful eye on the motions of Neoptolemus his next neighbour, who was governor of Armenia, and whose conduct was suspected by Perdiccas, but not without sufficient reason, as will be evident in the sequel.

* This Neoptolemus was a man remarkable for his stupid pride, and the insupportable arrogance he had contracted, from the vain hopes with which he fed his imagination. Eumenes endeavoured to reduce him to reason by gentle measures; and when he saw that the troops of the Macedonian phalanx, who were commanded by Neoptolemus, were grown very insolent and audacious, he made it his care to assemble a body of horse strong enough to oppose their designs, and keep them within the bounds of respect and obedience. With this view he granted all sorts of immunities and exemptions from imposts to those of the inhabitants who were in a condition to appear on horseback. He likewise purchased a great number of horses, and bestowed them on those of his court in whom he confided the most; and inflamed their courage by the honours and rewards he conferred upon them. He disciplined and habituated them to labour and fatigue by reviews, exercises, and continual movements. Every body was surprised to see him assemble, in so short a time, a body of six thousand horse, capable of good service in the field.

x Plut. in Eumen. p. 585.

Perdiccas, having caused all his troops to file off the next spring towards Cappadocia, held a council with his friends on the operations of the intended war. The subject of their deliberations was, whether they should march first into Macedonia against Antipater and Craterus, or into Egypt against Ptolemy. The majority of voices declared in favour of the last; and it was concluded, at the same time, that Eumenes, with part of the army, should guard the Asiatic provinces against Antipater and Craterus; and, in order to engage him more effectually to espouse the common cause, Perdiccas added the provinces of Caria, Lycia, and Phrygia, to his government. He likewise declared him generalissimo of all the troops in Cappadocia and Armenia, and ordered all the governors to obey him. Perdiccas, after this, advanced towards Egypt through Damascene and Palestine. He also took the two minor kings with him in this expedition, in order to cover his designs with the royal authority.

^y Eumenes spared no pains to have a good army on foot, in order to oppose Antipater and Craterus, who had already passed the Hellespont, and were marching against him. They left nothing unattempted to disengage him from the party he had espoused, and promised him the addition of new provinces to those he already possessed; but he was too steady * to be shaken by these offers, in breach of his engagements to Perdiccas. They succeeded better with Alcetas and Neoptolemus, for they engaged the former to observe a neutrality, though the brother of Perdiccas, and the other declared in their favour. Eumenes attacked and defeated the latter at a narrow pass, and even took all his baggage. This victory was owing to his cavalry whom he had formed with so much care. Neoptolemus saved himself with three hundred horse, and joined Antipater and Craterus; but the rest of his troops went over to Eumenes.

Antipater entered Cilicia with an intention to advance into Egypt, in order to assist Ptolemy, if his affairs should require his aid; and he detached Craterus and Neoptolemus with the rest of his army against Eumenes, who was then in Cappadocia. A great battle was fought there, the success of which was to be entirely ascribed to the wise and vigilant precaution of Eumenes, which Plutarch justly considers as

^y Plut. in Eumen. p. 585.—587. Diod. l. xviii. p. 610.—613.

* Quem (Perdiccam) etsi infirmum videbat, quod unus omnibus resistere cogebatur, amicum non deseruit, neque salutis quam fidei fuit cupidior.---Cor. Nep. in Eumen. c. 3.

the master-piece of a great commander. The reputation of Craterus was very great, and the generality of the Macedonians were desirous of him for their leader after the death of Alexander, remembering that his affection for them, and his desire to support their interest, had caused him to incur the displeasure of that prince. Neoptolemus had flattered him, that as soon as he should appear in the field, all the Macedonians of the opposite party would list themselves under his banners, and Eumenes himself was very apprehensive of that event. But, in order to avoid this misfortune, which would have occasioned his inevitable ruin, he caused the avenues and narrow passes to be so carefully guarded, that his army were entirely ignorant of the enemy against whom he was leading them, having caused a report to be spread, that it was only Neoptolemus, who was preparing to attack him a second time. In the dispositions he made for the battle, he was careful not to oppose any Macedonian against Craterus; and issued an order, with very severe penalties, that no herald from the enemy should be received on any account whatever.

The first charge was very rude; the lances were soon shivered on both sides, and the two armies attacked sword in hand. Craterus acted nothing to the dishonour of Alexander on this last day of his life, for he killed several of the enemies with his own hand, and frequently bore down all who opposed him; till, at last, a Thracian wounded him in the flank, when he fell from his horse. All the enemy's cavalry rode over him without knowing who he was, and did not discover him till he was breathing his last.

As to the other wing, Neoptolemus and Eumenes, who personally hated each other, having met in the battle, and their horses charging with a violent shock, they seized each other; and their horses springing from under them, they both fell on the earth, where they struggled like two implacable wrestlers, and fought for a considerable time with the utmost fury and rage, till at last Neoptolemus received a mortal wound, and immediately expired.

Eumenes then remounted his horse, and pushed his left wing to that part of the field, where he believed the enemy's troops still continued unbroken. There, when he was informed that Craterus was killed, he spurred his horse to the place where he lay, and found him expiring. When he beheld this melancholy spectacle, he could not refuse his tears to the death of an ancient friend, whom he had always esteemed; and he caused the last honours to be paid him

with all possible magnificence. He likewise ordered his bones to be conveyed to Macedonia, in order to be given to his wife and children. Eumenes gained this second victory ten days after the first.

^z In the mean time Perdiccas had advanced into Egypt, and begun the war with Ptolemy, though with very different success. Ptolemy, from the time he was constituted governor of that country, had conducted himself with so much justice and humanity, that he had entirely gained the hearts of all the Egyptians. An infinite number of people, charmed with the lenity of so wise an administration, came thither from Greece and other parts to enter into his service. This additional advantage rendered him extremely powerful, and even the army of Perdiccas had so much esteem for Ptolemy, that they marched with reluctance against him, and great numbers of them deserted daily to his troops. All these circumstances were fatal to the views of Perdiccas, and he lost his own life in that country. Having unfortunately taken a resolution to make his army pass an arm of the Nile, which formed an island near Memphis, in passing he lost two thousand men, half of whom were drowned, and the remainder devoured by crocodiles. The Macedonians were exasperated to such a degree of fury, when they saw themselves exposed to such unnecessary dangers, that they mutinied against him; in consequence of which, he was abandoned by a hundred of his principal officers, of whom Python was the most considerable, and was assassinated in his tent, with most of his intimate friends.

Two days after this event, the army received intelligence of the victory obtained by Eumenes; and had this account come two days sooner, it would certainly have prevented the mutiny, and consequently the revolution that soon succeeded it, which proved so favourable to Ptolemy and Antipater, and all their adherents.

^z Diod. l. xviii. p. 613.—616. Plut. in Eumen. p. 587. Cor. Nep. c. 5.

SECTION IV.

REGENCY TRANSFERRED TO ANTIPATER. POLYSPERCHON
SUCCEEDS HIM. THE LATTER RECALLS OLYMPIAS.

PTOLEMY passed the Nile the day after the death of Perdiccas ^a, and entered the Macedonian camp ; where he justified his own conduct so effectually, that all the troops declared in his favour. When the death of Craterus was known, he made such an artful improvement of their affliction and resentment, that he induced them to pass a decree, whereby Eumenes, and fifty other persons of the same party, were declared enemies to the Macedonian state ; and this decree authorised Antipater and Antigonus to carry on a war against them. But when this prince perceived the troops had a general inclination to offer him the regency of the two kings, which became vacant by the death of Perdiccas, he had the precaution to decline that office, because he was very sensible that the royal pupils had a title without a reality ; that they would never be capable of sustaining the weight of that vast empire, nor be in a condition to reunite, under their authority, so many governments accustomed to independency ; that there was an inevitable tendency to dismember the whole, as well from the inclinations and interest of the officers, as the situation of affairs ; that all his acquisitions in the interim would redound to the advantage of his pupils ; that while he appeared to possess the first rank, he should in reality enjoy nothing fixed and solid, or that could any way be considered as his own property ; that upon the expiration of the regency, he should be left without any government or real establishments and that he should neither be master of an army to support him, nor of any retreat for his preservation ; whereas all his colleagues would enjoy the richest provinces in perfect tranquillity, and he be the only one who had not derived any advantages from the common conquests. These considerations, induced him to prefer the post he already enjoyed to the new title that was offered him, as the former was less hazardous, and rendered him less obnoxious to envy : he therefore caused the choice to fall on Pithon and Aridæus.

The first of these persons had commanded with distinction in all the wars of Alexander, and had embraced the party of

a Diod. l. xviii. p. 616.—619.

Perdiccas, till he was a witness of his imprudent conduct in passing the Nile, which induced him to quit his service, and go over to Ptolemy.

With respect to Aridæus, history has taken no notice of him before the death of Alexander, when the funeral solemnities of that prince were committed to his care: and we have already seen in what manner he acquitted himself of that melancholy but honourable commission, after he had employed two years in the preparations for it.

The honour of this guardianship was of no long continuance to them. Eurydice, the consort of king Aridæus, whom we shall distinguish for the future by the name of Philip, being fond of interfering in all affairs, and being supported in her pretensions by the Macedonians, the two regents were so dissatisfied with their employment, that they voluntarily resigned it, after they had sent the army back to Triparadis in Syria; and it was then conferred upon Antipater.

As soon as he was invested with his authority, he made a new partition of the provinces of the empire, in which he excluded all those who had espoused the interest of Perdiccas and Eumenes, and re-established every person of the other party who had been dispossessed. In this new division of the empire, Seleucus, who had great authority from the command of the cavalry, as we have already intimated, had the government of Babylon, and became afterwards the most powerful of all the successors of Alexander. Python had the government of Media; but Atropates, who at that time enjoyed the government of that province, supported himself in one part of the country, and assumed the regal dignity, without acknowledging the authority of the Macedonians; and this tract of Media was afterwards called Media Atropatena. Antipater, after this regulation of affairs, sent Antigonus against Eumenes, and then returned into Macedonia; but left his son Cassander behind him, in quality of general of the cavalry, and with orders to be near the person of Antigonus, that he might the better be informed of his designs.

^b Jaddus, the high-priest of the Jews, died this year, and was succeeded by his son Onias, whose pontificate continued for the space of twenty-one years. I make this remark, because the history of the Jews will, in the sequel of this work, be very much intermixed with that of Alexander's successors.

^c Antigonus appeared early in the field against Eumenes;

^b A. M. 3683. Ant. J. C. 321. Joseph. Antiq. l. xi. c. 8.

^c A. M. 3684. Ant. J. C. 320. Diod. l. xviii. p. 618, 619.

and a battle was fought at Orcynium in Cappadocia, wherein Eumenes was defeated, and lost eight thousand men, by the treachery of Apollonides, one of the principal officers of his cavalry; who was corrupted by Antigonus, and marched over to the enemy in the midst of the battle.^d The traitor was soon punished for his perfidy, for Eumenes took him, and caused him to be hanged upon the spot.

^e A conjuncture, which happened soon after this defeat, would have enabled Eumenes to seize the baggage of Antigonus and all his riches, with a great number of prisoners; and his little troop already cast an eager eye on so considerable a booty. But whether his apprehensions that so rich a prey would enervate the heart of his soldiers, who were then constrained to wander from place to place; or whether his regard to Antigonus, with whom he had formerly contracted a particular friendship, prevented him from improving this opportunity, it is certain that he sent a letter to that commander, to inform him of the danger that threatened him; and when he afterwards made a feint to attack the baggage, it was all removed to a place of better security.

Eumenes, after his overthrow, was obliged, for his preservation, to employ most of his time in changing the place of his retreat; and he was daily admired for the tranquillity and steadiness of mind he discovered, in the wandering life to which he was reduced; for, as Plutarch observes, adversity alone can place greatness of soul in its full point of light, and render the real merit of mankind conspicuous; whereas prosperity frequently casts a veil of false grandeur over real meanness and imperfections. Eumenes, having at last disbanded most of his remaining troops, shut himself up, with five hundred men, who were determined to share his fate, in the castle of Nora, a place of extraordinary strength on the frontiers of Cappadocia and Lycaonia, where he sustained a siege of twelve months.

He was soon sensible, that nothing incommoded his garrison so much as the small space they possessed, being shut up in little close houses, and on a tract of ground whose whole circuit did not exceed two hundred fathoms, where they could neither walk nor perform the least exercise; and where their horses, having scarce any room for motion, became sluggish, and incapable of service. To remedy this inconvenience, he had recourse to the following expedient. He

^d Plut. in Eumen. p. 588.—590.

^e Cor. Nep. in Eumen. c. 5.

converted the largest house in the place, the extent of which did not exceed twenty-one feet, into a kind of hall for exercise. This he consigned to the men, and ordered them to walk in it very gently at first; they were afterwards to double their pace by degrees, and at last were to exert the most vigorous motions. He then took the following method for the horses. He suspended them, one after another, in strong slings, which were disposed under their breasts, and from thence inserted into rings fastened to the roofs of the stable; after which he caused them to be raised into the air by the aid of pulleys, and in such a manner, that only their hinder feet rested on the ground, while the extreme parts of the hoofs of their fore-feet could hardly touch it. In this condition, the grooms lashed them severely with their whips, which tormented the horses to such a degree, and forced them into such violent agitations, that their bodies were all covered with sweat and foam. After this exercise, which was finely calculated to strengthen and keep them in wind, and likewise to render their limbs supple and pliant, their barley was given to them very clean, and winnowed from all the chaff, that they might eat it the sooner, and with less difficulty. The abilities of a good general extend to every thing about him, and are seen in the minutest particulars.

^f The siege, or more properly the blockade of Nora, did not prevent Antigonus from undertaking a new expedition into Pisidia, against Alcetas and Attalus; the last of whom was taken prisoner in a battle, and the other slain by treachery in the place to which he retired.

^g During these transactions in Asia, Ptolemy, seeing of what importance Syria, Phœnicia, and Judea were, as well for covering Egypt, as for making proper dispositions on that side for the invasion of Cyprus, which he had then in view, determined to make himself master of those provinces which were governed by Laomedon. With this intention he sent Nicanor into Syria with a body of land-forces, while he himself set out with a fleet to attack the coasts. Nicanor defeated Laomedon, and took him prisoner; in consequence of which he soon conquered the inland country. Ptolemy had the same advantages on the coasts; by which means he became absolute master of those provinces. The princes in alliance with him were alarmed at the rapidity of these conquests; but Antipater was at too great a distance, being then in Ma-

^f A. M. 3685. Ant. J. C. 319.

^g Diod. p. 621, 622.

cedonia; and Antigonus was too much employed against Eumenes, to oppose these great accessions to the power of Ptolemy, who gave them no little jealousy.

^h After the defeat of Laomedon, the Jews were the only people who made any resistance. They were duly sensible of the obligation they were under, by the oath they had taken to their governor, and were determined to continue faithful to him. Ptolemy advanced into Judea, and formed the siege of Jerusalem. This city was so strong by its advantageous situation, in conjunction with the works of art, that it would have sustained a long siege, had it not been for the religious fear the Jews entertained of violating the law, by which they were prohibited to defend themselves on the Sabbath. Ptolemy was not long unacquainted with this particular; and, in order to improve the great advantage it gave him, he chose that day for the general assault; and as no individual among the Jews would presume to defend himself, the city was taken without any difficulty.

Ptolemy at first treated Jerusalem and Judea with great severity, for he carried above an hundred thousand of the inhabitants captive into Egypt; but when he afterwards considered the steadiness with which they had persisted in the fidelity they had sworn to their governors, on this, and a variety of other occasions, he was convinced that this quality rendered them more worthy of his confidence; and he accordingly chose thirty thousand of the most distinguished among them, who were most capable of serving him, and appointed them to guard the most important places in his dominions.

ⁱ Much about this time Antipater fell sick in Macedonia. The Athenians were greatly dissatisfied with the garrison he had left in their city, and had frequently pressed Phocion to go to the court of that prince, and solicit him to recall those troops; but he always declined that commission, either through a despair of not succeeding, or else because he was conscious, that the fear of his garrison was the best expedient for keeping them within the bounds of their duty. Demades, who was not so difficult to be prevailed upon, undertook the commission with pleasure, and immediately set out with his son for Macedonia. But his arrival in that country could not have happened at a more fatal conjuncture for himself. Antipater, as I have already intimated, was seized with a se-

^h Joseph. Antiq. l. xii. c. 1.
Plut. in Phoc. p. 755.

ⁱ Diod. l. xviii. p. 625, 626.

vere illness ; and his son Cassander, who was absolute master of all affairs, had lately intercepted a letter which Demades had written to Antigonus in Asia, pressing him to come as soon as possible, and make himself master of Greece and Macedonia ; " which," as he expressed himself, " were held together only by a thread, and even an old rotten thread," ridiculing Antipater by those expressions. As soon as Cassander saw them appear at court, he caused them both to be arrested ; and he himself seizing the son first, stabbed him before the face of his father, and at so little distance from him, that he was covered with his blood. After which he reproached him with his perfidy and ingratitude, and when he had loaded him with insults, he also killed him with his own hands on the dead body of his son. It was impossible that such a barbarous proceeding should not be detested ; but mankind are not much disposed to pity such a wretch as Demades, who had dictated the decree by which Demosthenes and Hyperides were condemned to die.

The indisposition of Antipater proved fatal to him, and his last attention was employed in filling up the two great stations which he enjoyed. His son Cassander was very desirous of them, and expected to have them conferred upon him ; notwithstanding which, Antipater bestowed the regency of the kingdom, and the government of Macedonia, on Polysperchon, the most ancient of all the surviving captains of Alexander, and thought it sufficient to associate Cassander with him in those employments.

I am at a loss to determine, whether any instance of human conduct was ever greater, or more to be admired than this which I have now related in a few words ; nothing certainly could be more extraordinary, and history affords us few instances of the same nature. It was necessary to appoint a governor over Macedonia, and a regent of the empire. Antipater, who knew the importance of those stations, was persuaded that his own glory and reputation, and what was still more prevalent with him, the interest of the state, and the preservation of the Macedonian monarchy, obliged him to nominate a man of authority, and one respected for his age, experience, and past services. He had a son who was not void of merit ; how rare and difficult therefore, but at the same time how amiable and glorious was it to select, on such an occasion, no man but the most deserving, and best qualified to serve the public effectually ; to extinguish the voice of nature, turn a deaf ear to all her remonstrances, and not suffer the

judgement to be seduced by the impressions of paternal affection ; in a word, to continue so much master of one's penetration, as to render justice on the merit of a stranger, and openly prefer it to that of a son, and sacrifice all the interest of one's own family to the public welfare ! History has transmitted to us an expression of the emperor Galba, which will do honour to his memory throughout all ages. "Augustus *," said he, " chose a successor out of his own family ; and I one " from the whole empire."

Cassander was extremely enraged at the affront, which, as he pretended, had been offered him by this choice ; and though, in that respect, like the generality of men who are apt to look upon the employments they possess as hereditary, and with this flattering persuasion, that the state is of no consequence in comparison with themselves : never examining what is requisite to the posts they enjoy, or whether they have competent abilities to sustain them, and considering only whether these posts are agreeable to their fortune. Cassander not being able to digest his father's preferring a stranger before him, endeavoured to form a party against the new regent. He also secured to himself all the places he could in the government of that officer, as well in Greece as in Macedonia, and proposed nothing less than to divest him of the whole.

To this effect, he endeavoured to engage Ptolemy and Antigonus in his party ; and they readily espoused it with the same views, and from the same motives. It was equally their interest to destroy this new regent, as well as the regency itself, which always kept them in apprehensions, and reminded them of their state of dependency. They likewise imagined, that it secretly reproached them for aspiring at sovereignty, while it cherished the rights of the two pupils ; and left the governors in a situation of uncertainty, in consequence of which they were perpetually in fear of being divested of their power. Both the one and the other believed it would be easy for them to succeed in their designs, if the Macedonians were once engaged at home in a civil war.

The death of Antipater had rendered Antigonus the most powerful of all the captains of Alexander. His authority was absolute in all the provinces of Asia Minor, in conjunction with the title of Generalissimo, and an army of seventy thou-

^k Diod. p. 630.

* Augustus in domo successorem quæsivit ; ego in republica.—*Tacit. Hist. l. i. a 15.*

sand men, and thirty elephants, which no power in the empire was at that time capable of resisting. It cannot, therefore, be thought surprising, that this superiority should inspire him with the design of engrossing the whole monarchy of the Macedonians; and in order to succeed in that attempt, he began with making a reformation in all the governments of the provinces within his jurisdiction, displacing all those persons whom he suspected, and substituting his creatures in their room. In the conduct of this scheme, he removed Ari-dæus from the government of Lesser Phrygia and the Hellespont, and Clytus from that of Lydia.

ⁱ Polysperchon neglected nothing, on his part, that was necessary to strengthen his interest; and thought it adviseable to recall Olympias, who had retired into Epirus under the regency of Antipater, with the offer of sharing his authority with her. This princess dispatched a courier to Eumenes, to consult him on the proposal she had received; and he advised her to wait some time, in order to see what turn affairs would take; adding, that if she determined to return to Macedonia, he would recommend it to her in particular, to forget all the injuries she thought she had received; that it also would be her interest to govern with moderation, and to make others sensible of her authority by benefactions, and not by severity. As to all other particulars, he promised an inviolable attachment to herself and the royal family. Olympias did not conform to these judicious counsels in any respect, but set out as soon as possible for Macedonia; where, upon her arrival, she consulted nothing but her passions, and her insatiable desire of dominion and revenge.

Polysperchon, who had many enemies upon his hands, endeavoured to secure Greece, of which he foresaw Cassander would attempt to make himself master. He also took measures with relation to other parts of the empire, as will appear by the sequel.

^m In order to engage the Greeks in his interest, he issued a decree, by which he recalled the exiles, and reinstated all the cities in their ancient privileges. He acquainted the Athenians in particular, by letters, that the king had re-established their democracy and ancient form of government, by which the Athenians were admitted without distinction into public offices. This was a strain of policy calculated to ensnare Phocion; for Polysperchon intending to make himself master

ⁱ *Diod. l. xviii. p. 626, 631. Cor. Nep. in Eumen. c. 6.*

^m *Diod. p. 631, 632.*

of Athens, as was evident in a short time, he despaired of succeeding in that design, unless he could find some expedient to procure the banishment of Phocion, who had favoured and introduced oligarchy under Antipater; and he was therefore certain of accomplishing this scheme, as soon as those who had been excluded from the government should be reinstated in their ancient rights.

SECTION V.

PHOCION'S DEATH. OLYMPIAS CAUSES ARIDÆUS TO BE SLAIN.
SHE IS MURDERED. EUMENES PUT TO DEATH.

CASSANDERⁿ, before the death of Antipater was known at Athens, had sent Nicanor thither, to succeed Menyllus in the government of the fortress of Munychia, soon after which he had made himself master of Piræus. Phocion, who placed too much confidence in the probity and fidelity of Nicanor, had contracted a strict intimacy, and conversed frequently with him, which caused the people to suspect him more than ever.

In this conjuncture, Alexander, the son of Polysperchon, arrived with a great body of troops, under pretext of succouring the city against Nicanor, but in reality to seize it into his own power, if possible, in consequence of the divisions which then reigned within it. He there held a tumultuous assembly, in which Phocion was divested of his employment of general; while Demetrius Phalereus, with several other citizens, who were apprehensive of the same fate, immediately retired from the city. Phocion, who had the grief to see himself accused of treason, took sanctuary with Polysperchon, who sent him back to be tried by the people. An assembly was immediately convoked on that occasion, from which neither slaves, strangers, nor any infamous persons whatever, were excluded. This proceeding was contrary to all the established rules, notwithstanding which, Phocion, and the other prisoners, were presented to the people. Most persons of any merit in the assembly, cast down their eyes to the earth at this spectacle, and, covering their heads, wept abundantly. One among them having the courage to move, that the slaves and strangers might be ordered to withdraw, was immediately opposed by the populace, who cried out, that they ought rather to stone those advocates for oligarchy

ⁿ Diod. l. xviii. p. 638.—642.

and enemies of the people. Phocion frequently attempted to plead his own cause, and vindicate his conduct, but was always interrupted. It was customary at Athens, for the person accused to declare, before sentence passed against him, what punishment he ought to suffer. Phocion answered aloud, that he condemned himself to die, but desired the assembly to spare the rest. Upon this the suffrages were demanded, and they were unanimously sentenced to suffer death, previous to which they were conveyed to the dungeon. Demetrius Phalereus, and some others, though absent, were included in the same condemnation. The companions of Phocion were so affected by the sorrows of their relations and friends, who came to embrace them in the streets, with the melancholy tender of the last farewell, that they proceeded on their way, lamenting their unhappy fate in a flood of tears; but Phocion still retained the same air and countenance as he had formerly shown, when he quitted the assembly to take upon him the command of armies, and when the Athenians attended him in crowds to his own house with the voice of praises and acclamations.

One of the populace, more insolent than the rest, advanced up to him, and spit in his face. Phocion only turned to the magistrates, and said, "Will nobody hinder this man from 'acting so unworthily?'" When he arrived at the prison, one of his friends having asked him if he had any message to send to his son? "Yes, certainly," replied he, "it is to de- 'sire, that he would never remember the injustice of the 'Athenians." When he had uttered these words, he took the hemlock, and died.

On that day there was also a public procession, and as it passed before the prison, some of the persons who composed it took the crowns from their heads; others turned their eyes to the gates of the prison, and burst into tears; and all who had any remains of humanity and religion, and whose souls were not entirely depraved and blinded by rage or envy, acknowledged it to be an instance of unnatural barbarity, as well as a great impiety, with regard to the city, not to have abstained, on such a solemn day, from the infliction of death on a citizen so universally esteemed, and whose admirable virtues had procured him the appellation of The Good *.

To punish the greatest virtues as the most flagitious crimes, and to repay the best of services with the most inhuman treat-

* *Oh integritatem ritæ Bonus est appellatus!—Cor. Nep.*

ment, is a guilt condemned in all places, but especially in Athens *, where ingratitude was punishable by the law. The regulations of her sage legislator still subsisted at that time, but they were wrested by the condemnation of her citizens, and only became an evidence, how much that people were degenerated in their manners.

The enemies of Phocion, not satisfied with the punishment they had caused him to suffer, and believing some particulars were still wanting to complete their triumph, obtained an order from the people, that his body should be carried out of the dominions of Attica, and that none of the Athenians should contribute the least quantity of wood to honour his funeral pile; these last offices were therefore rendered to him in the territories of Megara. A lady of the country, who accidentally assisted at his funeral with her servants, caused a cenotaph, or vacant tomb, to be erected to his memory on the same spot; and collecting into her robe the bones of that great man, which she had carefully gathered up, she conveyed them into her house by night, and buried them under her hearth with these expressions: "Dear and sacred hearth, I here confide to thee, and deposit in thy bosom, these precious remains of a worthy man. Preserve them with fidelity, in order to restore them hereafter to the monument of his ancestors, when the Athenians shall become wiser than they are at present."

Though it may possibly be thought, that a variety of irregular, tumultuous, unjust, and cruel sentences, denounced in Athens against virtuous citizens at different times, might have prepared us for this last; it will, however, be always thought surprising, that a whole people, of whom one naturally conceives a noble idea, after such a series of great actions, should be capable of such a strange perversity. But it ought to be remembered, that the dregs of a vile populace, entirely void of honour, probity, and morals, reigned then at Athens. And there is sufficient foundation for the sentiments of Plato and Plutarch, who declare, that the people, when they are either destitute of guides, or no longer listen to their admonitions, and when they have thrown off the reins by which they once

* Quid obest quin publica dementia sit existimanda, summo consensu maximas virtutes quasi gravissima delicta punire, beneficiaque injuriis rependere? Quod cum ubique, tum præcipue Athenis intolerabile videri debet, in qua urbe adversus ingratos actio constituta est.—Quantum ergo reprehensionem merentur, qui cum acquissima jura sed iniquissima habebant ingenia, moribus suis, quam legibus uti maluerint? —Val. Max. L v. c. 3.

were checked, and are entirely abandoned to their impetuosity and caprice, ought to be considered as a blind, untractable, and cruel monster, ready to launch in a moment into the most fatal and opposite extremes, and infinitely more formidable than the most inhuman tyrants. What can be expected from such a tribunal? When people resolve to be guided by nothing but mere passion, to have no regard to decorum, and to run headlong into an open violation of all laws, the best, the justest, and most innocent of mankind, will sink under an implacable and prevailing cabal. This Socrates experienced almost an hundred years before Phocion perished by the same fate.

This last was one of the greatest men that Greece ever produced, in whose person every kind of merit was united. He had been educated in the school of Plato and Xenocrates, and formed his manners upon the most perfect plan of Pagan virtue, to which his conduct was always conformable.

It would be difficult for any person to carry disinterest higher than this extraordinary man; which appeared from the extreme poverty in which he died, after the many great offices he had filled. How many opportunities of acquiring riches has a general always at the head of armies, who acts against rich and opulent enemies, sometimes in countries abounding with all things, and which seem to invite the plunderer! But Phocion would have thought it infamous, had he returned from his campaigns laden with any acquisition, but the glory of his exalted actions, and the grateful benedictions of the people he had spared.

This excellent person, amidst all the severity which rendered him in some measure intractable when the interests of the republic were concerned, had so much natural softness and humanity, that his enemies themselves always found him disposed to assist them. It might even have been said, that he was a composition of two natures, whose qualities were entirely opposite to each other in appearance. When he acted as a public man, he armed himself with fortitude, and steadiness, and zeal; he could sometimes assume the air of a rigid indignation, and was inflexible in supporting discipline in its utmost strictness. If, on the other hand, he appeared in a private capacity, his conduct was a perpetual display of mildness and affability, condescension and patience, and was graced with all the virtues that can render the commerce of life agreeable. It was no inconsiderable merit, and especially in a military man, to be capable of uniting two such different

characters in such a manner, that as the severity which was necessary for the preservation of good order, was never seen to degenerate into the rigour that creates aversion in others; so the gentleness and complacency of his disposition never sunk into that softness and indifference which occasions contempt.

He has been greatly applauded for reforming the modern custom of his country, which made war and policy two different professions; and also for restoring the manner of governing of Pericles and Aristides, by uniting each of those talents in himself.

As he was persuaded, that eloquence was essential to a statesman, and especially in a republican government, he applied himself to the attainment of it with great assiduity and success. His was concise, solid, full of force and sense, and close to the point in question. He thought it beneath a statesman to use a poignant and satiric style, and his only answer to those who employed such language against him, was silence and patience. ^o An orator having once interrupted him with many injurious expressions, he suffered him to continue in that strain as long as he pleased, and then resumed his own discourse with as much coolness as if he had heard nothing.

It was highly glorious for Phocion, that he was forty-five times elected a general by a people to whose caprice he was so little inclinable to accommodate his conduct; and it is remarkable that these elections always happened when he was absent, without any previous solicitations on his part. His wife was sufficiently sensible how much this was for his glory; and one day, when an Ionian lady of considerable rank, who lodged in her house, showed her, with an air of ostentation and pleasure, her ornaments of gold, with a variety of jewels and bracelets, she answered her with a modest tone, “ For “ my part, I have no ornament but Phocion, who, for these “ twenty years, has always been elected general of the Athe- “ nians.”

His regular and frugal life contributed not a little to the vigorous and healthy old age he enjoyed. When he was in his eightieth year, he commanded the forces, and sustained all the fatigues of war with the vivacity of a young officer.

One of the great principles in the politics of Phocion was, that peace ought always to be the aim of every wise govern-

^o Plut. de Ger. Rep. p. 810.

ment; and with this view, he was a constant opposer of all wars that were either imprudent or unnecessary. He was even apprehensive of those that were most just and expedient; because he was sensible, that every war weakened and impoverished a state, even amidst a series of the greatest victories, and that wherever the advantage might be at the commencement of it, there was never any certainty of terminating it, without experiencing the most tragical vicissitudes of fortune. The interest of the public never gave way with him to any domestic views; he constantly refused to solicit or act in favour of his son-in-law Charicles, who was summoned before the republic to account for the sums he had received from Harpalus; and he then addressed himself to him with this admirable expression, “ I have made you my son-in-law, but ‘only for what is honest and honourable.’” It must indeed be acknowledged, that men of this character seem very incommodious and insupportable in the common transactions of life; they are always starting difficulties *, when any affair is proposed to them; and never perform any good offices with entire ease and grace. We must always deliberate, whether what we request of such persons be just or not. Their friends and relations have as little ascendant over them as utter strangers; and they always oppose, either their conscience, or some particular duties, to ancient friendship, affinity, or the advantage of their families. To this height of delicacy did Phocion carry the Pagan probity.

One may justly apply to him what Tacitus said of a celebrated Roman, I mean Helvidius Priscus†. Phocion, who had as solid a genius as that person, applied himself at first to philosophy, not to cover his indolence with the pompous title of a sage, but to qualify himself for entering upon the conduct of affairs with more vigour and resolution against all unexpected accidents. He concurred in opinion with those who acknowledged no other good or evil than virtue and vice, and who ranked all externals, as fortune, power, nobility, in the

* Hac prima lex in amicitia sanciatur, ut neque rogenus res turpes, nec facilius rogati. Turpis enim excusatio est, et minime accipienda, cum in ceteris peccatis, tum si quis contra rempublicam se amici causa fecisse fateatur.—Cic. de Amicit. n. 40.

† Ingenium illustrè altioribus studiis juvenis admodum dedit, non ut nomine magnifico segne otium velaret, sed quo firmiter adversus rempublicam capesseret. Doctores sapientiae secutus est, qui sola bona quæ honesta, mala tantum quæ turpia, potentiam, nobilitatem, ceteraque extra animum, neque bonis neque malis annumerant.—Civis, senator, maritus, amicus cunctis, vita officiis æquabilis; opum contemptor, recti pervicax, constans adversus metus.—Facit. Hist. l. iv. c. 5.

class of indifferent things. He was a firm friend, a tender husband, a good senator, a worthy citizen, and discharged all the offices of civil life with equal merit. He preserved a steadiness of mind in prosperity that resembled stiffness and severity, and despised death as much as riches.

These are part of the great qualities of Phocion, who merited an happier end ; and they were placed in their most amiable light by his death. The constancy of mind, the mildness of disposition, and the forgetfulness of wrongs, conspicuous in his conduct on that occasion, are above all his other praises, and infinitely enhance their lustre, especially as we shall see nothing comparable to him from henceforth in the Grecian history.

His infatuated and ungrateful country was not sensible of their unworthy proceeding till some time after his death. The Athenians then erected a statue of brass to his memory, and honourably interred his bones at the public expence. His accusers also suffered a punishment suitable to their desert ; but did not his judges themselves deserve to be treated with greater severity than them ? They punished their own crime in others, and thought themselves acquitted by a brazen statue. They were even ready to relapse into the same injustice against others who were equally innocent, whom they condemned during their lives, and had never the equity to acquit till after their death.

Cassander was careful to improve the disorder that reigned in Athens, and entered the Piræus with a fleet of thirty-five vessels which he had received from Antigonus. The Athenians, when they beheld themselves destitute of all succours, unanimously resolved to send deputies to Cassander, in order to know the conditions on which they might treat of a peace ; and it was mutually agreed, that the Athenians should continue masters of the city, with its territories, and likewise of the revenues and ships. But they stipulated that the citadel should remain in the power of Cassander, till he had ended the war with the kings. And as to what related to the affairs of the republic, it was agreed, that those whose income amounted to ten minæ, or a thousand drachmæ, should have a share in the government, which was a less sum by half than that which was the qualification for public employments when Antipater made himself master of Athens. In a word, the inhabitants of that city permitted Cassander to chuse what

q Diod. l. xviii. p. 642.

citizen he pleased to govern the republic, and Demetrius Phalereus was elected to that dignity about the close of the third year of the 105th Olympiad. The ten years government, therefore, which Diodorus and Diogenes have assigned Demetrius, is to be computed from the beginning of the following year.

He governed the republic in peace; he constantly treated his fellow-citizens with all imaginable mildness and humanity; and historians acknowledge that the government was never better regulated than under Cassander. This prince seemed inclined to tyranny, but the Athenians were not sensible of its effects. And though Demetrius, whom he had constituted chief of the republic, was invested with a kind of sovereign power, yet, instead of abolishing the democracy, he may rather be said to have re-established it. He acted in such a manner that the people scarce perceived that he was master. As he united in his person the politician and the man of letters, his soft and persuasive eloquence demonstrated the truth of an expression he frequently used,—that discourse had as much power in a government as arms in war. His abilities in political affairs were equally conspicuous*; for he produced speculative philosophy from the shade and inactivity of the schools, exhibited her in full light, and knew how to familiarize her precepts with the most tumultuous affairs. It would have been difficult, therefore, to have found a person capable of excelling like him in the art of government, and the study of the sciences.

He acquired, during these ten years of his government, that reputation which caused him to be considered as one of the greatest men Athens has produced. He augmented the revenues of the republic, and adorned the city with noble structures; he was likewise industrious to diminish luxury, and all expences which tended to the promotion of pride. For which reason he disapproved of those that were laid out in theatres†, porticoes, and new temples; and openly censured Pericles, for having bestowed such a prodigious sum of money on the

* Mirabiliter doctrinam ex umbraculis cruditorum otioque, non modo in solem atque pulverem, sed in ipsum discrimen aciemque perduxit.—Qui utraque re excelleret, ut et doctrinæ studiis, et regenda civitate princeps esset, quis facile præter hunc inveniri potest?—Cic. l. iii. de Leg. n. 15.

† Theatra, porticus, nova templa, verecundius reprehendo propter Pompeium; sed doctissimi improbant—ut Phalereus Demetrius, qui Periclem, principem Græciæ, vituperabat quod tantam pecuniam in præclara illa Propylæa coniecerit.—Cic. l. ii. de Offic. n. 60.

magnificent porticoes of the temple of Pallas, called ^q Propylaea. But in all public feasts which had been consecrated by antiquity, or when the people were inclinable to be expensive in the celebration of any sacred solemnities, he permitted them to use their riches as they pleased.

^r The expence was excessive at the death of great persons, and their sepulchres were as sumptuous and magnificent as those of the Romans in the age of Cicero. Demetrius made a law to abolish this abuse which had passed into a custom, and inflicted penalties on those who disobeyed it. He also ordered the ceremonials of funerals to be performed by night, and none were permitted to place any other ornament on tombs, but a column three cubits high, or a plain table, "mensam;" and he appointed a particular magistrate to enforce the observation of this law.

^s He likewise made laws for the regulation of manners, and commanded young persons to testify respect for their parents at home; and in the city to those whom they met in their way, and to themselves when they were alone.

^t The poor citizens were likewise the objects of his attention. There were at that time in Athens, some of the descendants of Aristides, that Athenian general, who, after he had possessed the greatest offices in the state, and governed the affairs of the treasury for a considerable time, died so poor, that the public was obliged to defray the charges of his funeral. Demetrius took care of those descendants who were poor, and assigned them a daily sum for their subsistence.

^u Such, says Ælian, was the government of Demetrius Phalereus, till the spirit of envy, so natural to the Athenians, obliged him to quit the city, in the manner we shall soon relate.

The advantageons testimonials rendered by ancient authors of the greatest repute, not only of his extraordinay talents and ability in the art of government, but likewise his virtue, and the wisdom of his conduct, is a plain refutation of all that has been advanced by Athenæus, on the authority of the historian Duris, with relation to the irregularity of his deportment; and strengthens the conjectures of M. Bonamy, who supposes, that Duris, or Athenæus, have imputed that to Demetrius Phalereus, which related only to Demetrius Poli-

^q Plut. in Praecept. Reip. Ger. p. 818.

^r Cic. de Leg. l. ii. n. 63.—66.

^s Diog. Laert.

^t Plut. in Vit. Arist. p. 535.

^u Ælian, l. iii. c. 17.

orcetes, the son of Antigonus, to whom Ælian ascribes the very particulars which Athenæus had cited from Duris. ^x The reader may have recourse to the dissertation of M. Bonamy, which has been very useful to me in the course of this work.

^y During the 105th Olympiad, Demetrius Phalereus caused the inhabitants of Attica to be numbered, and they amounted to twenty-one thousand ^z citizens, ten thousand ^a strangers, and ^{*} forty thousand ^b domestics.

^c We now return to Polysperchon. When he had received intelligence, that Cassander had made himself master of Athens, he immediately hastened to besiege him in that city; but as the siege took up a great length of time, he left part of his troops before the place, and advanced with the rest into Peloponnesus, to force the city of Megara to surrender. The inhabitants made a long and vigorous defence, which compelled Polysperchon to employ his attention and forces on those quarters to which he was called by more pressing necessities. He dispatched Clitus to the Hellespont, with orders to prevent the enemy's troops from passing out of Asia into Europe. Nicanor set sail, at the same time, from the port of Athens, in order to attack him, but was himself defeated near Byzantium. Antigonus having advanced in a very seasonable juncture, made himself amends for this loss, beat Clitus, and took all his fleet, except the vessel of Clitus, which escaped with great difficulty.

^d Antigonus was most embarrassed in his endeavours to reduce Eumenes, whose valour, wisdom, and great ability in the art of war, were more formidable to him than all the rest, though he had besieged and blocked him up for twelve months in the castle of Nora. He therefore made a second attempt to engage him in his interest, for he had taken measures to that effect before he formed that siege. He accordingly consigned this commission to Jerom of Cardia, his countryman, and a famous historian of that time †, who was

^x Tom. VIII. des Mémoires de l' Acad. des Belles Lettres.

^y Athen. l. vi. p. 272.

^z Αθηναῖς.

^a μετόχοις.

^b δικῆταις.

^c Diod. l. xviii. p. 642.—646.

^d Plut. in Eumen. p. 590.

* The words in the original are *μυριάς τισσαράκοντα*, forty myriads, which are equal to four hundred thousand, which is an evident mistake, and it undoubtedly ought to be read *τισσαράς*, four myriads, which amount to forty thousand.

† He compiled the history of those who divided the dominions of Alexander among themselves, and it likewise comprehended the history of their successors.

authorized by him to make overtures of accommodation to his adversary. Eumenes conducted this negotiation with so much dexterity and address, that he extricated himself from the siege, at the very juncture wherein he was reduced to the last extremities, and without entering into any particular engagements with Antigonus. For the latter having inserted in the oath, which Eumenes was to swear in consequence of this accommodation, that he would consider all those as his friends and enemies, who should prove such to Antigonus; Eumenes changed that article, and swore that he would regard all those as his friends and enemies, who should be such to Olympias and the kings, as well as to Antigonus. He then desired the Macedonians who assisted at the siege, to determine which of these two forms was best; and as they were guided by their affection to the royal family, they declared, without the least hesitation, for the form drawn up by Eumenes; upon which he swore to it, and the siege was immediately raised.

When Antigonus was informed of the manner in which this affair was concluded, he was so dissatisfied with it, that he refused to ratify the treaty, and gave orders for the siege to be instantly renewed. These orders, however, came too late, for as soon as Eumenes saw the enemy's forces were withdrawn from before the place, he quitted it without delay, with the remains of his troops, which amounted to five hundred men, and saved himself in Cappadocia, where he immediately assembled-two thousand of his veteran soldiers, and made all the necessary preparations for sustaining the war, which he foresaw would soon be revived against him.

The revolt of Antigonus from the kings having occasioned a great alarm, Polysperchon the regent dispatched to Eumenes, in the name of the kings, a commission, by which he was constituted captain-general of Asia Minor; others were likewise sent to Teutames and Antigenes, colonels of the Argyraspides, to join and serve under him against Antigonus. The necessary orders were also transmitted to those who had the care of the king's treasures, to pay him five hundred talents for the re-establishment of his own affairs, and likewise to furnish him with all the sums that would be necessary to defray the expence of the war. All these were accompanied with letters from Olympias.

^e Eumenes was very sensible that the accumulation of all

e A. M. 3686. Ant. J. C. 318. Diod. I. xviii. p. 635, 636, et 663. Plut. in Eumen. p. 591.—593. Cor. Nep. c. 7.

these honours on the head of a stranger, would infallibly excite a violent envy against him, and render him odious to the Macedonians ; but as he was incapable of acting to any effect without them, and since the good of the service itself made it necessary for him to employ all his efforts to gain them, he began with refusing the sums that were granted him for his own use, declaring that he had no occasion for them, because he was not intent on any particular advantage of his own, nor on any enterprise of that tendency. He was studious to treat every person about him, the officers, and even the soldiers, with an obliging civility, in order to extinguish as much as possible, or at least to weaken, by an engaging conduct, the jealousy to which his condition, as a stranger, afforded a plausible pretext, though he endeavoured not to draw it upon him by any conduct of his own.

But an impediment, still more invincible in appearance, threw him under a restraint, and created him very cruel quietudes. Antigenes and Teutames, who commanded the Argyraspides, thought it dishonourable to their nation to submit to a stranger, and refused to attend him in council. On the other hand, he could not, without derogating from the prerogatives of his post, comply with them in that point, and consent to such a degradation. An ingenious fiction disengaged him in this perplexity, and he had recourse to the aids of religion, or rather superstition, which has always a powerful influence over the minds of men, and seldom fails of accomplishing its effect. He assured them, “ That Alexander, arrayed in his royal robes, had appeared to him in his slumber, and shewn him a magnificent tent, in which a throne was erected, and that the monarch declared to him, that while they held their councils in that tent to deliberate on their affairs, he himself would always be present, seated on that throne ; from whence he would issue his orders to his captains, and that he would conduct them in the execution of all their designs and enterprises, provided they would always address themselves to him.” This discourse was sufficient, and the minds of all who heard it were wrought upon by the profound respect they entertained for the memory of that prince, in consequence of which they immediately ordered a splendid tent to be erected, and a throne placed in it, which was to be called the Throne of Alexander ; and on this were to be laid his diadem and crown, with his sceptre and arms ; that all the chiefs should resort thither every morning to offer sacrifices ; that their consultations should be

held near the throne, and that all orders should be received in the name of the king, as if he were still living, and taking care of his kingdom. Eumenes calmed the dispute by this expedient, which met with unanimous approbation. No one raised himself above the others ; but each competitor continued in the enjoyment of his privileges, till new events decided them in a more positive manner.

^f As Eumenes was sufficiently supplied with money, he soon raised a very considerable body of troops, and had an army of twenty thousand men, in the season of spring. These forces, with Eumenes at their head, were sufficient to spread terror among his enemies. Ptolemy sailed to the coasts of Cilicia, and employed all sorts of expedients to corrupt the Argyraspides. Antigonus, on his part, made the same attempts by the emissaries he had in his camp ; but neither the one nor the other could succeed in them, so much had Eumenes gained upon the minds of his soldiers, and so great was the confidence they reposed in him.

He advanced, with these affectionate troops, into Syria and Phoenicia, to recover those provinces, which Ptolemy had seized with the greatest injustice. The maritime force of Phoenicia, in conjunction with the fleet which the regent had already procured, would have rendered them absolute masters by sea, and they might likewise have been capable of transmitting all necessary succours to each other. Could Eumenes have succeeded in this design, it would have been a decisive blow ; but the fleet of Polysperchon having been entirely destroyed by the misconduct of Clitus, who commanded it, that misfortune rendered his project ineffectual. Antigonus, who had defeated him, marched by land, immediately after that victory, against Eumenes, with an army much more numerous than his own. Eumenes made a prudent retreat through Cœlosyria, after which he passed the Euphrates, and took up his winter-quarters at Carres in Mesopotamia.

^g During his continuance in those parts, he sent to Python governor of Media, and to Sèleucus, governor of Babylon, to press them to join him with their forces against Antigonus, and caused the orders of the kings to be shewn them, by which they were enjoined to comply with his demand. They answered, that they were ready to assist those monarchs ; but that, as to him in particular, they would have no transactions

^f *Diod. l. xviii. p. 636—638.*

^g *Diod. l. xix. p. 660, 661.*

with a man who had been declared a public enemy by the Macedonians. This was only a pretext, and they were actuated by a much more prevalent motive. If they had acknowledged the authority of Eumenes, and had obeyed him by advancing to him, and subjecting their troops to his command, they must also have acknowledged the sovereign power of the regent, as well as of those who were masters of the royal pupils, and made use of their names to render their own power more extensive. Python and Seleucus must, therefore, by inevitable consequence, have owned, that they held their governments only from those kings, and might be divested of them at their pleasure, and by virtue of the first order to that effect, which would have destroyed all their ambitious pretences with a single stroke.

Most of the officers of Alexander, who had shared the governments of the empire amongst themselves after his death, were solicitous to secure themselves the supreme power in their several provinces ; for which reason they had chosen a person of a mean capacity, and an infant, on whom they conferred the title of sovereign, in order to have sufficient time to establish their usurpations under a weak government. But all these measures would have been disconcerted, if they had allowed Eumenes an ascendant over them, with such an air of superiority, as subjected them to his orders. He issued them, indeed, in the name of the kings ; but this was a circumstance they were desirous of evading, and at the same time it created him so many enemies and obstructions. They were also apprehensive of the merit and superior genius of Eumenes, who was capable of the greatest and most difficult enterprises. It is certain, that of all the captains of Alexander, he had the greatest share of wisdom and bravery, and was also the most steady in his resolutions ; for he never broke his engagement with any of those commanders, though they did not observe the same fidelity with respect to him.

Eumenes marched from Babylonia the following spring, and was in danger of losing his army by a stratagem of Seleucus. The troops were encamped in a plain near the Euphrates, and Seleucus, by cutting the bank from that river, laid all the neighbouring country under water. Eumenes, however, was so expeditious as to gain an eminence with his troops, and found means, the next day, to drain off the inundation so effectually, that he pursued his march almost without sustaining any loss.

^h Seleucus was then reduced to the necessity of making a truce with him, and of granting him a peaceable passage through the territories of his province, in order to arrive at Susa, where he disposed his troops into quarters of refreshment, while he solicited all the governors of the provinces in Upper Asia for succours. He had before notified to them the order of the kings, and those whom he had charged with that commission, found them all assembled, at the close of a war they had undertaken, in concert, against Pithon the governor of Media. This Pithon having pursued the very same measures in the Upper Asia, which Antigonus had formed in the Lower, had caused Philotas to suffer death, and made himself master of his government. He would likewise have attempted to treat the rest in the same manner, if they had not opposed him by this confederacy, which the common interest had formed against him. Peucestes, governor of the province of Persia, had the command in chief conferred upon him, and defeated Pithon, drove him out of Media, and obliged him to go to Babylon to implore the protection of Seleucus. All the confederates were still in the camp after this victory, when the deputies from Eumenes arrived, and they immediately marched from Susa to join him; not that they were really devoted to the royal party, but because they were more apprehensive than ever of being subjected to the victorious Antigonus, who was then at the head of a powerful army, and either divested of their employments all such governors as he suspected, or reduced them to the state of mere officers, liable to be removed and punished at his pleasure.

They joined Eumenes, therefore, with all their forces, which composed an army of above twenty thousand men. With this reinforcement, he saw himself not only in a condition to oppose Antigonus, who was then advancing to him, but still much superior in the number of his troops. The season was far advanced, when Antigonus arrived at the banks of the Tigris, and was obliged to take winter-quarters in Mesopotamiaⁱ; where, with Seleucus and Pithon, who were then of his party, he concerted measures for the operations of the next campaign.

^k During these transactions, Macedonia was the scene of a great revolution. Olympias, the mother of Alexander the Great, whom Polysperchon had recalled, had made herself

^h *Diod. l. xix. p. 662.—664. Plut. in Eumen.*

ⁱ *A. M. 3687. Ant. J. C. 317.*

^k *Diod. l. xix. p. 659. 660.*

absolute mistress of affairs, and caused Aridæus, or Philip, who had enjoyed the title of king for six years and four months, to be put to death. Eurydice his consort sustained the same fate ; for Olympias sent her a dagger, a cord, and a bowl of poison, and only allowed her the liberty of choosing her death. She accordingly gave the preference to the cord, and then strangled herself, after she had uttered a thousand imprecations against her enemy and murderer. Nicanor, the brother of Cassander, and an hundred of the principal friends of this latter, likewise suffered death.

These repeated barbarities did not long remain unpunished. Olympias had retired to Pydna, with the young king Alexander and his mother Roxana, with Thessalonica, the sister of Alexander the Great, and Decidamia, the daughter of Æacides king of Epirus, and sister of Pyrrhus. Cassander did not lose any time, but advanced thither, and besieged them by sea and land. Æacides prepared to assist the princesses, and was already upon his march ; but the greatest part of his forces, who were averse to that expedition, revolted from the king, and condemned him to banishment, when they returned to Epirus. They likewise massacred all his friends ; and Pyrrhus, the son of Æacides, who was then but an infant, would have suffered the same fate, if a set of faithful domestics had not happily withdrawn him from their rage. Epirus then declared in favour of Cassander, who sent Lysciscus thither to take upon him the government in his name. Olympias had then no recourse but only from Polysperchon, who was then in Perrhœbia, a small province on the confines of Ætolia, and was preparing to succour her ; but Cassander sent Callas, one of his generals, against him, who corrupted the greatest part of his troops, and obliged him to retire into Naxia, a city of Perrhœbia, where he besieged him. Olympias, who had supported all the miseries of famine with an invincible courage, having now lost all hopes of relief, was compelled to surrender at discretion.

Cassander, in order to destroy her in a manner that might give the least offence, prompted the relations of the principal officers, whom Olympias had caused to be slain during her regency, to accuse her in the assembly of the Macedonians, and to sue for vengeance for the cruelties she had committed. The request of these persons was granted ; and when they had all been heard, she was condemned to die, though absent, and no one interposed his good offices in her defence. After sentence of death had passed, Cassander proposed to her, by

some friends, to retire to Athens, promising to accommodate her with a galley to convey her thither, whenever she should be so disposed. His intention was to destroy her in her passage by sea, and to publish through all Macedonia, that the gods, amidst their displeasure at her horrible cruelties, had abandoned her to the mercy of the waves; for he was apprehensive of a retaliation from the Macedonians, and was therefore desirous of casting upon Providence all the odious circumstances of his own perfidy.

Olympias, whether she had been advertised of Cassander's design, or whether she was actuated by sentiments of grandeur, so natural to persons of her rank, imagined her presence alone could calm the storm, and answered, with an imperious air, that she was not a woman who would have recourse to flight, and insisted on pleading her own cause in the public assembly; adding, this was the least favour that could be granted a queen, or rather, that it was an act of justice, which could not be refused to persons of the lowest rank. Cassander had no inclination to consent to this demand, having reason to be apprehensive, that the remembrance of Philip and Alexander, for whom the Macedonians retained the utmost veneration, would create a sudden change in their resolutions; he therefore sent two hundred soldiers entirely devoted to his will, with orders to destroy her; but as resolute as they were in themselves, they were incapable of supporting the air of majesty which appeared in the eyes and aspect of that princess; and retired without executing their commission. It became necessary, therefore, to employ in this murder, the relations of those whom she had caused to suffer death; and they were transported at the opportunity of gratifying their vengeance in making their court to Cassander. Thus perished the famous Olympias, the daughter, the sister, the wife, and the mother of kings, and who really merited so tragical a period of her days, in consequence of all her crimes and cruelties; but it is impossible to see her perish in this manner, without detesting the wickedness of a prince who deprived her of life in so unworthy a manner.

¹ Cassander already beheld an assured passage to the Macedonian throne opened to his ambition; but he thought it incumbent on him to have recourse to other measures, in order to secure himself against the vicissitudes of time, the inconstancy of the Macedonians, and the jealousy of his competi-

¹ Diod. l. xix. p. 695.—697.

tors. Thessalonica, the sister of Alexander the Great, being qualified by her illustrious birth, and authority in Macedonia, to conciliate to him the friendship of the grandees, and people of that kingdom, he hoped, by espousing her, to attach them in a peculiar manner to himself, in consequence of the esteem and respect they testified for the royal family.

There was still one obstacle more to be surmounted, without which Cassander would have always been deemed an usurper, and a tyrant. The young prince Alexander, the son of Alexander the Great, by Roxana, was still living, and had been acknowledged king, and the lawful heir to the throne. It became necessary, therefore, to remove this prince and his mother out of the way. Cassander *, emboldened by the success of his former crime, was determined to commit a second, from whence he expected to derive all the fruit of his hopes. Prudence, however, made it necessary for him to sound the disposition of the Macedonians, with respect to the death of Olympias; for if they showed themselves insensible at the loss of that princess, he might be certain that the death of the young king and his mother would affect them as little. He therefore judged it expedient to proceed with caution, and advance by moderate steps to the execution of his scheme. In order to which, he began with causing Alexander and Roxana to be conducted to the castle of Amphipolis, by a good escort commanded by Glaucias, an officer entirely devoted to his interest. When they arrived at that fortress, they were divested of all regal honours, and treated rather like private persons, whom important motives of state made it necessary to secure.

He intended, by his next step, to make it evident, that he claimed sovereign power in Macedonia. With this view, and in order to render the memory of Olympias still more odious, he gave orders for performing with great magnificence the funeral obsequies of king Philip, or Aridaeus, and queen Eurydice his wife, who had been murdered by the directions of Olympias. He commanded the usage of such mourning as was customary in solemnities of that nature, and caused the royal remains to be deposited in the tombs appropriated to the sepulture of the Macedonian kings; affecting, by these exteriors of dissembled sorrow, to manifest his zeal for the royal family, at the same time that he was meditating the destruction of the young king.

* *Hand ignarus summa sclera incipi cum periculo, peragi cum præmio.*—*Tacit.*

Polysperchon, in consequence of the information he received of the death of Olympias, and the exaltation of Cassander to the throne of Macedonia, had sheltered himself in Naxia, a city of Perrhaebia, where he had sustained a siege, and from whence he retreated with a very inconsiderable body of troops, to pass into Thessaly, in order to join some forces of Aeacides: after which he advanced into Aetolia, where he was greatly respected. Cassander followed him closely, and marched his army into Boeotia, where the ancient inhabitants of Thebes were seen wandering from place to place, without any fixed habitation or retreat. He was touched with the calamitous condition of that city, which was once so powerful, and had been razed to its very foundations by the command of Alexander. After a period of twenty years, he endeavoured to reinstate it in its primitive splendour; the Athenians offered to rebuild part of the walls at their own expence, and several towns and cities of Italy, Sicily, and Greece, bestowed considerable sums on that occasion by voluntary contributions. By which means Thebes, in a short space of time, recovered its ancient opulence, and became even richer than ever, by the care and magnificence of Cassander, who was justly considered as the father and restorer of that city.

When he had given proper orders for the re-establishment of Thebes, he advanced into Peloponnesus, against Alexander the son of Polysperchon, and marched directly to Argos, which surrendered without resistance; upon which all the cities of the Messenians, except Ithome, followed that example. Alexander, terrified at the rapidity of his conquests, endeavoured to check them by a battle; but Cassander, who was much inferior to him in troops, was unwilling to hazard a battle, and thought it more adviseable to retire into Macedonia, after he had left good garrisons in the places he had taken.

^m As he knew the merit of Alexander, he endeavoured to disengage him from the party of Antigonus, and attach him to his own, by offering him the government of all Peloponnesus, with the command of the troops stationed in that country. An offer so advantageous was accepted by Alexander, without any hesitation; but he did not long enjoy it, having been unfortunately slain soon after, by some citizens of Sicyone, where he then resided, who had combined to destroy him. This conspiracy, however, did not produce the effects expect-

ed from it; for Cratesipolis, the wife of Alexander, whose heart was a composition of grandeur and fortitude, instead of manifesting any consternation at the sight of this fatal accident, and as she was beloved by the soldiers, and honoured by the officers, whom she had always obliged and served, repressed the insolence of the Sicyonians, and defeated them in a battle; after which she caused thirty of the most mutinous among them to be hung up; appeased all the troubles which had been excited by the seditious in the city, re-entered it in a victorious manner, and governed it with a wisdom that acquired her the admiration of all those who heard any mention of her conduct.

ⁿ Whilst Cassander was employing all his efforts to establish himself on the throne of Macedonia, Antigonus was concerting measures to rid himself of a dangerous enemy; and, having taken the field the ensuing spring, he advanced to Babylon, where he augmented his army with the troops he received from Pithon and Seleucus, and then passed the Tigris to attack Eumenes, who had neglected nothing on his part to give him a warm reception. He was much superior to Antigonus in the number of his troops, and yet more in the abilities of a great commander; though the other was far from being defective in those qualifications; for, next to Eumenes, he was undoubtedly the best general and ablest statesman of his time.

^o Eumenes had this misfortune, that his army being composed of different bodies of troops, with the governors of provinces at their head, each of them pretended to the command in chief. Eumenes not being a Macedonian, but a Thracian by birth, every one of the governors thought himself, for that reason, his superior. We may add to this, that the pomp, splendour, and magnificence affected by them, seemed to leave an infinite distance between him and them, who assumed the air of real Satrapæ. They imagined, in consequence of a mistaken and ill-timed ambition ^{*}, but very customary with great men, that to give sumptuous repasts, and add to them whatever may exalt pleasure and gratify sense, were part of the duties of a soldier of rank; and estimating their own merit by the largeness of their revenues and expences, they flattered themselves that they had acquired, by their means, an extra-

ⁿ A. M. 3688. Ant. J. C. 316.
Plut. in Eumen. p. 591, 592.

^o Diod. l. xix. p. 669.—672.

^{*} Non deerant qui ambitione stolida—luxuriosus apparatus conviviorum et irritamenta libidinum ut instrumenta belli mercarentur.—*Tacit.*

ordinary credit, and a great authority over the troops, and that the army had all the consideration and esteem for them imaginable.

P A circumstance happened at this time, which ought to have undeceived them. As the soldiers were marching in quest of the enemy, Eumenes, who was seized with a dangerous indisposition, was carried in a litter, at a considerable distance from the army, to be more remote from the noise, and that he might enjoy the refreshment of slumber, of which he had long been deprived. When they had made some advance, and began to perceive the enemy appear on the rising grounds, they halted on a sudden, and began to call for Eumenes. At the same time, they cast their bucklers on the ground, and declared to their officers, that they would not proceed on their march, till Eumenes came to command them. He accordingly came with all expedition, hastening the slaves who carried him, and opening the curtains on each side of his litter; he then stretched out his hands to the soldiers, and made them a declaration of his joy and gratitude. When the troops beheld him, they immediately saluted him in the Macedonian language, resumed the bucklers, clashed upon them with their pikes, and broke forth into loud acclamations of victory and defiance to their enemies, as if they desired only to see their general at their head.

When Antigonus received intelligence that Eumenes was ill, and caused himself to be carried in a litter, in the rear of the army, he advanced in hopes that his distemper would deliver his enemies into his hands; but when he came near enough to take a view of them, and beheld their cheerful aspects, the disposition of their army, and particularly the litter, which was carried from rank to rank, he burst into a loud vein of laughter, in his usual manner, and addressing himself to one of his officers—“Take notice,” said he, “of yonder litter; it is that which has drawn up those troops against us, and is now preparing to attack us.” And then, without losing a moment’s time, he caused a retreat to be sounded, and returned to his camp.

Plutarch remarks, that the Macedonians made it very evident, on this occasion, that they judged all the other Satrapæ exceedingly well qualified to give splendid entertainments, and dispose great feasts, but that they esteemed Eumenes alone capable of commanding an army with ability. This is

a solid and sensible reflection, and affords room for a variety of applications; and points out the false taste for glory, and the injudiciousness of those officers and commanders, who are only studious to distinguish themselves in the army by magnificent collations, and place their principal merit in surpassing others in luxury, and frequently in ruining themselves without thanks, by those ridiculous expences. I say without thanks, because nobody thinks himself obliged to them for their profusion, and they are always the worst servants of the state.

q The two armies having separated without any previous engagement, encamped at the distance of three furlongs from each other, with a river and several large pools of water between them; and as they sustained great inconveniences, because the whole country was eaten up, Antigonus sent ambassadors to the Satrapæ and Macedonians of the army of Eumenes, to prevail upon them to quit that general and join him, making them, at the same time, the most magnificent promises to induce their compliance. The Macedonians rejected his proposals, and dismissed the ambassadors with severe menaces, in case they should presume to make any such for the future. Eumenes, after having commended them for their fidelity, related to them this very ancient fable. "A lion entertaining a passion for a young virgin, demanded her one day in marriage of her father, whose answer was, that he esteemed this alliance a great honour to him, and was ready to present his daughter to him; but that his large nails and teeth made him apprehensive lest he should employ them a little too rudely upon her, if the least difference should arise between them with relation to their household affairs. The lion, who was passionately fond of the maid, immediately suffered his claws to be pared off, and his teeth to be drawn out. After which the father caught up a strong cudgel, and soon drove away his pretended son-in-law. This, continued Eumenes, is the aim of Antigonus. He amuses you with mighty promises, in order to make himself master of your forces; but when he has accomplished that design, he will soon make you sensible of his teeth and claws."

r A few days after this event, some deserters from the army of Antigonus having acquainted Eumenes, that that general was preparing to decamp the next night, about the

hour of nine or ten in the evening, Eumenes at first suspected, that his intention was to advance into the province of Gabene, which was a fertile country, capable of subsisting numerous armies, and very commodious and secure for the troops, by reason of the inundations and rivers with which it abounded, and therefore he resolved to prevent his execution of that design. With this view he prevailed, by sums of money, upon some foreign soldiers, to go like deserters into the camp of Antigonus, and acquaint him, that Eumenes intended to attack him the ensuing night. In the mean time he caused the baggage to be conveyed away, and ordered the troops to take some refreshment, and then march. Antigonus, upon this false intelligence, caused his troops to continue under arms, while Eumenes in the mean time advanced on his way. Antigonus was soon informed by couriers that he had decamped, and finding that he had been over-reached by his enemy, he still persisted in his first intention ; and having ordered his troops to strike their tents, he proceeded with so much expedition, that his march resembled a pursuit. But when he saw that it was impossible to advance with his whole army up to Eumenes, who had gained upon him at least six hours in his march, he left his infantry under the command of Pithon, and proceeded with the cavalry, on a full gallop, and came up by break of day with the rear-guard of the enemy, who were descending a hill. He then halted upon the top, and Eumenes, who discovered this body of cavalry, imagined it to be the whole army ; upon which he discontinued his march, and formed his troops in order of battle. By these means Antigonus played off a retaliation upon Eumenes, and amused him in his turn ; for he prevented the continuance of his march, and gave his own infantry sufficient time to come up.

* The two armies were then drawn up ; that of Eumenes consisted of thirty-five thousand foot, with above six thousand horse, and one hundred and fourteen elephants. That of Antigonus was composed of twenty-eight thousand foot, eight thousand five hundred horse, and sixty-five elephants. The battle was fought with great obstinacy till the night was far advanced, for the moon was then in the full, but the slaughter was not very considerable on either side. Antigonus lost three thousand seven hundred of his infantry, and fifty-four of his horse, and above four thousand of his men.

s Diod. l. xix. p. 673.—678.

were wounded. Eumenes lost five hundred and forty of his infantry, and a very inconsiderable number of his cavalry, and had above nine hundred wounded. The victory was really on his side; but as his troops, notwithstanding all his entreaties, would not return to the field of battle to carry off the dead bodies, which among the ancients was an evidence of victory, it was in consequence attributed to Antigonus, whose army appeared again in the field, and buried the dead. Eumenes sent a herald the next day, to desire leave to inter his slain; this was granted him, and he rendered them funeral honours with all possible magnificence.

^t A very singular dispute arose at the performance of this ceremony. The men happened to find among the slain, the body of an Indian officer, who had brought his two wives with him, one of whom he had but lately married. The law of the country, which is said to be still subsisting, would not allow a wife to survive her husband; and if she refused to be burned with him on the funeral pile, her character was for ever branded with infamy, and she was obliged to continue in a state of widowhood for the remainder of her days. She was even condemned to a kind of excommunication, as she was rendered incapable of assisting at any sacrifice, or other religious ceremony. This law, however, extended only to one wife; but, in the present instance, there were two; each of whom insisted on being preferred to the other. The eldest pleaded her superiority of years; to which the youngest replied, that the law excluded her rival because she was then pregnant; and the contest was accordingly determined in that manner. The first of them retired with a very dejected air, her eyes bathed in tears, and tearing her hair and habit, as if she had sustained some great calamity. The other, on the contrary, with a mien of joy and triumph, amidst a numerous retinue of her relations and friends, and arrayed in her richest ornaments, as on the day of her nuptials, advanced with a solemn pace, where the funeral ceremonies were to be performed. She there distributed all her jewels among her friends and relations; and, having taken her last farewell, she placed herself on the funeral pile, by the assistance of her own brother, and expired amidst the praises and acclamations of most of the spectators; but some of them, according to the historian, disapproved of this strange custom, as barbarous and inhuman. The action of this woman was undoubtedly

^t Diod. l. xix. p. 678.—680.

a real murder, and might justly be considered as a violation of the most express law of nature, which prohibits all attempts on a person's own life; and commands us not to dispose of it in compliance with the dictates of caprice, or forget that it is only a deposite, which ought to be resigned to none but that being from whom we received it. Such a sacrifice is so far from deserving to be enumerated among the instances of respect and amity due to her husband, that he is rather treated as an unrelenting and bloody idol, by the immolation of such precious victims.

¶ During the course of this campaign, the war was maintained with obstinacy on both sides, and Persia and Media were the theatre of its operations. The armies traversed these two great provinces by marches and counter-marches, and each party had recourse to all the art and stratagems that the greatest capacity, in conjunction with a long series of experience in the profession of war, could supply. Eumenes, though he had a mutinous and untractable army to govern, obtained however several advantages over his enemies in this campaign; and when his troops grew impatient for winter-quarters, he had still the dexterity to secure the best in all the province of Gabene, which obliged Antigonus to seek his to the north in Media, where he was incapable of arriving, till after a march of twenty-five days.

* The troops of Eumenes were so ungovernable, that he could not prevail upon them to post themselves near enough to each other, to be assembled on any emergency. They absolutely insisted on very distant quarters, which took in the whole extent of the province, under pretence of being more commodiously stationed, and of having every thing in greater abundance. In a word, they were dispersed to such a distance from each other, that it required several days for reassembling them in a body. Antigonus, who was informed of this circumstance, marched from a very remote quarter, in the depth of winter, in hopes to surprise these different bodies so dispersed.

Eumenes, however, was not a man to be surprised in such a manner, but had the precaution to dispatch, to various parts, spies mounted on dromedaries, the swiftest of all animals, to gain timely intelligence of the enemy's motions; and he had posted them so judiciously, that he received information of

u Diod. l. xix. p. 680.—684.
p. 592. Cor. Nep. c. viii.—xii.

x Diod. p. 684.—688. Plut. in Eumen.

this march, before Antigonus could arrive at any of his quarters ; this furnished him with an expedient to save his army by a stratagem, when all the other generals looked upon it as lost. He posted the troops who were nearest to him on the mountains that rose toward the quarter from whence the enemies were advancing, and ordered them, the following night, to kindle as many fires as might cause it to be imagined all the army were encamped in that situation. Antigonus was soon informed, by his advanced guard, that those fires were seen at a great distance, upon which he concluded that Eumenes was there encamped with all his forces, and in a condition to receive him. In order, therefore, not to expose his men, who were fatigued by long marches, to an engagement with fresh troops, he caused them to halt, that they might have time to recover themselves a little ; by which means Eumenes had all the opportunity that was necessary for assembling his forces, before the enemy could advance upon him. Antigonus, finding his scheme defeated, and extremely mortified at being thus over-reached, determined to come to an engagement.

The troops of Eumenes being all assembled about him, were struck with admiration at his extraordinary prudence and ability, and resolved that he should exercise the sole command. Antigenes and Teutamus, the two captains who led the Argyraspides, were so exceedingly mortified at a distinction so glorious for Eumenes, that they formed a resolution to destroy him, and drew most of the Satrapæ and principal officers into their conspiracy. Envy is a malady that seldom admits of a cure, and is generally heightened by the remedies administered to it. All the precautions of prudence, moderation, and condescension, which Eumenes employed, were incapable of mollifying the hearts of those Barbarians, and extinguishing their jealousy ; and he must have renounced his merit and virtue, which occasioned it, to have been capable of appeasing them. He frequently lamented to himself his unhappiness in being fated to live, not with men, as his expression was, but with brute beasts. Several conspiracies had already been formed against him, and he daily beheld himself exposed to the same danger. In order to frustrate their effects, if possible, he had borrowed, on various pretexts of pressing necessity, many considerable sums of those who appeared most inveterate against him, that he at least might restrain them, by the consideration of their own interest, and an apprehension of losing the sums they had lent him, should he happen to perish.

His enemies, however, being now determined to destroy him, held a council, in order to deliberate on the time, place, and means of accomplishing their intentions. They all agreed to protract his fall, till after the decision of the impending battle, and then to destroy him near the spot where it was fought. Eudemus, who commanded the elephants, went immediately, with Phædimus, to acquaint Eumenes with this resolution, not from any affection to his person, but only from their apprehensions of losing the money he had borrowed of them. Eumenes returned them his thanks, and highly applauded their affection and fidelity.

When he returned to his tent, he immediately made his will, and then burned all his papers, with the letters that had been written to him, because he was unwilling that those who had favoured him with any secret intelligence should be exposed to any accusation or prejudice after his death. When he had thus disposed of his affairs, and found himself alone, he deliberated on the conduct he ought to pursue. It was then a thousand contrary thoughts agitated his mind. Could it possibly be prudent in him, to repose any confidence in those officers and generals who had sworn his destruction? Might he not lawfully arm against them the zeal and affection of the soldiers, who were inviolably devoted to him? On the other hand, would it not be his best expedient, to pass through Media and Armenia, and retire to Cappadocia, the place of his residence, where he might hope for a sure asylum from danger? Or, in order to avenge himself on those traitors, would it not be better for him to abandon them in the crisis of the battle, and resign the victory to his enemies? For, in a situation so desperate as his own, what thoughts will not rise up in the mind of a man reduced to the last extremity by a set of perfidious traitors! This last thought, however, infused a horror into his soul; and as he was determined to discharge his duty to his latest breath, and to combat, to the close of his life, for the prince who had armed him in his cause, he resigned his destiny, says Plutarch, to the will of the gods, and thought only of preparing his troops for the battle.

He had thirty-six thousand seven hundred foot, and above six thousand horse, with four hundred elephants. The army of Antigonus was composed of twenty-two thousand foot, nine thousand horse, with a body of Median cavalry, and sixty-five elephants. This general posted his cavalry on the two wings, his infantry he disposed in the centre, and formed

his elephants into a first line, which extended along the front of the army, and he filled up the intervals between the elephants with light-armed troops. He gave the command of the left wing to Pithon; that of the right he assigned to his son Demetrius, where he was to act in person, at the head of a body of chosen troops. Eumenes drew up his army almost in the same manner; his best troops he disposed into the left wing, and placed himself in their front, in order to oppose Antigonus, and gave the command of the right to Philip.

Before the armies began the charge, he exhorted the Greeks and Barbarians to perform their duty well; for as to his phalanx, and the Argyraspides, they so little needed any animating expressions, that they were the first to encourage him with assurances, that the enemy should not wait a moment for them. They were the oldest troops that had served under Philip and Alexander, and were all veteran champions, whom victory had crowned in a hundred combats; they had hitherto been reputed invincible, and had never been foiled in any action; for which reason, they advanced to the troops of Antigonus, and charged them fiercely, with this exclamation; "Villains! you now fight with your fathers!" They then broke in upon the infantry with irresistible fury. Not one of the battalions could sustain the shock, and most of them were cut to pieces.

The event was different with respect to the cavalry; for as the engagement between them began on a sandy soil, the motion of the men and horses raised such a thick gloom of dust, as made them incapable of seeing to the distance of three paces. Antigonus, befriended by this darkness, detached from his cavalry a body of troops superior to that of the enemy, and carried off all their baggage, without their perceiving it, and at the same time broke in upon their horse. Peucestes, who commanded them, and, till then, had given a thousand proofs of true bravery, fell back, and drew all the rest after him. Eumenes employed all his efforts to rally them, but in vain; the confusion was as universal in that quarter, as the advantage had been complete in the other. The capture of the baggage was of more importance to Antigonus, than the victory could be to Eumenes; for the soldiers of the latter, finding at their return all their baggage carried off, with their wives and children, instead of employing their swords against the enemy, in order to recover them, which would have been very practicable at that time, and was what Eumenes had promised to accomplish, they turned all their fury against their own general.

Having chosen their time, they fell upon him, forced his sword out of his hand, and bound his hands behind him with his own belt. In this condition they led him through the Macedonian phalanx, then drawn up in lines under arms, in order to deliver him up to Antigonus, who had promised to restore them all their baggage on that condition. "Kill me, " O soldiers ! " said Eumenes, as he passed by them, " kill me yourselves, I conjure you in the name of all the gods ! for though I perish by the command of Antigonus, my death will however be as much your act as if I had fallen by your swords. If you are unwilling to do me that office with your own hands, permit me at least to discharge it by one of mine. That shall render me the service which you refuse me. On this condition, I absolve you from all the severities you have reason to apprehend from the vengeance of the gods, for the crime you are preparing to perpetrate on me."

Upon this they hastened him along, to prevent the repetition of such pathetic addresses, which might awaken the affection of the troops for their general.

Most of the soldiers of Antigonus went out to meet him, and left scarce a single man in his camp. When that illustrious prisoner arrived there, Antigonus had not the courage to see him, because his presence alone would have reproached him in the highest degree. As those who guarded him asked Antigonus, in what manner he would have him kept: "As you would an elephant," replied he, " or a lion," which are two animals most to be dreaded. But within a few days he was touched with compassion, and ordered him to be eased of the weightiest of his chains; he likewise appointed one of his own domestics to serve him, and permitted his friends to see him, and pass whole days in his company. They were also allowed to furnish him with all necessary refreshments.

Antigonus deliberated with himself for some time, in what manner he should treat his prisoner. They had been intimate friends when they served under Alexander, and the remembrance of that amity rekindled some tender sentiments in his favour, and combated for a while his interest. His son Demetrius also solicited strongly in his favour; passionately desiring, in mere generosity, that the life of so great a man might be saved. But Antigonus, who was well acquainted with his inflexible fidelity for the family of Alexander, and knew what a dangerous enemy he had in him, and how ca-

pable he was of disconcerting all his measures, should he escape from his hands, was too much afraid of him to grant him his life, and therefore ordered him to be destroyed in prison.

Such was the end of the most accomplished man of his age, in every particular, and the worthiest to succeed Alexander the Great. He had not, indeed, the fortune of that monarch, but he, perhaps, was not his inferior in merit. He was truly brave without temerity, and prudent without weakness. His descent was but mean, though he was not ashamed of it, and he gradually rose to the highest stations, and might even have aspired to the throne, if he had either had more ambition or less probity. At a time when intrigues and cabals, spirited by a motive most capable of affecting a human heart, I mean the thirst of empire, knew neither sincerity nor fidelity, nor had any respect to the ties of blood or the rights of friendship, but trampled on the most sacred laws; Eumenes always retained an inviolable fidelity and attachment to the royal family, which no hopes or fears, no vicissitudes of fortune, nor any elevation, had power to shake. This very character of probity rendered him insupportable to his colleagues; for it frequently happens *, that virtue creates enmities and aversions, because it seems to reproach those who think in a different manner, and places their defects in too near a view.

He possessed all the military virtues in a supreme degree; or, in other words, he was a complete master in the art of war, as well as of fortitude, foresight, a wonderful fertility of invention for stratagems and resources, in the most unexpected dangers and most desperate conjunctures; but I place in a much nobler light, that character of probity, and those sentiments of honour, which prevailed in him, and were always inseparable from the other shining qualities I have mentioned.

A merit so illustrious and universal, and at the same time so modest, which ought to have excited the esteem and admiration of the other commanders, only gave them offence, and inflamed their envy; a defect too frequently visible in persons of high rank. These Satrapæ, full of themselves, saw with jealousy and indignation, that an officer of no birth, but much better qualified, and more brave and experienced than themselves, had ascended by degrees to the most exalted stations, which they imagined due only to those who were

* *Industriae innocentiaeque quasi malis artibus insensi—etiam gloria ac virtus infensos habet, ut nimis ex propinquuo diversa arguens.*—*Tacit.*

dignified with great names, and descended from ancient and illustrious families ; as if true nobility did not consist in merit and virtue.

Antigonus and the whole army celebrated the funeral obsequies of Eumenes with great magnificence, and consented to render him the utmost honours, his death having extinguished all their envy and fear. They deposited his bones and ashes in an urn of silver, and sent it to his wife and children in Cappadocia ; poor compensation for a desolate widow and her helpless orphans !

SECTION VI.

THE DEATH OF YOUNG ALEXANDER, ROXANA, HERCULES, BARSINA, AND CLEOPATRA.

ANTIGONUS^x, concluding that he should be master of the empire of Asia for the future, made a new regulation in the eastern provinces, for his better security. He discarded all the governors he suspected, and advanced to their places those persons in whom he thought he might confide. He even destroyed several who had rendered themselves formidable to him by too much merit. Pithon, governor of Media, and Antigenes, general of the Argyraspides, were among these latter. Seleucus, governor of Babylon, was likewise minuted down in the list of proscriptions ; but he found means to escape the danger, and threw himself under the protection of Ptolemy king of Egypt. As for the Argyraspides, who had betrayed Eumenes, he sent them into Arachosia, the remotest province in the empire, and ordered Syburtias, who governed there, to take such measures as might destroy them all, and that not one of them might never return to Greece. The just horror he conceived at the infamous manner in which they betrayed their general contributed not a little to this resolution, though he enjoyed the fruit of their treason without the least scruple or remorse ; but a motive, still more prevalent, determined him chiefly to this proceeding. These soldiers were mutinous, untractable, licentious, and averse to all obedience ; their example, therefore, was capable of corrupting the other troops, and even of destroying him, by a new instance of treachery ; he therefore was resolved to exterminate them without hesitation.

^x A. M. 3689. Ant. J. C. 315. Diod. I. xix. p. 689.—692, et 697, 698.

y Seleucus knew how to represent the formidable power of Antigonus so effectually to Ptolemy, that he engaged him in a league with Lysimachus and Cassander, whom he had also convinced, by an express, of the danger they had reason to apprehend from the power of that prince. Antigonus was very sensible that Seleucus would not fail to solicit them into measures against his interest, for which reason he sent an embassy to each of the three, to renew the good intelligence between them, by new assurances of his friendship. But what confidence could be reposed in such assurances from a perfidious man, who had lately destroyed so many governors, from no inducement but the ambition of reigning alone, at the expense of all his colleagues? The answers, therefore, which he received, made him sufficiently sensible, that it was incumbent on him to prepare for war: Upon which he quitted the east, and advanced into Cilicia with very considerable treasures, which he had drawn from Babylon and Susa. He there raised new levies, regulated several affairs in the provinces of Asia Minor, and then marched into Syria and Phœnicia.

z His design was to divest Ptolemy of those two provinces, and make himself master of their maritime forces, which were absolutely necessary for him in the war he was preparing to undertake against the confederates. For unless he could be master at sea, and have at least the ports and vessels of the Phœnicians at his disposal, he could never expect any success against them. He, however, arrived too late to surprise the ships; for Ptolemy had already sent to Egypt all that could be found in Phœnicia, and it was with difficulty that Antigonus made himself master of the ports; for Tyre, Joppa, and Gaza, opposed him with all their forces. The two last, indeed, were soon taken; but a considerable length of time was necessary for the reduction of Tyre.

However, as he was already master of all the other ports of Syria and Phœnicia, he immediately gave orders for building vessels; and a vast number of trees were cut down for that purpose, on Mount Libanus, which was covered with cedar and cypress trees of extraordinary beauty and height, and they were conveyed to the different ports where the ships were to be built; in which work he employed several thousand men. In a word, with these ships, and others that joined him from Cyprus, Rhodes, and some particular cities with which he had contracted an alliance, he formed a considerable fleet, and rendered himself master of the sea.

y A. M. 3690. Ant. J. C. 314. Diod. l. xix. p. 698.—700.

z Diod. l. xix. p. 700.—703.

His ardour for this work was redoubled by an affront he had received from Seleucus, who, with a hundred ships that Ptolemy had sent him, sailed up to Tyre, in sight of all the forces of Antigonus, with an intention to brave him whilst he was engaged in the siege of that city. And in reality, this insult had greatly discouraged his troops, and given his allies such an impression of his weakness, as was very injurious to him. In order, therefore, to prevent the effect of those disadvantageous opinions, he sent for the principal allies, and assured them, he would have such a fleet at sea that summer, as should be superior to the naval force of all his enemies; and he was punctual to his promise before the expiration of the year.

^a But when he perceived, that while he was thus employed in Phoenicia, Cassander gained upon him by land in Asia Minor, he marched thither with part of his troops, and left the rest with his son Demetrius, who was then but twenty-two years of age, to defend Syria and Phoenicia against Ptolemy. This Demetrius will be much celebrated in the sequel of this history, and I shall soon point out his particular character.

^b Tyre was then reduced to the last extremities; the fleet of Antigonus cut off all communication of provisions, and the city was soon obliged to capitulate. The garrison which Ptolemy had there obtained permission to march out with all their effects, and the inhabitants were promised the enjoyment of theirs without molestation. Andronicus, who commanded at the siege, was transported with gaining a place of such importance on any conditions whatever; and especially after a siege, which had harassed his troops so exceedingly for fifteen months.

It was no longer than nineteen years before this event, that Alexander had destroyed this city, in such a manner as made it natural to believe it would require whole ages to re-establish it; and yet in so short a time it became capable of sustaining this new siege, which lasted more than as long again as that of Alexander. This circumstance discovers the great resources derived from commerce; for this was the only expedient by which Tyre rose out of its ruins, and recovered most of its former splendour. This city was then the centre of all the traffic of the East and West.

^c Demetrius, who now began to be known, and will for

^a A. M. 3691. Ant. J. C. 313.

^b Diod. l. xix. p. 703.

^c Plut. in Demet. p. 889.—890.

the future be surnamed Poliorcetes *, which signifies Taker of Cities, was the son of Antigonus. He was finely made, and of uncommon beauty. A pleasing sweetness, blended with gravity, was visible in his aspect, and he had an air of serenity, intermixed with something which carried awe along with it. Vivacity of youth in him was tempered with a majestic mien, and an air truly royal and heroic. The same mixture was likewise observable in his manners, which were equally qualified to charm and astonish. When he had no affairs to transact, his intercourse with his friends was enchanting. Nothing could equal the sumptuosity inseparable from his feasts, luxury, and his whole manner of living; and it may be justly said, that he was the most voluptuous and delicate of all princes. On the other hand, as alluring as all these soft pleasures might appear to him, when he had any enterprise to undertake, he was the most active and vigilant of mankind; nothing but his patience and assiduity in fatigue were equal to his vivacity and courage. Such is the character of the young prince who now begins to appear upon the stage of action.

Plutarch remarks in him, as a peculiarity which distinguished him from the other princes of his time, his profound respect for his parents, which neither flowed from affectation or ceremony, but was sincere and real, and the growth of the heart itself. Antigonus, on his part, had a tenderness and affection for his son, that was truly paternal, and extended even to familiarity, though without any diminution of the authority of the sovereign and the father; and this created an union and confidence between them, entirely free from all fear and suspicion. Plutarch relates an instance of it to this effect. One day, when Antigonus was engaged in giving audience to some ambassadors, Demetrius, returning from the chace, advanced into the great hall, where he saluted his father with a kiss, and then seated himself at his side, with his darts in his hand. Antigonus had just given the ambassadors their answer, but he ordered them to be introduced a second time; " You may likewise inform your masters," said he, " of the manner in which my son and I live together." Intimating thereby, that he was not afraid to let his

* The word is derived from *πολιορκεῖν*, to besiege a city, whose root is, *πόλις*, a city, and *ερεῖν*, a fence, a trench, a bulwark.

son approach him with arms *, and that this good intelligence, that subsisted between him and his son, constituted the greatest strength of his dominions, at the same time that it affected him with the most sensible pleasure. But to return to our subject.

^d Antigonus having passed into Asia, soon stopped the progress of Cassander's arms, and pressed him so vigorously, that he obliged him to come to an accommodation on very honourable terms ; but the treaty was hardly concluded before he repented of his accession to it, and broke it, by demanding succours of Ptolemy and Seleucus, and renewing the war. The violation of treaties was considered as nothing, by the generality of those princes whose history I am now writing. These unworthy expedients, which are justly thought dishonourable in private persons, appeared to those as so many circumstances essential to their glory. They applauded themselves for their perfidious measures, as if they had been instances of their abilities in government, and were never sensible that such proceedings would teach their troops to be wanting in their fidelity to them, and leave them destitute of any pretext of complaint against their own subjects, who, by revolting from their authority, only trod in the same paths which they themselves had already marked out. By such contagious examples, a whole age is soon corrupted, and learns to renounce, without a blush, all sentiments of honour and probity, because that which is once become common, no longer appears shameful.

The renewal of this war detained Antigonus in those parts longer than he intended, and afforded Ptolemy an opportunity of obtaining considerable advantages over him in another quarter.

^e He first sailed with his fleet to the isle of Cyprus, and reduced the greatest part of it to his obedience. Nicocles, king of Pathos, one of the cities of that island, submitted to him like the rest, but made a secret alliance with Antigonus, a year or two after. Ptolemy received intelligence of this proceeding, and, in order to prevent the other princes from imitating his example, he ordered some of his officers in Cyprus to destroy him ; but they being unwilling to execute that commission themselves, earnestly entreated Nicocles to prevent it

^d Diod. l. xix. p. 10.

^e Diod. l. xx. p. 761.

* Neither the Greeks nor Romans ever wore arms but in war, or when they hunted.

by a voluntary death. The unhappy prince consented to the proposal, and seeing himself utterly destitute of defence, became his own executioner. But though Ptolemy had commanded those officers to treat the queen Axithea, and the other princesses whom they found in the palace of Nicocles, with the respect due to their rank, yet they could not prevent them from following the example of the unfortunate king. The queen, after she had slain her daughters with her own hands, and exhorted the other princesses not to survive the calamity by which their unhappy brother fell, plunged her dagger into her own bosom. The death of these princesses was succeeded by that of their husbands, who, before they slew themselves, set fire to the four corners of the palace. Such was the dreadful and bloody scene which was acted at Cyprus.

Ptolemy, after he once became master of that island, made a descent in Syria, and from thence proceeded to Cilicia, where he acquired great spoils, and took a large number of prisoners, whom he carried with him into Egypt. Seleucus imparted to him, at his return, a project for regaining Syria and Phœnicia, and the execution of it was agreed to be undertaken. Ptolemy accordingly marched thither in person with a fine army, after he had happily suppressed a revolt which had been kindled among the Cyreneans, and found Demetrius at Gaza, who opposed his entrance into that place. This occasioned a sharp engagement, in which Ptolemy was at last victorious. Demetrius had five thousand of his men killed, and eight thousand more made prisoners ; he likewise lost his tents, his treasure, and all his equipage, and was obliged to retreat as far as Azotus, and from thence to Tripoli, a city of Phœnicia on the frontiers of Upper Syria, and to abandon all Phœnicia, Palestine, and Coelosyria, to Ptolemy.

Before his departure from Azotus, he desired leave to bury the dead, which Ptolemy not only granted, but also sent him back all his equipage, tents, furniture, friends, and domestics, without any ransom, and caused it to be declared to him, “ That they ought not to make war against each other for “ riches, but for glory ;” and it was impossible for a Pagan to think better. May we not likewise say, that he uttered his real sentiments ? Demetrius, touched with so obliging an instance of generosity, immediately begged of the gods not to leave him long indebted to Ptolemy for so great a benefaction, but to furnish him with an opportunity of returning him one of a like nature.

Ptolemy sent the rest of the prisoners into Egypt, to serve him in his fleet, and then pursued his conquests. All the coast of Phœnicia submitted to him, except the city of Tyre; upon which he sent a secret message to Andronicus, the governor of that place, and one of the bravest officers of Antigonus, and the most attached to the service of his master, to induce him to abandon the city with a good grace, and not oblige him to besiege it in form. Andronicus, who depended on the Tyrians' fidelity to Antigonus, returned a haughty, and even an insulting and contemptuous answer to Ptolemy: but he was deceived in his expectations, for the garrison and inhabitants compelled him to surrender. He then imagined himself inevitably lost, and that nothing could make a conqueror forget the insolence with which he had treated him; but he was deceived again. The king of Egypt, instead of any reprisals upon an officer who had insulted him with so much indignity, made it a kind of duty, to engage him in his service by the regard he professed for him, when he was introduced, to salute him.

Demetrius was not discouraged with the loss of the battle, as a young prince who had been so unfortunate in his first enterprise, might naturally have been; but he employed all his attention in raising fresh troops, and making new preparations, with all the steadiness and resolution of a consummate general, habituated to the art of war, and to the inconstancy and vicissitudes of arms; in a word, he fortified the cities, and was continually exercising his soldiers.

Antigonus received intelligence of the loss of that battle, without any visible emotion, and he coldly said, "Ptolemy has defeated boys, but he soon shall have men to deal with;" and as he was unwilling to abate the courage and ardour of his son, he complied with his request of making a second trial of his forces against Ptolemy.

^f Some time after this event, Cilles, Ptolemy's lieutenant, arrived with a numerous army, fully persuaded that he should drive Demetrius out of Syria, for he had entertained a very contemptible opinion of him from his defeat; but Demetrius, who had known how to derive advantages from his misfortune, and was now become more circumspect and attentive, fell upon him when he least expected it, and made himself master of his camp and all his baggage, took seven thousand of his men prisoners, even seized him with his own hands,

f A. M. 3693. Ant. J. C. 311. Diod. I. xix. p. 729.

and carried off a great booty. The glory and riches Demetrius had acquired by this victory, affected him less than the pleasure of being in a condition to acquit himself with respect to his enemy, and return the obligation he had received from him. He would not, however, act in this manner by his own authority, but wrote an account of the whole affair to his father, who permitted him to act as he should judge proper. Upon which he immediately sent back Cilles, with all his friends, laden with magnificent presents, and all the baggage he had taken. There is certainly something very noble in contending with an enemy in this generous manner; and it was a disposition still more estimable, especially in a young and victorious prince, to make it a point of glory, to depend entirely upon his father, and to take no measures in such a conjuncture without consulting him.

^g Seleucus, after the victory obtained over Demetrius at Gaza, had obtained a thousand foot and three hundred horse from Ptolemy, and proceeded with this small escort to the East, with an intention to re-enter Babylon. When he arrived at Carræ, in Mesopotamia, he made the Macedonian garrison join his troops, partly by consent, and partly by compulsion. As soon as his approach to Babylon was known, his ancient subjects came in great numbers to range themselves under his ensigns, for the moderation of his government had rendered him greatly beloved in that province; whilst the severity of Antigonus was universally detested. The people were charmed at his return, and the hopes of his re-establishment. When he arrived at Babylon, he found the gates open, and was received with the general acclamations of the people. Those who favoured the party of Antigonus, retired into the castle; but as Seleucus was master of the city, and the affections of the people, he soon made himself master of that fortress, and there found his children, friends, and domestics, whom Antigonus had detained prisoners in that place from the retreat of Seleucus into Egypt.

It was immediately judged necessary to raise a good army to defend these acquisitions, and he was hardly reinstated in Babylon, before Nicanor, the governor of Media under Antigonus, was upon his march to dislodge him. Seleucus, having received intelligence of his motion, passed the Tigris, in order to confront him; and he had the good fortune to surprise him in a disadvantageous post, where he assaulted his

^g Diod. l. xix. p. 726.—728.

camp by night, and entirely defeated his army. Nicanor was compelled to fly, with a small number of his friends, and to cross the deserts before he could arrive at the place where Antigonus then was. All the troops who had escaped from the defeat, declared for Seleucus, either through a dissatisfaction in the service of Antigonus, or else from the apprehension of the conqueror. Seleucus was now master of a fine army, which he employed in the conquest of Media and Susiana, with the other adjacent provinces, by which means he rendered himself very powerful. The lenity of his government, his justice, equity, and humanity to all his subjects, contributed principally to the establishment of his power; and he was then sensible how advantageous it is for a prince to treat his people in that manner, and to possess their affections. He arrived in his own territories with a handful of men, but the love of his people was equivalent to an army; and he not only assembled a vast body of them about him, in a short time, but they were likewise rendered invincible by their affection for him.

^h With this entry into Babylon, commences the famous Era of the Seleucides, received by all the people of the East, as well Pagans as Jews, Christians, and Mohammedans. The Jews call it the Era of contracts, because, when they were subjected to the government of the Syro-Macedonian kings, they were obliged to insert it into the dates of their contracts and other civil writings. The Arabians style it the Era of Bicornus, intimating Seleucus thereby, according to some authors, who declare that the sculptures represented him with two horns of an ox on his head, because this prince was so strong, that he could seize that animal by the horns, and stop him short in his full career. The two books of the Macca-bees call it the Era of the Greeks, and use it in their dates; with this difference, however, that the first of these books represents it as beginning in the spring, the other in the autumn of the same year. The thirty-one years of the reign ascribed to Seleucus, begin at this period.

ⁱ Antigonus was at Celænæ when he received intelligence of the victory obtained by his son Demetrius over the troops of Ptolemy; and immediately advanced to Syria, in order to secure all the advantages that were presented to him by that event. He crossed Mount Taurus, and joined his son, whom he tenderly embraced at the first interview, shedding at the

^h A. M. 3693. Ant. J. C. 311.

ⁱ Diod. l. xix. p. 729.

same time tears of joy. Ptolemy, being sensible that he was not strong enough to oppose the united forces of the father and son, resolved to demolish the fortifications of Aca, Joppa, Samaria, and Gaza ; after which he retired into Egypt, with the greatest part of the riches of the country, and a numerous train of the inhabitants. In this manner was all Phœnicia, Judea, and Cœlosyria, subjected a second time to the power of Antigonus.

^k The inhabitants of these provinces, who were carried off by Ptolemy, followed him more out of inclination, than by any constraint : and the moderation and humanity with which he always treated those who submitted to his government, had gained their hearts so effectually, that they were more desirous of living under him in a foreign country, than to continue subject in their own to Antigonus, from whom they had no expectations of so gentle a treatment. They were likewise strengthened in this resolution by the advantageous proposals of Ptolemy ; for, as he then intended to make Alexandria the capital of Egypt, it was very easy to draw the inhabitants thither, where he offered them extraordinary privileges and immunities. He therefore settled in that city most of those who followed him on this occasion, among whom was a numerous body of Jews. Alexander had formerly placed many of that nation there ; but Ptolemy, in his return from one of his first expeditions, planted a much greater number in that city than Alexander himself, and they there found a fine country, and a powerful protection. The rumour of these advantages being propagated through all Judea, rendered many more of the inhabitants desirous of establishing themselves at Alexandria, and they accomplished that design upon this occasion. Alexander had granted the Jews who settled there, under his government, the same privileges as were enjoyed by the Macedonians ; and Ptolemy pursued the same conduct with respect to this new colony. In a word, he settled such a number of them there, that the quarter inhabited by the Jews almost formed an entire city of itself. A large body of Samaritans also established themselves there, on the same footing with the Jews, and increased exceedingly in numbers.

¹ Antigonus, after he had repossessed himself of Syria and Judea, sent Athenæus, one of his generals, against the Nabathæan Arabs, a nation of robbers, who made several inroads into the country he had newly conquered, and had lately car-

^k Joseph. Antiq. l. xii. c. 1. et contr. Appian. l. i. et ii.

¹ Diod. l. xix. p. 730.—733.

ried off a very large booty. Their capital city was Petra, so called by the Greeks, because it is situated on a high rock, in the middle of a desert country. Athenæus made himself master of this place, and likewise of the spoils deposited in it; but the Arabs attacked him by surprise in his retreat, and defeated the greatest part of his troops; they likewise killed him on the spot, regained all the booty, and carried it back to Petra, from whence they wrote a letter to Antigonus, who was then in Syria, complaining of the injustice with which he had been treated by Athenæus. Antigonus pretended at first to disapprove his proceedings; but as soon as he had assembled his troops, he gave the command of them to his son Demetrius, with orders to chastise the insolence of those robbers: but as this prince found it impracticable to force them in their retreat, or retake Petra, he contented himself with making the best treaty he could with this people, and then marched back with his troops.

^m Antigonus, upon the intelligence he received of the success of Seleucus in the East, sent his son Demetrius thither at the head of an army, to drive him out of Babylon, and dispossess him of that province, while he himself advanced to the coast of Asia Minor, to oppose the operations of the confederate princes, whose power daily increased. He likewise ordered his son to join him, after he had executed his commission in the East. Demetrius, in conformity to his father's directions, assembled the army at Damascus, and marched to Babylon; and as Seleucus was then in Media, he entered the city without any opposition. Patrocles, who had been intrusted with the government of that city by Seleucus, finding himself not strong enough to resist Demetrius, retired with his troops into the marshes, where the rivers, canals, and fens that covered him, made the approach impracticable. He had the precaution, when he left Babylon, to cause the inhabitants also to retire from thence, who all saved themselves; some on the other side of the Tigris, others in the deserts, and the rest in places of security.

Demetrius caused the castles to be attacked, of which there were two in Babylon, very large, and strengthened with good garrisons on the two opposite banks of the Euphrates. One of these he took, and placed in it a garrison of seven thousand men. The other sustained the siege till Antigonus ordered his son to join him. This prince, therefore, left Archelaus,

^m A. M. 3693. Ant. J. C. 311. Diod. I. xix. p. 735, 763. Plut. in Demetr. p. 891.

one of the principal officers of the army, with a thousand horse, and five thousand foot, to continue the siege, and marched with the rest of the troops into Asia Minor, to reinforce his father.

Before his departure, he caused Babylon to be plundered; but this action proved very detrimental to his father's affairs, and attached the inhabitants more than ever to Seleucus; even those who, till then, had espoused the interest of Antigonus, never imagined that the city would be treated in that manner, and looked upon this pillage as an act of desertion, and a formal declaration of his having entirely abandoned them. This induced them to turn their thoughts to an accommodation with Seleucus, and they accordingly went over to his party; by which means Seleucus, upon his return, which immediately followed the departure of Demetrius, had no difficulty to drive out the few troops that Demetrius had left in the city, and he retook the castle they had possessed. When this event was accomplished, he established his authority in such a solid manner, that nothing was capable of shaking it. This, therefore, is the epocha to which the Babylonians refer the foundation of his kingdom, though all the other nations of Asia placed it six months sooner, and in the preceding year.

ⁿ Demetrius, upon his arrival in Asia Minor, obliged Ptolemy to raise the siege of Halicarnassus, and this event was succeeded by a treaty of peace between the confederate princes and Antigonus; by which it was stipulated, that Cassander should have the management of the Macedonian affairs, till Alexander, the son of Roxana, was of age to reign. Lysimachus was to have Thrace; Ptolemy, Egypt; and the frontiers of Libya, with Arabia, and all Asia, were allotted to Antigonus. All the cities of Greece were likewise to enjoy their liberty. But this accommodation was of no long duration; and indeed it is surprising, that princes, so well acquainted with each other, and sensible that the sacred solemnity of oaths was only employed for their mutual delusion, should expect any success from an expedient that had been practised so frequently in vain, and was then so much in disgrace. This treaty was hardly concluded before each party complained of infractions, and hostilities were renewed. The true reason was, the extraordinary power of Antigonus, which daily increased, and became so formidable to the other three, that they were incapable of enjoying any satisfaction, till they had reduced him.

ⁿ Diod. l. xix. p. 739. Plut. in Demet. p. 892.

It was manifest that they were only solicitous for their own interest, and had no regard for the family of Alexander. The Macedonians began to be impatient; and declared aloud, that it was time for them to cause the young Alexander to appear upon the stage of action, as he was then fourteen years of age, and to bring him out of prison, in order to make him acquainted with the state of his affairs. Cassander, who fore-saw in this proceeding the destruction of his own measures, caused the young king, and his mother Roxana, to be secretly put to death in the castle of Amphipolis, where he had confined them for some years.

• Polysperchon, who governed in Peloponnesus, took this opportunity to declare openly against the conduct of Cassander, and made the people sensible of the enormous wickedness of this action, with a view of rendering him odious to the Macedonians, and entirely supplanting him in their affections. As he had then no thoughts of re-entering Macedonia, from whence he had been driven by Cassander, he affected an air of great zeal for the house of Alexander; and, in order to render it apparent, he caused Hercules, another son of Alexander by Barsina, the widow of Memnon, who was then about seventeen years of age, to be brought from Pergamus, upon which he himself advanced with an army, and proposed to the Macedonians to place him upon the throne. Cassander was terrified at this proceeding, and represented to him, at an interview between them, that he was preparing to raise himself a master, but that it would be more for his interest to remove Hercules out of the way, and secure the sovereignty of Greece to himself, offering at the same time his own assistance for that purpose. This discourse easily prevailed upon him to sacrifice the young prince to Cassander, as he was now persuaded that he should derive great advantages from his death. Hercules, therefore, and his mother, suffered the same fate from him the next year, as Roxana and her son had before from Cassander, and each of these wretches sacrificed in his turn, an heir of the crown, in order to share it between themselves.

As there was now no prince of Alexander's house left, each of them retained his government with the authority of a sovereign, and were persuaded that they had effectually secured their acquisitions, by the murder of those princes who alone had a lawful title to them, even congratulating them-

• A. M. 3694. Ant. J. C. 310. Diod. L xx. p. 760, 761, et 766, 767.

selves for having extinguished in their own minds all remains of respect for the memory of Alexander, their master and benefactor, which till then had held their hands. Who, without horror, could behold an action so perfidious, and at the same time so shameful and base ! But such was the insensibility of them both, that they were equally forward to felicitate themselves on the success of an impious confederacy, which ended in the effusion of their master's blood. The blackest of all crimes never cost the ambitious any remorse, provided they conduce to their ends.

p Ptolemy, having commenced the war anew, took several cities from Antigonus in Cilicia, and other parts; but Demetrius soon regained what his father had lost in Cilicia; and the other generals of Antigonus had the same success against those of Ptolemy, who did not command this expedition in person. Cyprus was now the only territory where Ptolemy preserved his conquests; for when he had caused Nicocles, king of Paphos, to suffer death, he entirely crushed the party of Antigonus in that island.

q In order to obtain some compensation for what he had lost in Cilicia, he invaded Pamphylia, Lycia, and some other provinces of Asia Minor, where he took several places from Antigonus.

r He then sailed to the *Æ*gean sea, and made himself master of the isle of Andros; after which he took Sicyon, Corinth, and some other cities.

During his continuance in those parts, he formed an intimate correspondence with Cleopatra, the sister of Alexander, who had espoused Alexander king of Epirus, and at whose nuptials Philip had been assassinated. This princess, after the death of her consort, who was slain in the wars of Italy, had continued in a state of widowhood, and, for several years, had resided in Sardis in Lydia; but as Antigonus, who was master of that city, did not treat her with any extraordinary respect, Ptolemy made an artful improvement of her discontent, in order to gain her over to his interest. With this intention, he invited her to an interview, in hopes of deriving from her presence some advantages against Antigonus. The princess had already set out, but the governor of Sardis caused her to be stopped, and immediately brought back, by the command of Antigonus, and then secretly destroyed her.

p *Diod.* l. xx. p. 760.
Ant. J. C. 308. *Diod.* l. xx. p. 774, 775.

q *Idem.* p. 766.

r A. M. 3696.

Antigonus, soon after this event, came to Sardis, where he ordered all the women who had been instrumental in her murder to be proceeded against.

We may here behold with admiration, how heavily the arm of the Almighty fell upon the race of Alexander, and with what severity it pursued the small remains of his family, and all those who had the misfortune to be any way related to that famous conqueror, whose favour was ardently courted by all the world a few years before. A fatal curse consumed his whole family, and avenged upon it all the acts of violence which had been committed by that prince. God even used the ministration of his courtiers, officers, and domestics, to render the severity of his judgements visible to all mankind, who, by these means, received some kind of reparation for the calamities they had suffered from Alexander.

Antigonus, though he was the minister of the Deity, in the execution of his just decrees, was not the less criminal on that account, because he only acted from motives of ambition and cruelty, which, in the event, filled him with all imaginable horror, and which he wished he could be capable of concealing from the observation of mankind. He celebrated the funeral of Cleopatra with extraordinary magnificence, hoping, by this plausible exterior, to dazzle the eyes of the public, and avoid the hatred due to so black a crime. But so deep a stain of hypocrisy as this, usually discovers the crime it labours to conceal, and only increases the just horror the world generally entertains for those who have committed it.

This barbarous and unmanly action was not the only one that Antigonus committed. Seleucus and Ptolemy raised the superstructure of their power on the clemency and justice with which they governed their people; and, by these expedients, established lasting empires, which continued in their families for several generations: but the character of Antigonus was of a different cast. It was a maxim with him, to remove all obstacles to his designs, without the least regard to justice or humanity; in consequence of which, when that brutal and tyrannical force, by which alone he had supported himself, came to fail him, he lost both life and empire.

Ptolemy, with all the wisdom and moderation of his government, was not secure from revolts. The treachery of Ophellas, governor of Libya and Cyrenaica, who formed an insurrection much about this time, gave him a just inquietude, but it happened very fortunately to be attended with no sinister effect. This officer had served, first under Alexander, and

after the death of that prince, had embraced the interest of Ptolemy, whom he followed into Egypt. Ptolemy intrusted him with the command of the army, which was intended for the reduction of Libya and Cyrenaica, provinces that had been allotted to him, as well as Egypt and Arabia, in the partition of the empire. When these two provinces were subdued, Ptolemy conferred the government of them upon Ophellas, who, when he was sensible that this prince was too much engaged with Antigonus and Demetrius, to give him any apprehensions, had rendered himself independent, and continued, for that year, in the peaceable enjoyment of his usurpation.

Agathocles, king of Sicily, having marched into Africa to attack the Carthaginians, endeavoured to engage Ophellas in his interest, and promised to assist him in the conquest of all Africa for himself. Ophellas, won by so grateful a proposal, joined Agathocles with an army of twenty thousand men in the Carthaginian territories ; but he had scarce arrived there, before the perfidious wretch who had drawn him thither caused him to be slain, and kept his army in his own service. The history of the Carthaginians will inform the reader, in what manner this black instance of treachery succeeded. Ptolemy, upon the death of Ophellas, recovered Libya and Cyrenaica. The wife of the latter was an Athenian lady of uncommon beauty ; her name was Eurydice, and she was descended from Miltiades. After the death of her husband, she returned to Athens, where Demetrius saw her the following year, and espoused her.

SECTION VII.

DEMETRIUS, THE SON OF ANTIGONUS, BESIEGES AND TAKES ATHENS. THE CONSEQUENCES WHICH FOLLOW.

ANTIGONUS and Demetrius had formed a design to restore liberty to all Greece^s, which was kept in a kind of slavery by Cassander, Ptolemy, and Polysperchon. These confederate princes, in order to subject the Greeks, had judged it expedient to establish aristocracy in all the cities they conquered. This is the government of the rich and powerful, and corresponds, the most of any, with regal authority. Antigonus, to engage the people in his interest, had recourse to a contrary

^s A. M. 3698. Ant. J. C. 306. Plut. in Demetr. p. 892.—894.

method, by substituting a democracy, which more effectually soothed the inclination of the Greeks, by lodging the power in the hands of the people. This conduct was a renovation of the policy which had been so frequently employed against the Lacedaemonians, by the Athenians and Persians, that had always succeeded ; and it was impossible for it to be ineffectual in this conjuncture, if supported by a good army. Antigonus could not enter upon his measures in a better manner, than by opening the scene with the signal of democratic liberty in Athens ; which was not only the most jealously, but was likewise at the head of all the other republics.

When the siege of Athens had been resolved upon, Antigonus was told by one of his friends, that, if he should happen to take that city, he ought to keep it for himself, as the key of all Greece ; but he entirely rejected that proposal, and replied, " That the best and strongest key which he knew, was " the friendship of the people ; and that Athens, being in a " manner the light by which all the world steered, would " not fail to spread universally the glory of his actions." It is very surprising to see in what manner princes, who are very unjust and self-interested, can sometimes borrow the language of equity and generosity, and are solicitous of doing themselves honour, by assuming the appearance of virtues to which, in reality, they are utter strangers.

Demetrius set out for Athens, with five thousand talents, and a fleet of two hundred and fifty ships. Demetrius Phaleus had commanded in that city, for the space of ten years, in the name, and under the authority of Cassander ; and the republic, as I have already observed, never experienced a juster government, or enjoyed a series of greater tranquillity and happiness. The citizens, in gratitude to his administration, had erected as many statues to his honour, as there are days in the year, namely, three hundred and sixty ; for, at that time, the year, according to Pliny *, was limited to this number of days. An honour like this had never been accorded to any citizen.

When the fleet of Demetrius approached, all the inhabitants prepared for its reception, believing the ships belonged to Ptolemy ; but when the captains and principal officers were at last undeceived, they immediately had recourse to arms for their defence ; every place was filled with tumult and confusion, the Athenians being reduced to a sudden and

* Nondum anno hunc numerum dierum excedente.—Plin. l. xxxiv. c. 6.

unexpected necessity of repelling an enemy, who advanced upon them without being discovered, and had already made a descent ; for Demetrius had entered the port, which he found entirely open, and might easily be distinguished on the deck of his galley, where, with his hand, he made signal to the people, to keep themselves quiet, and afford him an audience. The tumult being then calmed, he caused them to be informed aloud by a herald, who placed himself at his side, “ That his “ father Antigonus had sent him, under happy auspices, to “ reinstate the Athenians in the possession of their liberty, to “ drive the garrison out of their citadel, and to re-establish “ their laws, and ancient plan of government.”

The Athenians, at this proclamation, cast their bucklers down at their feet, and clapping their hands with loud acclamations of joy, pressed Demetrius to descend from his galley, and called him their preserver and benefactor. Those who were then with Demetrius Phalereus, were unanimously of opinion, that as the son of Antigonus was already master of the city, it would be better to receive him, though they should even be certain, that he would not perform any one article of what he had promised ; upon which they immediately dispatched ambassadors to him with a tender of their submissions.

Demetrius received them in a gracious manner, and gave them a very favourable audience ; and, in order to convince them of his good dispositions toward them, he gave them Aristodemus of Miletus, one of his father’s most intimate friends, as an hostage, at their dismission. He was likewise careful to provide for the safety of Demetrius Phalereus, who, in consequence of this revolution, had more reason to be apprehensive of his citizens, than even of the enemies themselves. The reputation and virtue of this great man had inspired the young prince with the utmost respect for his person ; and he sent him with a sufficient guard to Thebes, in compliance with his own request. He then told the Athenians, that he was determined not to see their city ; and that, as desirous as he was to visit it, he would not so much as enter within their walls, till he had entirely freed the inhabitants from subjection, by driving out the garrison that encroached upon their liberties. At the same time, he ordered a large ditch to be opened, and raised good intrenchments before the fortress of Munychia, to deprive it of all communication with the city ; after which he embarked for Megara, where Cassander had placed a strong garrison.

When he arrived at that city, he was informed, that Cratesipolis, the wife of Alexander, and daughter of Polysperchon, who was greatly celebrated for her beauty, then resided at Patræ, and was extremely desirous to see him, and be at his devotion. He therefore left his army in the territories of Megara, and having selected a small number of persons most disposed to attend him, he set out for Patræ; and, when he had arrived within a small distance of that city, he secretly withdrew himself from his people, and caused a pavilion to be erected in a private place, that Cratesipolis might not be seen when she came to him. A party of the enemies happening to be apprised of this imprudent proceeding, marched against him when he least expected such a visit, and he had but just time to disguise himself in a mean habit, and elude the danger by a precipitate flight; so that he was on the very point of being taken in the most ignominious manner, on account of his incontinence. The enemy seized his tent, with the riches that were in it.

The city of Megara being taken, the soldiers demanded leave to plunder the inhabitants; but the Athenians interceded for them so effectually, that the city was saved. Demetrius drove out the garrison of Cassander, and reinstated Megara in its liberties. Stilpon *, a celebrated philosopher, lived in that city, and was visited by Demetrius, who asked him if he had lost any thing? "Nothing at all," replied Stilpon, "for I carry all my effects about me;" meaning by that expression, his justice, probity, temperance, and wisdom; with the advantage of not ranking any thing in the class of blessings, that could be taken from him. What could all the kings of the earth do in conjunction against such a man as this, who neither desires nor dreads any thing, and who has been taught by philosophy, not to consider death itself as a calamity?

Though the city was saved from pillage, yet all the slaves in general were taken and carried off by the conquerors. Demetrius, on the day of his return from thence, caressed Stilpon exceedingly, and told him that he left the city to him in an entire state of freedom. "What you say, my Lord, is

* Megara Démetrius cuperat, cui cognomen Poliorcetes fuit. Ab hoc Stilpon philosophus interrogatus, num quid perdidisset: nihil, inquit; omnia namque mea mecum sunt—Habebat enim secum vera bona, in quæ non est manus injectio—Hæc sunt, justitia, virtus, temperantia, prudentia; et hoc ipsum, nihil bonum putare quod eripi possit—Cogita nunc, an huic quisquam facere injuriam possit, cui bellum, et hostis ille egregiam artem quassandarum urbium professus, eripere nihil potuit.—Senec. de Const. Sap. c. v. et Ep. 9.

"certainly true," replied the philosopher, "for you have not left so much as one slave in it."

Demetrius, when he returned to Athens, posted his troops before the port of Munychia, and carried on the siege with so much vigour, that he soon drove out the garrison, and razed the fort. The Athenians, after this event, intreated him with great importunity, to come to refresh himself in the city; upon which he accordingly entered, and then assembled the people, to whom he restored their ancient form of government, promising at the same time, that his father should send them an hundred and fifty thousand measures of corn, and all necessary materials for building an hundred galleys, of three benches of oars. In this manner did the Athenians recover their democracy, about fourteen years after its abolition.

The gratitude to their benefactors extended even to impiety and irreligion, by the excessive honours they decreed them. They first conferred the title of King on Antigonus and Demetrius, which neither these, nor any of the other princes, had ever the presumption to take till then, though they had assumed to themselves all the power and effects of royalty. The Athenians likewise honoured them with the appellation of Tutelar Deities; and instead of the magistracy of the Archon, which gave the year its denomination, they elected a priest of these tutelar deities, in whose name all the public acts and decrees were passed. They also ordered their pictures to be painted on the veil, which was carried in procession at their solemn festivals in honour of Minerva, called Panathenæa; and, by an excess of adulation scarce credible, they consecrated the spot of ground on which Demetrius descended from his chariot, and erected an altar upon it, which they called the "altar of Demetrius descending from his chariot;" and they added to the ten ancient tribes two more, which they styled "the tribe of Demetrius" and "the tribe of Antigonus." They likewise changed the names of two months in their favour, and published an order, that those who should be sent to Antigonus and Demetrius, by any decree of the people, instead of being distinguished by the common title of ambassadors, should be called Theoroi, which was an appellation reserved for those who were chosen to go and offer sacrifices to the gods at Delphos, or Olympia, in the name of the cities. But even all these honours were not so strange and extravagant as the decree obtained by Democrides, who proposed, "that in order to the more effectual

" consecration of the bucklers that were to be dedicated in
" the temple of Apollo, at Delphos, proper persons should
" be dispatched to Demetrius, the tutelar deity; and that af-
" ter they had offered sacrifices to him, they should inquire of
" this tutelar deity, in what manner they ought to conduct
" themselves, so as to celebrate, with the greatest promptitude,
" and the utmost devotion and magnificence, the dedication
" of those offerings, and that the people would comply with
" all the directions of the oracle on that occasion."

The extreme ingratitude the Athenians discovered, in respect to Demetrius Phalereus, was no less criminal and extravagant, than the immoderate acknowledgement they had rendered to their new master. They had always considered the former as too much devoted to oligarchy, and were offended at his suffering the Macedonian garrison to continue in their citadel, for the space of ten years, without making the least application to Cassander for their removal: In which he, however, had only pursued the conduct of Phocion, and undoubtedly considered those troops as a necessary restraint on the turbulent disposition of the Athenians. ^t They might possibly imagine likewise, that by declaring against him, they should ingratiate themselves more effectually with the conqueror. But whatever their motives might be, they first condemned him to suffer death, for contumacy; and as they were incapable of executing their resentment upon his person, because he had retired from their city, they threw down the numerous statues they had raised in honour of Demetrius Phalereus; who, when he had received intelligence of their proceedings, "At least," said he, "it will not be in their power to destroy that virtue in me by which these statues were deserved."

What estimation is to be made of those honours, which, at one time, are bestowed with so much profusion, and as suddenly revoked at another; honours that have been denied to virtue, and prostituted to vicious princes, with a constnt disposition to divest them of those favours, upon the first impressions of discontent, and degrade them from their divinity with as much precipitation as they conferred it upon them! What weakness and stupidity do those discover, who are either touched with strong impressions of joy when they receive such honours, or appear dejected when they happen to lose them!

^t Diog. Laert.

The Athenians still proceeded to greater extremities. Demetrius Phalereus was accused of having acted contrary to their laws in many instances during his administration, and they omitted no endeavours to render him odious. It was necessary for them to have recourse to this injustice and calumny, as infamous as such expedients were in their own nature, to escape, if possible, the just reproach of having condemned that merit and virtue which had been universally known and experienced. The statues, while they subsisted, were so many public testimonials, continually declaring in favour of the innocence of Demetrius, and against the injustice of the Athenians. Their own evidence then turned against them, and that they could not invalidate. The reputation of Demetrius was not obliterated by the destruction of his statues; and therefore it was absolutely necessary that he should appear criminal, that the Athenians might be able to represent themselves as innocent and just; and they imagined that a solemn and authentic condemnation would supply the defect of proofs, and the regularity of forms. They did not even spare his friends; and all those who had maintained a strict intimacy with him were exposed to insults. Menander, that celebrated poet, from whom Terence has transcribed the greatest part of his comedies, was on the point of being prosecuted, for no other reason than his having contracted a friendship with Demetrius.

There is some reason to believe, that Demetrius, after he had passed some time at Thebes, retired for refuge to Cassander, who was sensible of his merit, and testified a particular esteem for him, and that he continued under his protection as long as that prince lived. But as he had reason, after the death of Cassander, to be apprehensive of all things from the brutality of his son Antipater, who had caused his own mother to be destroyed, he retired into Egypt, to Ptolemy Soter, who had rendered himself illustrious by his liberalities, and regard to men of letters, and whose court was then the asylum of all persons in distress.

^u His reception at that court was as favourable as possible; and the king, according to *Ælian*, gave him the office of superintending the observation of the laws of the state. He held the first rank among the friends of that prince; lived in affluence, and was in a condition to transmit presents to his friends at Athens. These were undoubtedly some of those

^u *Ælian.* l. iii. c. 17. *Plut.* in *Exil.* p. 601.

real friends, of whom Demetrius himself declared, that they never came to him in his prosperity, till he first had sent for them, but that they always visited him in his adversity, without wanting for any invitation.

During his exile, he composed several treatises on government, the duties of civil life, and other subjects of the like nature. This employment was a kind of sustenance to his mind ^{*}, and cherished in it those sentiments of humanity, with which it was so largely replenished. How grateful a consolation and resource is this, either in solitude or a state of exile, to a man solicitous of improving his hours of leisure to the advantage of himself and the public !

The reader, when he considers the surprising number of statues erected in honour of one man, will undoubtedly bestow some reflections on the strange difference he discovers between the glorious ages of Athens, and that we are now describing. A very judicious author ^x has a fine remark on this occasion. All the recompence, says he, which the Athenians formerly granted Miltiades for preserving the state, was the privilege of being represented in a picture as the principal figure, and at the head of nine other generals, animating the troops for the battle ; but the same people, being afterwards softened and corrupted by the flattery of their orators, decreed above three hundred statues to Demetrius Phalereus. Such a prodigality of honours are no proofs of real merit, but the effects of servile adulation ; and Demetrius Phalereus was culpable to a considerable degree, in not opposing them to the utmost of his power, if he really was in a condition to prevent their taking place. ^y The conduct of Cato was much more prudent, when he declined several marks of distinction which the people were desirous of granting him ; and when he was asked, one day, why no statues had been erected to him, when Rome was crowded with those of so many others, “ I had “ much rather,” said he, “ people should inquire why I have “ none, than why I have any.”

True honour and distinction, says Plutarch, in the place I last cited, consist in the sincere esteem and affection of the people, founded on real merit and effectual services. These are sentiments which are so far from being extinguished by

^x Cor. Nep. in Miltiad. c. vi.

^y Plut. in Præc. Reip. Ger. p. 820.

^{*} Multa pæcerala in illo calamitoso exilio scripsit, non ad usum aliquem suum, quo erat orbatus ; sed animi cultus ille erat ei quasi quidam humanitatis cibus.—Cic. de Finib. Bon. et Mal. l. v. n. 54.

death, that they are perpetuated from age to age; whereas, a profusion of honours through flattery, or the apprehensions entertained of bad princes and tyrants, are never known to survive them, and frequently die away before them. The same Demetrius Poliorcetes, whom we have lately seen consulted and adored like an oracle and a god, will soon have the mortification to behold the Athenians shutting their gates against him for no other reason than the change of his fortune.

^z Demetrius, while he continued at Athens, espoused Eurydice, the widow of Ophellas. He had already had several wives, and, among the rest, Phila, the daughter of Antipater, whom his father compelled him to marry against his inclinations, citing to him a verse out of Euripides, which he changed into a parody by the alteration of one word. “Wherever fortune is, a person ought to marry, even against his inclination*.” As ancient as this maxim is, it has never grown obsolete hitherto, but retains its full force, how contrary soever it be to the sentiments of nature. Demetrius was severely censured at Athens, for infamous excesses.

^a In a short time after this marriage, his father ordered him to quit Greece, and sent him with a strong fleet, and a numerous army, to conquer the isle of Cyprus from Ptolemy. Before he undertook this expedition, he sent ambassadors to the Rhodians, to invite them to an alliance with him against Ptolemy; but this attempt proved ineffectual, and they constantly insisted on the liberty of persevering in the neutrality they had embraced. Demetrius, being sensible that the intelligence Ptolemy maintained in Rhodes had defeated his design, advanced to Cyprus, where he made a descent, and marched to Salamina, the capital of that island. Menelaus, the brother of Ptolemy, who had shut himself up there with most of his troops, marched out to give him battle, but was defeated and compelled to re-enter the place, after he had lost a thousand of his men, who were slain upon the spot, and three thousand more, who were taken prisoners.

Menelaus, not doubting but the prince, elated with this success, would undertake the siege of Salamina, made all the necessary preparations, on his part, for a vigorous defence; and while he was employing all his attention to that effect,

^z Plut. in Demet. p. 894. ^a Diod. I. xx. p. 783.—789. Plut. in Demetr. p. 895, 896. Justin. I. xv. c. 2.

* Ὁπε τὸ κέρδος, παρα φύσιν γεμιστίον. It was δελευτέον, a man must serve.

he sent three couriers post to Ptolemy, to carry him the news of his defeat, and the siege with which he was threatened ; they were also to solicit him to hasten the succours he demanded, and, if possible, to lead them in person.

Demetrius, after he had obtained an exact account of the situation of the place, as also of its forces, and those of the garrison, was sensible that he had not a sufficient number of battering-rams, and other military machines, for its reduction ; and therefore sent to Syria for a great number of expert workmen, with an infinite quantity of iron and wood, in order to make all the necessary preparations for assaulting a city of that importance ; and he then built the famous engine called Helepolis, of which I shall give an exact description.

When all the necessary dispositions were made, Demetrius carried on his approaches to the city, and began to batter the walls with his engines ; and as they were judiciously worked, they had all the effect that could be expected. The besiegers, after various attacks, opened several large breaches in the wall, by which means the besieged were rendered incapable of sustaining the assault much longer, unless they could resolve on some bold attempt, to prevent the attack which Demetrius intended to make the next day. During the night, which had suspended the hostilities on both sides, the inhabitants of Salamina piled a vast quantity of dry wood on their walls, with an intermixture of other combustible materials, and, about midnight, threw them all down at the foot of the Helepolis, battering rams, and other engines, and then kindled them with long flaming poles. The fire immediately seized them with so much violence, that they were all in flames in a very short time. The enemies ran from all quarters to extinguish the fire ; but this cost them a considerable time to effect, and most of the machines were greatly damaged. Demetrius, however, was not discouraged at this disaster.

Ptolemy, upon the intelligence he received of his brother's ill success in the action against Demetrius, caused a powerful fleet to be fitted out with all expedition, and advanced, as soon as possible, to his assistance. The battle, for which both parties prepared, after some ineffectual overtures of accommodation, created great expectation of the event, not only in the generals who were then upon the spot, but in all absent princes and commanders. The success appeared to be uncertain ; but it was very apparent, that it would eventually give one of the contending parties an entire superiority over

the rest. Ptolemy, who arrived with a fleet of an hundred and fifty sail, had ordered Menelaus, who was then at Salamina, to come up with the sixty vessels under his command, in order to charge the rear-guard of Demetrius, and throw them into disorder, amidst the first heat of the battle. But Demetrius had the precaution to leave ten of his ships to oppose those sixty of Menelaus ; for this small number was sufficient to guard the entrance into the port, which was very narrow, and prevent Menelaus from coming out. When this preliminary to the engagement was settled, Demetrius drew out his land-forces, and extended them along the points of land which projected into the sea, that he might be in a condition, in case any misfortune happened, to assist those who would be obliged to save themselves by swimming ; after which he sailed into the open sea, with an hundred and eighty galleys, and charged the fleet of Ptolemy with so much impetuosity, that he broke the lines of battle. Ptolemy, finding his defeat inevitable, had immediately recourse to flight with eight galleys, which were all that escaped ; for of the other vessels which composed his fleet, some were either shattered or sunk in battle, and all the others, to the number of seventy, were taken, with their whole complements. All the remains, therefore, of Ptolemy's train and baggage, with his domestics, friends, and wives, provisions, arms, money, and machines of war, on board the store-ships that lay at anchor, were seized by Demetrius, who caused them to be carried to his camp.

Menelaus no longer made any opposition after this battle at sea, but surrendered himself to Demetrius, with the city, and all his ships and land-forces, which last consisted of twelve hundred horse, and twelve thousand foot.

Demetrius exalted the glory of this victory, by his humanity and generous conduct after it. He caused the slain to be interred in a magnificent manner, and generously restored liberty to Menelaus and Lentiscus, one the brother, and the other the son of Ptolemy, who were found among the prisoners ; he also dismissed them, with their friends and domestics, and all their baggage, without any ransom ; that he might once more return the civilities he had experienced from Ptolemy, on a like occasion, after the battle of Gaza. * With so much more generosity, disinterestedness, and politeness, did enemies make war against each other in those days, than

* *Tanto honestius tunc bella gerēbantur, quam nunc amicitiae coluntur.* — Justin.

we now find between friends in the ordinary commerce of life. He likewise selected out of the spoils, one thousand two hundred complete suits of armour, and gave them to the Athenians; the rest of the prisoners, whose number amounted to seventeen thousand men, without including the marines taken with the fleet, were incorporated by him into his troops; by which means he greatly reinforced his army.

Antigonus, who continued in Syria, waited with the utmost anxiety and impatience for an account of a battle, by the event of which the fate of himself and his son was to be decided. When the courier brought him intelligence that Demetrius had obtained a complete victory, his joy rose in proportion; and all the people at the same instant proclaimed Antigonus and Demetrius kings. Antigonus immediately transmitted to his son the diadem which had glittered on his own brows, and gave him the regal title in the letter he wrote to him. The Egyptians, when they were informed of this proceeding, were also no less industrious in proclaiming Ptolemy king, that they might not seem to be dejected at their defeat, or be thought to entertain the less esteem and affection for their prince. Lysimachus and Seleucus soon followed their example, the one in Thrace, and the other in Babylon and the provinces of the East; and assumed the title of king, in their several dominions, after they had for so many years usurped the supreme authority there, without presuming to take this title upon them till that time, which was about eighteen years after the death of Alexander. Cassander alone, though he was treated as a king by the others, in their discourse and letters to him, continued to write his in his usual manner, and without affixing any addition to his name.

Plutarch observes, that this new title not only occasioned these princes to augment their train, and pompous appearance, but also caused them to assume an air of pomp and loftiness, and inspired them with such haughty impressions as they had never manifested till then; as if this appellation had suddenly exalted them into a species of beings different from the rest of mankind.

^b Seleucus had greatly increased his power in the oriental provinces, during the transactions we have been describing; for after he had killed Nicanor in a battle, whom Antigonus had sent against him, he not only established himself in the

^b A. M. 3699. Ant. J. C. 305. Appian. in Syr. p. 122, 123. Justin. l. xv. c. 4.

possession of Media, Assyria, and Babylon, but reduced Persia, Bactriana, Hyrcania, and all the provinces on this side the Indus, which had formerly been conquered by Alexander.

^c Antigonus, on his side, to improve the victory his son had obtained in Cyprus, assembled an army of an hundred thousand men in Syria, with an intention to invade Egypt. He flattered himself, that conquest would infallibly attend his arms, and that he should divest Ptolemy of that kingdom, with as much ease as he had taken Cyprus from him. Whilst he was conducting this great army by land, Demetrius followed him with his fleet, which coasted along the shores to Gaza, where the father and son concerted the measures each of them were to pursue. The pilots advised them to wait till the setting of the Pleiades, and defer their departure only for eight days, because the sea was then very tempestuous; but the impatience of Antigonus to surprise Ptolemy before his preparations were completed, caused him to disregard that salutary advice. Demetrius was ordered to make a descent in one of the mouths of the Nile, whilst Antigonus was to endeavour to open a passage by land into the heart of the country; but neither the one nor the other succeeded in his expedition. The fleet of Demetrius sustained great damage by violent storms; and Ptolemy had taken such effectual precautions to secure the mouths of the Nile, as rendered it impracticable to Demetrius to land his troops. Antigonus, on the other hand, having employed all his efforts to cross the deserts which lie between Palestine and Egypt, had much greater difficulties still to surmount, and found it impossible to pass the first arm of the Nile in his march, such judicious orders had been given by Ptolemy, and so advantageously were his troops posted at all the passes and avenues; but, what was still more afflictive to Antigonus than all the rest, his soldiers daily deserted from him in great numbers.

Ptolemy had sent out boats on several parts of the river where the enemies resorted for water, and caused it to be proclaimed on his part, from those vessels, that every deserter from their troops should receive from him two minæ, and every officer a talent. So considerable a recompence soon allureth great numbers to receive it, especially the troops in the pay of Antigonus; nor were they prevailed upon by money alone, as their inclinations to serve Ptolemy were much stronger than their motives to continue under Antigonus,

^c Diod. l. ix. p. 304.—306. Plut. in Demet. p. 896, 897.

whom they considered as an old man difficult to be pleased, imperious, morose, and severe; whereas Ptolemy rendered himself amiable, by his gentle disposition and engaging behaviour to all who approached him.

Antigonus, after he had hovered to no effect on the frontiers of Egypt, and even till his provisions began to fail him, became sensible of his inability to enter into Egypt; that his army decreased every day by sickness and desertion; and that it was impossible for him to subsist his remaining troops any longer in that country; was obliged to return into Syria, in a very shameful manner, after having lost in this unfortunate expedition a great number of his land-forces, and abundance of his ships.

Ptolemy, having offered a sacrifice to the gods, in gratitude for the protection they had granted him, sent to acquaint Lysimachus, Cassander, and Seleucus, with the happy event of that campaign, and to renew the alliance between them against the common enemy. This was the last attack he had to sustain for the crown of Egypt, and it greatly contributed to fix it upon his head, in consequence of the prudent measures he pursued. Ptolemy, the astronomer, therefore fixed the commencement of his reign at this period, and afterwards points out the several years of its duration, in his chronological canon. He begins the epoch on the seventh of November, and nineteen years after the death of Alexander the Great.

SECTION VIII.

DEMETRIUS BESIEGES RHODES. PROTOGENES SPARED DURING THE SIEGE.

ANTIGONUS ^d was almost fourscore years of age at that time, and as he had then contracted a gross habit of body, and consequently was but little qualified for the activity of a military life, he made use of his son's services, who, by the experience he had already acquired, and the success which attended him, transacted the most important affairs with great ability. The father, for this reason, was not offended at his expensive luxury and intemperance; for Demetrius, during peace, abandoned himself to the greatest excesses of

^d A. M. 3700. Ant. J. C. 304. Diod. l. xx. p. 809.—815, et 817, 825. Plut. in Demet. p. 897, 898.

all kinds, without the least regard to decorum. In times of war, indeed, he acted a very different part; he was then a quite different man, vigilant, active, laborious, and invincible to fatigues. Whether he gave into pleasure, or applied to serious affairs, he entirely devoted himself to the one or the other; and for the time he engaged in either, was incapable of moderation. He had an inventive genius; and it may be justly said, that curiosity, and a fine turn of mind for the sciences, were inseparable from him. He never employed his natural industry in frivolous and insignificant amusements, like many other kings, some of whom, as Plutarch observes, valued themselves for their expertness in playing on instruments, others in painting, and some in their dexterity in the turner's art, with a hundred other qualities of private men, but not one of a prince. His application to the mechanic arts had something great and truly royal in it; his galleys, with five benches of oars, were the admiration of his enemies, who beheld them sailing along their coasts; and his engines, called Helepoles, were a surprising spectacle to those whom he besieged. They were exceedingly useful to him in the war with Rhodes, with the conduct of which his father had charged him at the time we are now speaking of.

Among the islands called Sporades, Rhodes held the first rank, as well for the fertility of its soil, as the safety of its ports and roads, which, on that account, were resorted to by great numbers of trading ships from all parts. It then formed a small, but very powerful state, whose friendship was courted by all princes, and which was studious, on its own part, to oblige them, by observing an exact neutrality, and carefully declining any declaration in favour of one against another, in the wars that arose in those times. As the inhabitants were limited to a little island, all their power flowed from their riches, and their riches from their commerce, which it was their capital interest to preserve as free as possible with the Mediterranean states, which all contributed to their prosperity. The Rhodians, by persisting in so prudent a conduct, had rendered their city very flourishing; and as they enjoyed continual peace, they became extremely opulent. Notwithstanding the seeming neutrality they maintained, their inclination, as well as their interest, secretly attached them to Ptolemy, because the principal and most advantageous branches of their commerce flowed from Egypt. When Antigonus, therefore, demanded succours of them in his war with Cyprus, they intreated him not to compel them to declare against

Ptolemy, their ancient friend and ally ; but this answer, as prudent and well-concerted as it really was, drew upon them the displeasure of Antigonus, which he expressed in the severest menaces ; and, when he returned from his expedition to Egypt, he sent his son Demetrius, with a fleet and army, to chastise their insolent temerity, as he termed it, and likewise to reduce them to his obedience.

The Rhodians, who foresaw the impending storm, had sent to all the princes their allies, and to Ptolemy in particular, to implore their assistance ; and caused it to be represented to the latter, that their attachment to his interest had drawn upon them the danger to which they were then exposed.

The preparations on each side were immense. Demetrius arrived before Rhodes with a very numerous fleet, for he had two hundred ships of war of different dimensions ; and more than an hundred and seventy transports, which carried about forty thousand men, without including the cavalry, and the succours he received from pirates. He had likewise near a thousand small vessels laden with provisions, and all other necessary accommodations for an army. The expectation of the vast booty to be acquired by the capture of so rich a city as Rhodes, had allured great numbers of soldiers to join Demetrius in this expedition. This prince, who had the most fertile and inventive genius that ever was, for attacking places, and forming machines of war, had brought with him an infinite number of the latter. He was sensible that he had to deal with a brave people, and very able commanders, who had acquired great experience in maritime affairs ; and that the besieged had above an hundred military machines almost as formidable as his own.

Demetrius, upon his arrival at the island, landed, in order to take a view of the most commodious situation for assaulting the place. He likewise sent out parties to lay the country waste on all sides, and, at the same time, caused another body of his troops to cut down the trees, and demolish the houses in the parts adjacent to Rhodes, and then employed them as materials to fortify his camp with a triple palisade.

The Rhodians, on their part, prepared for a vigorous defence. All persons of merit, and reputation for military affairs, in the countries in alliance with the Rhodians, threw themselves into the city, as much for the honour of serving a republic, equally celebrated for its gratitude and the courage of its citizens, as to manifest their own fortitude and abilities

in the defence of that place, against one of the greatest captains, and the most expert in the conduct of sieges, that antiquity ever produced.

They began with dismissing from the city all such persons as were useless; and the number of those who were capable of bearing arms, amounted to six thousand citizens, and a thousand strangers. Liberty, and the right of denizens, were promised to such slaves as should distinguish themselves by their bravery, and the public engaged to pay the masters the full price of each of them. It was likewise publicly declared, that the citizens should bestow an honourable interment on those who should lose their lives in any engagement, and would also provide for the subsistence of their parents, wives, and children, and portion the daughters in marriage; and that, when the sons should be of age capable of bearing arms, they should be presented with a complete suit of armour, on the public theatre, at the great solemnity of the Bacchanalians.

This decree kindled an incredible ardour in all ranks of men. The rich came in crowds with money to defray the expence of the siege, and the soldiers pay. The workmen redoubled their industry in making arms, that were excellent, as well for the promptitude of execution, as the beauty of the work. Some were employed in making catapultas and ballistas; others formed different machines equally necessary; a third class repaired the breaches of the walls; while several others supplied them with stone. In a word, every thing was in motion throughout the city, each striving with emulation to distinguish himself on that occasion; so that a zeal so ardent and universal was never known before.

The besieged first set out three good sailers against a small fleet of sutlers and merchants, who supplied the enemy with provisions; they sunk a great number of their vessels, burned several, and carried into the city such of the prisoners who were in a condition to pay their ransom. The Rhodians gained a considerable sum of money by this expedition; for it was mutually agreed, that a thousand drachms, about twenty-five pounds, should be paid for every person that was a free-man, and half the sum for a slave.

The siege of Rhodes has been represented as the masterpiece of Demetrius, and the greatest instance of the fertility of his genius in resources and inventions. He began the attack from the sea, in order to make himself master of the port, and the towers which defended the entrance.

In order to accomplish this design, he caused two tortoises

to be erected in two flat prahms or barks joined together, to facilitate his approach to the place he intended to batter. One of these was stronger and more solid than the other, in order to cover the men from these enormous masses which the besieged discharged from the towers and walls, with the catapultas planted upon them; the other was of a lighter structure, and designed to shelter the soldiers from flights of darts and arrows. Two towers of four stories were erected at the same time, which exceeded in height the towers that defended the entrance into the port, and which were intended to be used in battering the latter with volleys of stones and darts. Each of these towers was placed upon two ships, strongly bound together.

Demetrius, besides these tortoises and towers, caused a kind of floating barricado to be erected on a long beam of timber, four feet thick, through which stakes armed at the end with large points of iron were driven. These stakes were disposed horizontally, with their spikes projecting forward, in order to prevent the vessels of the port from shattering the work with their beaks.

He likewise selected out of his fleet the largest vessels, on the side of which he erected a rampart of planks with little windows easy to be opened. He there placed the best Cretan archers and slingers in all his army, and furnished them with an infinite number of bows, small balistas, or cross-bows, and catapultas, with other engines for shooting, in order to gall the workmen of the city, employed in raising and repairing the walls of the port.

The Rhodians, seeing their besiegers turn all their efforts against that quarter, were no less industrious to defend it. In order to accomplish that design, they raised two machines upon an adjoining eminence, and formed three others, which they placed on large ships of burden, at the mouth of the little haven. A body of archers and slingers was likewise posted on each of these situations, with a prodigious quantity of stones, darts, and arrows of all kinds. The same orders were also given with respect to the ships of burden in the great port.

When Demetrius advanced with his ships and all their armament, to begin the attack on the ports, such a violent tempest arose, as rendered it impossible for him to accomplish any of his operations that day; but the sea growing calm about night, he took the advantage of the darkness, and advanced, without being perceived by the enemy, to the grand

port, where he made himself master of a neighbouring eminence, about five hundred paces from the wall, where he posted four hundred soldiers, who fortified themselves immediately with good palisadoes.

The next morning, Demetrius caused his batteries to advance with the sound of trumpets, and the shouts of his whole army ; and they at first produced all the effect he proposed from them. A greater number of the besieged were slain in this attack, and several breaches were opened in the mole which covered the port : but they were not very advantageous to the besiegers, who were always repulsed by the Rhodians ; and the loss being almost equal on both sides, Demetrius was obliged to retire from the port with his ships and machines, to be out of the reach of the enemy's arrows.

The besieged, who had been instructed at their own expence in what manner the night was capable of being improved, caused several fire-ships to sail out of the port, during the darkness, in order to burn the tortoises and wooden towers which the enemy had erected ; but as they had the misfortune to be incapable of forcing the floating barricado, they were obliged to return into the port. The Rhodians lost some of their fire-ships in this expedition, but the mariners saved themselves by swimming.

The next day, the prince ordered a general attack to be made against the port, and the walls of the place, with the sound of trumpets, and the shouts of his whole army, thinking by these means to spread terror among the besieged ; but they were so far from being intimidated, that they sustained the attack with incredible vigour, and discovered the same intrepidity for the space of eight days that it continued ; and actions of astonishing bravery were performed on both sides during that long period.

Demetrius, taking advantage of the eminence which his troops had seized, gave orders for erecting upon it a battery of several engines, which discharged great stones of an hundred and fifty pounds in weight, against the walls and towers, the latter of which tottered with the repeated shocks, and several breaches were soon made in the walls. The besiegers then made a furious advance to seize the moles which defended the entrance into the port ; but as this post was of the last importance to the Rhodians, they spared no pains to repulse the besiegers, who had already made a considerable progress. This they at last effected, by a shower of stones and arrows, which they discharged upon their enemies with so

much rapidity, and for such a length of time, that they were obliged to retire in confusion, after losing a great number of their men.

The ardour of the besiegers was not diminished by this repulse, and they rather appeared more animated than ever against the Rhodians. They began the scalade by land and sea at the same time, and employed the besieged so effectually, that they scarce knew whither to run for the defence of the place. The attack was carried on with the utmost fury on all sides, and the besieged defended themselves with the greatest intrepidity. Great numbers were thrown from the ladders to the earth, and miserably bruised ; several, even of the principal officers, got to the top of the wall, where they were covered with wounds, and taken prisoners by the enemy ; so that Demetrius, notwithstanding all his valour, thought it necessary to retreat, in order to repair his engines, which were almost entirely destroyed by so many attacks, as well as the vessels that carried them.

After the prince had retreated from Rhodes, immediate care was taken to bury the dead ; the beaks also of the ships, with the other spoils that had been taken from the enemy, were carried to the temple, and the workmen were indefatigable in repairing the breaches of the walls.

Demetrius having employed seven days in refitting his ships, and repairing his engines, set sail again with a fleet as formidable as the former, and steered, with a fair wind, directly for the port, which employed his attention most, as he conceived it impracticable to reduce the place till he had first made himself master of that. Upon his arrival, he caused a vast quantity of lighted torches, flaming straw, and arrows, to be discharged, in order to set fire to the vessels that were riding there, while his engines battered the mole without intermission. The besieged, who expected attacks of this nature, exerted themselves with so much vigour and activity, that they soon extinguished the flames, which had seized the vessels of the port.

At the same time, they caused three of their largest ships to sail out of the port, under the command of Exacestes, one of their bravest officers, with orders to attack the enemy, and use all possible means to join the vessels that carried the tortoises and wooden towers, and to charge them in such a manner with the beaks of theirs, as might either sink them, or render them entirely useless. These orders were executed with a surprising expedition and address ; and the three gal-

leys, after they had shattered and broke through the floating barricado already mentioned, drove their beaks with so much violence into the sides of the enemy's barks, on which the machines were erected, that the water was immediately seen to flow into them, through several openings. Two of them were already sunk, but the third was towed along by the galleys, and joined the main fleet; and as dangerous as it was to attack them in that situation, the Rhodians, through a blind and precipitate ardour, had the courage to attempt it. But as the inequality was too great to admit them to come off with success, Exacestes, with the officer who commanded under him, and some others, who, having fought with all the bravery imaginable, were taken with the galley in which they were; the other two regained the port, after sustaining many dangers, and most of the men also arrived there by swimming.

As unfortunate as this last attack had proved to Demetrius, he was determined to undertake another himself; and, in order to succeed in that design, he ordered a machine of a new invention to be built, of thrice the height and breadth of those he had lately lost. When this was completed, he caused it to be placed near the port, which he was resolved to force; but at the instant they were preparing to work it, a dreadful tempest arose at sea, and sunk it to the bottom, with the vessels on which it had been raised.

The besieged, who were attentive to improve all favourable conjunctures, employed the time afforded them by the continuance of the tempest, in regaining the eminence near the port, which the enemy had carried in the first assault, and where they afterwards fortified themselves. The Rhodians attacked it, and were repulsed several times; but the forces of Demetrius, who defended it, perceiving fresh troops continually pouring upon them, and that it was in vain for them to expect any relief, were obliged, at last, to surrender themselves prisoners, to the number of four hundred men.

This series of fortunate events was succeeded by the arrival of five hundred men from Cnosus, a city of Crete, to the assistance of the Rhodians, and also of five hundred more whom Ptolemy sent from Egypt, most of them being Rhodians, who had listed themselves among the troops of that prince.

Demetrius, being extremely mortified to see all his batteries at the port rendered ineffectual, resolved to employ them by land, in order to carry the place by assault, or reduce it to the

necessity of capitulating. He therefore prepared materials of every kind, and formed them into a machine called Helepolis, and which was larger than any that had ever been invented before. The basis on which it stood was square, and each of its sides had an extent of seventy-five feet. The machine itself was an assemblage of large square beams, riveted together with iron, and the whole mass rested upon eight wheels that were made proportionable to the superstructure. The joints of these wheels were three feet thick, and strengthened with large iron plates.

In order to facilitate and vary the movements of the helepolis, care had been taken to place casters * under it, whose volubility rendered the machine moveable any way.

From each of the four angles a large column of wood was carried up to the height of about one hundred and fifty feet, and mutually inclining to each other. The machine was composed of nine stories, whose dimensions gradually lessened in the ascent. The first story was supported by forty-three beams, and the last by no more than nine.

Three sides of the machine was plated over with iron, to prevent its being damaged by the fires that were launched from the city.

In the front of each storey were little windows, whose form and dimensions corresponded with the nature of the arrows that were to be shot from the machine. Over each window was a kind of curtain made with leather, stuffed with wool; this was let down by a machine for that purpose, and the intention of it was to break the force of whatever should be discharged by the enemy against it.

Each storey had two large stair-cases, one for the ascent of the men, and the other for their descent.

This machine was moved forwards by three thousand of the strongest and most vigorous men in the whole army, but the art with which it was built greatly facilitated the motion.

Demetrius also gave directions for building a great number of other machines, of different magnitudes, and for various uses; he also employed his seamen in levelling the ground

* Mons. Rollin informs us in a note, that he was obliged to retain the Greek term (*Antistrepta*) for want of a proper French word to render it by: but as the English language is not so defective in that particular, the translator has expressed the Greek by the word Caster, which, as well as the original word, signifies a wheel placed under a piece of work, in such a manner as to render it convertible on all sides, like those little wheels affixed under the feet of beds, by which they move with ease to any part of a room.

over which the machines were to move, which was an hundred fathoms. The number of artizans and others employed on those works, amounted to near thirty thousand men, by which means they were finished with incredible expedition.

The Rhodians were not indolent during these formidable preparations, but employed their time in raising a counter-wall, on the track of ground where Demetrius intended to batter the walls of the city with the hclepolis: and in order to accomplish this work, they demolished the wall which surrounded the theatre, as also several neighbouring houses, and even some temples, having solemnly promised the gods to build more magnificent structures for the celebration of their worship, after the siege should be raised.

When they knew that the enemy had quitted the sea, they sent out nine of their best ships of war, divided into three squadrons, the command of which they gave to three of their bravest sea-officers, who returned with a very rich booty, some galleys, and several smaller vessels, which they had taken, as also a great number of prisoners. They had likewise seized a galley richly laden, and in which were large quantities of tapestry, with other furniture, and a variety of rich robes, intended by Phila as a present to her husband Demetrius, and accompanied with letters which she herself had written to him. The Rhodians sent the whole, and even the letters, to Ptolemy, which exceedingly exasperated Demetrius. In this proceeding, says Plutarch, they did not imitate the polite conduct of the Athenians, who having once seized some of the couriers of Philip, with whom they were then at war, opened all the packets but those of Olympias, which they sent to Philip, sealed as they were. There are some rules of decency and honour which ought to be inviolably observed, even with enemies.

While the ships of the republic were employed in taking the prizes already mentioned, a great commotion happened at Rhodes, with respect to the statues of Antigonus and Demetrius, which had been erected in honour to them, and till then were held in the utmost veneration. Some of the principal citizens were solicitous, in a public assembly, for an order to destroy the statues of those princes who then harassed them with such a cruel war; but the people, who were more discreet and moderate on this occasion than their chiefs, would not suffer that proposal to be executed. So wise and equitable a conduct, exclusively of all events, did the Rhodians no small honour; but should their city have been taken, it could

not have failed to inspire the conqueror with impressions in their favour.

Demetrius having tried several mines, without success, from their being all discovered, and rendered ineffectual by the vigilant conduct and activity of the besieged, gave orders, and made the necessary dispositions for a general assault; in order to which the helepolis was moved to a situation from whence the city might be battered with the best effect. Each storey of this formidable engine was furnished with catapultas and balistas, proportioned in their size to the dimensions of the place. It was likewise supported and fortified on two of its sides, by four small machines called tortoises, each of which had a covered gallery, to secure those who should either enter the helepolis or issue out of it, to execute different orders. On each side was a battering ram of a prodigious size, consisting of a piece of timber thirty fathoms in length, armed with iron terminating in a point, and as strong as the beak of a galley. These engines were mounted on wheels, and were made to batter the walls during the attack with incredible force, by near a thousand men.

When every thing was ready, Demetrius ordered the trumpets to sound, and the general assault to be given on all sides, both by sea and land. In the heat of the attack, and when the walls were already shaken by the battering rams, ambassadors arrived from the Cnadians, and earnestly solicited Demetrius to suspend the assault, giving him hopes, at the same time, that they should prevail upon the besieged to submit to an honourable capitulation. A suspension of arms was accordingly granted; but the Rhodians refusing to capitulate on the conditions proposed to them, the attack was renewed with so much fury, and all the machines co-operated so effectually, that a large tower built with square stones, and the wall that flanked it, were battered down. The besieged fought like lions in the breach, and repulsed their enemies.

In this conjuncture the vessels which Ptolemy had freighted with three hundred thousand measures of corn, and different kinds of pulse, for the Rhodians, arrived very seasonably in the port, notwithstanding all the efforts of the enemy's ships which cruised in the neighbourhood to intercept them. A few days after this relief, two other small fleets sailed into the port; one was sent by Cassander, with an hundred thousand bushels of barley; the other came from Lysimachus, with four hundred thousand bushels of corn, and as much barley. This seasonable and abundant supply, which was received

when the city began to be in want of provisions, inspired the besieged with new courage, and they resolved not to surrender till the last extremity.

While they were animated in this manner, they attempted to fire the enemies machines, and with this view ordered a body of soldiers to march out of the city that following midnight, with torches, and all kinds of kindled wood. These troops advanced to the batteries, and set them on fire, and at the same time innumerable arrows were shot from the walls, to support the detachment against those who should endeavour to extinguish the flames. The besiegers lost great numbers of their men on this occasion, because they were incapable, amidst the obscurity of the night, either to see or avoid the volleys of arrows discharged against them. Several plates of iron happening to fall from the helepolis, during the conflagration, the Rhodians advanced with impetuosity, in order to set it on fire: but as the troops within that moving tower quenched it with water as fast as the flames were kindled, they could not effect their design. However, Demetrius was apprehensive that all his machines would be consumed; to prevent which, he caused them to be removed with all possible expedition.

Demetrius being curious to know what number of machines the besieged had employed in casting arrows, caused all those which had been shot from the place in the attack that night to be gathered up; and when these were counted, and a proper computation made, he became sensible that the inhabitants must have more than eight hundred engines of different dimensions, for discharging fires, and about one thousand five hundred for arrows. The prince was struck with consternation at this number, as he did not imagine the city could have made such formidable preparations. He caused his dead to be interred, gave directions for curing those who were wounded, and was as expeditious as possible in repairing the machines which had been dismounted and rendered useless.

The besieged, in order to improve the relaxation they enjoyed by the removal of the machines, were industrious to fortify themselves against a new assault, for which their enemies were then preparing. To this purpose they began with opening a large and deep ditch behind the breach, to obstruct the passage of the enemy into the city; after which they raised a substantial wall, in the form of a crescent, along the ditch; and which would cost the enemy a new attack.

As their attention was devoted, at the same time, to every

other emergency, they detached a squadron of the nimblest ships in their port, which took a great number of vessels laden with provision and ammunition for Demetrius, and brought them into the port. These were soon followed by a numerous fleet of small vessels freighted with corn, and other necessaries, sent them by Ptolemy, with one thousand five hundred men, commanded by Antigonus of Macedonia.

Demetrius, having reinstated his machines, caused them all to advance near the city, when a second embassy arrived at the camp, from the Athenians, and some other states of Greece, on the same subject as the former, but with as little success. The king, whose imagination was fruitful of expedients for succeeding in his projects, detached fifteen hundred of his troops under the command of Alcimus and Mancius, with orders to enter the breach at midnight, and force the intrenchments behind it. They were then to possess themselves of the parts adjacent to the theatre, where they would be in a condition to maintain their ground, if they could but once make themselves masters of it. In order to facilitate the execution of so important and dangerous an expedition, and amuse the enemy with false attacks, he at the same time caused the signal to be sounded by all the trumpets, and the city to be attacked on all sides, both by sea and land, that the besieged finding sufficient employment in all parts, the fifteen hundred men might have an opportunity of forcing the intrenchments which covered the breach, and afterwards of seizing all the advantageous posts about the theatre. This feint had all the success the prince expected from it. The troops having shouted from all quarters, as if they were advancing to a general assault, the detachment commanded by Alcimus entered the breach, and made such a vigorous attack upon those who defended the ditch, and the crescent which covered it, that after they had killed a great number of their enemies, and put the rest into confusion, they seized the post adjacent to the theatre, where they maintained themselves.

The alarm was very great in the city, and all the chiefs who commanded there dispatched orders to their officers and soldiers, not to quit their posts, nor make the least movement whatever. After which they placed themselves at the head of a chosen body of their own troops, and of those who were newly arrived from Egypt, and with them poured upon the detachment which had advanced as far as the theatre; but the obscurity of the night rendered it impracticable to dislodge them from the posts they had seized, and the day no sooner

appeared, than an universal cry of the besiegers was heard from all quarters, by which they endeavoured to animate those who had entered the place, and inspire them with a resolution to maintain their ground, where they might soon expect succours. This terrible cry drew floods of tears and dismal groans from the populace, women and children, who continued in the city, and then concluded themselves inevitably lost. The battle, however, continued with great vigour at the theatre, and the Macedonians defended their post with an intrepidity that astonished their enemies, till at last the Rhodians prevailing by their numbers, and perpetual supplies of fresh troops, the detachment, after having seen Alcimus and Mancius slain on the spot, were obliged to submit to superior force, and abandon a post it was no longer possible to maintain. Great numbers of them fell on the spot, and the rest were taken prisoners.

The ardour of Demetrius was rather augmented than abated by this check, and he was making the necessary dispositions for a new assault, when he received letters from his father Antigonus, by which he was directed to take all possible measures for the conclusion of a peace with the Rhodians. He then wanted some plausible pretext for discontinuing the siege, and chance supplied him with it. At that very instant deputies from Aetolia arrived at his camp, to solicit him anew to grant a peace to the Rhodians, to which they found him not so averse as before.

^f If what Vegetius relates of the helepolis be true, and indeed Vitruvius seems to confirm it, with a small variation of circumstances, it might possibly be another motive that contributed not a little to dispose Demetrius to a peace. That prince was preparing to advance his helepolis against the city, when a Rhodian engineer contrived an expedient to render it entirely useless; he opened a mine under the walls of the city, and continued it to the way over which the tower was to pass the ensuing day in order to approach the walls. The besiegers, not suspecting any stratagem of that nature, moved on the tower to a place undermined; which being incapable of supporting so enormous a load, sunk in under the machine, which buried itself so deep in the earth, that it was impossible to draw it out again. This was one inconvenience to which these formidable engines were obnoxious; and the two authors whom I have cited declare, that this accident deter-

^f Veget. de Re Milit. c. 4.

mined Demetrius to raise the seige; and it is, at least, very probable, that it contributed not a little to his taking that resolution.

The Rhodians, on their part, were as desirous of an accommodation as himself, provided it could be effected upon reasonable terms. Ptolemy, in promising them fresh succours, much more considerable than the former, had earnestly exhorted them not to lose so favourable an occasion, if it should offer itself. Besides which, they were sensible of the extreme necessity they were under of putting an end to the siege, which could not but prove fatal to them at last. This consideration induced them to listen with pleasure to the proposals made them, and the treaty was concluded soon after upon the following terms: The republic of Rhodes, and all its citizens, should retain the enjoyment of their rights, privileges, and liberty, without being subjected to any power whatsoever. The alliance they had always had with Antigonus, was to be confirmed and renewed, with an obligation to take up arms for him in all future wars, provided it was not against Ptolemy. The city was also to deliver an hundred hostages, to be chosen by Demetrius, for the effectual performance of the articles stipulated between them. When these hostages were given, the army decamped from before Rhodes, after having besieged it a year.

Demetrius, who was then reconciled with the Rhodians, was desirous, before his departure, to give them a proof of that disposition; and accordingly presented them with all the machines of war he had employed in that siege. These they afterwards sold for three hundred talents, about three hundred thousand crowns, which they employed, with an additional sum of their own, in making the famous Colossus, which was reputed one of the seven wonders of the world. It was a statue of the sun, of so stupendous a size, that ships in full sail passed between its legs; the height of it was seventy cubits, or an hundred and five feet, and few men could clasp its thumb with their arms. It was the work of Cares of Lindus, and employed him for the space of twelve years. Sixty-six years after its erection, it was thrown down by an earthquake, of which we shall speak in the sequel of this history.

The Rhodians, to testify their gratitude to Ptolemy for the assistance he had given them in so dangerous a conjuncture, consecrated a grove to that prince, after they had consulted

^g Plin. l. xxxiv. c. 7.

the oracle of Jupiter-Ammon, to give the action an air of solemnity ; and to honour him the more, erected a magnificent work within it. They built a sumptuous portico, and continued it along each side of the square which encompassed it, containing a space of four hundred fathoms. This portico was called the Ptolemæon ; and, out of flattery, as customary in those days as impious in itself, divine honours were rendered to him in that place ; and, in order to perpetuate their deliverer in this war by another method, they gave him the appellation of Soter, which signifies a saviour, and is used by the historians to distinguish him from the other Ptolemies, who were his successors on the throne of Egypt.

I was unwilling to interrupt the series of events that occurred at this siege, and therefore reserved for this place one that greatly redounds to the honour of Demetrius. It relates to his taste for the arts, and the esteem he entertained for those who were distinguished by peculiar merit in them ; a circumstance not a little for the glory of a prince.

Rhodes was at that time the residence of a celebrated painter, named Protogenes, who was a native of Caunus, a city of Caria, which was then subject to the Rhodians. The apartment where he painted was in the suburbs, without the city, when Demetrius first besieged it ; but neither the presence of the enemies who then surrounded him, nor the noise of arms that perpetually rung in his ears, could induce him to quit his habitation, or discontinue his work. The king was surprised at his conduct ; and as he one day asked him his reasons for such a proceeding, “ It is,” replied he, “ because I am sensible you have declared war against the Rhodians, and not against the sciences.” Nor was he deceived in that opinion, for Demetrius actually showed himself their protector. He planted a guard round his house, that the artist might enjoy tranquillity, or, at least, be secure from danger amidst the tumult and ravages of war. He frequently went to see him work, and never sufficiently admired the application of that master to his art, and his surprising excellency in it.

The master-piece of this painter was the Jalsus, an historical picture of a person of that name, whom the Rhodians acknowledged as their founder, though only a * fabulous hero. Protogenes had employed seven years in finishing this piece : and when Apelles first saw it, he was transported with so much admiration, that his speech failed him for some time ;

* He was the son of Orchimus, whose parents were the Sun and Rhoda, from whom the city and island derived their name.

and when he at last began to recover from his astonishment, he cried out, “Prodigious work indeed! Admirable performance! It has not, however, the graces I give my works, “and which have raised their reputation to the skies.” If we may credit Pliny, Protogenes, during the whole time he applied himself to this work, condemned himself to a very rigid and abstemious life *, that the delicacy of his taste and imagination might not be affected by his diet. This picture was carried to Rome, and consecrated in the temple of Peace, where it remained to the time of Pliny; but it was at last destroyed by fire.

The same Pliny pretends, that Rhodes was saved by this picture; because, as it hung in the only quarter by which it was possible for Demetrius to take the city, he rather chose to abandon his conquest †, than expose so precious a monument of art to the danger of being consumed in the flames. This, indeed, would have been carrying his taste and value for painting into a surprising extreme; but we have already seen the true reasons which obliged Demetrius to raise the siege.

One of the figures in this picture was a dog ‡, that was admired by all good judges, and had cost the painter great application, without his being able to express his idea to his own satisfaction, though he was sufficiently pleased with all the rest of his work. He endeavoured to represent the dog panting, and with his mouth foaming as after a long chace; and employed all the skill he was capable of exerting on that occasion, without being able to content himself. Art, in his opinion, was more visible than it ought to have been; a mere resemblance would not suffice, and almost nothing but reality itself would satisfy him. He was desirous that the foam should not seem painted, but actually flowing out of the mouth of the dog. He frequently retouched it, and suffered a degree of torture from his anxiety to express those simple traces of

* He subsisted himself on boiled Lupines, a kind of pulse which satisfied his hunger and thirst at the same time.

† Parcentem picturæ fugit occasio victoriae.

‡ Est in ea canis mire factus, ut quem pariter casus et ars pinxerint. Non judicabat se exprimere in eo spumam anhelantis posse, cum in reliqua omni parte (quod difficillimum erat) sibi ipsi satisfecisset. Displacebat autem ars ipsa, nec minui poterat, et videbatur nimia, ac longius a veritate discedere, spumaque illa pingi non ex ore nasci, anxiò animi cruciatu cum in picturæ verum esse, non verisimile, vellet. Absteserat sæpius mutaveratque pennicillum, nullo modo sibi approbans. Postremo iratus arti quod intelligeretur, spongiam eam impegit inviso loco tabulæ, et illa repuit ablatos colores, qualiter cura optabat: fecitque in pictura fortuna naturam.—Plin. l. xxxv. c. 10.

nature, of which he had formed the ideas in his mind. All his attempts were however ineffectual, till at last, in a violent emotion of rage and despair, he darted at the picture the very sponge with which he used to wipe out his colours, and chance accomplished that which art had not been able to effect.

This painter is censured for being too difficult to be pleased, and for retouching his pictures too frequently. It is certain, that though Apelles * almost regarded him as his master, and allowed him a number of excellent qualities, yet he condemned in him the defect of not being able to quit the pencil and finish his works; a defect highly pernicious in eloquence as well as painting. “We ought,” says Cicero †, “to know “how far we should go; and Apelles justly censured some “painters for not knowing when to have done.”

SECTION IX.

EXPEDITION OF SELEUCUS. CASSANDER COMPELLED TO RAISE THE SIEGE OF ATHENS. ANTIGONUS SLAIN.

THE farther we advance into the history of Alexander's successors, the more easily may we discover the spirit by which they were constantly actuated hitherto, and by which they will still appear to be influenced. They at first concealed their real dispositions, by nominating children, or persons of weak capacities, to the regal dignity, in order to disguise their own ambitious views. But as soon as all the family of Alexander was destroyed, they threw off the mask, and discovered themselves in their proper colours, and such as, in reality, they had always been. They were all equally solicitous to support themselves in their several governments; to become entirely independent; to assume an absolute sovereignty, and enlarge the limits of their provinces and kingdoms at the expense of those other governors who were weaker or less successful than themselves. To this effect they employed the force of their arms, and entered into alliances, which they were always ready to violate, when they could derive more

* Et aliam gloriam usurpavit Apelles, cum Protogenis opus immensi laboris ac curae supra modum anxiae miraretur. Dixit enim omnia sibi cum illo paria esse, aut illi meliora, sed uno se praestare, quod manum ille de tabula nesciret tollere: memorabili praecepto, nocere saepe nimiam diligentiam.—Plin. ibid.

† In omnibus rebus videndum est quatenus—In quo Apelles pictores quoque eos peccare dicebat, qui non sentirent quid esset satis.—Orat. n. 73.

advantages from others, and they renewed them with the same facility from the same motives. They considered the vast conquests of Alexander as an inheritance destitute of a master, and which prudence obliged them to secure for themselves, in as large portions as possible, without any apprehensions of being reproached as usurpers, for the acquisition of countries gained by the victories of the Macedonians, but not the property of any particular person. This was the great motive of all the enterprises in which they engaged.

^h Seleucus, as we formerly observed, was master of all the countries between Euphrates and Indus, and was desirous of acquiring those that lay beyond the latter of those rivers. In order, therefore, to improve the favourable conjuncture of his union, in point of interest, with Ptolemy, Cassander, and Lysimachus, and at a time when the forces of Antigonus were divided, and Demetrius was employed in the siege of Rhodes, and in awing the republics of Greece; in a word, while Antigonus himself was only intent upon becoming master of Syria and Phoenicia, and attacking Ptolemy even in Egypt itself; Seleucus therefore thought it incumbent on him to improve this diversion, which weakened the only enemy he had to fear, for carrying his arms against the people of India, who were included in his lot by the general partition, and whom he hoped it would be very practicable for him to subdue by a sudden irruption, altogether unexpected by king Sandrocotta. This person was an Indian of very mean extraction, who, under the specious pretext of delivering his country from the tyranny of foreigners, had raised an army, and augmented it so well by degrees, that he found means to drive the Macedonians out of all the provinces of India which Alexander had conquered, and to establish himself in them, while the successors of that monarch were engaged in mutual wars with each other. Seleucus passed the Indus in order to regain those provinces; but when he found that Sandrocotta had rendered himself absolute master of all India, and had likewise an army of six hundred thousand men, with a prodigious number of elephants, he did not judge it prudent to attack so potent a prince; but entered into a treaty with him, by which he agreed to renounce all his pretensions to that country, provided Sandrocotta would furnish him with five hundred elephants; upon which terms a peace was concluded. This was the final result of Alexander's Indian conquests!

this the fruit of so much blood shed to gratify the frantic ambition of one prince ! Seleucus shortly after led his troops into the West against Antigonus, as I shall soon observe. The absolute necessity he was under of engaging in this war, was one of the strongest inducements for concluding so sudden a peace with the Indian prince.

ⁱ The Athenians, at the same time, called in Demetrius to assist them against Cassander, who besieged their city. He accordingly set sail with three hundred and thirty galleys, and a great body of foot ; and not only drove Cassander out of Attica, but pursued him as far as Thermopylæ, where he defeated him, and made himself master of Heraclea, which surrendered voluntarily. He also admitted into his service six thousand Macedonians, who came over to his side.

When he returned to Athens, the inhabitants of that city, though they had always lavished upon him all the honours they were able to invent, had recourse to new flatteries that outdid the former. They lodged him in the back part of the temple of Minerva, called Partheon ; but even this place, which had so much sanctity ascribed to it by the people, and was the mansion of a virgin goddess, he did not scruple to profane by the most infamous and crying debaucheries. His courtesans were there treated with more honour than the goddess herself, and were the only divinities he adored. ^k He even caused altars to be erected to them by the Athenians, whom he called abject wretches, for their mean compliance, and creatures born only for slavery : so much was even the prince shocked at such despicable adulation, as Tacitus observed with respect to Tiberius *.

Democles, surnamed the Fair, and of a very tender age, threw himself, in order to elude the violence of Demetrius, into a vessel of boiling water prepared for a bath, and there lost his life, choosing rather to die than violate his modesty. The Athenians, to appease the resentment of Demetrius, who was extremely offended at a decree they had published with relation to him, issued a new one, importing, “ That it was “ ordered and adjudged by the people of Athens, that what- “ ever Demetrius might think fit to command, should be

ⁱ Diod. l. xx. p. 825.—828. Plut. in Demet. p. 899.

^k Athen. l. vi. p. 253.

* Memoriae proditur, Tiberium, quoties curia egredetur, Graecis verbis in hunc modum eloqui solitum : “ O homines ad servitium paratos ! ” Seilicet etiam illum, qui libertatem publicam nollet, tam projectæ servientium patientiæ tædebat.—Taeit. Annal. l. iii. c. 65.

“considered as sacred in regard to the gods, and just with “regard to men.” Is it possible to believe, that flattery and servitude could be carried to such an excess of baseness, extravagance, and irreligion !

Demetrius, after these proceedings, retired into Peloponnesus, and took from Ptolemy, who had rendered himself powerful in that country, the cities of Sicyone, Corinth, and several others, where he had garrisons. And as he happened to be at Argos, at the grand festival in honour of Juno, he was desirous of celebrating it, by proposing prizes, and presiding in person among the Greeks. In order to solemnize it more effectually, he espoused, on that day, Deidamia, the daughter of Æacides, king of the Molossians, and sister of Pyrrhus.

¹ The states of Greece being assembled in the Isthmus, and curiosity having drawn a vast number of people from all parts, Demetrius was proclaimed general of all the Greeks, as Philip and Alexander had been before him ; to whom he thought himself abundantly superior, so much was he intoxicated with the success of his arms, and the flattery lavished upon him.

When he was upon his departure from Peloponnesus for Athens, he wrote to the inhabitants of that city, that he intended, upon his arrival among them, to be initiated in the great and lesser mysteries at the same time. This had never been permitted before ; for it was necessary to observe certain intervals ; it being lawful to celebrate the lesser mysteries only in the month of March *, and the greater in that of October. In order therefore to obviate this inconvenience, and satisfy so religious a prince, it was ordered, that the then present month of May should be deemed the month of March, and afterwards that of October ; and Demetrius, by this rare invention, was duly initiated, without infringing the customs and ceremonials prescribed by the law.

But of all the abuses committed at Athens, that which most afflicted and mortified the inhabitants, was an order issued by Demetrius, for immediately furnishing the sum of two hundred and fifty talents ; and when this money had been collected, without the least delay or abatement, the prince, the moment he saw it amassed together, ordered it to be given to Lamia and the other courtesans in her company, for washes and paint. The Athenians were more offended at the indig-

¹ Plut. in Demet. p. 990.

* There are various opinions with relation to the months in which these mysteries were celebrated.

nity than the loss, and resented the application of that sum to a greater degree than their contribution to it.

Lamia, as if this terrible expence had not been sufficient, being desirous to regale Demetrius at a feast, extorted money from several of the richest Athenians by her own private authority. The entertainment cost immense sums, and gave birth to a very ingenious pleasantry of a comic poet, who said, that Lamia was a true Helepolis. We have already shewn, that the helepolis was a machine invented by Demetrius for attacking towns.

^m Cassander finding himself vigorously pressed by Demetrius, and not being able to obtain a peace, without submitting entirely to the discretion of Antigonus, agreed with Lysimachus to send ambassadors to Seleucus and Ptolemy, to represent to them the situation to which they were reduced. The conduct of Antigonus made it evident, that he had no less in view than to dispossess all the other successors of Alexander, and usurp the whole empire to himself; and that it was time to form a strict alliance with each other, to humble this exorbitant power. They were likewise offended, and Lysimachus in particular, at the contemptible manner in which Demetrius permitted people to treat other kings in their conversation at his table, appropriating a regal title to himself and his father; whereas Ptolemy, according to his flatterers, was no more than the captain of a ship, Seleucus a commander of elephants, and Lysimachus a treasurer. A confederacy was therefore formed by these four kings, after which they hastened into Assyria, to make preparations for this new war.

The first operations of it were commenced at the Hellespont; Cassander and Lysimachus having judged it expedient that the former should continue in Europe, to defend it against Demetrius, and the latter should invade the provinces of Antigonus in Asia, with as many troops as could be drawn out of their own kingdom, without leaving them too destitute of forces. Lysimachus executed his part conformably to the agreement, passed the Hellespont with a fine army, and either by treaty or force, reduced Phrygia, Lydia, Lycaonia, and most of the territories between the Propontis and the river Maeander.

Antigonus was then at Antigonia, which he had lately built in Upper Syria, and where he was employed in celebrating the solemn games he had there established. This news, with

^m A. M. 3702. Ant. J. C. 302. Diod. l. xx. p. 830—836. Plut. in Demetr. p. 899. Justin. l. xv. c. 4.

that of several other revolts, transmitted to him at the same time, caused him immediately to quit his games. He accordingly dismissed the assembly upon the spot, and made preparations for advancing against the enemy. When all his troops were drawn together, he marched with the utmost expedition over Mount Taurus, and entered Cilicia, where he took out of the public treasury of Synada, a city of that province, as much money as he wanted, and then augmented his troops to the number he thought necessary: After which he advanced directly towards the enemy, and retook several places in his march. Lysimachus thought proper to be upon the defensive, till the arrival of the succours upon their march to join him from Seleucus and Ptolemy. The remaining part of the year, therefore, elapsed without any action, and each party retired into winter-quarters.

ⁿ Seleucus, at the beginning of the next season, formed his army at Babylon, and marched into Cappadocia, to act against Antigonus. This latter sent immediately for Demetrius, who left Greece with great expedition, marched to Ephesus, and retook that city, with several others that had declared for Lysimachus upon his arrival in Asia.

Ptolemy employed the opportunity in Syria, of the absence of Antigonus, and recovered all Phœnicia, Judea, and Cœlosyria, except the cities of Tyre and Sidon, where Antigonus had left good garrisons. He, indeed, formed the siege of Sidon; but whilst his troops were employed in battering the walls, he received intelligence that Antigonus had defeated Seleucus and Lysimachus, and was advancing to relieve the place. Upon this information he made a truce for five months with the Sidonians, raised the siege, and returned to Egypt.

Here ends what remains of the history of Diodorus Siculus, in a period of the greatest importance, and on the very point of a battle, by which the fate of Alexander's successors is to be decided.

^o The confederate army, commanded by Seleucus and Lysimachus, and the troops of Antigonus and Demetrius, arrived at Phrygia almost at the same time, but did not long confront each other without coming to blows. Antigonus had above sixty thousand foot, ten thousand horse, and seventy-five elephants. The enemies' forces consisted of sixty-four thousand foot, ten thousand five hundred horse, four hundred elephants, with an hundred and twenty chariots armed with scythes. The battle was fought near Ipsus, a city of Phrygia.

As soon as the signal was given, Demetrius, at the head of his best cavalry, fell upon Antiochus, the son of Seleucus, and behaved with so much bravery, that he broke the enemy's ranks, and put them to flight; but a rash and inconsiderate thirst of glory, which generals can never suspect too much, and has been fatal to many, prompted Demetrius to pursue the fugitives with too much ardour, and without any consideration for the rest of the army; by which means he lost the victory he might easily have secured, had he improved his first advantage aright. For when he returned from the pursuit, he found it impracticable for him to rejoin his infantry, the enemy's elephants having filled up all the intermediate space. When Seleucus saw the infantry of Antigonus separated from their cavalry, he only made several feint attacks upon them, sometimes on one side, and sometimes on another, in order to intimidate and afford them sufficient time to quit the army of Antigonus, and come over to his own; and this was at last the expedient on which they resolved. The greatest part of the infantry detached themselves from the rest, and surrendered in a voluntary manner to Seleucus, and the other were all put to flight.

At the same instant a large body of the army of Seleucus drew off by his order, and made a furious attack upon Antigonus, who sustained their efforts for some time; but being at last overwhelmed with darts, and having received many wounds, he fell dead on the earth, having defended himself valiantly to his last gasp. Demetrius, seeing his father dead, rallied all the troops he was able to draw together; and retired to Ephesus, with five thousand foot, and four thousand horse; which were all that remained of more than sixty thousand men whom his father and himself commanded at the beginning of the engagement. ^p The great Pyrrhus, as young as he then was, was inseparable from Demetrius, overthrew all that opposed him, and gave an essay, in this first action, of what might be expected one day from his valour and bravery.

p Plut. in Pyrrh. p. 384.

END OF VOLUME FOURTH.

